

DrayTek

Vigor2832 Series

ADSL2/2+ Security Firewall

Your reliable networking solutions partner



User's Guide

V1.5

Vigor2832 Series ADSL2/2+ Security Firewall

User's Guide

Version: 1.5

Firmware Version: V3.9.6.3

(For future update, please visit DrayTek web site)

Date: June 26, 2023

Copyrights

© All rights reserved. This publication contains information that is protected by copyright. No part may be reproduced, transmitted, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, or translated into any language without written permission from the copyright holders.

Trademarks

The following trademarks are used in this document:

- Microsoft is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corp.
- Windows, 7, 8, 10, 11 and Explorer are trademarks of Microsoft Corp.
- Apple and Mac OS are registered trademarks of Apple Inc.
- Other products may be trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective manufacturers.

Safety Instructions

- Read the installation guide thoroughly before you set up the router.
- The router is a complicated electronic unit that may be repaired only by authorized and qualified personnel. Do not try to open or repair the router yourself.
- Do not place the router in a damp or humid place, e.g. a bathroom.
- The router should be used in a sheltered area, within a temperature range of +5 to +40 Celsius.
- Do not expose the router to direct sunlight or other heat sources. The housing and electronic components may be damaged by direct sunlight or heat sources.
- Do not deploy the cable for LAN connection outdoor to prevent electronic shock hazards.
- Do not power off the router when saving configurations or firmware upgrades. It may damage the data in a flash. Please disconnect the Internet connection on the router before powering it off when a TR-069/ ACS server manages the router.
- Keep the package out of reach of children.
- When you want to dispose of the router, please follow local regulations on conservation of the environment.

Warranty

- We warrant to the original end user (purchaser) that the router will be free from any defects in workmanship or materials for a period of two (2) years from the date of purchase from the dealer. Please keep your purchase receipt in a safe place as it serves as proof of date of purchase. During the warranty period, and upon proof of purchase, should the product have indications of failure due to faulty workmanship and/or materials, we will, at our discretion, repair or replace the defective products or components, without charge for either parts or labor, to whatever extent we deem necessary to restore the product to proper operating condition. Any replacement will consist of a new or re-manufactured functionally equivalent product of equal value, and will be offered solely at our discretion. This warranty will not apply if the product is modified, misused, tampered with, damaged by an act of God, or subjected to abnormal working conditions. The warranty does not cover the bundled or licensed software of other vendors. Defects which do not significantly affect the usability of the product will not be covered by the warranty. We reserve the right to revise the manual and online documentation and to make changes from time to time in the contents hereof without obligation to notify any person of such revision or changes.

Be a Registered Owner

- Web registration is preferred. You can register your Vigor router via <https://myvigor.draytek.com>.

Firmware & Tools Updates

- Due to the continuous evolution of DrayTek technology, all routers will be regularly upgraded. Please consult the DrayTek web site for more information on newest firmware, tools and documents.

<https://www.DrayTek.com>

Table of Contents

Part I Installation	1
I-1 Introduction	2
I-1-1 Indicators and Connectors for Vigor2832 and Vigor2832n	3
I-2 Hardware Installation	5
I-2-1 Installing Vigor Router	5
I-2-2 Installing USB Printer to Vigor Router	6
I-3 Accessing Web Page	14
I-4 Changing Password.....	16
I-5 Dashboard.....	18
I-5-1 Virtual Panel	18
I-5-2 Name with a Link	19
I-5-3 Quick Access for Common Used Menu	20
I-5-4 GUI Map	21
I-5-5 Web Console	22
I-5-6 Config Backup	23
I-5-7 Manual Download.....	23
I-5-8 Logout.....	24
I-5-9 Online Status	24
I-5-9-1 Physical Connection	24
I-5-9-2 Virtual WAN	26
I-6 Quick Start Wizard	27
I-6-1 For WAN1 (ADSL)	28
I-6-2 For WAN2 (Ethernet).....	32
I-6-3 For WAN3 / WAN4 (USB).....	42
I-7 Service Activation Wizard	44
I-8 Registering Vigor Router.....	47
Part II Connectivity	51
II-1 WAN	52
Web User Interface	54
II-1-1 General Setup	54
II-1-1-1 WAN1 (ADSL)	55
II-1-1-2 WAN2 (Ethernet)	58
II-1-1-3 WAN3 / WAN4 (USB)	59
II-1-2 Internet Access.....	61
II-1-2-1 Details Page for PPPoE/PPPoA in WAN1	63
II-1-2-2 Details Page for MPoA in WAN1	66
II-1-2-3 Details Page for PPPoE in Ethernet WAN	69
II-1-2-4 Details Page for Static or Dynamic IP in Ethernet WAN	71
II-1-2-5 Details Page for PPTP/L2TP in Ethernet WAN	74
II-1-2-6 Details Page for 3G/4G USB Modem (PPP mode) in USB WAN	75
II-1-2-7 Details Page for 3G/4G USB Modem (DHCP mode) in USB WAN	78
II-1-2-8 Details Page for IPv6 - Offline in WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4	79

II-1-2-9 Details Page for IPv6 - PPP in WAN1/WAN2	79
II-1-2-10 Details Page for IPv6 - TSPC in WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4	81
II-1-2-11 Details Page for IPv6 - AICCU in WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4	83
II-1-2-12 Details Page for IPv6 - DHCPv6 Client in WAN1/WAN2	85
II-1-2-13 Details Page for IPv6 - Static IPv6 in in WAN1/WAN2	87
II-1-2-14 Details Page for IPv6 - 6in4 Static Tunnel in WAN1 / WAN2	88
II-1-2-15 Details Page for IPv6 - 6rd in WAN1 / WAN2	91
II-1-3 Multi-PVC/VLAN	93
II-1-4 WAN Budget	99
II-1-4-1 General Setup	99
II-1-4-2 Status	102
Application Notes	103
A-1 How to configure settings for IPv6 Service in Vigor2832	103
II-2 LAN	116
Web User Interface	118
II-2-1 General Setup	118
II-2-1-1 Details Page for LAN1 - Ethernet TCP/IP and DHCP Setup	120
II-2-1-2 Details Page for LAN1~ LAN4 - IPv6 Setup	122
II-2-1-3 Details Page for LAN2 ~ LAN4	125
II-2-1-4 Details Page for IP Routed Subnet	127
II-2-2 VLAN	129
II-2-3 Bind IP to MAC	132
II-2-4 LAN Port Mirror	135
II-2-5 Wired 802.1x	135
II-3 Hardware Acceleration	137
II-4 NAT	139
Web User Interface	140
II-4-1 Port Redirection	140
II-4-2 DMZ Host	144
II-4-3 Open Ports	147
II-4-4 Port Triggering	148
II-4-5 ALG	151
II-5 Applications	152
Web User Interface	154
II-5-1 Dynamic DNS	154
II-5-2 LAN DNS / DNS Forwarding	159
II-5-3 DNS Security	162
II-5-3-1 General Setup	162
II-5-3-2 Domain Diagnose	163
II-5-4 Schedule	164
II-5-5 RADIUS/TACACS+	166
II-5-5-1 External RADIUS	166
II-5-5-2 Internal RADIUS	168
II-5-5-3 External TACACS+	170
II-5-6 Active Directory/ LDAP	171
II-5-7 UPnP	174

II-5-8 IGMP	175
II-5-8-1 General Setting	175
II-5-8-2 Working Group	176
II-5-9 Wake on LAN	177
II-5-10 SMS / Mail Alert Service.....	178
II-5-11 Bonjour	180
II-5-12 Local 802.1X General Setup	183
Application Notes	186
A-1 How to Implement the LDAP/AD Authentication for User Management?	186
A-2 How to use DrayDDNS?	189
II-6 Routing.....	194
Web User Interface	195
II-6-1 Static Route	195
II-6-2 Load-Balance /Route Policy	196
II-6-2-1 General Setup	196
II-6-2-2 Diagnose	202
Application Notes	204
A-1 How to set up Address Mapping with Route Policy?	204
Part III Wireless LAN.....	207
III-1 Wireless LAN	208
Web User Interface	211
III-1-1 Wireless Wizard.....	211
III-1-2 General Setup	214
III-1-3 Security.....	216
III-1-4 Access Control	219
III-1-5 WPS.....	220
III-1-6 WDS	223
III-1-7 Advanced Setting	226
III-1-8 Bandwidth Management.....	228
III-1-9 AP Discovery	229
III-1-10 Airtime Fairness.....	230
III-1-11 Station List.....	232
Part IV VPN	233
IV-1 VPN and Remote Access	234
Web User Interface	235
IV-1-1 VPN Client Wizard	235
IV-1-2 VPN Server Wizard.....	242
IV-1-3 Remote Access Control	246
IV-1-4 PPP General Setup.....	247
IV-1-5 SSL General Setup	249
IV-1-6 IPsec General Setup	250

IV-1-7 IPsec Peer Identity	252
IV-1-8 OpenVPN	254
<i>IV-1-8-1 General Setup</i>	254
<i>IV-1-8-2 Client Config</i>	255
IV-1-9 Remote Dial-in User	257
IV-1-10 LAN to LAN	261
IV-1-11 VPN Trunk Management	272
IV-1-12 Connection Management	281
Application Notes	282
<i>A-1 How to Build a LAN-to-LAN VPN Between Remote Office and Headquarter via IPsec Tunnel (Main Mode)</i>	282
IV-2 Certificate Management	287
Web User Interface	288
IV-2-1 Local Certificate	288
IV-2-2 Trusted CA Certificate	292
IV-2-3 Certificate Backup	294
IV-2-4 Self-Signed Certificate	295
Part V Security	297
V-1 Firewall	298
Web User Interface	300
V-1-1 General Setup	300
V-1-2 Filter Setup	305
V-1-3 Defense Setup	314
<i>V-1-3-1 DoS Defense</i>	314
<i>V-1-3-2 Spoofing Defense</i>	317
Application Notes	318
<i>A-1 How to Configure Certain Computers Accessing to Internet</i>	318
V-2 CSM (Central Security Management)	321
Web User Interface	322
V-2-1 APP Enforcement Profile	322
V-2-2 APPE Signature Upgrade	324
V-2-3 URL Content Filter Profile	325
V-2-4 Web Content Filter Profile	329
V-2-5 DNS Filter Profile	333
Application Notes	335
<i>A-1 How to Create an Account for MyVigor</i>	335
<i>A-2 How to Block Facebook Service Accessed by the Users via Web Content Filter / URL Content Filter</i>	340
Part VI Management	347
VI-1 System Maintenance	348
Web User Interface	349
VI-1-1 System Status	349

VI-1-2 TR-069	351
VI-1-3 Administrator Password	353
VI-1-4 User Password	355
VI-1-5 Login Page Greeting	358
VI-1-6 Configuration Backup	360
VI-1-7 SysLog/Mail Alert	363
VI-1-8 Time and Date	366
VI-1-9 SNMP	367
VI-1-10 Management	369
VI-1-11 Panel Control	374
VI-1-12 Self-Signed Certificate	376
VI-1-13 Reboot System	378
VI-1-14 Firmware Upgrade	379
VI-1-15 Internal Service User List	380
VI-1-16 Dashboard Control	381
VI-2 Bandwidth Management	382
Web User Interface	384
VI-2-1 Sessions Limit	384
VI-2-2 Bandwidth Limit	386
VI-2-3 Quality of Service	388
VI-2-4 APP QoS	393
VI-3 User Management	395
Web User Interface	396
VI-3-1 General Setup	396
VI-3-2 User Profile	398
VI-3-3 User Group	403
VI-3-4 User Online Status	404
Application Notes	406
<i>A-1 How to authenticate clients via User Management</i>	406
<i>A-2 How to use Landing Page Feature</i>	415
VI-4 Hotspot Web Portal	420
Web User Interface	420
VI-4-1 Profile Setup	420
<i>VI-4-1-1 Login Method</i>	421
<i>VI-4-1-2 Steps for Configuring a Web Portal Profile</i>	421
Application Notes	436
<i>A-1 How to allow users login to Vigor's Hotspot with their social media accounts (e.g., Facebook & Google)</i>	436
<i>A-2 How to allow hotspot clients to get login PIN code via SMS?</i>	444
VI-5 External Devices	452
Part VII Others	453
VII-1 Objects Settings	454

Web User Interface	455
VII-1-1 IP Object	455
VII-1-2 IP Group	458
VII-1-3 IPv6 Object.....	459
VII-1-4 IPv6 Group	461
VII-1-5 Service Type Object.....	462
VII-1-6 Service Type Group	464
VII-1-7 Keyword Object.....	466
VII-1-8 Keyword Group	468
VII-1-9 File Extension Object	469
VII-1-10 SMS/Mail Service Object	471
VII-1-11 Notification Object.....	476
VII-1-12 String Object	477
Application Notes	478
<i>A-1 How to Send a Notification to Specified Phone Number via SMS Service in WAN Disconnection</i>	<i>478</i>
VII-2 USB Application	482
Web User Interface	483
VII-2-1 USB General Settings.....	483
VII-2-2 USB User Management	484
VII-2-3 File Explorer	486
VII-2-4 USB Device Status.....	487
VII-2-5 Temperature Sensor	488
VII-2-6 Modem Support List.....	490
VII-2-7 SMB Client Support List.....	491
Application Notes	492
<i>A-1 How can I get the files from USB storage device connecting to Vigor router? ...</i>	<i>492</i>
Part VIII Troubleshooting	495
VIII-1 Diagnostics	496
Web User Interface	497
VIII-1-1 Dial-out Triggering.....	497
VIII-1-2 Routing Table.....	498
VIII-1-3 ARP Cache Table	499
VIII-1-4 IPv6 Neighbour Table	500
VIII-1-5 DHCP Table	501
VIII-1-6 NAT Sessions Table	503
VIII-1-7 DNS Cache Table	504
VIII-1-8 Ping Diagnosis	505
VIII-1-9 Data Flow Monitor	507
VIII-1-10 Traffic Graph	509
VIII-1-11 Trace Route	510

VIII-1-12 Syslog Explorer	511
VIII-1-13 DSL Status	512
VIII-1-14 IPv6 TSPC Status	513
VIII-1-15 Authentication Information	514
VIII-1-16 DoS Flood Table	515
VIII-1-17 Route Policy Diagnosis	516
VIII-2 Checking If the Hardware Status Is OK or Not	518
VIII-3 Checking If the Network Connection Settings on Your Computer Is OK or Not	519
VIII-4 Pinging the Router from Your Computer	522
VIII-5 Checking If the ISP Settings are OK or Not	524
VIII-6 Problems for 3G/4G Network Connection	525
VIII-7 Backing to Factory Default Setting If Necessary	526
VIII-8 Contacting DrayTek	527
Appendix I: VLAN Applications on Vigor Router	528
Part IX Telnet Commands.....	537
Accessing Telnet of Vigor2832	538

Part I Installation



Installation

This part will introduce Vigor router and guide to install the device in hardware and software.

I-1 Introduction

This is a generic International version of the user guide. Specification, compatibility and features vary by region. For specific user guides suitable for your region or product, please contact local distributor.

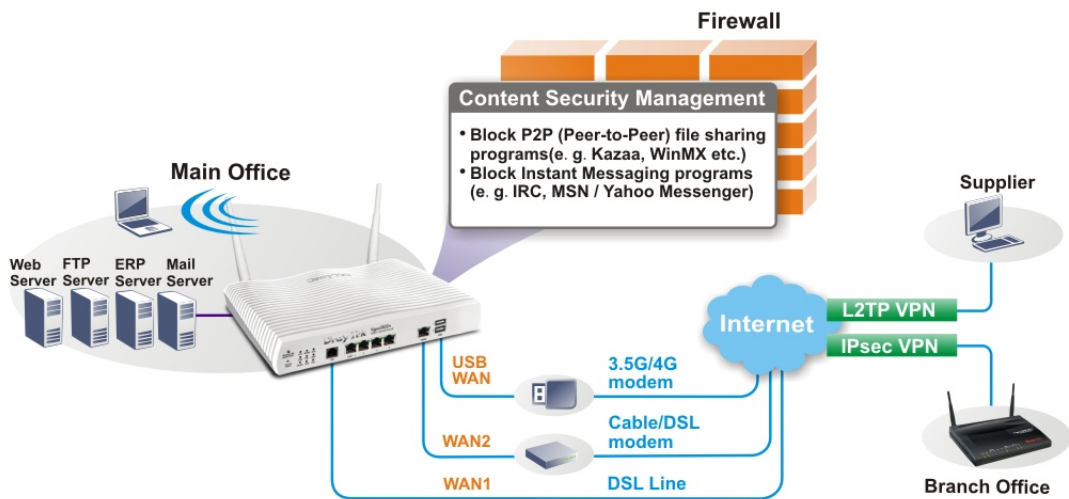
Vigor2832 series is an ADSL2/2+ router. It integrates IP layer QoS, NAT session/bandwidth management to help users control works well with large bandwidth.

By adopting hardware-based VPN platform and hardware encryption of AES/DES/3DES, the router increases the performance of VPN greatly and offers several protocols (such as IPSec/PPTP/L2TP) with VPN tunnels.

The object-based design used in SPI (Stateful Packet Inspection) firewall allows users to set firewall policy easily. CSM (Content Security Management) provides users control and management in IM (Instant Messenger) and P2P (Peer to Peer) more efficiency than before. By the way, DoS/DDoS prevention and URL/Web content filter strengthen the security outside and control inside.

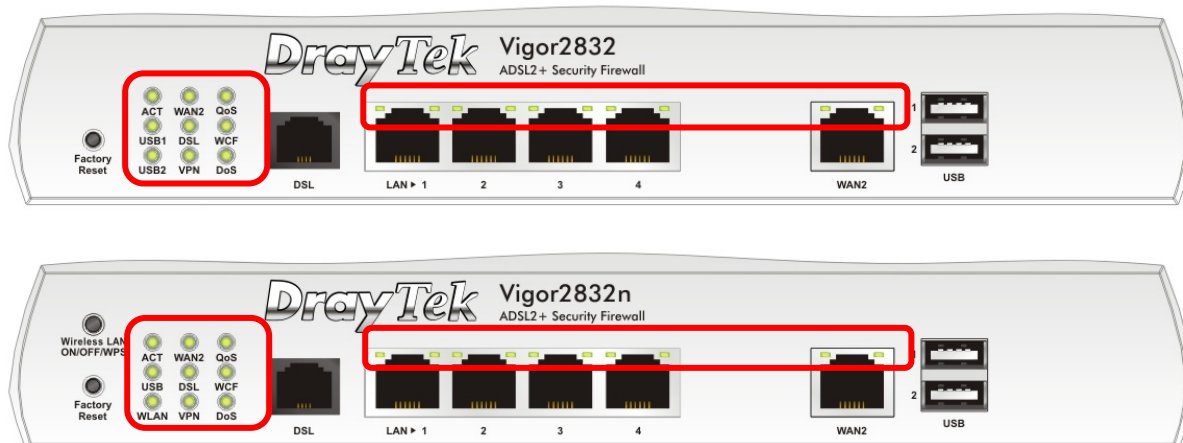
Object-based firewall is flexible and allows your network be safe. In addition, Vigor2832 Series supports USB interface for connecting USB printer to share printer, USB storage device for sharing files, or for 3G/4G WAN.

Security & Firewall Multi-WAN Load Balancing/Failover



I-1-1 Indicators and Connectors for Vigor2832 and Vigor2832n

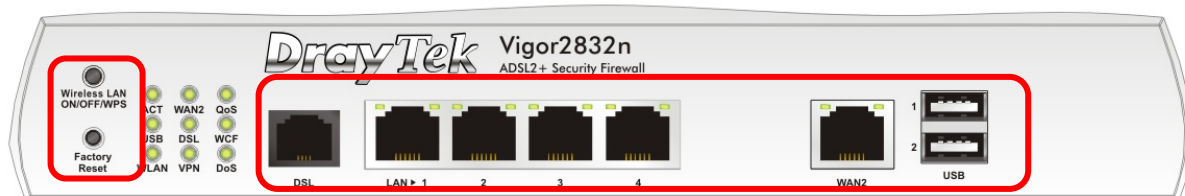
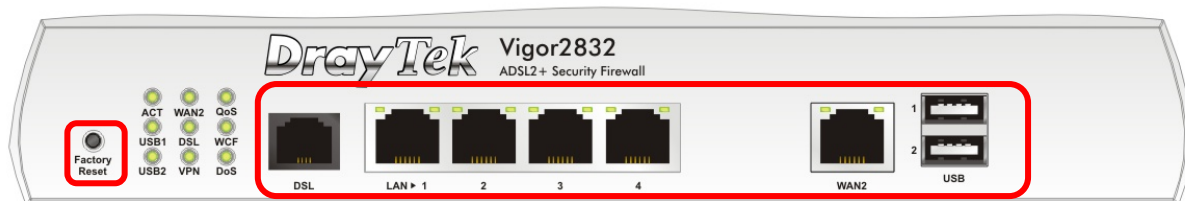
Before you use the Vigor router, please get acquainted with the LED indicators and connectors first.



LED	Status	Explanation
ACT (Activity)	Blinking	The router is powered on and running normally.
	Off	The router is powered off.
USB1-USB2 / USB	On	A USB device is connected and active.
	Blinking	The data is transmitting.
WLAN	On	Wireless access point is ready.
	Blinking	Ethernet packets are transmitting over wireless LAN.
	Off	The WLAN function is inactive.
WAN2	On	The WAN connection is ready.
	Blinking	It will blink while transmitting data.
DSL	On	The router is ready to access Internet through DSL link.
	Blinking	Slowly: The DSL connection is ready. Quickly: The connection is training.
VPN	On	The VPN tunnel is active.
	Off	VPN services are disabled
	Blinking	Traffic is passing through VPN tunnel.
QoS	On	The QoS function is active.
WCF	On	The Web Content Filter is active. (It is enabled from Firewall >> General Setup).
DoS	On	The DoS/DDoS function is active.
	Blinking	It will blink while detecting an attack.

LED on Connector

LAN	Left LED	On	The port is connected.
		Off	The port is disconnected.
		Blinking	The data is transmitting.
Right LED	On	The port is connected with 1000Mbps.	
	Off	The port is connected with 10/100Mbps	
WAN2	Left LED	On	The port is connected.
		Off	The port is disconnected.
		Blinking	The data is transmitting.
Right LED	On	The port is connected with 1000Mbps.	
	Off	The port is connected with 10/100Mbps	

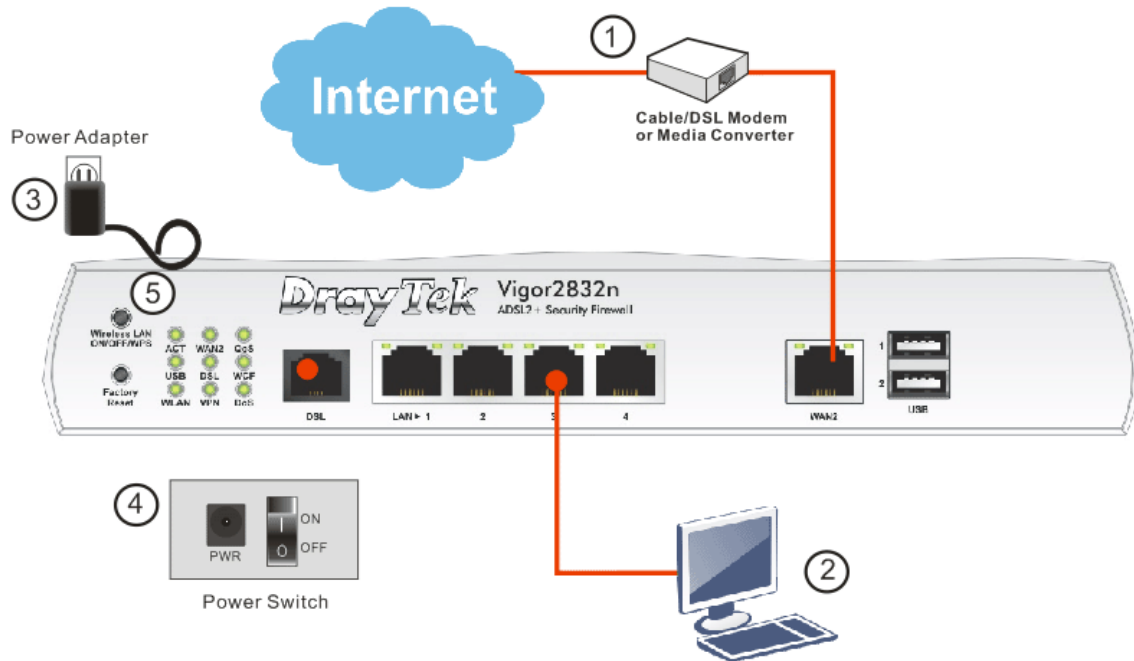


Interface	Description
Factory Reset	Restore the default settings. Usage: Turn on the router (ACT LED is blinking). Press the hole and keep for more than 5 seconds. When you see the ACT LED begins to blink rapidly than usual, release the button. Then the router will restart with the factory default configuration.
Wireless LAN ON/OFF/WPS	WLAN On - Press the button and release it within 2 seconds. When the wireless function is ready, the green LED will be on. WLAN Off - Press the button and release it within 2 seconds to turn off the WLAN function. When the wireless function is not ready, the LED will be off. WPS - When WPS function is enabled by web user interface, press this button for more than 2 seconds to wait for client's device making network connection through WPS.
DSL	Connector for accessing the Internet through ADSL2/2+.
LAN1~LAN4	Connectors for local networked devices.
WAN2	Connector for remote networked devices.
USB1~USB2	Connector for a USB device (for 3G/4G USB Modem or printer).
PWR	Connector for a power cord.
ON/OFF	Power Switch.

I-2 Hardware Installation

I-2-1 Installing Vigor Router

Before starting to configure the router, you have to connect your devices correctly.

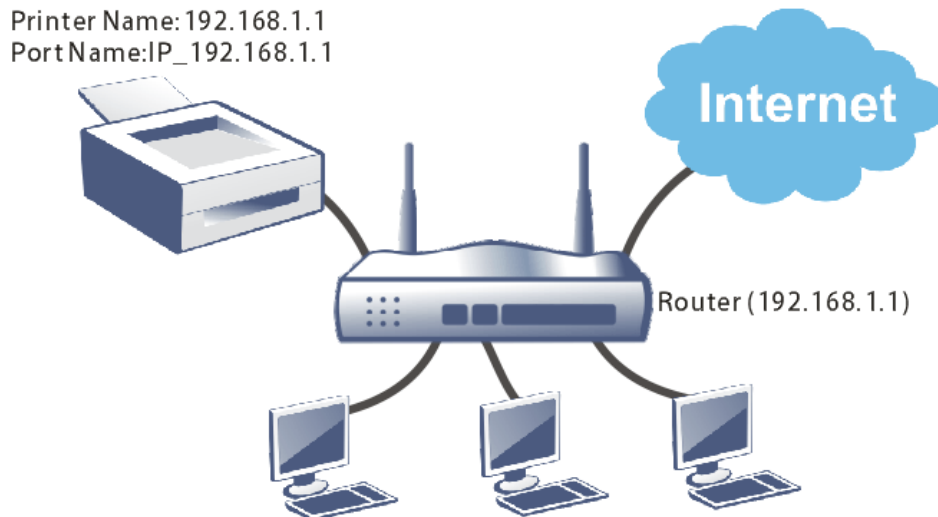


1. Connect the cable Modem/DSL Modem/Media Converter to any WAN port of router with Ethernet cable (RJ-45).
2. Connect one end of an Ethernet cable (RJ-45) to the LAN port of the router and the other end of the cable (RJ-45) into the Ethernet port on your computer. Or, use a switch to connect Vigor router and computer(s).
3. Connect one end of the power adapter to the router's power port on the rear panel, and the other side into a wall outlet.
4. Power on the device by pressing down the power switch on the rear panel.
5. The system starts to initiate. After completing the system test, the ACT LED will light up and start blinking.

(For the detailed information of LED status, please refer to section I-1-1 Indicators and Connectors.)

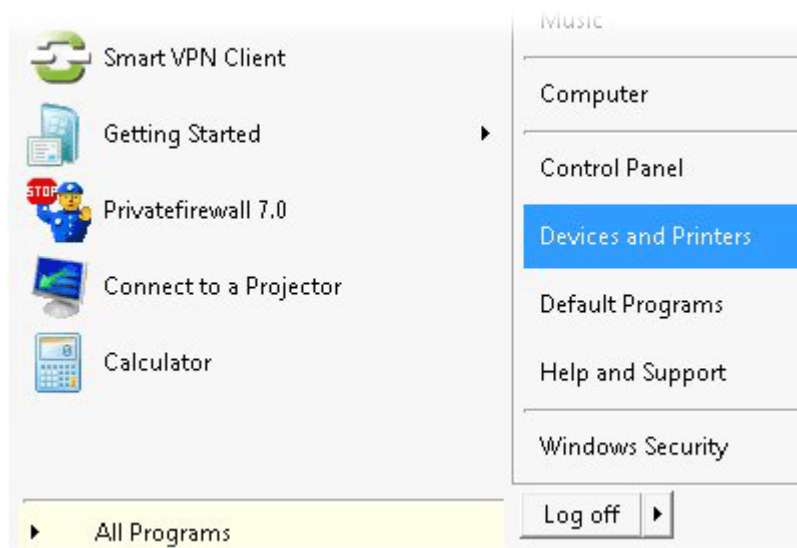
I-2-2 Installing USB Printer to Vigor Router

You can install a printer onto the router for sharing printing. All the PCs connected this router can print documents via the router. The example provided here is made based on Windows 7. For other Windows system, please visit www.DrayTek.com.

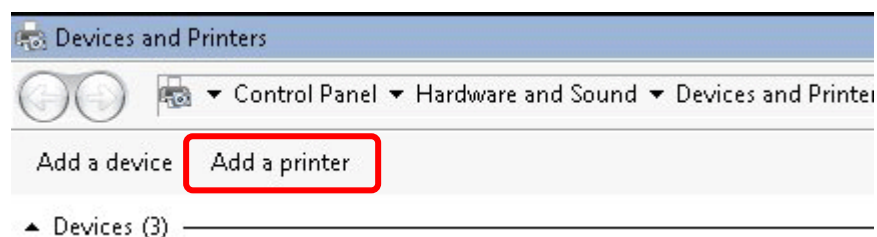


Before using it, please follow the steps below to configure settings for connected computers (or wireless clients).

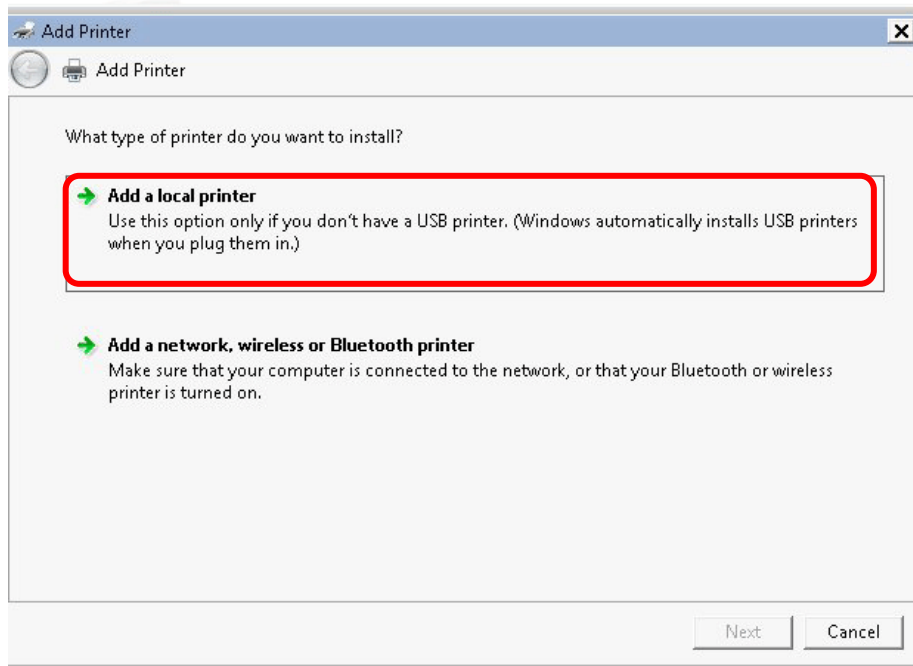
1. Connect the printer with the router through USB/parallel port.
2. Open All Programs>>Getting Started>>Devices and Printers.



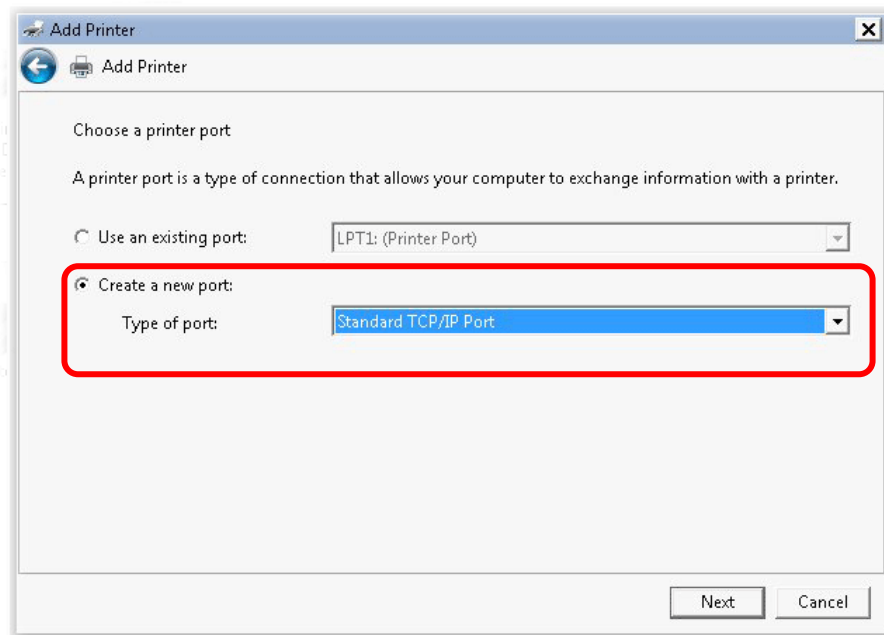
3. Click Add a printer.



4. A dialog will appear. Click **Add a local printer** and click **Next**.



5. In this dialog, choose **Create a new port**. In the field of **Type of port**, use the drop down list to select **Standard TCP/IP Port**. Then, click **Next**.



6. In the following dialog, type 192.168.1.1 (router's LAN IP) in the field of Hostname or IP Address and type 192.168.1.1 as the Port name. Then, click Next.

The screenshot shows the 'Add Printer' dialog box with the following fields and options:

- Device type: TCP/IP Device
- Hostname or IP address: 192.168.1.1
- Port name: 192.168.1.1
- Query the printer and automatically select the driver to use

Buttons: Next, Cancel

7. Click Standard and choose Generic Network Card.

The screenshot shows the 'Add Printer' dialog box with the following content:

Additional port information required

The device is not found on the network. Be sure that:

1. The device is turned on.
2. The network is connected.
3. The device is properly configured.
4. The address on the previous page is correct.

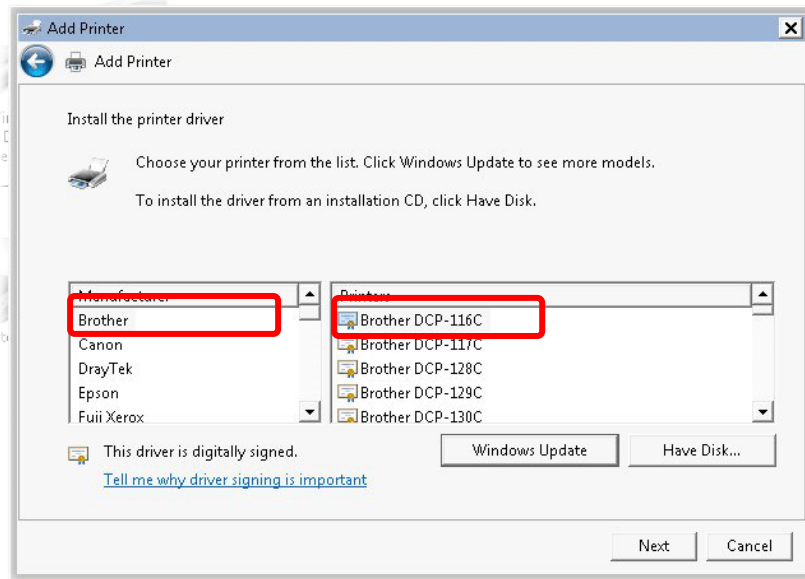
If you think the address is not correct, click Back to return to the previous page. Then correct the address and perform another search on the network. If you are sure the address is correct, select the device type below.

Device Type

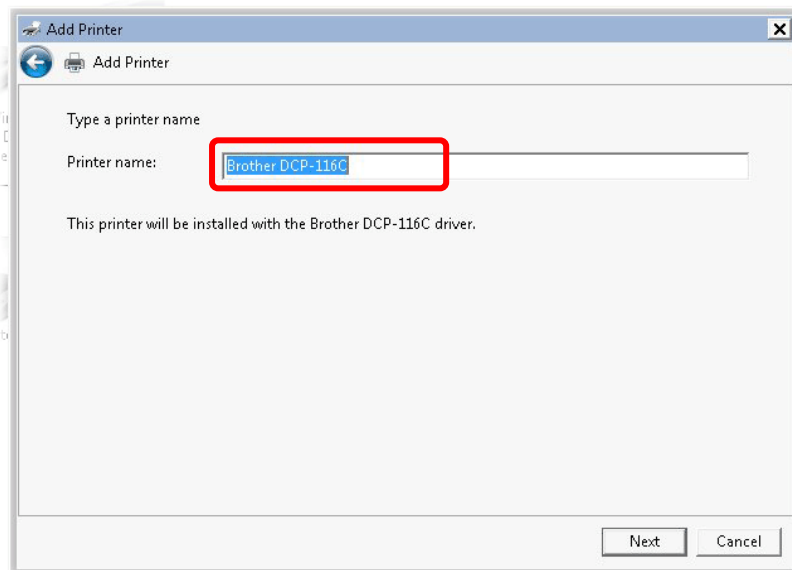
- Standard: Generic Network Card
- Custom: Settings...

Buttons: Next, Cancel

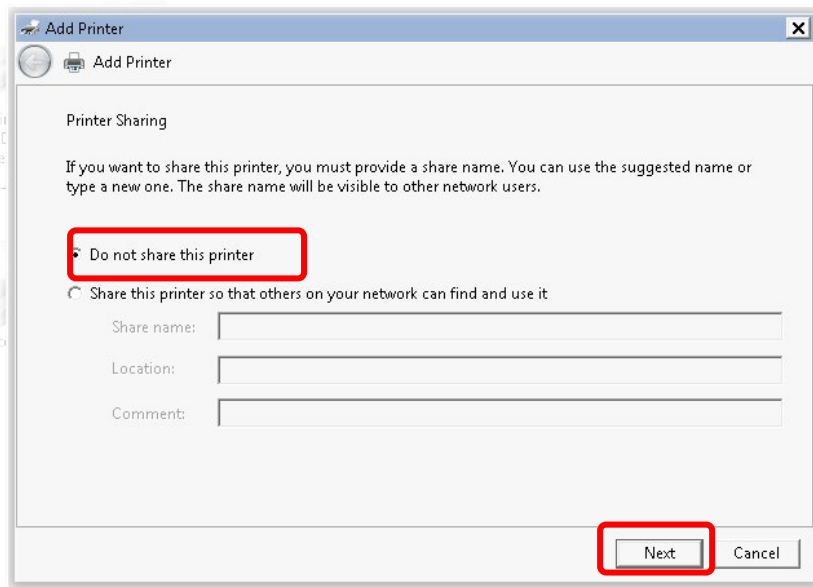
- Now, your system will ask you to choose right name of the printer that you installed onto the router. Such step can make correct driver loaded onto your PC. When you finish the selection, click **Next**.



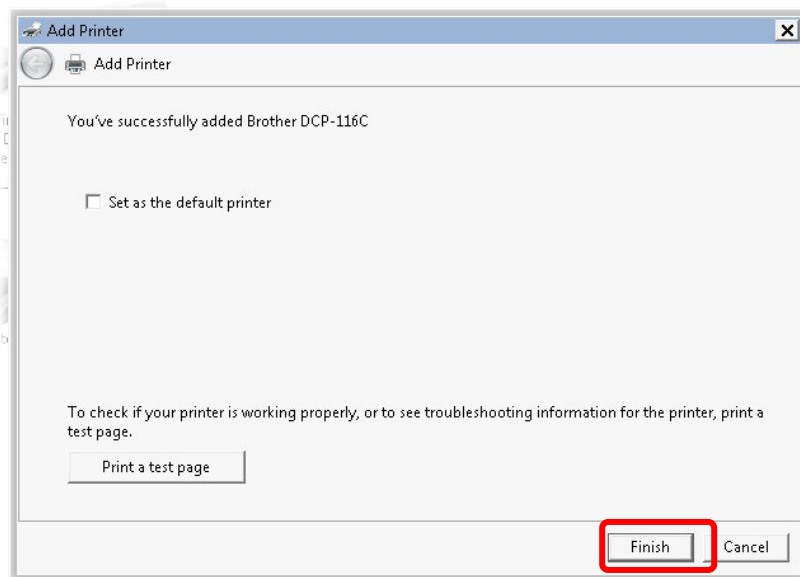
- Type a name for the chosen printer. Click **Next**.



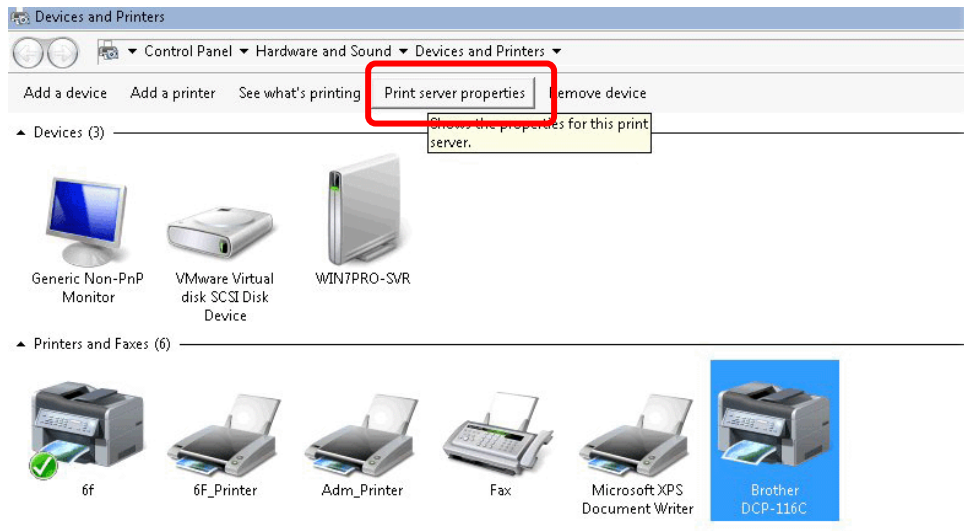
10. Choose **Do not share this printer** and click **Next**.



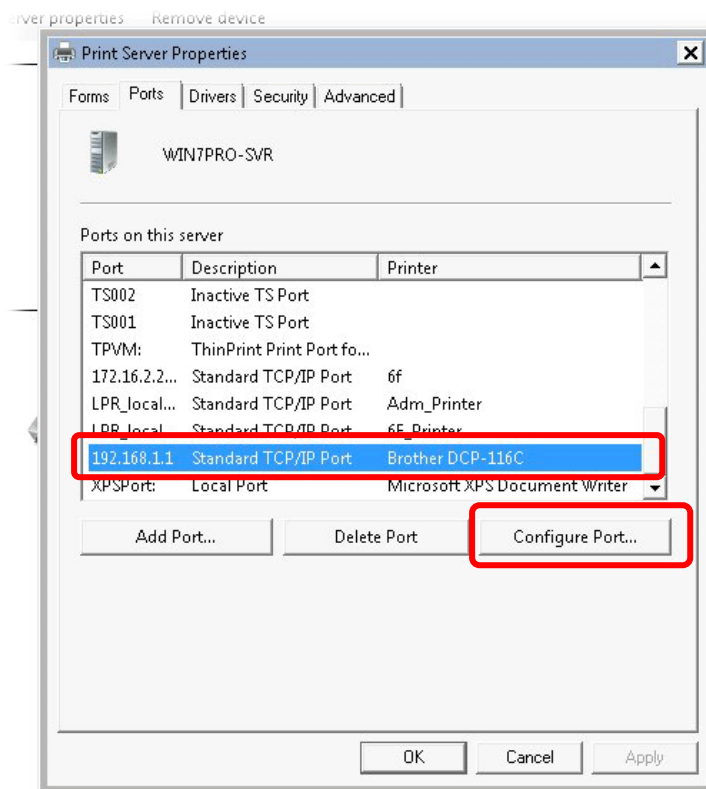
11. Then, in the following dialog, click **Finish**.



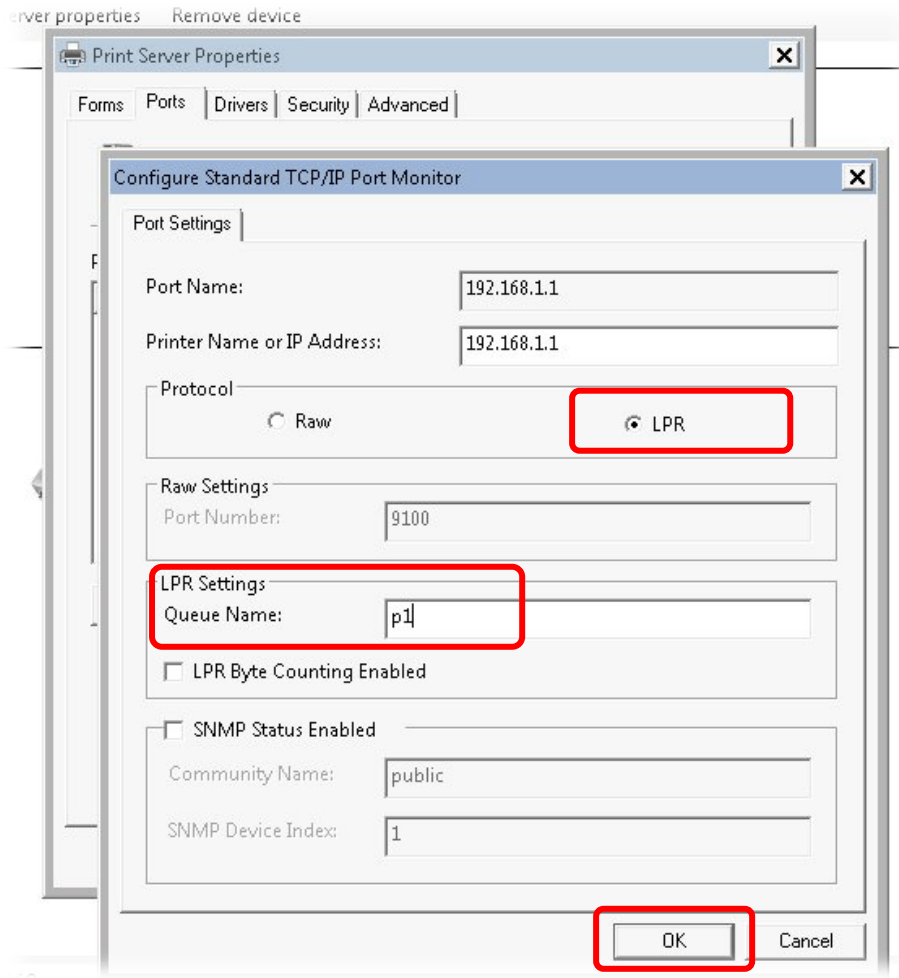
12. The new printer has been added and displayed under **Printers and Faxes**. Click the new printer icon and click **Printer server properties**.



13. Edit the property of the new printer you have added by clicking **Configure Port**.



14. Select "LPR" on Protocol, type p1 (number 1) as Queue Name. Then click OK. Next please refer to the red rectangle for choosing the correct protocol and LPR name.



The printer can be used for printing now. Most of the printers with different manufacturers are compatible with vigor router.



Info

Note 1: Some printers with the fax/scanning or other additional functions are not supported. If you do not know whether your printer is supported or not, please visit www.draytek.com to find out the printer list. Open Support >FAQ/Application Notes; find out the link of USB>>Printer Server and click it.




Then, click the What types of printers are compatible with Vigor router? link.



Note 2: Vigor router supports printing request from computers via LAN ports but not WAN port.

I-3 Accessing Web Page

1. Make sure your PC connects to the router correctly.
You may either simply set up your computer to get IP dynamically from the router or set up the IP address of the computer to be the same subnet as the **default IP address of Vigor router 192.168.1.1**. For the detailed information, please refer to the later section - Trouble Shooting of the guide.
2. Open a web browser on your PC and type **http://192.168.1.1**. The following window will be open to ask for username and password.



DrayTek **Vigor2832 Series**

Login

Username

Password

Login

Copyright © 2000-2019 DrayTek Corp. All Rights Reserved.

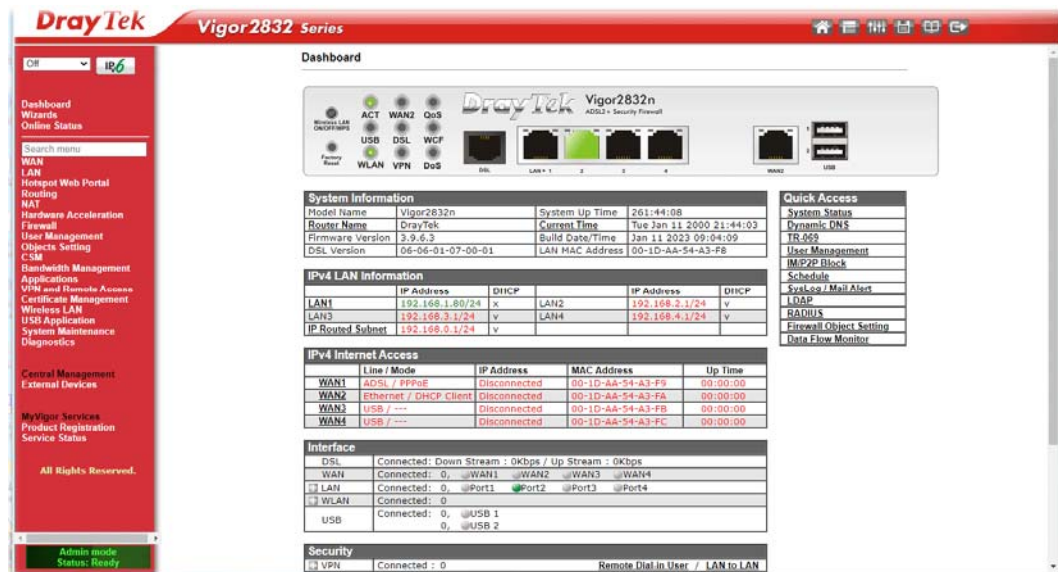
3. Please type "admin/admin" as the Username/Password and click Login.



Info

If you fail to access to the web configuration, please go to "Trouble Shooting" for detecting and solving your problem.

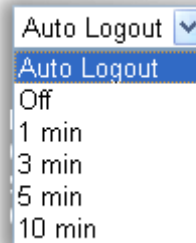
- Now, the Main Screen will appear.



Info

The home page will be different slightly in accordance with the type of the router you have.

- The web page can be logged out according to the chosen condition. The default setting is **Auto Logout**, which means the web configuration system will logout after 5 minutes without any operation. Change the setting for your necessity.



I-4 Changing Password

Please change the password for the original security of the router.

1. Open a web browser on your PC and type <http://192.168.1.1>. A pop-up window will open to ask for username and password.
2. Please type "admin/admin" as Username/Password for accessing into the web user interface with admin mode.
3. Go to System Maintenance page and choose **Administrator Password**.

System Maintenance >> Administrator Password Setup

Administrator Password

Old Password	<input type="text" value="Max: 83 characters"/>
New Password	<input type="text" value="Max: 83 characters"/>
Confirm Password	<input type="text" value="Max: 83 characters"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable 'admin' account login to Web UI from the Internet	

Note:

Password can contain only a-z A-Z 0-9 , ; : . " < > * + = - \ | ? @ # ^ ! ()

Administrator Local User

<input type="checkbox"/> Enable Local User					
Local User List					
<table border="1"><thead><tr><th>Index</th><th>User Name</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td> </td><td> </td></tr></tbody></table>		Index	User Name		
Index	User Name				
Specific User					
User Name:	<input type="text" value="Max: 15 characters"/>				
Password:	<input type="text" value="Max: 15 characters"/>				
Confirm Password:	<input type="text"/>				
<input type="button" value="Add"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/>					

4. Enter the login password (the default is "admin") on the field of **Old Password**. Enter **New Password** and **Confirm Password**. Then click OK to continue.



Info

The maximum length of the password you can set is 83 characters.

5. Now, the password has been changed. Next time, use the new password to access the Web user interface for this router.

Login

Username

Password

Login

Copyright © 2000-2023 DrayTek Corp. All Rights Reserved.



Info

Even the password is changed, the Username for logging onto the web user interface is still "admin".

I-5 Dashboard

Dashboard shows the connection status including System Information, IPv4 Internet Access, IPv6 Internet Access, Interface (physical connection), Security and Quick Access.

Click Dashboard from the main menu on the left side of the main page.



A web page with default selections will be displayed on the screen. Refer to the following figure:

Dashboard

Wireless LAN
ON/OFF/WPS

ACT

WAN2

QoS

Vigor2832n
ADSL2+ Security Firewall

USB

DSL

WCF

Factory Reset
 WLAN
 VPN
 DoS

DSL
 LAN > 1
 2
 3
 4

WAN2
 1
 2
 USB

System Information			
Model Name	Vigor2832n	System Up Time	261:56:01
Router Name	DrayTek	Current Time	Tue Jan 11 2000 21:55:56
Firmware Version	3.9.6.3	Build Date/Time	Jan 11 2023 09:04:09
DSL Version	06-06-01-07-00-01	LAN MAC Address	00-1D-AA-54-A3-F8

IPv4 LAN Information					
	IP Address	DHCP		IP Address	DHCP
LAN1	192.168.1.80/24	x	LAN2	192.168.2.1/24	v
LAN3	192.168.3.1/24	v	LAN4	192.168.4.1/24	v
IP Routed Subnet	192.168.0.1/24	v			

IPv4 Internet Access				
	Line / Mode	IP Address	MAC Address	Up Time
WAN1	ADSL / PPPoE	Disconnected	00-1D-AA-54-A3-F9	00:00:00
WAN2	Ethernet / DHCP Client	Disconnected	00-1D-AA-54-A3-FA	00:00:00
WAN3	USB / ---	Disconnected	00-1D-AA-54-A3-FB	00:00:00
WAN4	USB / ---	Disconnected	00-1D-AA-54-A3-FC	00:00:00

Interface	
DSL	Connected: Down Stream : 0Kbps / Up Stream : 0Kbps
WAN	Connected: 0, <input type="radio"/> WAN1 <input type="radio"/> WAN2 <input type="radio"/> WAN3 <input type="radio"/> WAN4
LAN	Connected: 0, <input type="radio"/> Port1 <input checked="" type="radio"/> Port2 <input type="radio"/> Port3 <input type="radio"/> Port4
WLAN	Connected: 0
USB	Connected: 0, <input type="radio"/> USB 1 0, <input type="radio"/> USB 2

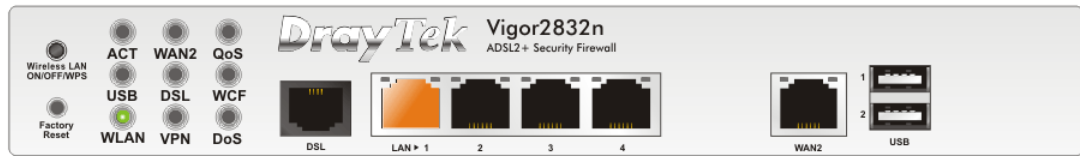
Security	
VPN	Connected : 0 Remote Dial-in User / LAN to LAN
MyVigor	Activate : 0
DoS	Attack Detected :

Quick Access	
System Status	
Dynamic DNS	
TR-069	
User Management	
IM/P2P Block	
Schedule	
SysLog / Mail Alert	
LDAP	
RADIUS	
Firewall Object Setting	
Data Flow Monitor	

I-5-1 Virtual Panel

On the top of the Dashboard, a virtual panel (simulating the physical panel of the router) displays the physical interface connection. It will be refreshed every five seconds. When you move and click the mouse cursor on LEDs (except ACT), USB ports, LAN, or WAN, related web setting page will be open for you to configure if required.

Dashboard



For detailed information about the LED display, refer to I-1-1 LED Indicators and Connectors.

I-5-2 Name with a Link

A name with a link (e.g., [Router Name](#), [Current Time](#), [WAN1~4](#) and etc.) below means you can click it to open the configuration page for modification.

System Information			
Model Name	Vigor2832n	System Up Time	261:56:01
Router Name	DrayTek	Current Time	Tue Jan 11 2000 21:55:56
Firmware Version	3.9.6.3	Build Date/Time	Jan 11 2023 09:04:09
DSL Version	06-06-01-07-00-01	LAN MAC Address	00-1D-AA-54-A3-F8

IPv4 LAN Information					
	IP Address	DHCP		IP Address	DHCP
LAN1	192.168.1.80/24	x	LAN2	192.168.2.1/24	v
LAN3	192.168.3.1/24	v	LAN4	192.168.4.1/24	v
IP Routed Subnet	192.168.0.1/24	v			

IPv4 Internet Access				
	Line / Mode	IP Address	MAC Address	Up Time
WAN1	ADSL / PPPoE	Disconnected	00-1D-AA-54-A3-F9	00:00:00
WAN2	Ethernet / DHCP Client	Disconnected	00-1D-AA-54-A3-FA	00:00:00
WAN3	USB / ---	Disconnected	00-1D-AA-54-A3-FB	00:00:00
WAN4	USB / ---	Disconnected	00-1D-AA-54-A3-FC	00:00:00

I-5-3 Quick Access for Common Used Menu

All the menu items can be accessed and arranged orderly on the left side of the main page for your request. However, some **important** and **common** used menu items which can be accessed in a quick way just for convenience.

Look at the right side of the Dashboard. You will find a group of common used functions grouped under **Quick Access**.

Quick Access
System Status
Dynamic DNS
TR-069
User Management
IM/P2P Block
Schedule
SysLog / Mail Alert
LDAP
RADIUS
Firewall Object Setting
Data Flow Monitor

The function links of System Status, Dynamic DDNS, TR-069, User Management, IM/P2P Block, Schedule, Syslog/Mail Alert, LDAP, RADIUS, Firewall Object Setting and Data Flow Monitor are displayed here. Move your mouse cursor on any one of the links and click on it. The corresponding setting page will be open immediately.

In addition, quick access for VPN security settings such as **Remote Dial-in User** and **LAN to LAN** are located on the bottom of this page. Scroll down the page to find them and use them if required.

Interface	
DSL	Connected: Down Stream : 0Kbps / Up Stream : 0Kbps
WAN	Connected: 0, <input type="radio"/> WAN1 <input type="radio"/> WAN2 <input type="radio"/> WAN3 <input type="radio"/> WAN4
<input type="checkbox"/> LAN	Connected: 0, <input type="radio"/> Port1 <input checked="" type="radio"/> Port2 <input type="radio"/> Port3 <input type="radio"/> Port4
<input type="checkbox"/> WLAN	Connected: 0
USB	Connected: 0, <input type="radio"/> USB 1 0, <input type="radio"/> USB 2

Security	
<input type="checkbox"/> VPN	Connected : 0 Remote Dial-in User / LAN to LAN
<input type="checkbox"/> MyVigor	Activate : 0
<input type="checkbox"/> DoS	Attack Detected :

System Resource	
Current Status	CPU Usage: <div style="width: 1%;"></div> 1%
	Memory Usage: <div style="width: 73%;"></div> 73%

Note that there is a plus () icon located on the left side of VPN/LAN. Click it to review the VPN connection(s) used presently.

Security			
VPN	Connected : 1	Remote Dial-in User / LAN to LAN	
	Current Page: 1	Page No.	1 Go To
Name / User	Type / Security	Host IP	Up Time
V2920	IPsec/3DES	172.16.2.145	0:0:20

User Mode is OFF now.

LAN			
LAN	Connected : 3,	LAN1	LAN2
Host ID	IP Address	MAC	
ALPHA-NB	10.28.60.13	1C-4B-D6-D2-D7-DB	
	10.28.60.14	00-15-AF-09-7E-FA	
	10.28.60.11	00-50-7F-C9-76-45	

Host connected physically to the router via LAN port(s) will be displayed with green circles in the field of Connected.

All of the hosts (including wireless clients) displayed with Host ID, IP Address and MAC address indicates that the traffic would be transmitted through LAN port(s) and then the WAN port. The purpose is to perform the traffic monitor of the host(s).

I-5-4 GUI Map



All the functions the router supports are listed with table clearly in this page. Users can click the function link to access into the setting page of the function for detailed configuration. Click the icon on the top of the main screen to display all the functions.

GUI Map

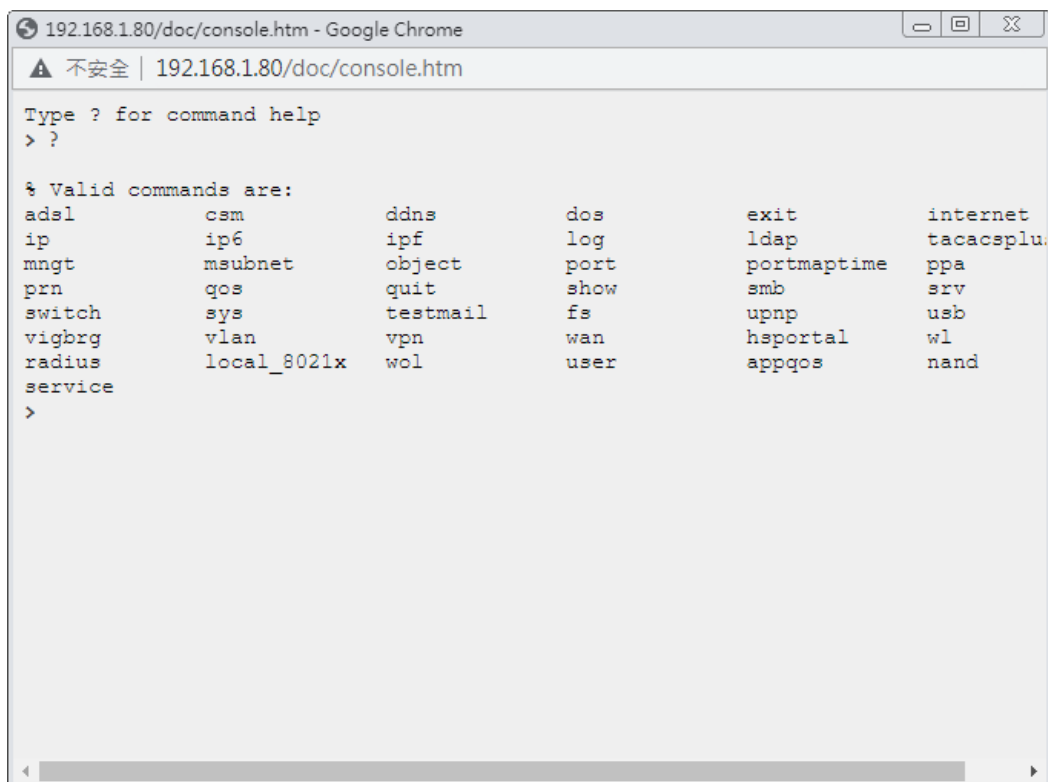
Dashboard		VPN and Remote Access	Remote Access Control
Wizards	Quick Start Wizard		PPP General Setup
	Service Activation Wizard		SSL General Setup
	VPN Client Wizard		IPsec General Setup
	VPN Server Wizard		IPsec Peer Identity
	Wireless Wizard		OpenVPN
Online Status	Physical Connection		Remote Dial-in User
	Virtual WAN		LAN to LAN
WAN	General Setup		VPN TRUNK Management
	Internet Access		Connection Management
	Multi-PVC/VLAN	Certificate Management	Local Certificate
	WAN Budget		Trusted CA Certificate
LAN	General Setup		Certificate Backup
	VLAN		Self-Signed Certificate
	Bind IP to MAC	Wireless LAN	General Setup
	LAN Port Mirror		Security
	Wired 802.1X		Access Control
Hotspot Web Portal	Profile Setup		WPS
			WDS
Routing	Static Route		Advanced Setting
	Load-Balance/Route Policy		Bandwidth Management
NAT	Port Redirection		AP Discovery
	DMZ Host		Airtime Fairness
	Open Ports		Station List
	Port Triggering	USB Application	USB General Settings
	ALG		USB User Management
Hardware Acceleration	Setup		File Explorer
			USB Device Status
Firewall	General Setup		Temperature Sensor
			Modem Support List
			SMB Client Support List
		System Maintenance	

I-5-5 Web Console



It is not necessary to use the telnet command via DOS prompt. The changes made by using web console have the same effects as modified through web user interface. The functions/settings modified under Web Console also can be reviewed on the web user interface.

Click the **Web Console** icon on the top of the main screen to open the following screen.



I-5-6 Config Backup

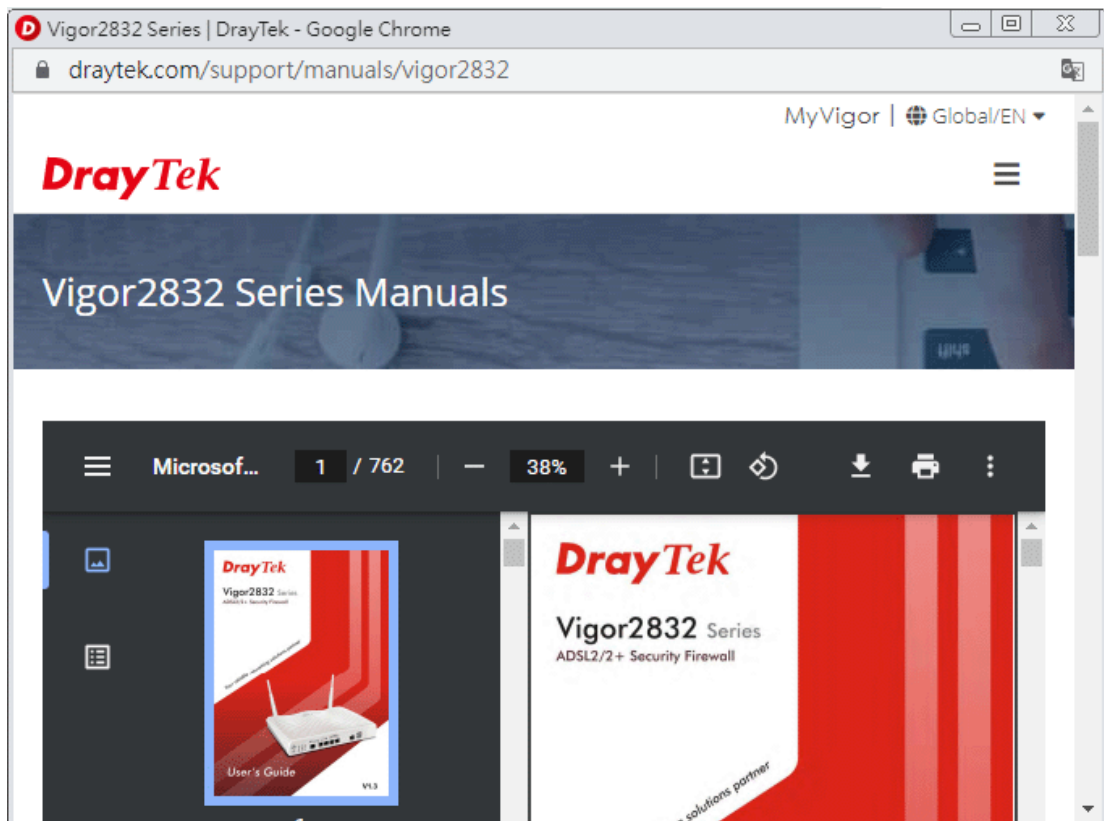


There is one way to store current used settings quickly by clicking the **Config Backup** icon. It allows you to backup current settings as a file. Such configuration file can be restored by using **System Maintenance>>Configuration Backup**.

I-5-7 Manual Download



Click this icon to open online user's guide of Vigor router. This document offers detailed information for the settings on web user interface.



I-5-8 Logout



Click this icon to exit the web user interface.

I-5-9 Online Status

Online Status
Physical Connection
Virtual WAN

I-5-9-1 Physical Connection

Such page displays the physical connection status such as LAN connection status, WAN connection status, ADSL information, and so on.

Physical Connection for IPv4 Protocol

Online Status

Physical Connection		System Uptime: 11days 0:47:30				
IPv4		IPv6				
LAN Status						
IP Address	TX Packets	RX Packets	Router Primary DNS:	Router Secondary DNS:		
192.168.1.80	53,464	210,986	8.8.8.8	8.8.4.4		
WAN 1 Status >> Dial PPPoE						
Enable	Line	Name	Mode	Up Time		
Yes	ADSL		PPPoE	00:00:00		
IP	GW IP	TX Bytes	TX Rate(bps)	RX Bytes	RX Rate(bps)	
---	---	0 (B)	0	0 (B)	0	
WAN 2 Status >> Renew						
Enable	Line	Name	Mode	Up Time		
Yes	Ethernet		DHCP Client	00:00:00		
IP	GW IP	TX Bytes	TX Rate(bps)	RX Bytes	RX Rate(bps)	
---	---	0 (B)	0	0 (B)	0	
WAN 3 Status						
Enable	Line	Name	Mode	Up Time	Signal	
Yes	USB		---	00:00:00		
IP	GW IP	TX Bytes	TX Rate(bps)	RX Bytes	RX Rate(bps)	
---	---	0 (B)	0	0 (B)	0	
WAN 4 Status						
Enable	Line	Name	Mode	Up Time	Signal	
Yes	USB		---	00:00:00		
IP	GW IP	TX Bytes	TX Rate(bps)	RX Bytes	RX Rate(bps)	
---	---	0	0	0	0	
Line 1 Information (ADSL Firmware Version: 06-06-01-07-00-01)						
ATM Statistics	TX Cells	RX Cells	TX CRC errs		RX CRC errs	
	0	0	0		0	
ADSL Status	Mode	State	Up Speed	Down Speed	SNR Margin	Loop Att.
		TRAINING	0	0	0	0

Physical Connection for IPv6 Protocol

Online Status

Physical Connection		System Uptime: 11days 0:50:41	
IPv4	IPv6		
LAN Status			
IP Address FE80::21D:AAFF:FE54:A3F8/64 (Link)			
TX Packets 4,149	RX Packets 8,308	TX Bytes 323,982	RX Bytes 648,678
WAN1 IPv6 Status			
Enable No	Mode Offline	Up Time ---	Gateway IP ---
WAN2 IPv6 Status			
Enable No	Mode Offline	Up Time ---	Gateway IP ---
WAN3 IPv6 Status			
Enable No	Mode Offline	Up Time ---	Gateway IP ---
WAN4 IPv6 Status			
Enable No	Mode Offline	Up Time ---	Gateway IP ---

Detailed explanation (for IPv4) is shown below:

Item	Description
LAN Status	<p>Primary DNS-Displays the primary DNS server address for WAN interface.</p> <p>Secondary DNS -Displays the secondary DNS server address for WAN interface.</p> <p>IP Address-Displays the IP address of the LAN interface.</p> <p>TX Packets-Displays the total transmitted packets at the LAN interface.</p> <p>RX Packets-Displays the total received packets at the LAN interface.</p>
WAN1/WAN2/WAN3 /WAN4 Status	<p>Enable - Yes in red means such interface is available but not enabled. Yes in green means such interface is enabled.</p> <p>Line - Displays the physical connection (VDSL, ADSL, Ethernet, or USB) of this interface.</p> <p>Name - Display the name of the router.</p> <p>Mode - Displays the type of WAN connection (e.g., PPPoE).</p> <p>Up Time - Displays the total uptime of the interface.</p> <p>IP - Displays the IP address of the WAN interface.</p> <p>GW IP - Displays the IP address of the default gateway.</p> <p>TX Packets - Displays the total transmitted packets at the WAN interface.</p> <p>TX Rate - Displays the speed of transmitted octets at the WAN interface.</p>

Item	Description
	RX Packets - Displays the total number of received packets at the WAN interface. RX Rate - Displays the speed of received octets at the WAN interface.

Detailed explanation (for IPv6) is shown below:

Item	Description
LAN Status	IP Address - Displays the IPv6 address of the LAN interface.. TX Packets -Displays the total transmitted packets at the LAN interface. RX Packets -Displays the total received packets at the LAN interface. TX Bytes - Displays the speed of transmitted octets at the LAN interface. RX Bytes - Displays the speed of received octets at the LAN interface.
WAN IPv6 Status	Enable - No in red means such interface is available but not enabled. Yes in green means such interface is enabled. No in red means such interface is not available. Mode - Displays the type of WAN connection (e.g., TSPC). Up Time - Displays the total uptime of the interface. IP - Displays the IP address of the WAN interface. Gateway IP - Displays the IP address of the default gateway.



Info

The words in green mean that the WAN connection of that interface is ready for accessing Internet; the words in red mean that the WAN connection of that interface is not ready for accessing Internet.

I-5-9-2 Virtual WAN

Such page displays the virtual WAN connection information.

Virtual WAN are used by TR-069 management, VoIP service and so on.

The field of Application will list the purpose of such WAN connection.

I-6 Quick Start Wizard

Quick Start Wizard can help you to deploy and use the router easily and quickly. Click **Wizards>>Quick Start Wizards**. The first screen of **Quick Start Wizard** is entering login password. After typing the password, please click **Next**.

Quick Start Wizard

Enter login password

Please enter an alpha-numeric string as your **Password**.

Old Password	<input type="text"/>
New Password	<input type="text" value="Max 23 characters"/>
Confirm Password	<input type="text"/>

Hint: If you want to keep the password unchanged, leave the password blank and press "Next" button to skip this process.

On the next page as shown below, please select the WAN interface (WAN 1 to WAN4) that you use. If DSL interface is used, please choose WAN1; if Ethernet interface is used, please choose WAN2; if 3G/4G USB modem is used, please choose WAN3 or WAN4. For WAN2, choose **Auto negotiation** as the physical type for your router.

Quick Start Wizard

WAN Interface

WAN Interface:	<input type="text" value="WAN1"/>
Display Name:	<input type="text"/>
Physical Mode:	ADSL
Physical Type:	<input type="text" value="Auto negotiation"/>
VLAN Tag insertion (ADSL):	<input type="text" value="Enable"/>
Tag value	<input type="text"/> (0~4095)
Priority	<input type="text"/> (0~7)

WAN1~ WAN4 will bring up different configuration page. Refer to the following sections for detailed information.

I-6-1 For WAN1 (ADSL)

WAN1 is specified for ADSL connection.

Quick Start Wizard

WAN Interface

WAN Interface:	<input type="text" value="WAN1"/>
Display Name:	<input type="text"/>
Physical Mode:	ADSL
Physical Type:	<input type="text" value="Auto negotiation"/>
VLAN Tag insertion (ADSL):	<input type="text" value="Enable"/>
Tag value	<input type="text"/> (0~4095)
Priority	<input type="text"/> (0~7)

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Display Name	Type a name to identify such WAN.
VLAN Tag insertion (ADSL)	<p>The settings configured in this field are available for WAN1 and WAN2.</p> <p>Enable - Enable the function of VLAN with tag. The router will add specific VLAN number to all packets on the WAN while sending them out. Please type the tag value and specify the priority for the packets sending by WAN1.</p> <p>Disable - Disable the function of VLAN with tag.</p> <p>Tag value - Type the value as the VLAN ID number. The range is from 0 to 4095.</p> <p>Priority - Type the packet priority number for such VLAN. The range is from 0 to 7.</p>

Please select the appropriate Internet access type according to the information from your ISP. Click Next.

I-6-1 -1 PPPoE/PPPoA

PPPoE stands for **Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet**. It relies on two widely accepted standards: PPP and Ethernet. It connects users through an Ethernet to the Internet with a common broadband medium, such as a single DSL line, wireless device or cable modem. All the users over the Ethernet can share a common connection.

PPPoE is used for most of DSL modem users. All local users can share one PPPoE connection for accessing the Internet. Your service provider will provide you information about user name, password, and authentication mode.

1. Choose **WAN1** as WAN Interface and click the **Next** button; you will get the following page. Choose **PPPoE XXXX** or **PPPoA XXXXX** as the protocol.

Quick Start Wizard

Connect to Internet

WAN 1	
Protocol	PPPoE / PPPoA
Encapsulation	PPPoE LLC/SNAP
VPI	0 <input type="button" value="Auto detect"/>
VCI	33
Fixed IP	<input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No(Dynamic IP)
IP Address	
Subnet Mask	
Default Gateway	
Primary DNS	8.8.8.8
Second DNS	8.8.4.4

 >

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Protocol / Encapsulation	Choose PPPoE/PPPoA for WAN1 interface.
VPI	Type in the value provided by ISP. Auto detect - Click this button to have the VPI and VCI to be detected by the system automatically
VCI	Type in the value provided by ISP.
Fixed IP	Click Yes to enable Fixed IP feature.
IP Address	Type the IP address if Fixed IP is enabled.
Primary DNS	Type in the primary IP address for the router.
Secondary DNS	Type in secondary IP address for necessity in the future.
Back	Click it to return to previous setting page.
Next	Click it to get into the next setting page.
Cancel	Click it to give up the quick start wizard.

- After finished the above settings, simply click **Next**.

Quick Start Wizard

Set PPPoE / PPPoA

WAN 1	
Service Name (Optional)	<input type="text" value="84005755@hinet.net"/>
Username	<input type="text" value="84005755"/>
Password	<input type="password" value="*****"/>
Confirm Password	<input type="password" value="*****"/>

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Service Name (Optional)	Enter the description of the specific network service.
User Name	Type in the valid user name (maximum 63 characters) provided by the ISP in this field.
Password	Type a valid password provided by the ISP.
Confirm Password	Retype the password.
Back	Click it to return to previous setting page.
Next	Click it to get into the next setting page.
Cancel	Click it to give up the quick start wizard.

- Please manually enter the Username/Password provided by your ISP. Then click **Next** for viewing summary of such connection.

Quick Start Wizard

Please confirm your settings:

WAN Interface:	WAN1
Physical Mode:	ADSL
VPI:	0
VCI:	33
Protocol / Encapsulation:	PPPoE / LLC
Fixed IP:	No
Primary DNS:	8.8.8.8
Secondary DNS:	8.8.4.4

- Click **Finish**. A page of **Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!!!** will appear. Then, the system status of this protocol will be shown.

Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!

5. Now, you can enjoy surfing on the Internet.

I-6-1-2 MPoA

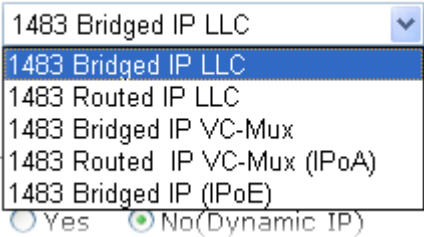
1. Choose **WAN1** as WAN Interface and click the **Next** button; you will get the following page.

Quick Start Wizard

Connect to Internet

WAN 1		
Protocol	MPoA (RFC1483/2684) ▼	
Encapsulation	1483 Bridged IP LLC ▼	
VPI	0	Auto detect
VCI	33	
Fixed IP	<input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No(Dynamic IP)	
IP Address		
Subnet Mask		
Default Gateway		
Primary DNS	8.8.8.8	
Second DNS	8.8.4.4	

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Protocol	There are two modes offered for you to choose for WAN1 interface. Choose MPoA as the protocol.
For ADSL Only	Such field is provided for ADSL only. You have to choose encapsulation and type the values for VPI and VCI. Or, click Auto detect to find out the best values.
	
Fixed IP	Click Yes to enable Fixed IP feature.
IP Address	Type the IP address if Fixed IP is enabled.
Subnet Mask	Type the subnet mask.
Default Gateway	Type the IP address as the default gateway.
Primary DNS	Type in the primary IP address for the router.
Secondary DNS	Type in secondary IP address for necessity in the future.
Back	Click it to return to previous setting page.
Next	Click it to get into the next setting page.

Cancel	Click it to give up the quick start wizard.
--------	---

2. Please type in the IP address/mask/gateway information originally provided by your ISP. Then click **Next** for viewing summary of such connection.

Quick Start Wizard

Please confirm your settings:

WAN Interface:	WAN1
Physical Mode:	ADSL
VPI:	0
VCI:	33
Protocol / Encapsulation:	1483 Bridge LLC
Fixed IP:	No
Primary DNS:	8.8.8.8
Secondary DNS:	8.8.4.4

3. Click **Finish**. A page of **Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!!!** will appear. Then, the system status of this protocol will be shown.

Quick Start Wizard

Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!

4. Now, you can enjoy surfing on the Internet.

I-6-2 For WAN2 (Ethernet)

WAN2 is dedicated to physical mode in Ethernet. Please select the appropriate Internet access type according to the information from your ISP. For example, you should select PPPoE mode if the ISP provides you PPPoE interface.

Quick Start Wizard

WAN Interface

WAN Interface:	<input type="text" value="WAN2"/>
Display Name:	<input type="text"/>
Physical Mode:	Ethernet
Physical Type:	<input type="text" value="Auto negotiation"/>
VLAN Tag insertion	<input type="text" value="Enable"/>
Tag value	<input type="text"/> (0~4095)
Priority	<input type="text"/> (0~7)

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Display Name	Type a name for the router.
VLAN Tag insertion	<p>Enable - Enable the function of VLAN with tag. The router will add specific VLAN number to all packets on the WAN while sending them out. Please type the tag value and specify the priority for the packets sending by WAN2.</p> <p>Disable - Disable the function of VLAN with tag.</p> <p>Tag value - Type the value as the VLAN ID number. The range is form 0 to 4095.</p> <p>Priority - Type the packet priority number for such VLAN. The range is from 0 to 7.</p>

I-6-2-1 PPPoE

PPPoE stands for **Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet**. It relies on two widely accepted standards: PPP and Ethernet. It connects users through an Ethernet to the Internet with a common broadband medium, such as a single DSL line, wireless device or cable modem. All the users over the Ethernet can share a common connection.

PPPoE is used for most of DSL modem users. All local users can share one PPPoE connection for accessing the Internet. Your service provider will provide you information about user name, password, and authentication mode.

1. Choose **WAN2** as the WAN Interface and click the **Next** button. The following page will be open for you to specify Internet Access Type.

Quick Start Wizard

Connect to Internet

WAN 2
Select one of the following Internet Access types provided by your ISP.

- PPPoE
- PPTP
- L2TP
- Static IP
- DHCP

< Back Next > Finish Cancel

- Click PPPoE as the Internet Access Type. Then click **Next** to continue.

Quick Start Wizard

PPPoE Client Mode

WAN 2
Enter the user name and password provided by your ISP.

Service Name (Optional)

Username

Password

Confirm Password

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Service Name (Optional)	Enter the description of the specific network service.
Username	Assign a specific valid user name provided by the ISP. Note: The maximum length of the user name you can set is 63 characters.
Password	Assign a valid password provided by the ISP. Note: The maximum length of the password you can set is 62 characters.
Confirm Password	Retype the password.
Back	Click it to return to previous setting page.
Next	Click it to get into the next setting page.
Cancel	Click it to give up the quick start wizard.

3. Please manually enter the Username/Password provided by your ISP. Click **Next** for viewing summary of such connection.

Quick Start Wizard

Please confirm your settings:

WAN Interface:	WAN2
Physical Mode:	Ethernet
Physical Type:	Auto negotiation
Internet Access:	PPPoE

Click **Back** to modify changes if necessary. Otherwise, click **Finish** to save the current settings and restart the Vigor router.

< Back

Next >

Finish

Cancel

4. Click **Finish**. A page of **Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!!!** will appear. Then, the system status of this protocol will be shown.

Quick Start Wizard

Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!

5. Now, you can enjoy surfing on the Internet.

I-6-2-2 PPTP/L2TP

1. Choose WAN2 as the WAN Interface and click the Next button. The following page will be open for you to specify Internet Access Type.

Quick Start Wizard

Connect to Internet

WAN 2
Select one of the following Internet Access types provided by your ISP.

PPPoE
 PPTP
 L2TP
 Static IP
 DHCP

2. Click PPTP/L2TP as the Internet Access Type. Then click Next to continue.

Quick Start Wizard

PPPoE Client Mode

WAN 2
Enter the user name and password provided by your ISP.

Service Name (Optional)

Username

Password

Confirm Password

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Username	Assign a specific valid user name provided by the ISP. The maximum length of the user name you can set is 63 characters.
Password	Assign a valid password provided by the ISP. The maximum length of the password you can set is 62 characters.
Confirm Password	Retype the password.
WAN IP Configuration	Obtain an IP address automatically - the router will get an IP address automatically from DHCP server. Specify an IP address - you have to type relational settings

	manually. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● IP Address - Type the IP address. ● Subnet Mask -Type the subnet mask. ● Gateway - Type the IP address of the gateway. ● Primary DNS -Type in the primary IP address for the router. ● Second DNS -Type in secondary IP address for necessity in the future.
PPTP Server / L2TP Server	Type the IP address of the server.
Back	Click it to return to previous setting page.
Next	Click it to get into the next setting page.
Cancel	Click it to give up the quick start wizard.

3. Please type in the IP address/mask/gateway information originally provided by your ISP. Then click **Next** for viewing summary of such connection.

Quick Start Wizard

Please confirm your settings:

WAN Interface:	WAN2
Physical Mode:	Ethernet
Physical Type:	Auto negotiation
Internet Access:	PPPoE

Click **Back** to modify changes if necessary. Otherwise, click **Finish** to save the current settings and restart the Vigor router.

4. Click **Finish**. A page of **Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!!!** will appear. Then, the system status of this protocol will be shown.

Quick Start Wizard

Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!

5. Now, you can enjoy surfing on the Internet.

I-6-2-3 Static IP

1. Choose **WAN2** as the WAN Interface and click the **Next** button. The following page will be open for you to specify Internet Access Type.

Quick Start Wizard

Connect to Internet

WAN 2
Select one of the following Internet Access types provided by your ISP.

PPPoE
 PPTP
 L2TP
 Static IP
 DHCP

< Back Next > Finish Cancel

2. Click **Static IP** as the Internet Access type. Simply click **Next** to continue.

Quick Start Wizard

Static IP Client Mode

WAN 2
Enter the Static IP configuration provided by your ISP.

WAN IP	<input type="text" value="192.168.3.102"/>
Subnet Mask	<input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/>
Gateway	<input type="text" value="192.168.3.1"/>
Primary DNS	<input type="text" value="8.8.8.8"/>
Secondary DNS	<input type="text" value="8.8.4.4"/> (optional)

< Back Next > Finish Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
WAN IP	Type the IP address.
Subnet Mask	Type the subnet mask.
Gateway	Type the IP address of gateway.
Primary DNS	Type in the primary IP address for the router.
Secondary DNS	Type in secondary IP address for necessity in the future.
Back	Click it to return to previous setting page.
Next	Click it to get into the next setting page.
Cancel	Click it to give up the quick start wizard.

3. Please type in the IP address information originally provided by your ISP. Then click **Next** for next step.

Quick Start Wizard

Please confirm your settings:

WAN Interface:	WAN2
Physical Mode:	Ethernet
Physical Type:	Auto negotiation
Internet Access:	Static IP

Click **Back** to modify changes if necessary. Otherwise, click **Finish** to save the current settings and restart the Vigor router.

< Back

Next >

Finish

Cancel

4. Click **Finish**. A page of **Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!!!** will appear. Then, the system status of this protocol will be shown.

Quick Start Wizard

Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!

5. Now, you can enjoy surfing on the Internet.

I-6-2-4 DHCP

1. Choose **WAN2** as WAN Interface and click the **Next** button. The following page will be open for you to specify Internet Access Type.

Quick Start Wizard

Connect to Internet

WAN 2
Select one of the following Internet Access types provided by your ISP.

PPPoE
 PPTP
 L2TP
 Static IP
 DHCP

2. Click **DHCP** as the Internet Access type. Simply click **Next** to continue.

Quick Start Wizard

DHCP Client Mode

WAN 2
If your ISP requires you to enter a specific host name or specific MAC address, please enter it in.

Host Name (optional)

MAC (optional)

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Host Name	Type the name of the host. Note: The maximum length of the host name you can set is 39 characters.
MAC	Some Cable service providers specify a specific MAC address for access authentication. In such cases you need to enter the MAC address.
Back	Click it to return to previous setting page.
Next	Click it to get into the next setting page.
Cancel	Click it to give up the quick start wizard.

3. After finished the settings above, click **Next** for viewing summary of such connection.

Quick Start Wizard

Please confirm your settings:

WAN Interface:	WAN2
Physical Mode:	Ethernet
Physical Type:	Auto negotiation
Internet Access:	DHCP

Click **Back** to modify changes if necessary. Otherwise, click **Finish** to save the current settings and restart the Vigor router.

4. Click **Finish**. A page of **Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!!!** will appear. Then, the system status of this protocol will be shown.

Quick Start Wizard

Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!

5. Now, you can enjoy surfing on the Internet.

I-6-3 For WAN3 / WAN4 (USB)

WAN3/WAN4 is dedicated to physical mode in USB.

1. Choose **WAN3** as WAN Interface.

Quick Start Wizard

WAN Interface

WAN Interface:	<input type="text" value="WAN3"/>
Display Name:	<input type="text"/>
Physical Mode:	USB

2. Then, click **Next** for getting the following page.

Quick Start Wizard

Connect to Internet

WAN 3	
Internet Access :	<input type="text" value="3G/4G USB Modem(PPP mode)"/>
3G/4G USB Modem(PPP mode)	
SIM PIN code	<input type="text"/>
Modem Initial String	<input type="text" value="AT&FE0V1X1&D2&C1S0=0"/> (Default:AT&FE0V1X1&D2&C1S0=0)
APN Name	<input type="text"/>

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Internet Access	Choose one of the selections as the protocol of accessing the internet.
3G/4G USB Modem (PPP mode)	SIM Pin code -Type PIN code of the SIM card that will be used to access Internet. The maximum length of the pin code you can set is 15 characters. Modem Initial String - Such value is used to initialize USB modem. Please use the default value. If you have any question, please contact to your ISP. The maximum length of

	<p>the string you can set is 47 characters.</p> <p>APN Name - APN means Access Point Name which is provided and required by some ISPs. Type the name and click Apply.</p>
3G/4G USB Modem (DHCP mode)	<p>SIM Pin code -Type PIN code of the SIM card that will be used to access Internet.</p> <p>Network Mode - Force Vigor router to connect Internet with the mode specified here. If you choose 4G/3G/2G as network mode, the router will choose a suitable one according to the actual wireless signal automatically.</p> <p>APN Name - APN means Access Point Name which is provided and required by some ISPs.</p>

- Then, click **Next** for viewing summary of such connection.

Quick Start Wizard

Please confirm your settings:

WAN Interface:	WAN3
Physical Mode:	USB
Internet Access:	PPP

Click **Back** to modify changes if necessary. Otherwise, click **Finish** to save the current settings and restart the Vigor router.

- Click **Finish**. A page of **Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!!!** will appear. Then, the system status of this protocol will be shown.

Quick Start Wizard

Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!

- Now, you can enjoy surfing on the Internet.

I-7 Service Activation Wizard

Service Activation Wizard can guide you to activate WCF service (Web Content Filter) with a quick and easy way. For the Service Activation Wizard is only available for admin operation, therefore, please type "admin/admin" on Username/Password while Logging into the web user interface.

Service Activation Wizard is a tool which allows you to use trial version of WCF directly without accessing into the server (**MyVigor**) located on <http://myvigor.draytek.com>. For using Web Content Filter Profile, please refer to later section **Web Content Filter Profile** for detailed information.

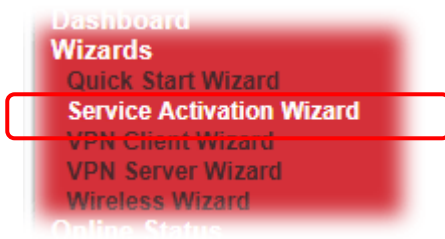
Now, follow the steps listed below to activate WCF feature for your router.



Info

Such function is available only for Admin Mode.

1. Open Wizards>>Service Activation Wizard.



2. In the following page, you can activate the Web content filter services, APPE Enforcement service, and DrayTek DDNS service at the same time or individually. When you finish the selection, please click Next.

Service Activation Wizard

Select the service type that you want to activate

Activation Date : 2017-06-21

Web Content Filter(WCF) Service :

BPjM [License Agreement](#)
This is a web content filter that is provided by the German government. It is a free service without any guarantee and will expire one year after activation. You may re-activate the service after expiry.

Cyren 30-Days Free Trial [License Agreement](#)
This is a worldwide web content filter service. The free trail license can only be used once. At the end of the free trail period you may purchase the official one-year Cyren Web Content Filter from an authorized DrayTek reseller.

APP Enforcement(APPE) Service :

DT-APPE [License Agreement](#)
Upgrade APPE Signature automatically.

Dynamic DNS(DDNS) Service :

DT-DDNS [License Agreement](#)
This is a Dynamic Domain Name Service that is provided by DrayTek company. It is a free service will expire 1 year after activation.
You may re-activate the service after expiry.
Domain Name : 148001DAAC64C40 .drayddns.com

*** Please note that the DrayDDNS service is currently for internal use only.**

I have read and accept the above Agreement. (Please check this box).

[Next >](#) [Cancel](#)



Info

BPjM is web content filter (WCF) for German Speaking users. It is ideal for your family to provide more Internet security for youngsters.

Cryan 30-day trial is WCF which offers 30-day trial period. After trial, you can purchase DrayTek's prepared Cryan GlobalView WCF package from retailing outlets.

DT-APPE, developed by DrayTek, offers a mechanism to upgrade APPE signature automatically.

DT-DDNS, developed by DrayTek, offers one year free charge service of dynamic DNS service for internal use.

- Setting confirmation page will be displayed as follows, please click **Activate**.

Service Activation Wizard

Please confirm your settings

Service Type : Trial version
Service Activated : Web Content Filter (Cyren / Commtouch)

Please click **Back** to re-select service type you to activate.



Info

The service will be activated and applied as the default rule configured in **Firewall>>General Setup**.

- Now, the web page will display the service that you have activated according to your selection(s). The valid time for the free trial of these services is one month.

DrayTek Service Activation

Service Name	Start Date	Expire Date	Status
Web Content filter	2017-06-21	2017-07-21	Cyren
APP Enforcement	---	---	Not Activated
DDNS			

Please check if the license fits with the service provider of your signature. To ensure normal operation for your router, update your signature again is recommended.

Copyright © DrayTek Corp. All Rights Reserved.

I-8 Registering Vigor Router

You have finished the configuration of Quick Start Wizard and you can surf the Internet at any time. Now it is the time to register your Vigor router to MyVigor website for getting more service. Please follow the steps below to finish the router registration.

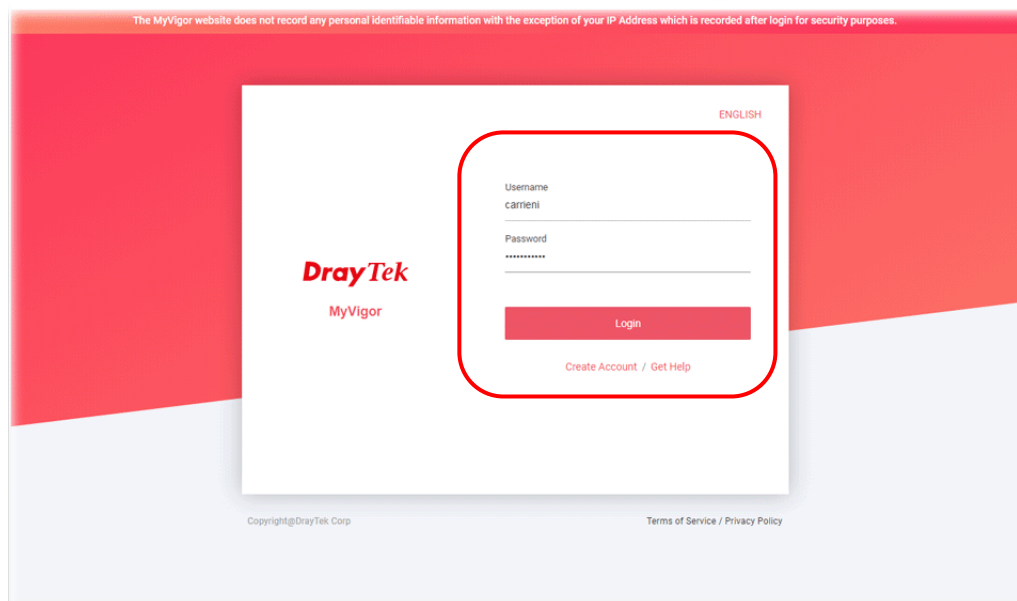
- 1 Please login the web configuration interface of Vigor router by typing “admin/admin” as User Name / Password.



- 2 Click **Support Area**>>**Production Registration** from the home page.



- 3 A **Login** page will be shown on the screen. Please type the account and password that you created previously. And click **Login**.



Info

If you haven't an accessing account, please refer to section Creating an Account for MyVigor to create your own one. Please read the articles on the Agreement regarding user rights carefully while creating a user account.

- 4 The following page will be displayed after you logging in MyVigor. Type a nickname for the router, then click **Submit**.

Product register (Add Device)

Device Name	Vigor2832
Model	Vigor2832
MAC	1449BC0237E8
Serial Number	2019122611165901

Submit

- 5 When the following page appears, your router information has been added to the database. Your router has been registered to *myvigor* website successfully.

MyVigor MY PRODUCT HIGH AVAILABILITY SETTINGS CUSTOMER SURVEY AGENT

WCF APPE DrayDDNS

Cyren BPJM

License Status ●

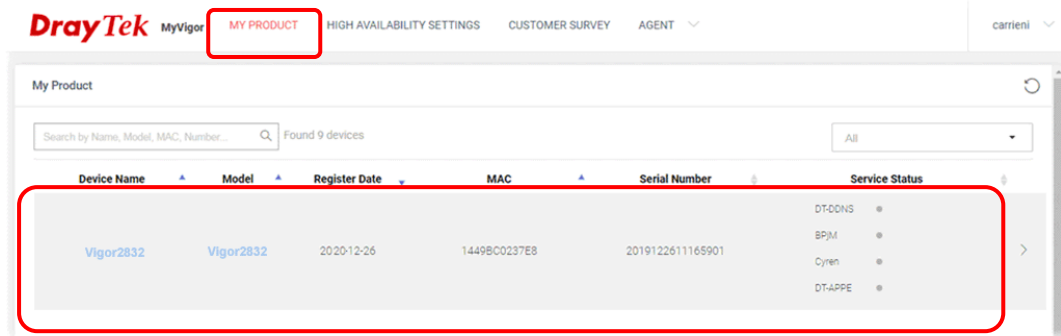
License Action **Activate License** Force Sync

License History

Today
2019-12-26

Product Registration
2019-12-26

- 6 Clicking MYPRODUCT for viewing the general information of the registered router on MyVigor website.



This page is left blank.

Part II Connectivity



WAN

It means wide area network. Public IP will be used in WAN.



LAN

It means local area network. Private IP will be used in LAN.

Local Area Network (LAN) is a group of subnets regulated and ruled by router. The design of network structure is related to what type of public IP addresses coming from your ISP.



NAT

When the data flow passing through, the Network Address Translation (NAT) function of the router will dedicate to translate public/private addresses, and the packets will be delivered to the correct host PC in the local area network.



Applications

DNS, LAN DNS, UPnP, IGMP, WOL, RADIUS, ...



Routing

Static Route, Load-Balance/Route Policy

II-1 WAN

It allows users to access Internet.

Basics of Internet Protocol (IP) Network

IP means Internet Protocol. Every device in an IP-based Network including routers, print server, and host PCs, needs an IP address to identify its location on the network. To avoid address conflicts, IP addresses are publicly registered with the Network Information Centre (NIC). Having a unique IP address is mandatory for those devices participated in the public network but not in the private TCP/IP local area networks (LANs), such as host PCs under the management of a router since they do not need to be accessed by the public. Hence, the NIC has reserved certain addresses that will never be registered publicly. These are known as *private* IP addresses, and are listed in the following ranges:

From 10.0.0.0 to 10.255.255.255
From 172.16.0.0 to 172.31.255.255
From 192.168.0.0 to 192.168.255.255

What are Public IP Address and Private IP Address

As the router plays a role to manage and further protect its LAN, it interconnects groups of host PCs. Each of them has a private IP address assigned by the built-in DHCP server of the Vigor router. The router itself will also use the default **private IP** address: 192.168.1.1 to communicate with the local hosts. Meanwhile, Vigor router will communicate with other network devices through a **public IP** address. When the data flow passing through, the Network Address Translation (NAT) function of the router will dedicate to translate public/private addresses, and the packets will be delivered to the correct host PC in the local area network. Thus, all the host PCs can share a common Internet connection.

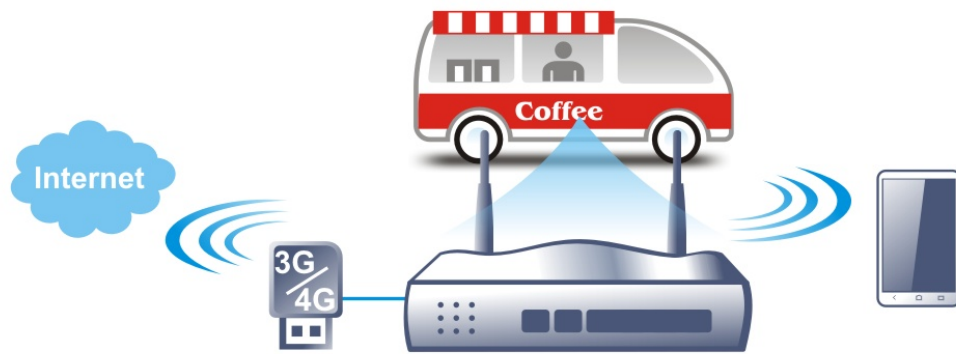
Get Your Public IP Address from ISP

In ADSL deployment, the PPP (Point to Point)-style authentication and authorization is required for bridging customer premises equipment (CPE). Point to Point Protocol over Ethernet (PPPoE) connects a network of hosts via an access device to a remote access concentrator or aggregation concentrator. This implementation provides users with significant ease of use. Meanwhile it provides access control, billing, and type of service according to user requirement.

When a router begins to connect to your ISP, a serial of discovery process will occur to ask for a connection. Then a session will be created. Your user ID and password is authenticated via **PAP** or **CHAP** with **RADIUS** authentication system. And your IP address, DNS server, and other related information will usually be assigned by your ISP.

Network Connection by 3G/4G USB Modem

For 3G/4G mobile communication through Access Point is popular more and more, Vigor2832 adds the function of 3G/4G network connection for such purpose. By connecting 3G/4G USB Modem to the USB port of Vigor2832, it can support LTE/HSDPA/UMTS/EDGE/GPRS/GSM and the future 3G/4G standard (HSUPA, etc). Vigor2832n with 3G/4G USB Modem allows you to receive 3G/4G signals at any place such as your car or certain location holding outdoor activity and share the bandwidth for using by more people. Users can use LAN ports on the router to access Internet. Also, they can access Internet via 802.11(a/b/g/n/ac) wireless standard, and enjoy the powerful firewall, bandwidth management, and VPN features of Vigor2832n series.



After connecting into the router, 3G/4G USB Modem will be regarded as the WAN3/WAN4 port. However, the original WAN1 and WAN2 still can be used and Load-Balance can be done in the router. Besides, 3G/4G USB Modem in WAN3/WAN4 also can be used as backup device. Therefore, when WAN1 and WAN2 are not available, the router will use 3.5G for supporting automatically. The supported 3G/4G USB Modem will be listed on DrayTek web site. Please visit www.draytek.com for more detailed information.

Web User Interface

II-1-1 General Setup

This section will introduce some general settings of Internet and explain the connection modes for WAN1, WAN2 and WAN3/WAN4 in details.

This router supports multiple-WAN function. It allows users to access Internet and combine the bandwidth of the multiple WANs to speed up the transmission through the network. Each WAN port can connect to different ISPs, Even if the ISPs use different technology to provide telecommunication service (such as DSL, Cable modem, etc.). If any connection problem occurred on one of the ISP connections, all the traffic will be guided and switched to the normal communication port for proper operation. Please configure WAN1, WAN2, WAN3 and WAN4 settings.

This webpage allows you to set general setup for WAN1, WAN2, WAN3 and WAN4 respectively. In default, WAN2 is disabled. If you want to enable it, simply click the WAN2 link and select Yes in the field of Enable.

WAN >> General Setup

Load Balance Mode:

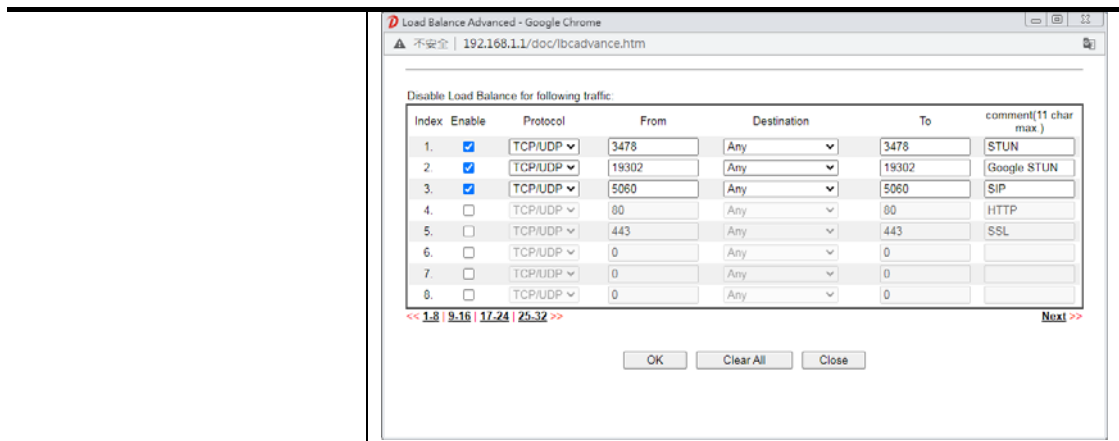
Index	Enable	Physical Mode/Type	Line Speed(Kbps) DownLink/UpLink	Active Mode	Load Balance
WAN1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	ADSL/-	0 / 0	Always On	V
WAN2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Ethernet/Auto negotiation	0 / 0	Always On	V
WAN3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	USB/-	0 / 0	Always On	V
WAN4	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	USB/-	0 / 0	Always On	V

Note:

The line speed setting of WAN interface is available only when According to Line Speed is selected as the Load Balance Mode.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Load Balance Mode	<p>This option is available for multiple-WAN for getting enough bandwidth for each WAN port. If you know the practical bandwidth for your WAN interface, please choose the setting of According to Line Speed. Otherwise, please choose Auto Weight to let the router reach the best load balance.</p> <p>IP Based - The same source / destination IP pair will select the same WAN interface as policy. It is the default setting.</p> <p>Session Based- All of the WAN interfaces will be used (as out-going WAN) for passing through new sessions to get better transmission speed. Though good speed test result for throughput might be reached; however, some web site may not open smoothly, especially the site need authentication, e.g., FTP.</p> <p>If you have no strong demand about speed test result, keep default settings as IP based.</p>
Advance	Click it to open the following dialog for configuring settings of protocol, port and comment.



Index	Click the WAN interface link under Index to access into the WAN configuration page.
Enable	V means such WAN interface is enabled and ready to be used.
Physical Mode / Type	Display the physical mode and physical type of such WAN interface.
Line Speed(Kbps) DownLink/UpLink	Display the downstream and upstream rate of such WAN interface.
Active Mode	Display whether such WAN interface is Active device or backup device. Backup (WAN#) - Display the backup WAN interface for such WAN when it is disabled.
Load Balance	V means the function of load balance for such WAN interface is enabled.



Info

In default, each WAN port is enabled.

After finished the above settings, click OK to save the settings.

II-1-1-1 WAN1 (ADSL)

Vigor router will detect the physical line is connected by ADSL automatically. Therefore, this page allows you to configure settings for ADSL at one time. That is, it is not necessary for you to configure different profile settings for ADSL respectively.

WAN >> General Setup

WAN 1

Enable:	Yes ▾
Display Name:	<input type="text"/>
Physical Mode:	ADSL
Line Speed(Kbps):	
DownLink	<input type="text" value="0"/>
UpLink	<input type="text" value="0"/>
VLAN Tag insertion :	Disable ▾ (for channel 1)
Tag value:	<input type="text" value="0"/> (0~4095)
Priority:	<input type="text" value="0"/> (0~7)
Active Mode:	Failover ▾ Load Balance: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	<input checked="" type="radio"/> WAN Failure
	<input type="radio"/> Traffic Threshold
Upload	User defined ▾ <input type="text" value="0K"/> bps (Default unit: K)
Download	User defined ▾ <input type="text" value="0K"/> bps (Default unit: K)
Active When:	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Any of the selected WAN disconnect
	<input type="radio"/> All of the selected WAN disconnect
	<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 1 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 2 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 3 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 4

Note:

The line speed setting of WAN interface is available only when According to Line Speed is selected as the Load Balance Mode.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Choose Yes to invoke the settings for this WAN interface. Choose No to disable the settings for this WAN interface.
Display Name	Type the description for such interface.
Physical Mode	Display the physical mode of such interface.
Line Speed (Kpbs)	If your choose According to Line Speed as the Load Balance Mode in previous page, please type the line speed for downloading and uploading for such WAN interface. The unit is kbps.
VLAN Tag insertion	The settings configured in this field are available for ADSL. Enable - Enable the function of VLAN with tag. The router will add specific VLAN number to all packets on the WAN while sending them out. Please type the tag value and specify the priority for the packets sending by WAN1. Disable - Disable the function of VLAN with tag. Tag value - Type the value as the VLAN ID number. The range is form 0 to 4095. Priority - Type the packet priority number for such VLAN. The range is from 0 to 7.
Active Mode	Choose Always On to make the WAN1 connection being activated always. Load Balance - Check this box to enable auto load balance function for such WAN interface. When the data traffic is large, the WAN interface with the function enabled will balance the data transmission automatically among all of the WAN interfaces in

	<p>connection status.</p> <p>Failover - Choose it to make the WAN connection as a backup connection.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● WAN Failure - When the active WAN failed, such WAN will be activated as the main network connection. ● Traffic Threshold - When the data traffic of active WAN reaches the traffic threshold (specified here), the failover WAN will be enabled automatically to share the overloaded data traffic.
<p>Active When</p>	<p>If you choose Failover as the Active Mode, the option of Active When will appear.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Any of the selected WAN disconnect - Such WAN connection will be activated when any selected WAN interface (checked below) disconnects. ● All of the selected WAN disconnect - Such WAN connection will be activated only when all of selected WAN interfaces (checked below) disconnect. ● Check boxes for WAN1 to WAN4 - Specify the WAN interface by checking the WAN box.

II-1-1-2 WAN2 (Ethernet)

Ethernet is the Physical Mode for WAN2.

WAN >> General Setup

WAN 2

Enable:	<input type="button" value="Yes"/> ▾
Display Name:	<input type="text"/>
Physical Mode:	Ethernet
Physical Type:	Auto negotiation ▾
Line Speed(Kbps):	
DownLink	<input type="text" value="0"/>
UpLink	<input type="text" value="0"/>
VLAN Tag insertion :	Enable ▾
Tag value:	<input type="text" value="0"/> (0~4095)
Priority:	<input type="text" value="0"/> (0~7)
Active Mode:	Failover ▾ Load Balance: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	<input checked="" type="radio"/> WAN Failure <input type="radio"/> Traffic Threshold
	Upload <input type="button" value="User defined"/> ▾ <input type="text" value="OK"/> bps (Default unit: K)
	Download <input type="button" value="User defined"/> ▾ <input type="text" value="OK"/> bps (Default unit: K)
Active When:	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Any of the selected WAN disconnect <input type="radio"/> All of the selected WAN disconnect <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 1 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 2 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 3 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 4

Note:

The line speed setting of WAN interface is available only when According to Line Speed is selected as the Load Balance Mode.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Choose Yes to invoke the settings for this WAN interface. Choose No to disable the settings for this WAN interface.
Display Name	Type the description for such WAN interface.
Physical Mode	Display the physical mode of such WAN interface.
Physical Type	You can change the physical type for WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4 or choose Auto negotiation for determined by the system.
Line Speed	If you choose According to Line Speed as the Load Balance Mode , please type the line speed for downloading and uploading for such WAN interface. The unit is kbps.
VLAN Tag insertion	<p>Enable - Enable the function of VLAN with tag. The router will add specific VLAN number to all packets on the WAN while sending them out. Please type the tag value and specify the priority for the packets sending by WAN1.</p> <p>Disable - Disable the function of VLAN with tag.</p> <p>Tag value - Type the value as the VLAN ID number. The range is form 0 to 4095.</p> <p>Priority - Type the packet priority number for such VLAN. The range is from 0 to 7.</p>
Active Mode	Choose Always On to make the WAN1 connection being

	<p>activated always.</p> <p>Load Balance- Check this box to enable auto load balance function for such WAN interface.</p> <p>When the data traffic is large, the WAN interface with the function enabled will balance the data transmission automatically among all of the WAN interfaces in connection status.</p> <p>Failover - Choose it to make the WAN connection as a backup connection.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● WAN Failure - When the active WAN failed, such WAN will be activated as the main network connection. ● Traffic Threshold - When the data traffic of active WAN reaches the traffic threshold (specified here), the failover WAN will be enabled automatically to share the overloaded data traffic.
<p>Active When</p>	<p>If you choose Failover as the Active Mode, the option of Active When will appear.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Any of the selected WAN disconnect - Such WAN connection will be activated when any selected WAN interface (checked below) disconnects. ● All of the selected WAN disconnect - Such WAN connection will be activated only when all of selected WAN interfaces (checked below) disconnect. ● Check boxes for WAN1 to WAN4 - Specify the WAN interface by checking the WAN box.

After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the settings.

II-1-1-3 WAN3 / WAN4 (USB)

To use 3G/4G network connection through 3G/4G USB Modem, please configure **WAN3** or **WAN4** interface.

WAN >> General Setup

WAN 3

Enable:	<input type="button" value="Yes"/>
Display Name:	<input type="text"/>
Physical Mode:	USB
Line Speed(Kbps):	
DownLink	<input type="text" value="0"/>
UpLink	<input type="text" value="0"/>
Active Mode:	<input type="button" value="Failover"/> Load Balance: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	<input checked="" type="radio"/> WAN Failure <input type="radio"/> Traffic Threshold
	Upload <input type="button" value="User defined"/> <input type="button" value="OK"/> bps (Default unit: K)
	Download <input type="button" value="User defined"/> <input type="button" value="OK"/> bps (Default unit: K)
Active When:	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Any of the selected WAN disconnect <input type="radio"/> All of the selected WAN disconnect <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 1 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 2 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 3 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 4

Note:

The line speed setting of WAN interface is available only when According to Line Speed is selected as the Load Balance Mode.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Choose Yes to invoke the settings for this WAN interface. Choose No to disable the settings for this WAN interface.
Display Name	Type the description for such WAN interface.
Physical Mode	Display the physical mode of such WAN interface.
Line Speed	If you choose According to Line Speed as the Load Balance Mode , please type the line speed for downloading and uploading for such WAN interface. The unit is kbps.
Active Mode	<p>Choose Always On to make the WAN1 connection being activated always.</p> <p>Load Balance- Check this box to enable auto load balance function for such WAN interface.</p> <p>When the data traffic is large, the WAN interface with the function enabled will balance the data transmission automatically among all of the WAN interfaces in connection status.</p> <p>Failover - Choose it to make the WAN connection as a backup connection.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● WAN Failure - When the active WAN failed, such WAN will be activated as the main network connection. ● Traffic Threshold - When the data traffic of active WAN reaches the traffic threshold (specified here), the failover WAN will be enabled automatically to share the overloaded data traffic.
Active When	<p>If you choose Failover as the Active Mode, the option of Active When will appear.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Any of the selected WAN disconnect - Such WAN connection will be activated when any selected WAN interface (checked below) disconnects. ● All of the selected WAN disconnect - Such WAN connection will be activated only when all of selected WAN interfaces (checked below) disconnect. ● Check boxes for WAN1 to WAN5 - Specify the WAN interface by checking the WAN box.

After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the settings.

II-1-2 Internet Access

For the router supports multi-WAN function, the users can set different WAN settings (for WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4) for Internet Access. Due to different Physical Mode for WAN interface, the Access Mode for these connections also varies. Refer to the following figures.

WAN >> Internet Access

Internet Access

Index	Display Name	Physical Mode	Access Mode	Details Page	IPv6
WAN1		ADSL	PPPoE / PPPoA	Details Page	IPv6
WAN2		Ethernet	Static or Dynamic IP	Details Page	IPv6
WAN3		USB	3G/4G USB Modem(PPP mode)	Details Page	IPv6
WAN4		USB	3G/4G USB Modem(DHCP mode)	Details Page	IPv6

Note:

- 1.Device on USB port 1 applies WAN3 configuration.
- 2.Device on USB port 2 applies WAN4 configuration.

DHCP Client Option

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Index	Display the WAN interface.
Display Name	It shows the name of the WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4/WAN5 that entered in general setup.
Physical Mode	It shows the physical connection for WAN1~2 (Ethernet) /WAN3~4 (3G/4G USB Modem) according to the real network connection.
Access Mode	Use the drop down list to choose a proper access mode. The details page of that mode will be popped up. If not, click Details Page for accessing the page to configure the settings.
Details Page	This button will open different web page (based on IPv4) according to the access mode that you choose in WAN interface. Note that Details Page will be changed slightly based on physical mode.
IPv6	This button will open different web page (based on Physical Mode) to setup IPv6 Internet Access Mode for WAN interface. If IPv6 service is active on this WAN interface, the color of "IPv6" will become green.
DHCP Client Option	This button allows you to configure DHCP client options. DHCP packets can be processed by adding option number and data information when such function is enabled and configured.

DHCP Client Options Status

Options List				
Enable	Interface	Option	Type	Data

Enable:

Interface: All WAN1 WAN2 WAN3 WAN4 WAN5 WAN6 WAN7

Option Number:

Data Type: ASCII Character (EX: Option:18, Data:/path)
 Hexadecimal Digit (EX: Option:18, Data:2f70617468)
 Address List (EX: Option:44, Data:172.16.2.10,172.16.2.20...)

Data:

Note:

- Option 12 is reserved. You cannot configure it here, but you can configure it in "Router Name" field of "WAN >> Internet Access >> Details Page".
- Option 55 is reserved and configured with value 1, 3, 6, 15 and 212, also 33 and 121 for some models.
- Configuring option 61 here will override the setting in "WAN >> Internet Access" page's DHCP Client Identifier field.

Enable - Check the box to enable the function of DHCP Option. Each DHCP option is composed by an option number with data. For example,

Option number: 100

Data: abcd

When such function is enabled, the specified values for DHCP option will be seen in DHCP reply packets.

Interface - Specify the WAN interface(s) that will be overwritten by such function. WAN5 ~ WAN7 can be located under WAN>>Multi-PVC/VLAN.

Option Number - Type a number for such function.

Data Type - Choose the type (ASCII or Hex) for the data to be stored.

Data - Type the content of the data to be processed by the function of DHCP option.

II-1-2-1 Details Page for PPPoE/PPPoA in WAN1

WAN >> Internet Access

WAN 1

PPPoE / PPPoA	MPoA (RFC1483/2684)	IPv6
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable		
DSL Modem Settings Multi-PVC channel: Channel 1 VPI: 0 VCI: 33 Encapsulating Type: LLC/SNAP Protocol: PPPoE Modulation: Multimode		
ISP Access Setup Username: Max: 63 characters Password: Max: 62 characters More Options		
WAN Connection Detection Mode: PPP Detect		
MTU 1492 (Max:1500)		
PPP/MP Setup PPP Authentication: PAP/CHAP/MS-CHAP/MS-CHAPv2 Idle Timeout: -1 second(s) IP Assignment: <input type="radio"/> Static <input checked="" type="radio"/> Dynamic (IPCP) Fixed IP Address: <input type="text"/> WAN IP Alias		
Dial-Out Schedule Index(1-15) in Schedule Setup: None => None => None => None		
PPPoE Pass-through <input type="checkbox"/> For Wired LAN <input type="checkbox"/> For Wireless LAN		
MAC Address <input checked="" type="radio"/> Default MAC Address <input type="radio"/> Use the following MAC Address 00 : 1D : AA : 54 : A3 : F9		

OK Cancel

Note:

VPN feature may be affected when the value of MTU is changed, please also check your value of VPN mss by using "VPN mss set" command.
 We recommend to put the same decreased value on VPN mss. For example, reducing the MTU from 1500 -> 1400, then it will need to reduce 100 from mss value.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable/Disable	Click Enable for activating this function. If you click Disable , this function will be closed and all the settings that you adjusted in this page will be invalid.
DSL Modem Settings	Set up the DSL parameters required by your ISP. These settings configured here are specified for ADSL only. Multi-PVC channel - The selections displayed here are determined by the page of Internet Access >> Multi-PVC/VLAN . Select M-PVCs Channel means no selection will be chosen. VPI - Type in the value provided by ISP. VCI - Type in the value provided by ISP. Encapsulating Type - Drop down the list to choose the type provided by ISP. Protocol - Drop down the list to choose the one (PPPoE or PPPoA) provided by ISP. If you have already used Quick Start Wizard to set the

	<p>protocol, then it is not necessary for you to change any settings in this group.</p> <p>Modulation -Default setting is Multimode. Choose the one that fits the requirement of your router.</p>
ISP Access Setup	<p>Enter your allocated username, password and authentication parameters according to the information provided by your ISP.</p> <p>Username - Type in the username provided by ISP in this field.</p> <p>Password - Type in the password provided by ISP in this field.</p> <p>More Options - It shows optional settings for configuration.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Service Name (Optional) - Enter the description of the specific network service.
WAN Connection Detection	<p>Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through ARP Detect or Ping Detect.</p> <p>Mode - Choose PPP Detect or Ping Detect for the system to execute for WAN detection. If you choose Ping Detect as the detection mode, you have to type required settings for the following items.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Primary/Secondary Ping IP - If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you have to type Primary or Secondary IP address in this field for pinging. ● Ping Gateway IP - If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you also can enable this setting to use current WAN gateway IP address for pinging. With the IP address(es) pinging, Vigor router can check if the WAN connection is on or off. ● TTL (Time to Live) - Set TTL value of PING operation. ● Ping Interval - Type the interval for the system to execute the PING operation. ● Ping Retry - Type the number of times that the system is allowed to execute the PING operation before WAN disconnection is judged.
MTU	It means Max Transmit Unit for packet.
PPP/MP Setup	<p>PPP Authentication - Select PAP only or PAP or CHAP for PPP.</p> <p>Idle Timeout - Set the timeout for breaking down the Internet after passing through the time without any action.</p> <p>IP Assignment (IPCP) - Usually ISP dynamically assigns IP address to you each time you connect to it and request. In some case, your ISP provides service to always assign you the same IP address whenever you request. In this case, you can fill in this IP address in the Fixed IP field. Please contact your ISP before you want to use this function.</p> <p>Fixed IP - Click Yes to use this function and type in a fixed IP address in the box of Fixed IP Address.</p> <p>WAN IP Alias - If you have multiple public IP addresses and would like to utilize them on the WAN interface, please use WAN IP Alias. You can set up to 32 public IP addresses other than the current one you are using. Type the additional WAN IP address and check the Enable box. Then click OK to exit the dialog.</p>
Dial-Out Schedule	Index (1-15) in Schedule Setup - You can enter four sets of time schedule for your request. All the schedules can be set

	previously in Application >> Schedule web page and you can use the number that you have set in that web page.
PPPoE Pass-through	<p>The router offers PPPoE dial-up connection. Besides, you also can establish the PPPoE connection directly from local clients to your ISP via the Vigor router. When PPPoA protocol is selected, the PPPoE package transmitted by PC will be transformed into PPPoA package and sent to WAN server. Thus, the PC can access Internet through such direction.</p> <p>For Wired LAN - If you check this box, PCs on the same network can use another set of PPPoE session (different with the Host PC) to access into Internet.</p> <p>For Wireless LAN - It is available for <i>n</i> model. If you check this box, PCs on the same wireless network can use another set of PPPoE session (different with the Host PC) to access into Internet.</p> <p>To have PPPoA Pass-through, please choose PPPoA protocol and check the box(es) here. The router will behave like a modem which only serves the PPPoE client on the LAN. That's, the router will offer PPPoA dial-up connection.</p>
MAC Address	<p>Default MAC Address - You can use Default MAC Address or specify another MAC address by typing on the boxes of MAC Address for the router.</p> <p>Use the following MAC Address - Type the MAC address for the router manually.</p>

II-1-2-2 Details Page for MPoA in WAN1

MPoA is a specification that enables ATM services to be integrated with existing LANs, which use either Ethernet, token-ring or TCP/IP protocols. The goal of MPoA is to allow different LANs to send packets to each other via an ATM backbone.

To use MPoA as the accessing protocol of the Internet, select MPoA from the WAN>>Internet Access >>WAN1 page. The following web page will appear.

WAN >> Internet Access

WAN 1

PPPoE / PPPoA
 MPoA (RFC1483/2684)
 IPv6

Enable Disable

DSL Modem Settings

Multi-PVC channel:

Encapsulation:

VPI:

VCI:

Modulation:

IP Network Settings

Obtain an IP address automatically
More Options

Specify an IP address

IP Address:

Subnet Mask:

Gateway IP Address:

DNS Server IP Address

Primary Server:

Secondary Server:

WAN Connection Detection

Mode:

MTU

(Max:1500)

RIP Routing

Enable RIP

Bridge Mode

Enable Bridge Mode

Bridge Subnet:

MAC Address

Default MAC Address

Use the following MAC Address

Note:

1. VPN feature may be affected when the value of MTU is changed, please also check your value of VPN mss by using "VPN mss set" command. We recommend to put the same decreased value on VPN mss. For example, reducing the MTU from 1500 - > 1400, then it will need to reduce 100 from mss value.
2. If enable firewall in bridge mode, IPv6 connection type would be change to DHCPv6 mode.
3. Bridge Subnet cannot be selected by Multi-WAN Interface at the same time.
4. If both Bridge Mode and Firewall are enabled, the settings under User Management will be ignored.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable/Disable	Click Enable for activating this function. If you click Disable , this function will be closed and all the settings that you adjusted in this page will be invalid.
DSL Modem Settings	<p>Set up the DSL parameters required by your ISP. These settings configured here are specified for ADSL only.</p> <p>Multi-PVC channel - The selections displayed here are determined by the page of Internet Access >> Multi-PVC/VLAN. Select M-PVCs Channel means no selection will be chosen.</p> <p>Encapsulating Type - Drop down the list to choose the type provided by ISP.</p> <p>VPI - Type in the value provided by ISP.</p> <p>VCI - Type in the value provided by ISP.</p> <p>Modulation -Default setting is Multimode. Choose the one that fits the requirement of your router.</p>

	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"> Multimode ▼ T1.413 G.Lite G.DMT ADSL2(G.992.3) ADSL2 annex M/J ADSL2+(G.992.5) ADSL2+ annex M/J Multimode </div>
IP Network Settings	<p>Obtain an IP address automatically - Click this button to obtain the IP address automatically.</p> <p>More Options - Click it to display router name and domain name items.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Router Name - Type in the router name provided by ISP. ● Domain Name - Type in the domain name that you have assigned. ● DHCP Client Identifier* - Check the box to specify username and password as the DHCP client identifier for some ISP. ● Username: Type a name as username. The maximum length of the user name you can set is 63 characters. ● Password: Type a password. The maximum length of the password you can set is 62 characters. <p>Specify an IP address - Click this radio button to specify some data.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● IP Address - Type in the private IP address. ● Subnet Mask - Type in the subnet mask. ● Gateway IP Address - Type in gateway IP address. <p>WAN IP Alias - If you have multiple public IP addresses and would like to utilize them on the WAN interface, please use WAN IP Alias. You can set up to 32 public IP addresses other than the current one you are using. Notice that this setting is available for WAN1 only. Type the additional WAN IP address and check the Enable box. Then click OK to exit the dialog.</p>
DNS Server IP Address	Enter the primary IP address for the router if you want to use Static IP mode. If necessary, type in secondary IP address for necessity in the future.
WAN Connection Detection	Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through ARP Detect or Ping Detect. <p>Mode - Choose ARP Detect or Ping Detect or Always On or Strict ARP Detect for the system to execute for WAN detection. If you choose Ping Detect as the detection mode, you have to type required settings for the following items.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Primary/Secondary Ping IP - If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you have to type Primary or Secondary IP address in this field for ping. ● Ping Gateway IP - If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you also can enable this setting to use current WAN gateway IP address for ping. With the IP address(es) ping, Vigor router can check if the WAN connection is on or off. ● TTL (Time to Live) - Set TTL value of PING operation.

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Ping Interval - Type the interval for the system to execute the PING operation. ● Ping Retry - Type the number of times that the system is allowed to execute the PING operation before WAN disconnection is judged.
MTU	It means Max Transmit Unit for packet.
RIP Routing	Routing Information Protocol is abbreviated as RIP (RFC1058) specifying how routers exchange routing tables information. Click Enable RIP for activating this function.
Bridge Mode	<p>Enable Bridge Mode - If the function is enabled, the router will work as a bridge modem.</p> <p>Enable Firewall - It is available when Bridge Mode is enabled. When both Bridge Mode and Firewall check boxes are enabled, the settings configured (user profiles) under User Management will be ignored. And all of the filter rules defined and enabled in Firewall menu will be activated.</p> <p>Bridge Subnet - Make a bridge between the selected LAN subnet and such WAN interface.</p>
MAC Address	<p>Default MAC Address - You can use Default MAC Address or specify another MAC address by typing on the boxes of MAC Address for the router.</p> <p>Use the following MAC Address - Enter the MAC address for the router manually.</p>

After finishing all the settings here, please click OK to activate them.

II-1-2-3 Details Page for PPPoE in Ethernet WAN

To choose PPPoE as the accessing protocol of the Internet, please select PPPoE from the WAN>>Internet Access >>WAN1 page. The following web page will be shown.

WAN >> Internet Access

WAN 2

PPPoE	Static or Dynamic IP	PPTP/L2TP	IPv6
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable			
ISP Access Setup Username: <input type="text" value="84005657@hinet.net"/> Password: <input type="password" value="....."/> More Options +			
WAN Connection Detection Mode: <input type="text" value="PPP Detect"/>			
MTU: <input type="text" value="1492"/> (Max: 1500)			
PPP/MP Setup PPP Authentication: <input type="text" value="PAP/CHAP/MS-CHAP/MS-CHAPv2"/> Idle Timeout: <input type="text" value="-1"/> second(s) IP Assignment: <input type="radio"/> Static <input checked="" type="radio"/> Dynamic (IPCP) Fixed IP Address: <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="WAN IP Alias"/>		Dial-Out Schedule Index(1-15) in <u>Schedule Setup</u> : <input type="text" value="None"/> => <input type="text" value="None"/> => <input type="text" value="None"/> => <input type="text" value="None"/>	
TTL <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Change the TTL value <input checked="" type="radio"/> Default MAC Address <input type="radio"/> Use the following MAC Address <input type="text" value="00:1D:AA:54:A3:FA"/>			

Note:

VPN feature may be affected when the value of MTU is changed, please also check your value of VPN mss by using "VPN mss set" command.
 We recommend to put the same decreased value on VPN mss. For example, reducing the MTU from 1500 -> 1400, then it will need to reduce 100 from mss value.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable/Disable	Click Enable for activating this function. If you click Disable , this function will be closed and all the settings that you adjusted in this page will be invalid.
ISP Access Setup	Enter your allocated username, password and authentication parameters according to the information provided by your ISP. Username - Type in the username provided by ISP in this field. The maximum length of the user name you can set is 63 characters. Password - Type in the password provided by ISP in this field. The maximum length of the password you can set is 62 characters. More Options - Click it to display router name and domain name items. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Service Name - Enter the description of the specific network service.

WAN Connection Detection	<p>Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through ARP Detect or Ping Detect.</p> <p>Mode - Choose ARP Detect or Ping Detect for the system to execute for WAN detection. If you choose Ping Detect as the detection mode, you have to type required settings for the following items.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Primary/Secondary Ping IP - If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you have to type Primary or Secondary IP address in this field for pinging. ● Ping Gateway IP - If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you also can enable this setting to use current WAN gateway IP address for pinging. With the IP address(es) pinging, Vigor router can check if the WAN connection is on or off. ● TTL (Time to Live) - Set TTL value of PING operation. ● Ping Interval - Type the interval for the system to execute the PING operation. ● Ping Retry - Type the number of times that the system is allowed to execute the PING operation before WAN disconnection is judged.
MTU	It means Max Transmit Unit for packet.
PPP/MP Setup	<p>PPP Authentication - Select PAP only or PAP or CHAP for PPP.</p> <p>Idle Timeout - Set the timeout for breaking down the Internet after passing through the time without any action.</p>
PPP/MP Setup	<p>PPP Authentication - Select PAP only or PAP or CHAP for PPP.</p> <p>Idle Timeout - Set the timeout for breaking down the Internet after passing through the time without any action.</p> <p>IP Assignment (IPCP)- Usually ISP dynamically assigns IP address to you each time you connect to it and request. In some case, your ISP provides service to always assign you the same IP address whenever you request. In this case, you can fill in this IP address in the Fixed IP field. Please contact your ISP before you want to use this function.</p> <p>Fixed IP Address - Type in a fixed IP address.</p> <p>WAN IP Alias - If you have multiple public IP addresses and would like to utilize them on the WAN interface, please use WAN IP Alias. You can set up to 32 public IP addresses other than the current one you are using. Type the additional WAN IP address and check the Enable box. Then click OK to exit the dialog.</p>
Dial-Out Schedule	Index (1-15) in Schedule Setup - You can type in four sets of time schedule for your request. All the schedules can be set previously in Applications >> Schedule web page and you can use the number that you have set in that web page.
TTL	<p>Change the TTL value - Enable or disable the TTL (Time to Live) for a packet transmitted through Vigor router.</p> <p>Enable - TTL value will be reduced (-1) when it pass through Vigor router. It will cause the client, accessing Internet through Vigor router, be blocked by certain ISP when TTL value becomes "0".</p> <p>Disable - TTL value will not be reduced. Then, when a packet passes through Vigor router, it will not be cancelled. That is, the client who sends out the packet will not be blocked by</p>

	<p>ISP.</p> <p>Default MAC Address - You can use Default MAC Address or specify another MAC address by typing on the boxes of MAC Address for the router.</p> <p>Specify a MAC Address - Type the MAC address for the router manually.</p>
--	---

After finishing all the settings here, please click OK to activate them.

II-1-2-4 Details Page for Static or Dynamic IP in Ethernet WAN

For static IP mode, you usually receive a fixed public IP address or a public subnet, namely multiple public IP addresses from your DSL or Cable ISP service providers. In most cases, a Cable service provider will offer a fixed public IP, while a DSL service provider will offer a public subnet. If you have a public subnet, you could assign an IP address or many IP address to the WAN interface.

To use **Static or Dynamic IP** as the accessing protocol of the internet, please click the **Static or Dynamic IP** tab. The following web page will be shown.

WAN >> Internet Access

WAN 2

PPPoE	Static or Dynamic IP	PPTP/L2TP	IPv6
<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable		Keep WAN Connection <input type="checkbox"/> Enable PING to keep alive PING to the IP: <input type="text"/> PING Interval: <input type="text"/> minute(s)	
IP Network Settings <input checked="" type="radio"/> Obtain an IP address automatically More Options + <input type="radio"/> Specify an IP address IP Address: <input type="text"/> Subnet Mask: <input type="text"/> Gateway IP Address: <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="WAN IP Alias"/>		TTL <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Change the TTL value	
DNS Server IP Address Primary Server: <input type="text" value="8.8.8.8"/> Secondary Server: <input type="text" value="8.8.4.4"/>		RIP Routing <input type="checkbox"/> Enable RIP	
WAN Connection Detection Mode: <input type="text" value="ARP Detect"/>		Bridge Mode <input type="checkbox"/> Enable Bridge Mode Bridge Subnet: <input type="text" value="LAN 1"/>	
MTU <input type="text" value="1492"/>		MAC Address <input checked="" type="radio"/> Default MAC Address <input type="radio"/> Use the following MAC Address <input type="text" value="00:1D:AA:54:A3:FA"/>	

Note:

VPN feature may be affected when the value of MTU is changed, please also check your value of VPN mss by using "VPN mss set" command.

We recommend to put the same decreased value on VPN mss. For example, reducing the MTU from 1500 -> 1400, then it will need to reduce 100 from mss value.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable / Disable	Click Enable for activating this function. If you click Disable , this function will be closed and all the settings that you adjusted in this page will be invalid.

IP Network Settings	<p>This group allows you to obtain an IP address automatically and allows you type in IP address manually.</p> <p>Obtain an IP address automatically - Click this button to obtain the IP address automatically if you want to use Dynamic IP mode.</p> <p>More Options - It shows optional settings for configuration.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Router Name: Type in the router name provided by ISP. ● Domain Name: Type in the domain name that you have assigned. ● Enable DHCP Client Identifier: Check the box to specify username and password as the DHCP client identifier for some ISP. ● Username: Type a name as username. The maximum length of the user name you can set is 63 characters. ● Password: Type a password. The maximum length of the password you can set is 62 characters. <p>Specify an IP address - Click this radio button to specify some data if you want to use Static IP mode.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● IP Address: Type the IP address. ● Subnet Mask: Type the subnet mask. ● Gateway IP Address: Type the gateway IP address. <p>WAN IP Alias - If you have multiple public IP addresses and would like to utilize them on the WAN interface, please use WAN IP Alias. You can set up to 32 public IP addresses other than the current one you are using.</p>
DNS Server IP Address	<p>Enter the primary IP address for the router if you want to use Static IP mode. If necessary, type in secondary IP address for necessity in the future.</p>
WAN Connection Detection	<p>Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through ARP Detect or Ping Detect.</p> <p>Mode - Choose ARP Detect or Ping Detect or Always On or Strict ARP Detect for the system to execute for WAN detection. If you choose Ping Detect as the detection mode, you have to type required settings for the following items.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Primary/Secondary Ping IP - If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you have to type Primary or Secondary IP address in this field for ping. ● Ping Gateway IP - If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you also can enable this setting to use current WAN gateway IP address for ping. With the IP address(es) ping, Vigor router can check if the WAN connection is on or off. ● TTL (Time to Live) - Set TTL value of PING operation. ● Ping Interval - Type the interval for the system to execute the PING operation. ● Ping Retry - Type the number of times that the system is allowed to execute the PING operation before WAN disconnection is judged.
MTU	<p>It means Max Transmit Unit for packet.</p>
Keep WAN Connection	<p>Normally, this function is designed for Dynamic IP environments because some ISPs will drop connections if there is no traffic within certain periods of time. Check Enable PING to keep alive box to activate this function.</p>

	<p>PING to the IP - If you enable the PING function, please specify the IP address for the system to PING it for keeping alive.</p> <p>PING Interval - Enter the interval for the system to execute the PING operation.</p>
TTL	<p>Change the TTL value - Enable or disable the TTL (Time to Live) for a packet transmitted through Vigor router.</p> <p>Enable - TTL value will be reduced (-1) when it passes through Vigor router. It will cause the client, accessing Internet through Vigor router, be blocked by certain ISP when TTL value becomes "0".</p> <p>Disable - TTL value will not be reduced. Then, when a packet passes through Vigor router, it will not be cancelled. That is, the client who sends out the packet will not be blocked by ISP.</p>
RIP Routing	<p>Routing Information Protocol is abbreviated as RIP (RFC1058) specifying how routers exchange routing tables information. Click Enable RIP for activating this function.</p>
Bridge Mode	<p>Enable Bridge Mode - If the function is enabled, the router will work as a bridge modem.</p> <p>Enable Firewall - It is available when Bridge Mode is enabled. When both Bridge Mode and Firewall check boxes are enabled, the settings configured (user profiles) under User Management will be ignored. And all of the filter rules defined and enabled in Firewall menu will be activated.</p> <p>Bridge Subnet - Make a bridge between the selected LAN subnet and such WAN interface.</p>
MAC Address	<p>Default MAC Address: Click this radio button to use default MAC address for the router.</p> <p>Specify a MAC Address: Some Cable service providers specify a specific MAC address for access authentication. In such cases you need to click the Specify a MAC Address and enter the MAC address in the MAC Address field.</p>

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to activate them.

II-1-2-5 Details Page for PPTP/L2TP in Ethernet WAN

To use PPTP/L2TP as the accessing protocol of the internet, please click the PPTP/L2TP tab. The following web page will be shown.

WAN >> Internet Access

WAN 2

PPPoE	Static or Dynamic IP	PPTP/L2TP	IPv6
<input type="radio"/> Enable PPTP <input type="radio"/> Enable L2TP <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable Server Address <input type="text" value="Max: 63 characters"/> Specify Gateway IP Address <input type="text" value="Max: 63 characters"/>		PPP Setup PPP Authentication <input type="text" value="PAP/CHAP/MS-CHAP/MS-CHAPv2"/> Idle Timeout <input type="text" value="-1"/> second(s)	
ISP Access Setup Username <input type="text" value="84005657@hinet.net"/> Password <input type="password" value="....."/> Schedule Profile: <input type="text" value="None"/> => <input type="text" value="None"/> => <input type="text" value="None"/> => <input type="text" value="None"/>		IP Address Assignment Method (IPCP) <input type="text" value="WAN IP Alias"/> Fixed IP: <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No (Dynamic IP) Fixed IP Address <input type="text"/> WAN IP Network Settings <input checked="" type="radio"/> Obtain an IP address automatically <input type="radio"/> Specify an IP address IP Address <input type="text"/> Subnet Mask <input type="text"/>	
MTU <input type="text" value="1460"/> (Max:1460)			

Note:

VPN feature may be affected when the value of MTU is changed, please also check your value of VPN mss by using "VPN mss set" command. We recommend to put the same decreased value on VPN mss. For example, reducing the MTU from 1500 -> 1400, then it will need to reduce 100 from mss value.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
PPTP/L2TP	<p>Enable PPTP - Click this radio button to enable a PPTP client to establish a tunnel to a DSL modem on the WAN interface.</p> <p>Enable L2TP - Click this radio button to enable a L2TP client to establish a tunnel to a DSL modem on the WAN interface.</p> <p>Disable - Click this radio button to close the connection through PPTP or L2TP.</p> <p>Server Address - Specify the IP address of the PPTP/L2TP server if you enable PPTP/L2TP client mode.</p> <p>Specify Gateway IP Address - Specify the gateway IP address for DHCP server.</p>
ISP Access Setup	<p>Username -Type in the username provided by ISP in this field. The maximum length of the user name you can set is 63 characters.</p> <p>Password -Type in the password provided by ISP in this field. The maximum length of the password you can set is 62 characters.</p> <p>Schedule Profile - You can type in four sets of time schedule for your request. All the schedules can be set previously in Application >> Schedule web page and you can use the number that you have set in that web page.</p>
MTU	It means Max Transmit Unit for packet.

PPP Setup	<p>PPP Authentication - Select PAP only or PAP or CHAP for PPP.</p> <p>Idle Timeout - Set the timeout for breaking down the Internet after passing through the time without any action.</p>
IP Address Assignment Method(IPCP)	<p>WAN IP Alias - If you have multiple public IP addresses and would like to utilize them on the WAN interface, please use WAN IP Alias. You can set up to 32 public IP addresses other than the current one you are using.</p> <p>Fixed IP - Usually ISP dynamically assigns IP address to you each time you connect to it and request. In some case, your ISP provides service to always assign you the same IP address whenever you request. In this case, you can fill in this IP address in the Fixed IP field. Please contact your ISP before you want to use this function. Click Yes to use this function and type in a fixed IP address in the box.</p> <p>Fixed IP Address -Type a fixed IP address.</p>
WAN IP Network Settings	<p>Obtain an IP address automatically - Click this button to obtain the IP address automatically.</p> <p>Specify an IP address - Click this radio button to specify some data.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● IP Address - Type the IP address. ● Subnet Mask - Type the subnet mask.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to activate them.

II-1-2-6 Details Page for 3G/4G USB Modem (PPP mode) in USB WAN

To use **3G/4G USB Modem (PPP mode)** as the accessing protocol of the internet, please choose **Internet Access** from **WAN** menu. Then, select **3G/4G USB Modem (PPP mode)** for **WAN5**. The following web page will be shown.



WAN 3

3G/4G USB Modem(PPP mode)
3G/4G USB Modem(DHCP mode)
IPv6

[Modem Support List](#)

3G/4G USB Modem(PPP mode) Enable Disable

SIM PIN code

Modem Initial String
(Default:AT&FE0V1X1&D2&C1S0=0)

APN Name Apply

Modem Initial String2

Modem Dial String
(Default:ATDT*99#, CDMA:ATDT#777, TD-SCDMA:ATDT*98*1#)

Service Name (Optional)

PPP Username (Optional)

PPP Password (Optional)

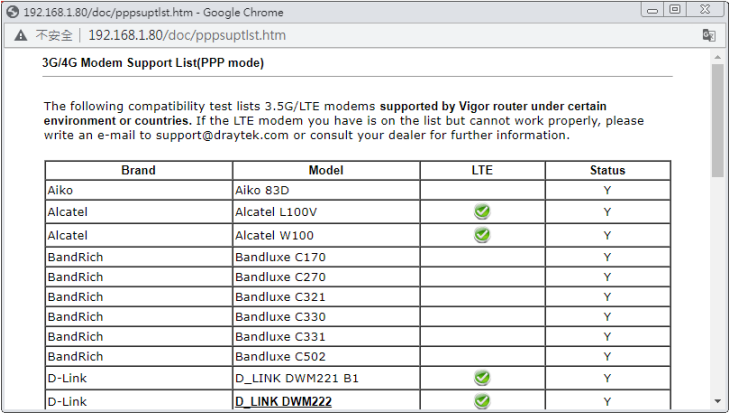
PPP Authentication

Schedule Profile:
 => => =>

WAN Connection Detection
 Mode

OK Cancel Default

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description																																																
Modem Support List	<p>It lists all of the modems supported by such router.</p>  <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse; text-align: center;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Brand</th> <th>Model</th> <th>LTE</th> <th>Status</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>Aiko</td><td>Aiko 83D</td><td></td><td>Y</td></tr> <tr><td>Alcatel</td><td>Alcatel L100V</td><td>✔</td><td>Y</td></tr> <tr><td>Alcatel</td><td>Alcatel W100</td><td>✔</td><td>Y</td></tr> <tr><td>BandRich</td><td>Bandlux C170</td><td></td><td>Y</td></tr> <tr><td>BandRich</td><td>Bandlux C270</td><td></td><td>Y</td></tr> <tr><td>BandRich</td><td>Bandlux C321</td><td></td><td>Y</td></tr> <tr><td>BandRich</td><td>Bandlux C330</td><td></td><td>Y</td></tr> <tr><td>BandRich</td><td>Bandlux C331</td><td></td><td>Y</td></tr> <tr><td>BandRich</td><td>Bandlux C502</td><td></td><td>Y</td></tr> <tr><td>D-Link</td><td>D_LINK DWM221 B1</td><td>✔</td><td>Y</td></tr> <tr><td>D-Link</td><td>D_LINK DWM222</td><td>✔</td><td>Y</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Brand	Model	LTE	Status	Aiko	Aiko 83D		Y	Alcatel	Alcatel L100V	✔	Y	Alcatel	Alcatel W100	✔	Y	BandRich	Bandlux C170		Y	BandRich	Bandlux C270		Y	BandRich	Bandlux C321		Y	BandRich	Bandlux C330		Y	BandRich	Bandlux C331		Y	BandRich	Bandlux C502		Y	D-Link	D_LINK DWM221 B1	✔	Y	D-Link	D_LINK DWM222	✔	Y
Brand	Model	LTE	Status																																														
Aiko	Aiko 83D		Y																																														
Alcatel	Alcatel L100V	✔	Y																																														
Alcatel	Alcatel W100	✔	Y																																														
BandRich	Bandlux C170		Y																																														
BandRich	Bandlux C270		Y																																														
BandRich	Bandlux C321		Y																																														
BandRich	Bandlux C330		Y																																														
BandRich	Bandlux C331		Y																																														
BandRich	Bandlux C502		Y																																														
D-Link	D_LINK DWM221 B1	✔	Y																																														
D-Link	D_LINK DWM222	✔	Y																																														
3G /4G USB Modem (PPP mode)	Click Enable for activating this function. If you click Disable , this function will be closed and all the settings that you adjusted in this page will be invalid.																																																
SIM PIN code	Type PIN code of the SIM card that will be used to access Internet. The maximum length of the PIN code you can set is 15 characters.																																																
Modem Initial String	Such value is used to initialize USB modem. Please use the default value. If you have any question, please contact to your ISP. The maximum length of the string you can set is 47 characters.																																																

APN Name	APN means Access Point Name which is provided and required by some ISPs. Type the name and click Apply . The maximum length of the name you can set is 43 characters.
Modem Initial String2	The initial string 1 is shared with APN. In some cases, user may need another initial AT command to restrict 3G band or do any special settings. The maximum length of the string you can set is 47 characters.
Modem Dial String	Such value is used to dial through USB mode. Please use the default value. If you have any question, please contact to your ISP. The maximum length of the string you can set is 31 characters.
Service Name	Enter the description of the specific network service.
PPP Username	Type the PPP username (optional). The maximum length of the name you can set is 63 characters.
PPP Password	Type the PPP password (optional). The maximum length of the password you can set is 62 characters.
PPP Authentication	Select PAP only or PAP or CHAP for PPP.
Schedule Profile	You can type in four sets of time schedule for your request. All the schedules can be set previously in Application >> Schedule web page and you can use the number that you have set in that web page.
WAN Connection Detection	Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through PPP Detect or Ping Detect. Mode - Choose PPP Detect or Ping Detect for the system to execute for WAN detection. If you choose Ping Detect as the detection mode, you have to type required settings for the following items. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Primary/Secondary Ping IP - If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you have to type Primary or Secondary IP address in this field for pinging. ● TTL (Time to Live) - Set TTL value of PING operation. ● Ping Interval - Type the interval for the system to execute the PING operation. ● Ping Retry - Type the number of times that the system is allowed to execute the PING operation before WAN disconnection is judged.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to activate them.

II-1-2-7 Details Page for 3G/4G USB Modem (DHCP mode) in USB WAN

To use 3G/4G USB Modem (DHCP mode) as the accessing protocol of the internet, please choose Internet Access from WAN menu. Then, select 3G/4G USB Modem (DHCP mode) for WAN3/WAN4. The following web page will be shown.

WAN >> Internet Access



WAN 3

3G/4G USB Modem(PPP mode)

3G/4G USB Modem(DHCP mode)

IPv6

[Modem Support List](#)

Enable Disable

SIM PIN code

Network Mode **4G/3G/2G** (Default:4G/3G/2G)

APN Name

Disable Auto APN

LTE hardware version ---

WAN Connection Detection

Mode **ARP Detect**

Schedule Profile:

None => **None**

=> **None** => **None**

MTU (Default:1500)

Path MTU Discovery

Authentication **PAP or CHAP**

Username (Optional)

Password (Optional)

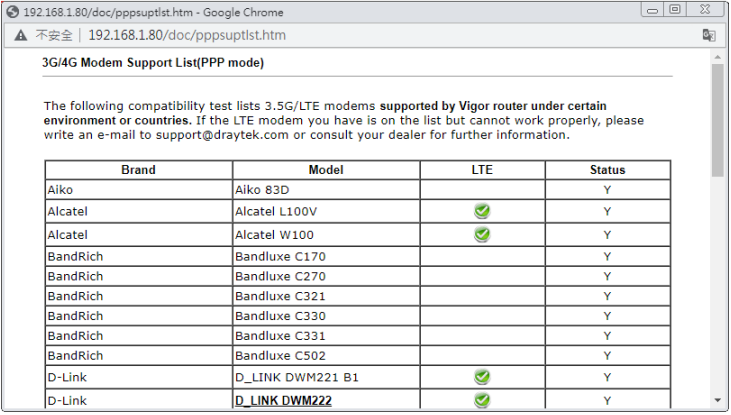
Note:

- Please note that in some case USB port connection will be terminated temporarily to activate the new configuration.
- VPN feature may be affected when the value of MTU is changed, please also check your value of VPN mss by using "VPN mss set" command.
We recommend to put the same decreased value on VPN mss. For example, reducing the MTU from 1500 -> 1400, then it will need to reduce 100 from mss value.

OK

Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Modem Support List	It lists all of the modems supported by such router. 
Enable / Disable	Click Enable for activating this function. If you click Disable, this function will be closed and all the settings that you adjusted in this page will be invalid.

SIM PIN code	Type PIN code of the SIM card that will be used to access Internet. The maximum length of the PIN code you can set is 19 characters.
Network Mode	Force Vigor router to connect Internet with the mode specified here. If you choose 4G/3G/2G as network mode, the router will choose a suitable one according to the actual wireless signal automatically.
APN Name	APN means Access Point Name which is provided and required by some ISPs. Type the name and click Apply . The maximum length of the name you can set is 47 characters.
WAN Connection Detection	Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through ARP Detect or Ping Detect. Mode - Choose ARP Detect or Ping Detect or Strict ARP Detect for the system to execute for WAN detection. If you choose Ping Detect as the detection mode, you have to type required settings for the following items. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Primary/Secondary Ping IP - If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you have to type Primary or Secondary IP address in this field for pinging. ● Ping Gateway IP - If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you also can enable this setting to use current WAN gateway IP address for pinging. With the IP address(es) pinging, Vigor router can check if the WAN connection is on or off. ● TTL (Time to Live) - Set TTL value of PING operation. ● Ping Interval - Type the interval for the system to execute the PING operation. ● Ping Retry - Type the number of times that the system is allowed to execute the PING operation before WAN disconnection is judged.
Schedule Profiles	Set the wireless LAN to work at certain time interval only. You may choose up to 4 schedules out of the 15 schedules pre-defined in Applications >> Schedule setup. The default setting of this field is blank and the function will always work.
MTU	It means Max Transmit Unit for packet.
Authentication	Select PAP only or PAP or CHAP for PPP authentication. Username - Type the username for authentication (optional). Password - Type the password for authentication (optional).

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to activate them.

II-1-2-8 Details Page for IPv6 – Offline in WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4

When Offline is selected, the IPv6 connection will be disabled.

II-1-2-9 Details Page for IPv6 – PPP in WAN1/WAN2

During the procedure of IPv4 PPPoE connection, we can get the IPv6 Link Local Address between the gateway and Vigor router through IPv6CP. Later, use DHCPv6 or accept RA to acquire the IPv6 prefix address (such as: 2001:B010:7300:200::/64) offered by the ISP. In

addition, PCs under LAN also can have the public IPv6 address for Internet access by means of the generated prefix.

No need to type any other information for PPP mode.

WAN >> Internet Access



WAN 1

PPPoE / PPPoA	MPoA / Static or Dynamic IP	IPv6
Internet Access Mode		
Connection Type		PPP
WAN Connection Detection		
Mode		Ping Detect
Ping IP/Hostname		
TTL(1-255,0:Auto)		0
RIPng Protocol		
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable		

Note:

IPv4 WAN setting should be PPPoE / PPPoA client.

OK Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
WAN Connection Detection	Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through Ping Detect. Mode - Choose Always On or Ping Detect for the system to execute for WAN detection. Always On means no detection will be executed. The network connection will be on always. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Ping IP/Hostname - If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for pinging. ● TTL (Time to Live) -If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you have to type TTL value.
RIPng Protocol	RIPng (RIP next generation) offers the same functions and benefits as IPv4 RIP v2.

Below shows an example for successful IPv6 connection based on PPP mode.

Online Status

Physical Connection		System Uptime: 0:2:32	
IPv4	IPv6		
LAN Status			
IP Address			
2001:B010:7300:201:21D:AFF:FEA6:2568/64 (Global)			
FE80::21D:AFF:FEA6:2568/64 (Link)			
TX Packets	RX Packets	TX Bytes	RX Bytes
7	4	690	328
WAN2 IPv6 Status >> Drop PPP			
Enable	Mode	Up Time	
Yes	PPP	0:02:08	
IP		Gateway IP	
2001:B010:7300:201:21D:AFF:FEA6:256A/128 (Global)		FE80::90:1A00:242:AD52	
FE80::1D:AFF:FEA6:256A/128 (Link)			
DNS IP			
2001:8000:168::1			
2001:8000:168::2			
TX Packets	RX Packets	TX Bytes	RX Bytes
7	9	544	1126



Info

At present, the IPv6 prefix can be acquired via the PPPoE mode connection which is available for the areas such as Taiwan (hinet), the Netherlands, Australia and UK.

II-1-2-10 Details Page for IPv6 – TSPC in WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4

Tunnel setup protocol client (TSPC) is an application which could help you to connect to IPv6 network easily.

Please make sure your IPv4 WAN connection is OK and apply one free account from hexago (<http://gogonet.gogo6.com/page/freenet6-account>) before you try to use TSPC for network connection. TSPC would connect to tunnel broker and requests a tunnel according to the specifications inside the configuration file. It gets a public IPv6 IP address and an IPv6 prefix from the tunnel broker and then monitors the state of the tunnel in background.

After getting the IPv6 prefix and starting router advertisement daemon (RADVD), the PC behind this router can directly connect to IPv6 the Internet.



WAN 1

PPPoE / PPPoA	MPoA / Static or Dynamic IP	IPv6
Internet Access Mode		
Connection Type		TSPC ▼
TSPC Configuration		
Username		Max: 63 characters
Password		Max: 63 characters
Tunnel Broker		
WAN Connection Detection		
Mode		Ping Detect ▼
Ping IP/Hostname		
TTL(1-255,0:Auto)		0
OK		Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Username	Type the name obtained from the broker. It is suggested for you to apply another username and password for http://gogonet.gogo6.com/page/freenet6-account . The maximum length of the name you can set is 63 characters.
Password	Type the password assigned with the user name. The maximum length of the name you can set is 19 characters.
Tunnel Broker	Type the address for the tunnel broker IP, FQDN or an optional port number.
WAN Connection Detection	Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through Ping Detect. Mode - Choose Always On or Ping Detect for the system to execute for WAN detection. Always On means no detection will be executed. The network connection will be on always. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Ping IP/Hostname - If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for ping. ● TTL (Time to Live) -If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you have to type TTL value.

After finished the above settings, click OK to save the settings.

II-1-2-11 Details Page for IPv6 – AICCU in WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4

WAN >> Internet Access



WAN 1

PPPoE / PPPoA	MPoA / Static or Dynamic IP	IPv6
Internet Access Mode Connection Type: <input type="text" value="AICCU"/>		
AICCU Configuration <input type="checkbox"/> Always On Username: <input type="text" value="Max: 63 characters"/> Password: <input type="text" value="Max: 63 characters"/> Tunnel Broker: <input type="text" value="tic.sixxs.net"/> Tunnel ID: <input type="text"/> Subnet Prefix: <input type="text"/> / <input type="text"/>		
WAN Connection Detection Mode: <input type="text" value="Ping Detect"/> Ping IP/Hostname: <input type="text"/> TTL(1-255,0:Auto): <input type="text" value="0"/>		

Note:

If "Always On" is not enabled, AICCU connection would only retry three times.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Always On	Check this box to keep the network connection always.
Username	Type the name obtained from the broker. Please apply new account at http://www.sixxs.net/ . It is suggested for you to apply another username and password. The maximum length of the name you can set is 19 characters.
Password	Type the password assigned with the user name. The maximum length of the password you can set is 19 characters.
Tunnel Broker	It means a server of AICCU. The server can provide IPv6 tunnels to sites or end users over IPv4. Type the address for the tunnel broker IP, FQDN or an optional port number.
Tunnel ID	One user account may have several tunnels. And, each tunnel shall have one specified tunnel ID (e.g., T115394). Type the ID offered by Tunnel Broker.
Subnet Prefix	Type the subnet prefix address obtained from service provider. The maximum length of the prefix you can set is 128 characters.

WAN Connection Detection	Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through Ping Detect. Mode - Choose Always On or Ping Detect for the system to execute for WAN detection. <ul style="list-style-type: none">● Ping IP/Hostname - If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for pinging.● TTL (Time to Live) -If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you have to type TTL value.
---------------------------------	--

After finished the above settings, click OK to save the settings.

II-1-2-12 Details Page for IPv6 – DHCPv6 Client in WAN1/WAN2

DHCPv6 client mode would use DHCPv6 protocol to obtain IPv6 address from server.

WAN >> Internet Access



WAN 1

PPPoE / PPPoA MPoA / Static or Dynamic IP IPv6

Internet Access Mode
 Connection Type: DHCPv6 Client

DHCPv6 Client Configuration
 IAID (Identity Association ID): 44178403
 DUID (DHCP Unique ID): 00030001001daa54a3f9
 Authentication Protocol: None

WAN Connection Detection
 Mode: Ping Detect
 Ping IP/Hostname:
 TTL(1-255,0:Auto): 0

RIPng Protocol
 Enable

Bridge Mode
 Enable Bridge Mode
 Bridge Subnet: LAN 1

OK Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
DHCPv6 Client Configuration	<p>IAID - Type a number as IAID.</p> <p>DUID - Display the DHCP unique ID used by such WAN interface.</p> <p>Authentication Protocol - Such protocol will be used for the client to be authenticated by DHCPv6 server before accessing into Internet. There are three types can be specified, Reconfigure Key, Delayed and None. In general, the default setting is None.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Reconfigure Key - During the connection process, DHCPv6 server will authenticate the client automatically. ● Delayed - During the connection process, DHCPv6 server will authenticate and identify the client based on the key ID, realm and secret information specified in these fields. <p>Key ID - Type a value (range from 1 to 65535) which will be used to generate HMAC-MD5 value.</p> <p>Realm - The name (1 to 31 characters) typed here will identify the key which generates HMAC-MD5 value.</p> <p>Secret - Type a text (1 to 31 characters) as a unique identifier for each client on each DHCP server.</p>

WAN Connection Detection	<p>Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through NS Detect or Ping Detect.</p> <p>Mode - Choose Always On, Ping Detect or NS Detect for the system to execute for WAN detection. With NS Detect mode, the system will check if network connection is established or not, like IPv4 ARP Detect. Always On means no detection will be executed. The network connection will be on always.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Ping IP/Hostname - If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for pinging. ● TTL (Time to Live) -If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you have to type TTL value.
Bridge Mode	<p>Enable Bridge Mode - If the function is enabled, the router will work as a bridge modem.</p> <p>Enable Firewall - It is available when Bridge Mode is enabled. When both Bridge Mode and Firewall check boxes are enabled, the settings configured (user profiles) under User Management will be ignored. And all of the filter rules defined and enabled in Firewall menu will be activated.</p> <p>Bridge Subnet - Make a bridge between the selected LAN subnet and such WAN interface.</p>

After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the settings.

II-1-2-13 Details Page for IPv6 – Static IPv6 in in WAN1/WAN2

This type allows you to setup static IPv6 address for WAN interface.

WAN >> Internet Access



WAN 1

PPPoE / PPPoA MPoA / Static or Dynamic IP IPv6

Internet Access Mode
 Connection Type: Static IPv6

Static IPv6 Address Configuration
 IPv6 Address: / Prefix Length:

Current IPv6 Address Table

Index	IPv6 Address/Prefix Length	Scope

Static IPv6 Gateway configuration
 IPv6 Gateway Address:

WAN Connection Detection
 Mode: Ping Detect
 Ping IP/Hostname:
 TTL(1-255,0:Auto):

RIPng Protocol
 Enable

Bridge Mode
 Enable Bridge Mode
 Bridge Subnet: LAN 1

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Static IPv6 Address Configuration	IPv6 Address - Type the IPv6 Static IP Address. Prefix Length - Type the fixed value for prefix length. Add - Click it to add a new entry. Delete - Click it to remove an existed entry.
Current IPv6 Address Table	Display current interface IPv6 address.
Static IPv6 Gateway Configuration	IPv6 Gateway Address - Type your IPv6 gateway address here.
WAN Connection	Such function allows you to verify whether network

Detection	<p>connection is alive or not through Ping Detect.</p> <p>Mode - Choose Always On or Ping Detect or NS Detect for the system to execute for WAN detection. Always On means no detection will be executed. The network connection will be on always.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Ping IP/Hostname - If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for pinging. ● TTL (Time to Live) -If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you have to type TTL value.
Bridge Mode	<p>Enable Bridge Mode - If the function is enabled, the router will work as a bridge modem.</p> <p>Enable Firewall - It is available when Bridge Mode is enabled. When both Bridge Mode and Firewall check boxes are enabled, the settings configured (user profiles) under User Management will be ignored. And all of the filter rules defined and enabled in Firewall menu will be activated.</p> <p>Bridge Subnet - Make a bridge between the selected LAN subnet and such WAN interface.</p>

After finished the above settings, click OK to save the settings.

II-1-2-14 Details Page for IPv6 – 6in4 Static Tunnel in WAN1 / WAN2

This type allows you to setup 6in4 Static Tunnel for WAN interface.

Such mode allows the router to access IPv6 network through IPv4 network.

However, 6in4 offers a prefix outside of 2002::0/16. So, you can use a fixed endpoint rather than anycast endpoint. The mode has more reliability.

WAN >> Internet Access



WAN 1

PPPoE / PPPoA	MPoA / Static or Dynamic IP	IPv6
Internet Access Mode		
Connection Type		6in4 Static Tunnel ▼
6in4 Static Tunnel		
Remote Endpoint IPv4 Address	<input type="text"/>	
6in4 IPv6 Address	<input type="text"/>	/ 64 (default:64)
LAN Routed Prefix	<input type="text"/>	/ 64 (default:64)
Tunnel TTL	<input type="text" value="255"/>	(default:255)
WAN Connection Detection		
Mode	Ping Detect ▼	
Ping IP/Hostname	<input type="text"/>	
TTL(1-255,0:Auto)	<input type="text" value="0"/>	
<input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>		



WAN 1

PPPoE / PPPoA MPoA / Static or Dynamic IP IPv6

Internet Access Mode
 Connection Type: 6in4 Static Tunnel

6in4 Static Tunnel
 Remote Endpoint IPv4 Address:
 6in4 IPv6 Address: / (default:64)
 LAN Routed Prefix: / (default:64)
 Tunnel TTL: (default:255)

WAN Connection Detection
 Mode: Ping Detect
 Ping IP/Hostname:
 TTL(1-255,0:Auto):

OK Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Remote Endpoint IPv4 Address	Type the static IPv4 address for the remote server.
6in4 IPv6 Address	Type the static IPv6 address for IPv4 tunnel with the value for prefix length.
LAN Routed Prefix	Type the static IPv6 address for LAN routing with the value for prefix length.
Tunnel TTL	Type the number for the data lifetime in tunnel.
WAN Connection Detection	Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through Ping Detect. Mode - Choose Always On or Ping Detect for the system to execute for WAN detection. Always On means no detection will be executed. The network connection will be on always. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Ping IP/Hostname - If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for pinging. ● TTL (Time to Live) -If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you have to type TTL value.

After finished the above settings, click OK to save the settings.

Below shows an example for successful IPv6 connection based on 6in4 Static Tunnel mode.

Online Status

Physical Connection

System Uptime: 0day 0:4:16

IPv4		IPv6	
LAN Status			
IP Address			
2001:4DD0:FF00:83E4:21D:AAFF:FE83:11B4/64 (Global)			
FE80::21D:AAFF:FE83:11B4/64 (Link)			
TX Packets	RX Packets	TX Bytes	RX Bytes
14	80	1244	6815
WAN1 IPv6 Status			
Enable	Mode	Up Time	
Yes	6in4 Static Tunnel	0:04:07	
IP			Gateway IP
2001:4DD0:FF10:83E4::2131/64 (Global)			---
FE80::C0A8:651D/128 (Link)			
TX Packets	RX Packets	TX Bytes	RX Bytes
3	26	211	2302

II-1-2-15 Details Page for IPv6 – 6rd in WAN1 / WAN2

This type allows you to setup 6rd for WAN interface.

WAN >> Internet Access



WAN 1

PPPoE / PPPoA	MPoA / Static or Dynamic IP	IPv6
Internet Access Mode		
Connection Type		6rd
6rd Settings		
6rd Mode		<input checked="" type="radio"/> Auto 6rd <input type="radio"/> Static 6rd
WAN Connection Detection		
Mode		Ping Detect
Ping IP/Hostname		
TTL(1-255,0:Auto)		0

Note:

Please setup IPv4 WAN as "DHCP" for Auto 6rd connection.

OK Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
6rd Mode	Auto 6rd - Retrieve 6rd prefix automatically from 6rd service provider. The IPv4 WAN must be set as "DHCP". Static 6rd - Set 6rd options manually.
IPv4 Border Relay	Type the IPv4 addresses of the 6rd Border Relay for a given 6rd domain.
IPv4 Mask Length	Type a number of high-order bits that are identical across all CE IPv4 addresses within a given 6rd domain. It may be any value between 0 and 32.
6rd Prefix	Type the 6rd IPv6 address.
6rd Prefix Length	Type the IPv6 prefix length for the 6rd IPv6 prefix in number of bits.
WAN Connection Detection	Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through Ping Detect. Mode - Choose Always On or Ping Detect for the system to execute for WAN detection. Always On means no detection will be executed. The network connection will be on always. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Ping IP/Hostname - If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for pinging. ● TTL (Time to Live) -If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you have to type TTL value.

After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the settings.

Below shows an example for successful IPv6 connection based on 6rd mode.

Online Status

Physical Connection

System Uptime: 0day 0:9:15

IPv4		IPv6	
LAN Status			
IP Address			
2001:E41:A865:1D00:21D:AAFF:FE83:11B4/64 (Global)			
FE80::21D:AAFF:FE83:11B4/64 (Link)			
TX Packets	RX Packets	TX Bytes	RX Bytes
15	113	1354	18040
WAN1 IPv6 Status			
Enable	Mode	Up Time	
Yes	6rd	0:09:06	
IP		Gateway IP	
2001:E41:A865:1D01:21D:AAFF:FE83:11B5/128 (Global)		---	
FE80::C0A8:651D/128 (Link)			
TX Packets	RX Packets	TX Bytes	RX Bytes
13	29	967	2620

II-1-3 Multi-PVC/VLAN

Multi-PVC/VLAN lets you configure multiple permanent virtual circuits (PVCs) and ATM QoS for channels using ADSL.

Channel 1 to 4 have the following fixed assignments and cannot be altered.

- Channel 1: ADSL on WAN1.
- Channel 2: Ethernet on WAN2.
- Channel 3: USB1 (WAN3).

Channels 5 through 10 can be bridged to one or more of the 3 LAN ports P2 through P4. In addition, Channels 5 through 7 can be configured as virtual WANs (WAN5 through WAN7).

General

The system allows you to set up to eight channels which are ready for choosing as the first PVC line that will be used as multi-PVC.

WAN >> Multi-PVC/VLAN



Multi-PVC/VLAN

General		Advanced			
Channel	Enable	WAN Type	VPI/VCI	VLAN Tag	Port-based Bridge
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	ADSL(WAN1)	0/33	None	
2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Ethernet(WAN2)		None	
5. WAN5	<input type="checkbox"/>	ADSL	1/45	None	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4
6. WAN6	<input type="checkbox"/>	ADSL	1/46	None	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4
7. WAN7	<input type="checkbox"/>	ADSL	1/47	None	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4
8.	<input type="checkbox"/>	ADSL	1/48	None	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4
9.	<input type="checkbox"/>	ADSL	1/49	None	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4
10.	<input type="checkbox"/>	ADSL	1/50	None	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4

Note:

Channel 3 and channel 4 are reserved for USB WAN.

OK

Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Channel	Display the number of each channel. Channels 1 and 2 are used by the Internet Access web user interface and can not be configured here. Channels 5 ~ 10 are configurable.
Enable	Display whether the settings in this channel are enabled (Yes) or not (No).
WAN Type	Displays the physical medium that the channel will use.
VPI/VCI	Display the value for VPI and VCI.
VLAN Tag	Displays the VLAN tag value that will be used for the packets traveling on this channel.

Port-based Bridge	<p>The network traffic flowing on each channel will be identified by the system via their VLAN Tags. Channels using the same WAN type may not configure the same VLAN tag value.</p> <p>Enable - Check this box to enable the port-based bridge function on this channel.</p> <p>P1 ~ P4 - Check the box(es) to build bridge connection on LAN.</p>
--------------------------	---

Click any index (8-10) to get the following web page:

WAN >> Multi-PVC/VLAN >> Channel 8

Enable Channel 8:
WAN Type : ADSL ▼

General Settings	ATM QoS
VPI <input style="width: 50px;" type="text" value="1"/>	QoS Type UBR ▼
VCI <input style="width: 50px;" type="text" value="48"/>	PCR <input style="width: 50px;" type="text" value="0"/>
Protocol PPPoA ▼	SCR <input style="width: 50px;" type="text" value="0"/>
Encapsulation VC MUX ▼	MBS <input style="width: 50px;" type="text" value="0"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Add VLAN Header	
VLAN Tag <input style="width: 50px;" type="text" value="0"/>	
Priority <input style="width: 50px;" type="text" value="0"/>	

Bridge mode

Enable

Physical Members

P1 P2 P3 P4

OK
Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Multi-VLAN Channel 8-10	<p>Enable - Click it to enable the configuration of this channel.</p> <p>Disable - Click it to disable the configuration of this channel.</p>
WAN Type	<p>The connections and interfaces created in every channel may select a specific WAN type to be built upon. In the Multi-VLAN application, only the Ethernet WAN type is available. The user will be able to select the physical WAN interface the channel shall use here.</p>
General Settings	<p>VPI - Type in the value provided by your ISP.</p> <p>VCI - Type in the value provided by your ISP.</p> <p>Protocol - Select a proper protocol for this channel.</p> <p>Encapsulation - Choose a proper type for this channel. The types will be different according to the protocol setting that you choose.</p> <p>Add VLAN Header - Check the box to enable the following two options.</p> <p>VLAN Tag - Type the value as the VLAN ID number. Valid settings are in the range from 1 to 4095. The network traffic flowing on each channel will be identified by the system via their VLAN Tags. Channels using the same WAN type may not</p>

	configure the same VLAN tag value. Priority - Choose the number to determine the packet priority for such VLAN. The range is from 0 to 7.
Bridge mode	Enable - Click it to enable Bridge mode for such channel. Physical Members - Group the physical ports by checking the corresponding check box(es) for applying the bridge connection.

WAN links for Channel 5, 6 and 7 are provided for router-borne application such as TR-069. The settings must be applied and obtained from your ISP. For your special request, please contact with your ISP and then click WAN link of Channel 5, 6 or 7 to configure your router.

WAN >> Multi-PVC/VLAN >> Channel 5

Enable Channel 5:
WAN Type : ADSL

General Settings	ATM QoS
VPI 1	QoS Type UBR
VCI 45	PCR 0
Protocol PPPoA	SCR 0
Encapsulation VC MUX	MBS 0
<input type="checkbox"/> Add VLAN Header	
VLAN Tag 0	
Priority 0	

Open Port-based Bridge Connection for this Channel

Physical Members
 P1 P2 P3 P4

Open WAN Interface for this Channel

WAN Application: Management IPTV

WAN Connection Detection
Mode ARP Detect

PPPoE/PPPoA Client	MPoA (RFC1483/2684)	
ISP Access Setup	<input type="radio"/> Obtain an IP address automatically	
ISP Name 	Router Name Vigor *	
Username 	Domain Name *	
Password 	*: Required for some ISPs	
PPP Authentication PAP or CHAP	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Specify an IP address	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Always On	IP Address 	
Idle Timeout -1 second(s)	Subnet Mask 	
IP Address From ISP	Gateway IP Address 	
Fixed IP <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No (Dynamic IP)	DNS Server IP Address	
Fixed IP Address 	Primary IP Address 8.8.8.8	
	Secondary IP Address 8.8.4.4	

OK Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Multi-VLAN Channel 5/6/7	Enable - Click it to enable the configuration of this channel. Disable -Click it to disable the configuration of this channel.
WAN Type	The connections and interfaces created in every channel may select a specific WAN type to be built upon. In the Multi-PVC application, only the Ethernet WAN type is available. The

	user will be able to select the physical WAN interface the channel shall use here.
General Settings	<p>VPI - Type in the value provided by your ISP.</p> <p>VCI - Type in the value provided by your ISP.</p> <p>Protocol - Select a proper protocol for this channel.</p> <p>Encapsulation - Choose a proper type for this channel. The types will be different according to the protocol setting that you choose.</p> <p>Add VLAN Header - Check the box to enable the following two options.</p> <p>VLAN Tag - Type the value as the VLAN ID number. Valid settings are in the range from 1 to 4095. The network traffic flowing on each channel will be identified by the system via their VLAN Tags. Channels using the same WAN type may not configure the same VLAN tag value.</p> <p>Priority - Choose the number to determine the packet priority for such VLAN. The range is from 0 to 7.</p>
ATM OoS	<p>Such function is available only when ADSL is selected as WAN Type.</p> <p>QoS Type - Select a proper QoS type for the channel.</p> <p>Type the values for PCR, SCR and MBS respectively.</p>
Open Port-based Bridge Connection for this Channel	<p>The settings here will create a bridge between the LAN ports selected and the WAN. The WAN interface of the bridge connection will be built upon the WAN type selected using the VLAN tag configured.</p> <p>Physical Members - Group the physical ports by checking the corresponding check box(es) for applying the port-based bridge connection.</p>
Open WAN Interface for this Channel	<p>Check the box to enable relating function.</p> <p>WAN Application -</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Management - It can be specified for general management (Web configuration/telnet/TR069). If you choose Management, the configuration for this VLAN will be effective for Web configuration/telnet/TR069. ● IPTV - The IPTV configuration will allow the WAN interface to send IGMP packets to IPTV servers. <p>WAN Connection Detection - It is available when Open WAN Interface for this Channel is enabled.</p> <p>It allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through ARP Detect or Ping Detect.</p> <p>Mode - Choose ARP Detect or Ping Detect for the system to execute for WAN detection. If you choose Ping Detect as the detection mode, you have to type required settings for the following items.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● ARP Detect - The router broadcasts an ARP request every 5 seconds. If no response is received within 30 seconds, the WAN connection is deemed to have failed. ● Ping Detect - The router sends an ICMP (Internet Control Message Protocol) echo request every second to the host, whose address is specified in the Ping IP field, to verify the WAN connection. If the remote host does not respond within 30 seconds, the WAN connection is deemed to have failed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Primary/Secondary Ping IP - If you choose Ping

	<p>Detect as detection mode, you have to type Primary or Secondary IP address in this field for pinging.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Ping Gateway IP - If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you also can enable this setting to use current WAN gateway IP address for pinging. <p>With the IP address(es) pinging, Vigor router can check if the WAN connection is on or off.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ TTL - Time To Live, the maximum allowed number of hops to the ping destination. Valid values range from 1 to 255. ■ Ping Interval - Type the interval for the system to execute the PING operation. ■ Ping Retry - Type the number of times that the system is allowed to execute the PING operation before WAN disconnection is judged.
<p>PPPoE/PPPoA Client ISP Access Setup</p>	<p>Enter your allocated username, password and authentication parameters according to the information provided by your ISP.</p> <p>ISP Name - PPP Service Name. Enter if your ISP requires this setting; otherwise leave blank.</p> <p>Username - Name provided by the ISP for PPPoE/PPPoA authentication. Maximum length is 62 characters.</p> <p>Password - Password provided by the ISP for PPPoE/PPPoA authentication. Maximum length is 62 characters.</p> <p>PPP Authentication -The protocol used for PPP authentication.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● PAP only- Only PAP (Password Authentication Protocol) is used. ● PAP or CHAP- Both PAP and CHAP (Challenge-Handshake Authentication Protocol) can be used for PPP authentication. Router negotiates with the PPTP or L2TP server to determine which protocol to use. <p>Always On - If selected, the router will maintain the PPPoE/PPPoA connection.</p> <p>Idle Timeout - Maximum length of time, in seconds, of idling allowed (no traffic) before the connection is dropped.</p> <p>ISP Address from ISP - Specifies how the WAN IP address of the channel configured.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Fixed IP Yes - IP address entered in the Fixed IP Address field will be used as the IP address of the virtual WAN. No - Virtual WAN IP address will be assigned by the ISP's PPPoE/PPPoA server.
<p>MPoA</p>	<p>Obtain an IP address automatically - Select this option if the router is to receive IP configuration information from a DHCP server.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Router Name - Sets the value of DHCP Option 12, which is used by some ISPs. ● Domain Name - Sets the value of DHCP Option 15, which is used by some ISPs. <p>Specify an IP address - Select this option to manually enter the IP address.</p>

- IP Address - Type in the IP address.
 - Subnet Mask - Type in the subnet mask.
 - Gateway IP Address - Type in gateway IP address.
- DNS Server IP Address - Enter in the primary IP address for the router if you want to use Static IP mode. If necessary, type in secondary IP address for necessity in the future.

After finished the above settings, click OK to save the settings and return to previous page.

Advanced

Such configuration is applied to upstream packets. Such information will be provided by ISP. Please contact with your ISP for detailed information.

WAN >> Multi-PVC/VLAN ?

Multi-PVC/VLAN

General		Advanced			
ATM QoS					
Channel	QoS Type	PCR	SCR	MBS	PVC to PVC Binding
1.	UBR ▾	0	0	0	Disable ▾
2.	UBR ▾	0	0	0	Disable ▾
5.	UBR ▾	0	0	0	Disable ▾
6.	UBR ▾	0	0	0	Disable ▾
7.	UBR ▾	0	0	0	Disable ▾
8.	UBR ▾	0	0	0	Disable ▾
9.	UBR ▾	0	0	0	Disable ▾
10.	UBR ▾	0	0	0	Disable ▾

Note:

1. If the parameters in the ATM QoS settings are set to zero, then their default settings will be used. Also, $PCR(max) = ADSL\ Up\ Speed / 53/8$.
2. Multiple channels may use the same ADSL channel link through the PVC Binding configuration. The PVC Binding configuration is only supported for channels using ADSL, please make sure the channel that you are binding to is using ADSL as its WAN type. The binding will work only under PPPoE and MPoA 1483 Bridge mode.
3. Channel 3 and channel 4 are reserved for USB WAN.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
QoS Type	Select a proper QoS type for the channel according to the information that your ISP provides.
PCR	It represents Peak Cell Rate. The default setting is "0".
SCR	It represents Sustainable Cell Rate. The value of SCR must be smaller than PCR.
MBS	It represents Maximum Burst Size. The range of the value is 10 to 50.
PVC to PVC Binding	It allows the enabled PVC channel to use the same ADSL connection settings of another PVC channel. Please choose the PVC channel via the drop down list.

After finished the above settings, click OK to save the settings.

II-1-4 WAN Budget

This function is used to determine the data *traffic volume* for each WAN interface respectively to prevent from overcharges for data transmission by the ISP. Please note that the Quota Limit and Billing cycle day of month settings will need to be configured correctly first in order for some period calculations to be performed correctly.

II-1-4-1 General Setup

WAN >> WAN Budget



General Setup		Status			
Index	Enable	Quota	When quota exceeded	Time cycle	Duration
WAN1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0MB/0MB			0/00/00 00:00~0/00/00 00:00
WAN2	<input type="checkbox"/>	0MB/0MB			0/00/00 00:00~0/00/00 00:00
WAN3	<input type="checkbox"/>	0MB/0MB			0/00/00 00:00~0/00/00 00:00
WAN4	<input type="checkbox"/>	0MB/0MB			0/00/00 00:00~0/00/00 00:00

Note:

1. The budget traffic information provided here is for reference only, please consult your ISP for the actual traffic usage and charges.
2. When hardware acceleration function is used, the monitored WAN traffic of Ethernet WAN interfaces may be slightly inaccurate.

OK Cancel

Click WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4 link to open the following web page.

WAN >> WAN Budget

WAN 1

Enable

Criterion and Action

Quota Limit: MB

When quota exceeded :

Shutdown WAN interface

Using **Notification Object**

Set **Mail Alert** or **SMS message**.

Monthly Custom

Select the day of a month when your (cellular) data resets.

Data quota resets on day at

Note:

1. Please make sure the **Time and Date** of the router is configured.
2. SMS message and mail will be sent when the usage reaches 95% and 100% of quota.

OK Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Check the box to enable such function.
Quota Limit	Type the data traffic quota allowed for such WAN interface. There are two unit (MB and GB) offered for you to specify.
When quota exceeded	Check the box(es) as the condition(s) for the system to perform when the traffic has exceeded the budget limit. Shutdown WAN interface - All the outgoing traffic through

	<p>such WAN interface will be terminated.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Using Notification Object - The system will send out a notification based on the content of the notification object. ● Set Mail Alert - The system will send out a warning message to the administrator when the quota is running out. However, the connection charges will be calculated continuously. ● Set SMS message - The system will send out SMS message to the administrator when the quota is running out.
<p>Monthly</p>	<p>Some ISP might apply for the network limitation based on the traffic limit per month. This setting is to offer a mechanism of resetting the traffic record every month.</p> <div style="text-align: center;"> Monthly Custom </div> <p>Select the day of a month when your (cellular) data resets. Data quota resets on day <input type="text" value="1"/> at <input type="text" value="00:00"/></p> <p>Data quota resets on day ... - You can determine the starting day in one month.</p>
<p>Custom</p>	<p>This setting allows the user to define the billing cycle according to his request. The WAN budget will be reset with an interval of billing cycle.</p> <p>Monthly is default setting. If long period or a short period is required, use Custom. The period of cycle duration is between 1 day and 60 days. You can determine the cycle duration by specifying the days and the hours. In addition, you can specify which day of today is in a cycle.</p> <p>Use Cycle in hours -</p> <div style="text-align: center;"> Monthly Custom </div> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Use Cycle in hours <input type="radio"/> Use Cycle in days</p> <p>Usage counter resets at the beginning of each cycle. Cycle duration : <input type="text" value="1"/> days and <input type="text" value="0"/> hours Today is day <input type="text" value="1"/> in the cycle.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Cycle duration: Specify the days and hours to reset the traffic record. For example, 7 means the whole cycle is 7 days; 20 means the whole cycle is 20 days. When the time is up, the router will reset the traffic record automatically. ● Today is day - Specify the day in the cycle as the starting point which Vigor router will reset the traffic record. For example, "3" means the third day of the cycle duration. <p>Use Cycle in days -</p>

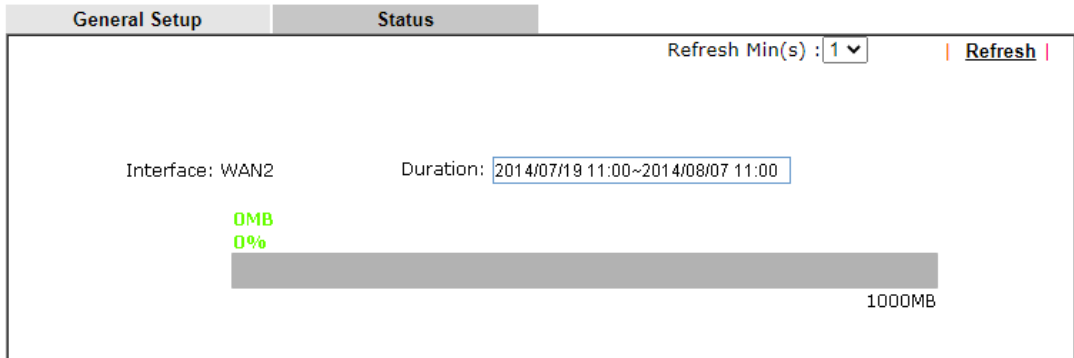
Monthly	Custom
<p><input type="radio"/> Use Cycle in hours</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Use Cycle in days</p> <p>Usage counter resets at the beginning of each cycle.</p> <p>Cycle duration : <input type="text" value="1"/> days.</p> <p>Today is day <input type="text" value="1"/> in the cycle and data quota resets at <input type="text" value="00:00"/></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">● Cycle duration: Specify the days to reset the traffic record. For example, 7 means the whole cycle is 7 days; 20 means the whole cycle is 20 days. When the time is up, the router will reset the traffic record automatically.● Today is day - Specify the day and time for data quota rest in the cycle as the starting point which Vigor router will reset the traffic record. For example, "3" means the third day of the cycle duration.	

After finished the above settings, click OK to save the settings.

II-1-4-2 Status

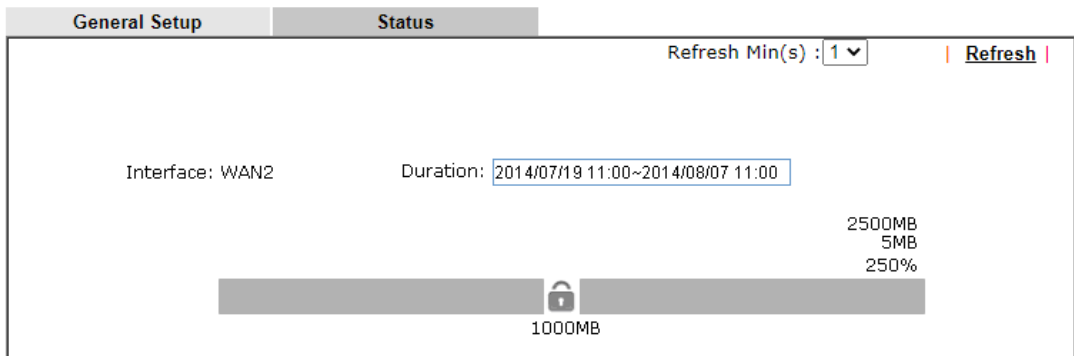
The status page displays the status WAN budget, including the duration and the usage.

WAN >> WAN Budget



If the WAN budget is exhausted, a lock will be displayed on the page if **Shutdown WAN interface** is selected. Which means no data transmission will be carried out. Moreover, the system will send out a warning message to the administrator if **Mail Alert** is selected. Or, the system will send out SMS message to the administrator if **SMS message** is selected.

WAN >> WAN Budget



Application Notes

A-1 How to configure settings for IPv6 Service in Vigor2832

Due to the shortage of IPv4 address, more and more countries use IPv6 to solve the problem. However, to continually use the original rich resources of IPv4, both IPv6 and IPv4 networks shall communicate for each other via intercommunication mechanism to complete the shifting job from IPv4 to IPv6 gradually. At present, there are three common types of intercommunication mechanisms:

- **Dual Stack**

The user can use both IPv4 and IPv6 techniques at the same time. That means adding an IPv6 stack on the origin network layer to let the host own the communication capability of IPv4 and IPv6.

- **Tunnel**

Both IPv6 hosts can communication for each other via existing IPv4 network environment. The IPv6 packets will be encapsulated with the header of IPv4 first. Later, the packets will be transformed and judged by IPv4 router. Once the packets arrive the border between IPv4 and IPv6, the header of IPv4 on the packets will be removed. Then, the packets with IPv6 address will be forwarded to the destination of IPv6 network.

- **Translation**

Such feature is active only for the user who uses IPv4 to communicate with other user using IPv4 service.

Before configuring the settings on Vigor2832, you need to know which connection type that your IPv6 service used.



Info

For the IPv6 service, you have to configure WAN/LAN settings before using the service.

I. Configuring the WAN Settings

For the IPv6 WAN settings for Vigor2832, there are several connection types to be chosen.

1. Access into the web user interface of Vigor2832. Open **WAN >> Internet Access**. Choose one of the WAN interfaces as the one supporting IPv6 service. Then, click the **IPv6** button of the selected WAN.

WAN >> Internet Access

Internet Access

Index	Display Name	Physical Mode	Access Mode		
WAN1		ADSL	PPPoE / PPPoA	Details Page	IPv6
WAN2		Ethernet	Static or Dynamic IP	Details Page	IPv6
WAN3		USB	None	Details Page	IPv6
WAN4		USB	None	Details Page	IPv6

Note:

1. Device on USB port 1 applies WAN3 configuration.
2. Device on USB port 2 applies WAN4 configuration.

DHCP Client Option



Info

Only one WAN interface support IPv6 service at one time. In this example, WAN2 is chosen as the one supporting IPv6 service.

- 2. In the following figure, use the drop down list to choose a proper connection type.

WAN >> Internet Access



WAN 2

PPPoE	Static or Dynamic IP	PPTP/L2TP	IPv6
Internet Access Mode			
Connection Type		Offline	

OK Cancel

Different connection types will bring out different configuration page. Refer to the following:

- PPP - Dual Stack application, IPv4 and IPv6 services can be utilized at the same time. Choose PPP and type the information for PPPoE of IPv4.

WAN >> Internet Access

WAN 2

PPPoE	Static or Dynamic IP	PPTP/L2TP	IPv6
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable	PPP/MP Setup		
ISP Access Setup	PPP Authentication: PAP/CHAP/MS-CHAP/MS-CHAPv2		
Username: 73768635@hinet.net	Idle Timeout: -1 second(s)		
Password:	IP Assignment: <input type="radio"/> Static <input checked="" type="radio"/> Dynamic (IPCP)		
WAN Connection Detection	Fixed IP Address: []		
Mode: PPP Detect	WAN IP Alias: []		
MTU: 1492 (Max:1500)	Dial-Out Schedule		
	Index(1-15) in Schedule Setup: None => None		
	=> None => None		
	TTL		
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Change the TTL value		
	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Default MAC Address		
	<input type="radio"/> Use the following MAC Address: 00:1D:AA:54:A3:FA		

OK Cancel

Access into the setting page for IPv6 service, it is not necessary for you to configure anything.

WAN >> Internet Access



WAN 2

PPPoE	Static or Dynamic IP	PPTP/L2TP	IPv6
Internet Access Mode			
Connection Type		PPP	
WAN Connection Detection			
Mode		Always On	
RIPng Protocol			
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable			

Note:

IPv4 WAN setting should be PPPoE / PPPoA client.

OK Cancel

Click OK and open Online Status. If the connection is successful, you will get the IP address for IPv4 and IPv6 at the same time.

Online Status

Physical Connection			System Uptime: 0:1:17		
IPv4		IPv6			
LAN Status		Primary DNS: 168.95.192.1		Secondary DNS: 168.95.1.1	
IP Address		TX Packets	RX Packets		
192.168.1.1		0	3085		
WAN 1 Status >> Dial PPPoE					
Enable	Line	Name	Mode	Up Time	
Yes	ADSL		PPPoE	00:00:00	
IP	GW IP	TX Packets	TX Rate(Bps)	RX Packets	RX Rate(Bps)
---	---	0	0	0	0
WAN 2 Status >> Drop PPPoE					
Enable	Line	Name	Mode	Up Time	
Yes	Ethernet		PPPoE	0:00:54	
IP	GW IP	TX Packets	TX Rate(Bps)	RX Packets	RX Rate(Bps)
114.44.49.54	168.95.98.254	800	4761	821	6617
WAN 3 Status					
Enable	Line	Name	Mode	Up Time	Signal
Yes	USB		---	00:00:00	-
IP	GW IP	TX Packets	TX Rate(Bps)	RX Packets	RX Rate(Bps)
---	---	0	0	0	0

Online Status

Physical Connection		System Uptime: 0:2:32	
IPv4	IPv6		
LAN Status			
IP Address			
2001:8010:7300:201:21D:AFF:FEA6:2568/64 (Global)			
FE80::21D:AFF:FEA6:2568/64 (Link)			
TX Packets	RX Packets	TX Bytes	RX Bytes
7	4	690	328
WAN2 IPv6 Status >> Drop PPP			
Enable	Mode	Up Time	
Yes	PPP	0:02:08	
IP		Gateway IP	
2001:8010:7300:201:21D:AFF:FEA6:256A/128 (Global)		FE80::90:1A00:242:AD52	
FE80::1D:AFF:FEA6:256A/128 (Link)			
DNS IP			
2001:8000:168::1			
2001:8000:168::2			
TX Packets	RX Packets	TX Bytes	RX Bytes
7	9	544	1126

- TSPC - Tunnel application, both IPv6 hosts communicate through IPv4 network
Choose TSPC and type the information for TSPC service.



Info

While using such mode, you have to make sure the IPv4 network connection is normal.

(In the following figure, the TSPC information is obtained from <http://gogo6.com/> after applied for the service.)

WAN >> Internet Access



WAN 2

PPPoE	Static or Dynamic IP	PPTP/L2TP	IPv6
Internet Access Mode			
Connection Type		TSPC	
TSPC Configuration			
Username		cacahsu	
Password		*****	
Tunnel Broker		broker.freenet6.net	
WAN Connection Detection			
Mode		Always On	

OK Cancel

Click OK and open **Online Status**. If the connection is successful, the physical connection will be shown as follows:

Online Status

Physical Connection		System Uptime: 0:2:3	
IPv4	IPv6		
LAN Status			
IP Address			
2001:5C0:1502:D00:21D:AFF:FEA6:2568/64 (Global)			
FE80::21D:AFF:FEA6:2568/64 (Link)			
TX Packets	RX Packets	TX Bytes	RX Bytes
88	121	15596	10249
WAN2 IPv6 Status			
Enable	Mode	Up Time	
Yes	TSPC	0:01:40	
IP		Gateway IP	
2001:5C0:1400:B::10B9/128 (Global)		---	
FE80::722C:13559/128 (Link)			
TX Packets	RX Packets	TX Bytes	RX Bytes
127	89	9219	15866

- **AICCU - Tunnel application**

Choose AICCU and type the information for AICCU of IPv6.



Info

While using such mode, you have to make sure the IPv4 network connection is normal.

(In the following figure, the AICCU information is obtained from <https://www.sixxs.net/main/> after applied for the service.)

WAN >> Internet Access



WAN 2

PPPoE	Static or Dynamic IP	PPTP/L2TP	IPv6
Internet Access Mode			
Connection Type		AICCU	
AICCU Configuration			
<input type="checkbox"/> Always On			
Username	JCR3-SIXXS		
Password	*****		
Tunnel Broker	tic.sixxs.net		
Tunnel ID	JCR		
Subnet Prefix	2001:4DD0:FF00:8005::2		/ 64
WAN Connection Detection			
Mode	Always On		

Note:

If "Always On" is not enabled, AICCU connection would only retry three times.

OK Cancel

Click OK and open Online Status. If the connection is successful, the physical connection will be shows as follows:

Online Status

Physical Connection		System Uptime: 0:1:18	
IPv4	IPv6		
LAN Status			
IP Address			
2001:4DD0:FF00:83E4:21D:AFF:FEA6:2568/64 (Global)			
FE80::21D:AFF:FEA6:2568/64 (Link)			
TX Packets	RX Packets	TX Bytes	RX Bytes
147	187	34205	19176
WAN2 IPv6 Status			
Enable	Mode	Up Time	
Yes	AICCU	0:00:48	
IP			
2001:4DD0:FF00:3E4::2/64 (Global)			
FE80::4CD0:FF00:3E4:2/64 (Link)			
TX Packets	RX Packets	TX Bytes	RX Bytes
186	137	16438	33093

- DHCPv6 Client

Choose DHCPv6 Client. Click one of the identity associations and type the IAID number.

WAN >> Internet Access ?

WAN 2

PPPoE	Static or Dynamic IP	PPTP/L2TP	IPv6
Internet Access Mode			
Connection Type		DHCPv6 Client	
DHCPv6 Client Configuration			
IAID (Identity Association ID)		88356806	
DUID (DHCP Unique ID)		00030001001daa54a3f9	
Authentication Protocol		None	
WAN Connection Detection			
Mode		Always On	
RIPng Protocol			
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable			
Bridge Mode			
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable Bridge Mode			
Bridge Subnet		LAN 1	

OK Cancel

Click OK and open Online Status. If the connection is successful, the physical connection will be shown as follows:

Online Status

Physical Connection System Uptime: 0:0:50

IPv4	IPv6
LAN Status	
IP Address	
FE80::21D:AAFF:FEA6:2568/64 (Link)	
TX Packets	RX Packets
6	2
TX Bytes	RX Bytes
588	156
WAN2 IPv6 Status	
Enable	Mode
Yes	DHCPv6 Client
Up Time	
0:00:40	
IP	Gateway IP
2001:B010:7300:201:21D:AAFF:FEA6:256A/64 (Global)	
2001:1111:2222:5555:21D:AAFF:FEA6:256A/64 (Global)	
2001:1111:2222:3333::1111/128 (Global)	
FE80::21D:AAFF:FEA6:256A/64 (Link)	
DNS IP	
2001:4860:4860::8888	
2001:4860:4860::8844	
TX Packets	RX Packets
14	5
TX Bytes	RX Bytes
1174	694

- Static IPv6

Choose Static IPv6. Type IPv6 address, Prefix Length and Gateway Address.

WAN >> Internet Access



WAN 2

PPPoE	Static or Dynamic IP	PPTP/L2TP	IPv6
Internet Access Mode			
Connection Type: Static IPv6			
Static IPv6 Address Configuration			
IPv6 Address / Prefix Length			
<input style="border: 1px solid red;" type="text"/>		<input style="border: 1px solid red;" type="text"/>	<input type="button" value="Add"/> <input type="button" value="Update"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/>
Current IPv6 Address Table			
Index	IPv6 Address/Prefix Length	Scope	
1	2001:B010:7300:201:21D:AFF:FEA6:256A/64	Global	
Static IPv6 Gateway configuration			
IPv6 Gateway Address			
<input style="border: 1px solid red;" type="text"/>			

Click OK and open Online Status. If the connection is successful, the physical connection will be shown as follows:

Online Status

Physical Connection System Uptime: 0:4:2

IPv4		IPv6	
LAN Status			
IP Address			
FE80::21D:AFF:FEA6:2568/64 (Link)			
TX Packets	RX Packets	TX Bytes	RX Bytes
4	0	312	0
WAN2 IPv6 Status			
Enable	Mode	Up Time	
Yes	Static IPv6	0:03:56	
IP	Gateway IP		
2001:B010:7300:201:21D:AFF:FEA6:256A/64 (Global)	---		
2001:1111:2222:5555:21D:AFF:FEA6:256A/64 (Global)			
FE80::21D:AFF:FEA6:256A/64 (Link)			
TX Packets	RX Packets	TX Bytes	RX Bytes
8	2	608	364

- **6in4 Static Tunnel**

Choose 6in4 Static Tunnel. Type remote endpoint IPv4 address, 6in4 IPv6 Address, LAN Routed Prefix and Tunnel TTL.

WAN >> Internet Access



WAN 2

PPPoE	Static or Dynamic IP	PPTP/L2TP	IPv6
Internet Access Mode			
Connection Type		6in4 Static Tunnel	
6in4 Static Tunnel			
Remote Endpoint IPv4 Address	<input type="text"/>		
6in4 IPv6 Address	<input type="text"/>	/ 64	(default:64)
LAN Routed Prefix	<input type="text"/>	/ 64	(default:64)
Tunnel TTL	<input type="text" value="255"/>	(default:255)	
WAN Connection Detection			
Mode	Always On		

OK Cancel

Click OK and open **Online Status**. If the connection is successful, the physical connection will be shown as follows:

Online Status

Physical Connection System Uptime: 0day 0:4:16

IPv4		IPv6	
LAN Status			
IP Address			
2001:4DD0:FF00:83F4:21D:AAFF:FE83:11B4/64 (Global)			
FE80::21D:AAFF:FE83:11B4/64 (Link)			
TX Packets	RX Packets	TX Bytes	RX Bytes
14	80	1244	6815
WAN1 IPv6 Status			
Enable	Mode	Up Time	
Yes	6in4 Static Tunnel	0:04:07	
IP			Gateway IP
2001:4DD0:FF10:83E4::2131/64 (Global)			---
FE80::C0A8:651D/128 (Link)			
TX Packets	RX Packets	TX Bytes	RX Bytes
3	26	211	2302

- 6rd

Choose 6rd. Type IPv4 Border Relay, IPv4 Mask Length, 6rd Prefix and 6rd Prefix Length.

WAN >> Internet Access



WAN 2

PPPoE	Static or Dynamic IP	PPTP/L2TP	IPv6
Internet Access Mode			
Connection Type		6rd	
6rd Settings			
6rd Mode		<input type="radio"/> Auto 6rd <input checked="" type="radio"/> Static 6rd	
Static 6rd Settings			
IPv4 Border Relay:	192.168.101.111		
IPv4 Mask Length:	0		
6rd Prefix:	2001:E41::		
6rd Prefix Length:	32		
WAN Connection Detection			
Mode	Always On		

Click OK and open **Online Status**. If the connection is successful, the physical connection will be shown as follows:

Online Status

System Uptime: 0day 0:9:15

Physical Connection		IPv4	IPv6
LAN Status			
IP Address			
2001:E41:A865:1D00:21D:AAFF:FE83:11B4/64 (Global)			
FE80::21D:AAFF:FE83:11B4/64 (Link)			
TX Packets	RX Packets	TX Bytes	RX Bytes
15	113	1354	18040
WAN1 IPv6 Status			
Enable	Mode	Up Time	
Yes	6rd	0:09:06	
IP	Gateway IP		
2001:E41:A865:1D01:21D:AAFF:FE83:11B5/128 (Global)		---	
FE80::C0A8:651D/128 (Link)			
TX Packets	RX Packets	TX Bytes	RX Bytes
13	29	967	2620

II. Configuring the LAN Settings

After finished the WAN settings for IPv6, please configure the LAN settings to make the router's client get the IPv6 address.

1. Access into the web user interface of Vigor2832. Open LAN>> **General Setup**. Click the **IPv6** button.
2. In the field of **DHCPv6 Server Configuration**, when DHCPv6 service is enabled, you can assign available IPv6 address for the client manually.

LAN >> General Setup

LAN 1 Ethernet TCP/IP and DHCP Setup | LAN 1 IPv6 Setup

Enable IPv6
WAN Primary Interface: WAN1

Static IPv6 Address
IPv6 Address: / Prefix Length: / Add Delete

Unique Local Address(ULA) configuration
Off / 64

Current IPv6 Address Table

Index	IPv6 Address/Prefix Length	Scope
1	FE80::21D:AAFF:FE54:A3F8/64	Link

DNS Server IPv6 Address (Deploy when WAN is up)
Primary DNS Server: 2001:4860:4860::8888
Secondary DNS Server: 2001:4860:4860::8844

Management (SLAAC(stateless))
 Other Option(O-bit)

DHCPv6 Server
 Enable Server Disable Server
 IPv6 Address Random Allocation
 Auto IPv6 range
Start IPv6 Address: ::
End IPv6 Address: ::
Advance setting: Edit

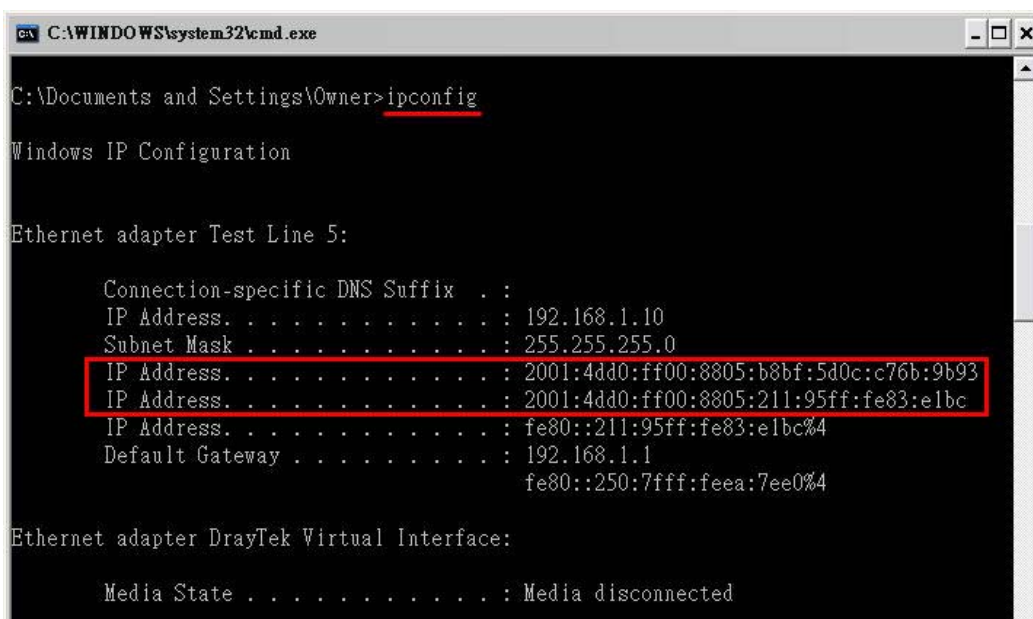


Info

When both mechanisms are enabled, the client can determine which mechanism to be used (e.g., the default mechanism for Windows7 is RADVD).

III. Confirming IPv6 Service Run Successfully

1. Make sure you have obtained the correct IPv6 IP address. Get into MS-DOS interface and type the command of "ipconfig". Refer to the following figure.



```
C:\WINDOWS\system32\cmd.exe
C:\Documents and Settings\Owner>ipconfig

Windows IP Configuration

Ethernet adapter Test Line 5:

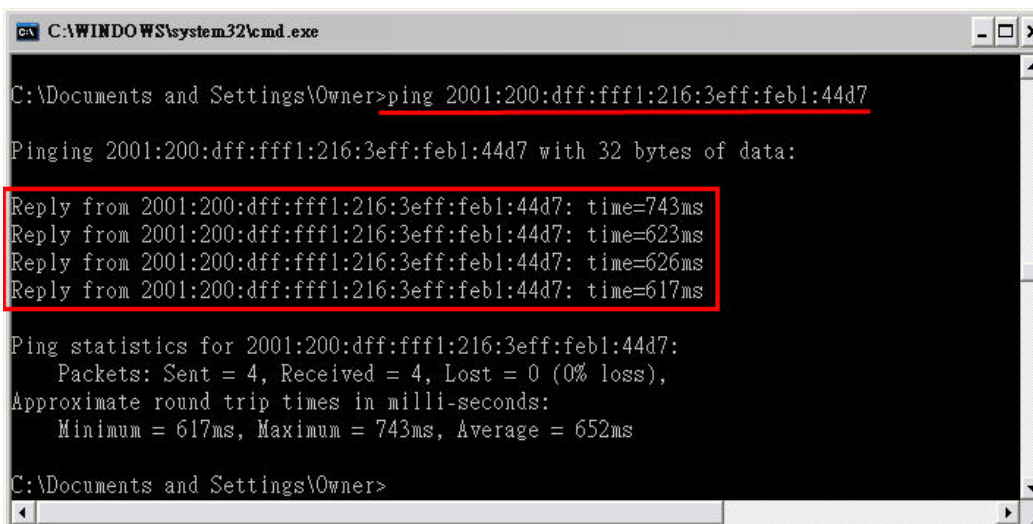
    Connection-specific DNS Suffix  . : 
    IP Address. . . . .               : 192.168.1.10
    Subnet Mask . . . . .             : 255.255.255.0
    IP Address. . . . .               : 2001:4dd0:ff00:8805:b8bf:5d0c:c76b:9b93
    IP Address. . . . .               : 2001:4dd0:ff00:8805:211:95ff:fe83:e1bc
    IP Address. . . . .               : fe80::211:95ff:fe83:e1bc%4
    Default Gateway . . . . .         : 192.168.1.1
                                         fe80::250:7fff:feea:7ee0%4

Ethernet adapter DrayTek Virtual Interface:

    Media State . . . . .             : Media disconnected
```

From the above figure we can see IPv6 IP address has been captured by the system.

2. Use the Ping command to ping any IPv6 address indicating an IPv6 website. For example, www.kame.net is a website supporting IPv4 IP and IPv6 IP services. Its IPv6 address is seen with a format of 2001:200:dff:fff1:216:3eff:febl:44d7.



```
C:\WINDOWS\system32\cmd.exe
C:\Documents and Settings\Owner>ping 2001:200:dff:fff1:216:3eff:febl:44d7

Pinging 2001:200:dff:fff1:216:3eff:febl:44d7 with 32 bytes of data:

Reply from 2001:200:dff:fff1:216:3eff:febl:44d7: time=743ms
Reply from 2001:200:dff:fff1:216:3eff:febl:44d7: time=623ms
Reply from 2001:200:dff:fff1:216:3eff:febl:44d7: time=626ms
Reply from 2001:200:dff:fff1:216:3eff:febl:44d7: time=617ms

Ping statistics for 2001:200:dff:fff1:216:3eff:febl:44d7:
    Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 4, Lost = 0 (0% loss),
    Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds:
        Minimum = 617ms, Maximum = 743ms, Average = 652ms

C:\Documents and Settings\Owner>
```

After getting the above message, it means the IPv6 service has been activated successfully.

3. Connect to the website for IPv6. Open a web browser and type an URL of IPv6, e.g., www.kame.net. If your computer accesses into the website by using IPv6 address, you may see a turtle dancing on the screen. If not, only a steady turtle will be seen.

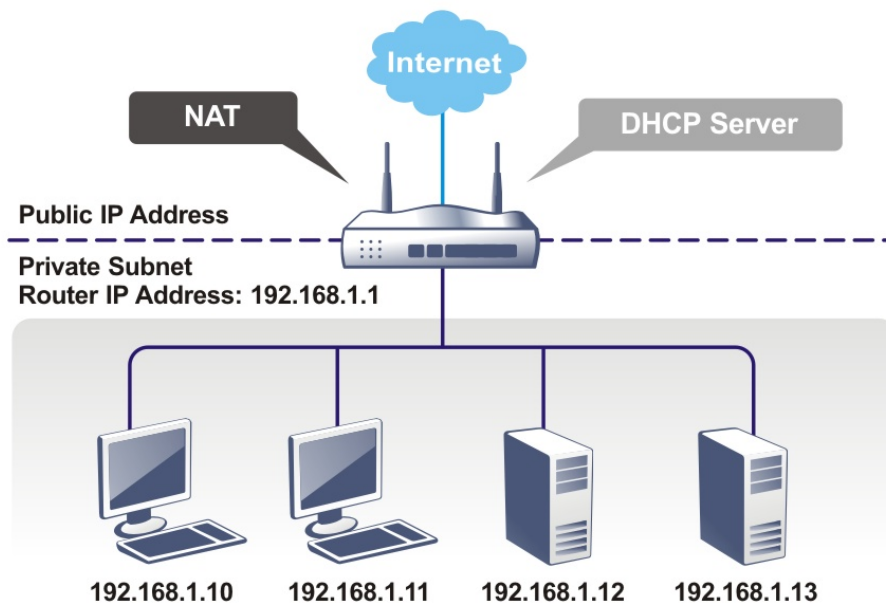


If you can see a turtle dancing on the screen, that means IPv6 service is ready for you to access and utilize.

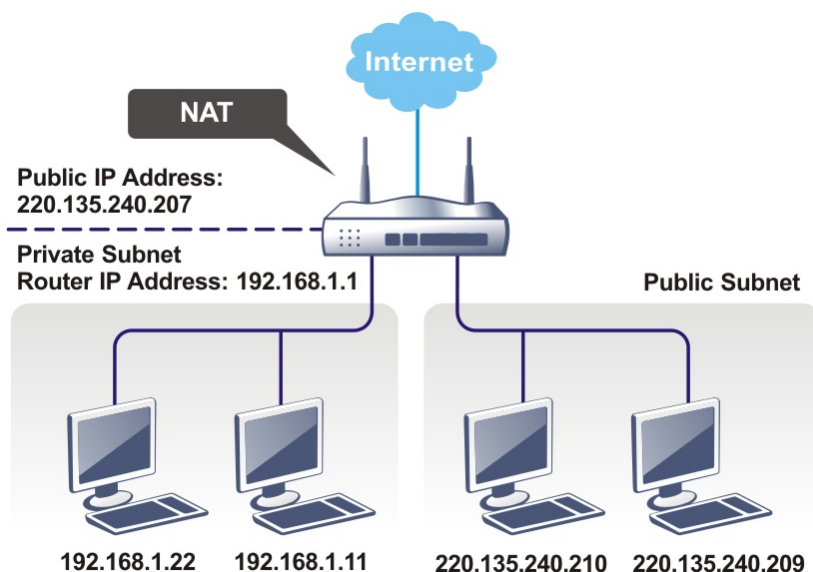
II-2 LAN

Local Area Network (LAN) is a group of subnets regulated and ruled by router. The design of network structure is related to what type of public IP addresses coming from your ISP.

The most generic function of Vigor router is NAT. It creates a private subnet of your own. As mentioned previously, the router will talk to other public hosts on the Internet by using public IP address and talking to local hosts by using its private IP address. What NAT does is to translate the packets from public IP address to private IP address to forward the right packets to the right host and vice versa. Besides, Vigor router has a built-in DHCP server that assigns private IP address to each local host. See the following diagram for a briefly understanding.



In some special case, you may have a public IP subnet from your ISP such as 220.135.240.0/24. This means that you can set up a public subnet or call second subnet that each host is equipped with a public IP address. As a part of the public subnet, the Vigor router will serve for IP routing to help hosts in the public subnet to communicate with other public hosts or servers outside. Therefore, the router should be set as the gateway for public hosts.



What is Routing Information Protocol (RIP)

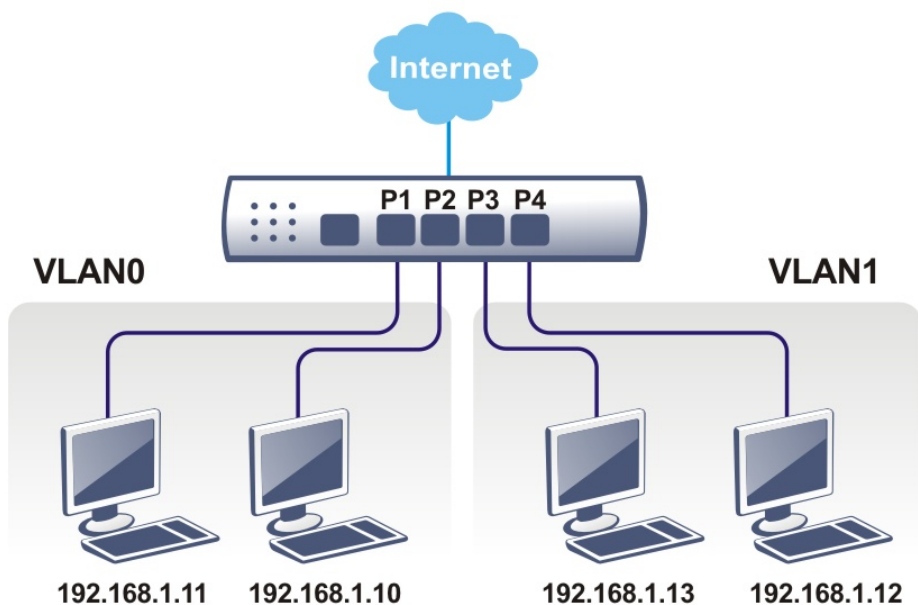
Vigor router will exchange routing information with neighboring routers using the RIP to accomplish IP routing. This allows users to change the information of the router such as IP address and the routers will automatically inform for each other.

What is Static Route

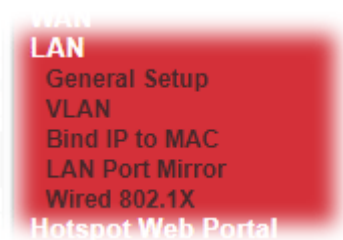
When you have several subnets in your LAN, sometimes a more effective and quicker way for connection is the **Static routes** function rather than other method. You may simply set rules to forward data from one specified subnet to another specified subnet without the presence of RIP.

What are Virtual LANs and Rate Control

You can group local hosts by physical ports and create up to 8 virtual LANs. To manage the communication between different groups, please set up rules in Virtual LAN (VLAN) function and the rate of each.



Web User Interface



II-2-1 General Setup

This page provides you the general settings for LAN. Click **LAN** to open the LAN settings page and choose **General Setup**.

There are several subnets provided by the router which allow users to divide groups into different subnets (LAN1 - LAN6). In addition, different subnets can link for each other by configuring **Inter-LAN Routing**. At present, LAN1 setting is fixed with NAT mode only. LAN2 - LAN6 can be operated under **NAT** or **Route** mode. IP Routed Subnet can be operated under **Route** mode.

LAN >> General Setup

General Setup

Index	Enable	DHCP	IP Address		
LAN 1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	-	192.168.1.80	Details Page	IPv6
LAN 2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	192.168.2.1	Details Page	IPv6
LAN 3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	192.168.3.1	Details Page	IPv6
LAN 4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	192.168.4.1	Details Page	IPv6
IP Routed Subnet	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	192.168.0.1	Details Page	

[DHCP Server Option](#)

Note:

Please enable LAN 2 - 4 on [LAN >> VLAN](#) page before configure them.

Enable DMZ port will make the LAN Port 1 be deselected in setting on VLAN page, LAN Port 1 will become the DMZ Port.

Force router to use "DNS server IP address" settings specified in [LAN1](#)

Inter-LAN Routing

Subnet	LAN 1	LAN 2	LAN 3	LAN 4
LAN 1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
LAN 2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
LAN 3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
LAN 4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

[OK](#)

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
General Setup	Allow to configure settings for each subnet respectively. Index - Display all of the LAN items.

	<p>Enable- Basically, LAN1 status is enabled in default. LAN2 -LAN6 and IP Routed Subnet can be observed by checking the box of Status.</p> <p>DHCP- LAN1 is configured with DHCP in default. If required, please check the DHCP box for each LAN.</p> <p>IP Address - Display the IP address for each LAN item. Such information is set in default and you can not modify it.</p> <p>Details Page - Click it to access into the setting page. Each LAN will have different LAN configuration page. Each LAN must be configured in different subnet.</p> <p>IPv6 - Click it to access into the settings page of IPv6.</p>
DHCP Server Option	<p>DHCP packets can be processed by adding option number and data information when such function is enabled.</p> <p>For detailed information, refer to later section.</p>
Force router to use DNS server IP address	<p>Force Vigor router to use DNS servers configured in LAN1/LAN2/LAN3/LAN4 instead of DNS servers given by the Internet Access server (PPPoE, PPTP, L2TP or DHCP server).</p>
Inter-LAN Routing	<p>Check the box to link two or more different subnets (LAN and LAN).</p> <p>Inter-LAN Routing allows different LAN subnets to be interconnected or isolated.</p> <p>It is only available when the VLAN functionality is enabled. Refer to section II-2-2 VLAN on how to set up VLANs.</p> <p>In the Inter-LAN Routing matrix, a selected checkbox means that the 2 intersecting LANs can communicate with each other.</p>

When you finish the configuration, please click **OK** to save and exit this page.



Info

To configure a subnet, select its Details Page button to bring up the LAN Details Page.

II-2-1-1 Details Page for LAN1 – Ethernet TCP/IP and DHCP Setup

There are two configuration pages for LAN1, Ethernet TCP/IP and DHCP Setup (based on IPv4) and IPv6 Setup. Click the tab for each type and refer to the following explanations for detailed information.

LAN >> General Setup

LAN 1 Ethernet TCP / IP and DHCP Setup	LAN 1 IPv6 Setup
Network Configuration For NAT Usage IP Address <input type="text" value="192.168.1.80"/> Subnet Mask <input type="text" value="255.255.255.0 / 24"/>	DHCP Server Configuration <input type="radio"/> Disable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable Server <input type="radio"/> Enable Relay Agent Start IP Address <input type="text" value="192.168.1.10"/> IP Pool Counts <input type="text" value="200"/> (max. 1021) Gateway IP Address <input type="text" value="192.168.1.80"/> Lease Time <input type="text" value="86400"/> (s) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Clear DHCP lease for inactive clients periodically
RIP Protocol Control <input type="text" value="Disable"/>	DNS Server IP Address Primary IP Address <input type="text"/> Secondary IP Address <input type="text"/>

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Network Configuration	<p>For NAT Usage,</p> <p>IP Address - Type in private IP address for connecting to a local private network (Default: 192.168.1.1).</p> <p>Subnet Mask - Type in an address code that determines the size of the network. (Default: 255.255.255.0/ 24)</p> <p>RIP Protocol Control,</p> <p>Disable - deactivate the RIP protocol. It will lead to a stoppage of the exchange of routing information between routers. (Default)</p> <p>Enable - activate the RIP protocol.</p>
DHCP Server Configuration	<p>DHCP stands for Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol. The router by factory default acts a DHCP server for your network so it automatically dispatches related IP settings to any local user configured as a DHCP client. It is highly recommended that you leave the router enabled as a DHCP server if you do not have a DHCP server for your network.</p> <p>If you want to use another DHCP server in the network other than the Vigor Router's, you can let Relay Agent help you to redirect the DHCP request to the specified location.</p> <p>Enable Server - Let the router assign IP address to every host in the LAN.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Start IP Address - Enter a value of the IP address pool for the DHCP server to start with when issuing IP addresses. If the 1st IP address of your router is 192.168.1.1, the starting IP address must be 192.168.1.2 or greater, but smaller than 192.168.1.254. ● IP Pool Counts - Enter the maximum number of PCs that you want the DHCP server to assign IP addresses to. The default is 50 and the maximum is 253. ● Gateway IP Address - Enter a value of the gateway IP address for the DHCP server. The value is usually as same as the 1st IP address of the router, which means the

router is the default gateway.

- **Lease Time** - Enter the time to determine how long the IP address assigned by DHCP server can be used.
- **Clear DHCP lease for inactive clients periodically** - Whenever a DHCP client requests an IP address from the LAN DHCP server, the server will give out an IP to this client for a certain amount of time (e.g., 1 day). However, even if this client only uses the IP for say 5 minutes, the server still "reserves" 1 day for that client. Because a DHCP server only has a limited number of IPs to lease to its DHCP clients, soon enough all the IPs will be used out and then no one will be able to get any IPs from this server anymore. Therefore, this feature is used to get the IP back from inactive clients (i.e. doesn't use the IP but the server still reserves the IP for him).

Enable Relay Agent -Specify which subnet that DHCP server is located the relay agent should redirect the DHCP request to.

- **DHCP Server IP Address** - It is available when **Enable Relay Agent** is checked. Set the IP address of the DHCP server you are going to use so the Relay Agent can help to forward the DHCP request to the DHCP server.

Disable Server - Let you manually assign IP address to every host in the LAN.

DNS Server IP Address

DNS stands for Domain Name System. Every Internet host must have a unique IP address, also they may have a human-friendly, easy to remember name such as www.yahoo.com. The DNS server converts the user-friendly name into its equivalent IP address.

Primary IP Address -You must specify a DNS server IP address here because your ISP should provide you with usually more than one DNS Server. If your ISP does not provide it, the router will automatically apply default DNS Server IP address: 194.109.6.66 to this field.

Secondary IP Address - You can specify secondary DNS server IP address here because your ISP often provides you more than one DNS Server. If your ISP does not provide it, the router will automatically apply default secondary DNS Server IP address: 194.98.0.1 to this field.

The default DNS Server IP address can be found via Online Status:

Online Status

Physical Connection System Uptime: 22:22:45

IPv4		IPv6	
LAN Status	Primary DNS: 8.8.8.8	Secondary DNS: 8.8.4.4	
IP Address	TX Packets	RX Packets	
192.168.1.1	0	41533	

If both the Primary IP and Secondary IP Address fields are left empty, the router will assign DNS servers obtained from WAN interface to local users as a DNS proxy server and maintain a DNS cache. If there is no DNS servers available, router will use its own IP address instead.

If the IP address of a domain name is already in the DNS cache, the router will resolve the domain name immediately. Otherwise, the router forwards the DNS query packet to the external DNS server by establishing a WAN (e.g. DSL/Cable) connection.

When you finish the configuration, please click OK to save and exit this page.

II-2-1-2 Details Page for LAN1~ LAN4 – IPv6 Setup

There are two configuration pages for each LAN port, Ethernet TCP/IP and DHCP Setup (based on IPv4) and IPv6 Setup. Click the tab for each type and refer to the following explanations for detailed information. Below shows the settings page for IPv6.

LAN >> General Setup

LAN 1 Ethernet TCP / IP and DHCP Setup
LAN 1 IPv6 Setup

Enable IPv6
 WAN Primary Interface WAN1

Static IPv6 Address

IPv6 Address	/ Prefix Length		
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="button" value="Add"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>

Unique Local Address(ULA) configuration

Off / :: / 64

Current IPv6 Address Table

Index	IPv6 Address/Prefix Length	Scope
1	FE80::21D:AAFF:FE54:A3F8/64	Link

DNS Server IPv6 Address Deploy when WAN is up

Primary DNS Server 2001:4860:4860::8888

Secondary DNS Server 2001:4860:4860::8844

Management SLAAC(stateless)

Other Option(O-bit)

DHCPv6 Server

Enable Server Disable Server

IPv6 Address Random Allocation

Auto IPv6 range

Start IPv6 Address ::

End IPv6 Address ::

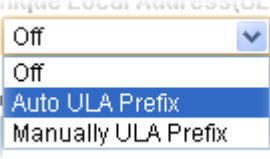
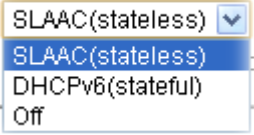
Advance setting

Advance setting

It provides 2 daemons for LAN side IPv6 address configuration. One is SLAAC(stateless) and the other is DHCPv6 Server (Stateful).

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable IPv6	Check the box to enable the configuration of LAN 1 IPv6 Setup.
WAN Primary Interface	Use the drop down list to specify a WAN interface for IPv6.
Static IPv6 Address	IPv6 Address -Type static IPv6 address for LAN. Prefix Length - Type the fixed value for prefix length. Add - Click it to add a new entry. Delete - Click it to remove an existed entry.
Unique Local Address	Such feature is used for the host without assigned IPv6

(ULA) configuration	<p>address to obtain IPv6 address automatically or have an IPv6 address specified manually via ULA configuration. It is convenient for communication among different subnets.</p>  <p>Auto ULA Prefix - The system will generate the required IPv6 address.</p> <p>Manually ULA Prefix - A user can type the ULA IPv6 address manually.</p>
Current IPv6 Address Table	Display current used IPv6 addresses.
DNS Server IPv6 Address	<p>Deploy when WAN is up - The RA (router advertisement) packets will be sent to LAN PC with DNS server information only when network connection by any one of WAN interfaces is up.</p> <p>Enable - The RA (router advertisement) packets will be sent to LAN PC with DNS server information no matter WAN connection is up or not.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Primary DNS Sever - Type the IPv6 address for Primary DNS server. ● Secondary DNS Server -Type another IPv6 address for DNS server if required. <p>Disable - DNS server will not be used.</p>
Management	<p>Host under LAN can be assigned IP address from Vigor router via the following method.</p>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● SLAAC(stateless) - The IP address (with Prefix) of the host shall be formed according to RA transmitted by Vigor router. ● DHCPv6(stateful) - The IP address of the host shall be assigned after communicating with DHCPv6 server for answering the request of client. ● Off - No IP address is assigned. <p>Other Option (O-bit) - Check this box to enable the O-bit for obtaining additional information (e.g., DNS) from DHCPv6.</p>
DHCPv6 Server	<p>Enable Server -Click it to enable DHCPv6 server. DHCPv6 Server could assign IPv6 address to PC according to the Start/End IPv6 address configuration.</p> <p>Disable Server -Click it to disable DHCPv6 server.</p> <p>IPv6 Address Random Allocagtion - Check it to assign the DHCPv6 IP address randomly to prevent the attacks from the IPv6 reconnaissance techniques.</p> <p>Auto IPv6 range - After check the box, Vigor router will assign the IPv6 range automatically.</p> <p>Start IPv6 Address / End IPv6 Address -Type the start and</p>

end address for IPv6 server.

Advance setting - Click the Edit button to configure advanced IPv6 settings for DHCPv6 server.

LAN >> General Setup

DHCPv6 Server

Authentication Protocol

Prefix Delegation Enable Disable

Prefix /

DHCPv6 Prefix Delegation

New Prefix

Suffix

New Prefix Length

Client Link Local Address

Client DUID(option)

Add

Prefix	Prefix Length	Link Local	DUID
--------	---------------	------------	------

OK Cancel

Advance setting

More options are offered under the **Advance setting**. Click **Edit** to open the pop-up window.

Router Advertisement Configuration - Google Chrome

不安全 | 192.168.1.1/doc/enetedit.htm

Router Advertisement Configuration

Enable Disable

Hop Limit

Min Interval Time(sec)

Max Interval Time(sec)

Default Lifetime(sec) (High Availability secondary is 0)

Default Preference

MTU Auto

RIPng Protocol

Enable

Extension WAN

Available WAN

Selected WAN

>> <<

Router Advertisement Configuration - Click **Enable** to enable router advertisement server. The router advertisement daemon sends Router Advertisement messages, specified by RFC 2461, to a local Ethernet LAN periodically and when requested by a node sending a Router Solicitation message. These messages are required for IPv6 stateless auto-configuration.

Disable - Click it to disable router advertisement server.

Hop Limit - The value is required for the device behind the router when IPv6 is in use.

Min/Max Interval Time (sec) - It defines the interval (between minimum time and maximum time) for sending RA (Router Advertisement) packets.

Default Lifetime (sec) - Within such period of time, Vigor2832 can be treated as the default gateway.

Default Preference - It determines the priority of the host behind the router when RA (Router Advertisement) packets

are transmitted.

MTU - It means Max Transmit Unit for packet. If **Auto** is selected, the router will determine the MTU value for LAN.

Extension WAN - Not only the IP address can be obtained from the primary WAN, but also the prefix for IPv6 LAN IP address can be assigned by extension WAN specified here.

When you finish the configuration, please click **OK** to save and exit this page.

II-2-1-3 Details Page for LAN2 ~ LAN4

LAN >> General Setup

LAN 2 Ethernet TCP / IP and DHCP Setup	LAN 2 IPv6 Setup
<p>Network Configuration</p> <p><input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> For NAT Usage <input type="radio"/> For Routing Usage</p> <p>IP Address <input type="text" value="192.168.2.1"/></p> <p>Subnet Mask <input type="text" value="255.255.255.0 / 24"/></p>	<p>DHCP Server Configuration</p> <p><input type="radio"/> Disable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable Server <input type="radio"/> Enable Relay Agent</p> <p>Start IP Address <input type="text" value="192.168.2.10"/></p> <p>IP Pool Counts <input type="text" value="100"/> (max. 1021)</p> <p>Gateway IP Address <input type="text" value="192.168.2.1"/></p> <p>Lease Time <input type="text" value="259200"/> (s)</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Clear DHCP lease for inactive clients periodically.</p> <hr/> <p>DNS Server IP Address</p> <p>Primary IP Address <input type="text"/></p> <p>Secondary IP Address <input type="text"/></p>

OK

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Network Configuration	<p>Enable/Disable - Click Enable to enable such configuration; click Disable to disable such configuration.</p> <p>For NAT Usage - Click this radio button to invoke NAT function.</p> <p>For Routing Usage - Click this radio button to invoke this function.</p> <p>IP Address - Type in private IP address for connecting to a local private network (Default: 192.168.1.1).</p> <p>Subnet Mask - Type in an address code that determines the size of the network. (Default: 255.255.255.0/ 24)</p>
DHCP Server Configuration	<p>DHCP stands for Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol. The router by factory default acts a DHCP server for your network so it automatically dispatch related IP settings to any local user configured as a DHCP client. It is highly recommended that you leave the router enabled as a DHCP server if you do not have a DHCP server for your network.</p> <p>Enable Server - Let the router assign IP address to every host in the LAN.</p> <p>Disable Server - Let you manually assign IP address to every host in the LAN.</p> <p>Enable Relay Agent - If you want to use another DHCP server</p>

	<p>in the network other than the Vigor Router's, you can let Relay Agent help you to redirect the DHCP request to the specified location.</p> <p>DHCP Server IP Address - It is available when Enable Relay Agent is checked. Set the IP address of the DHCP server you are going to use so the Relay Agent can help to forward the DHCP request to the DHCP server.</p> <p>Start IP Address - Enter a value of the IP address pool for the DHCP server to start with when issuing IP addresses. If the 1st IP address of your router is 192.168.1.1, the starting IP address must be 192.168.1.2 or greater, but smaller than 192.168.1.254.</p> <p>IP Pool Counts - Enter the maximum number of PCs that you want the DHCP server to assign IP addresses to. The default is 50 and the maximum is 253.</p> <p>Gateway IP Address - Enter a value of the gateway IP address for the DHCP server. The value is usually as same as the 1st IP address of the router, which means the router is the default gateway.</p> <p>Lease Time - Enter the time to determine how long the IP address assigned by DHCP server can be used.</p> <p>Clear DHCP lease for inactive clients periodically - Whenever a DHCP client requests an IP address from the LAN DHCP server, the server will give out an IP to this client for a certain amount of time (e.g., 1 day). However, even if this client only uses the IP for say 5 minutes, the server still "reserves" 1 day for that client. Because a DHCP server only has a limited number of IPs to lease to its DHCP clients, soon enough all the IPs will be used out and then no one will be able to get any IPs from this server anymore. Therefore, this feature is used to get the IP back from inactive clients (i.e. doesn't use the IP but the server still reserves the IP for him).</p>
DNS Server IP Address	Enter the IP address of the DNS server you want to use for DNS forwarding.

When you finish the configuration, please click **OK** to save and exit this page.

II-2-1-4 Details Page for IP Routed Subnet

LAN >> General Setup

TCP/IP and DHCP Setup for IP Routed Subnet

<p>Network Configuration</p> <p><input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable</p> <p>For Routing Usage</p> <p>IP Address <input type="text" value="192.168.0.1"/></p> <p>Subnet Mask <input type="text" value="255.255.255.0 / 24"/></p> <hr/> <p>RIP Protocol Control <input type="text" value="Disable"/></p>	<p>DHCP Server Configuration</p> <p>Start IP Address <input type="text"/></p> <p>IP Pool Counts <input type="text" value="0"/> (max. 32)</p> <p>Lease Time <input type="text" value="259200"/> (s)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Use LAN Port <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> P1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> P2</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use MAC Address</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Index</th> <th>Matched MAC Address</th> <th>given IP Address</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td colspan="3" style="height: 50px;"> </td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>MAC Address : <input type="text"/> : <input type="text"/> : <input type="text"/> : <input type="text"/> : <input type="text"/> : <input type="text"/></p> <p><input type="button" value="Add"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/></p>	Index	Matched MAC Address	given IP Address			
Index	Matched MAC Address	given IP Address					

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Network Configuration	<p>Enable/Disable - Click Enable to enable such configuration; click Disable to disable such configuration.</p> <p>For Routing Usage,</p> <p>IP Address - Type in private IP address for connecting to a local private network (Default: 192.168.1.1).</p> <p>Subnet Mask - Type in an address code that determines the size of the network. (Default: 255.255.255.0/ 24)</p> <p>RIP Protocol Control,</p> <p>Disable - deactivate the RIP protocol. It will lead to a stoppage of the exchange of routing information between routers. (Default)</p> <p>Enable - activate the RIP protocol.</p>
DHCP Server Configuration	<p>DHCP stands for Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol. The router by factory default acts a DHCP server for your network so it automatically dispatch related IP settings to any local user configured as a DHCP client. It is highly recommended that you leave the router enabled as a DHCP server if you do not have a DHCP server for your network.</p> <p>If you want to use another DHCP server in the network other than the Vigor Router's, you can let Relay Agent help you to redirect the DHCP request to the specified location.</p> <p>Start IP Address - Enter a value of the IP address pool for the DHCP server to start with when issuing IP addresses. If the 1st IP address of your router is 192.168.1.1, the starting IP address must be 192.168.1.2 or greater, but smaller than 192.168.1.254.</p>

<p>IP Pool Counts - Enter the maximum number of PCs that you want the DHCP server to assign IP addresses to. The default is 50 and the maximum is 253.</p> <p>Lease Time - Enter the time to determine how long the IP address assigned by DHCP server can be used.</p> <p>Use LAN Port - Specify an IP for IP Route Subnet. If it is enabled, DHCP server will assign IP address automatically for the clients coming from P1. Please check the box of P1.</p> <p>Use MAC Address - Check such box to specify MAC address.</p> <p>MAC Address: Enter the MAC Address of the host one by one and click Add to create a list of hosts which can be assigned, deleted or edited from above pool. Set a list of MAC Address for 2nd DHCP server will help router to assign the correct IP address of the correct subnet to the correct host. So those hosts in 2nd subnet won't get an IP address belonging to 1st subnet.</p> <p>Add - Type the MAC address in the boxes and click this button to add.</p> <p>Delete - Click it to delete the selected MAC address.</p> <p>Edit - Click it to edit the selected MAC address.</p> <p>Cancel - Click it to cancel the job of adding, deleting and editing.</p>

When you finish the configuration, please click **OK** to save and exit this page.

II-2-2 VLAN

With the 6-port Gigabit switch on the LAN side, Vigor router provides extremely high speed connectivity for the highest speed local data transfer of any server or local PCs. On the Wireless-equipped models (e.g., Vigor2832n), each of the wireless SSIDs can also be grouped within one of the VLANs.

Tagged VLAN

The tagged VLANs (802.1q) can mark data with a VLAN identifier. This identifier can be carried through an onward Ethernet switch to specific ports. The specific VLAN clients can also pick up this identifier as it is just passed to the LAN. You can set the priorities for LAN-side QoS. You can assign each of VLANs to each of the different IP subnets that the router may also be operating, to provide even more isolation. The said functionality is **tag-based multi-subnet**.

Port-Based VLAN

Relative to tag-based VLAN which groups clients with an identifier, port-based VLAN uses physical ports (P1 ~ P4) to separate the clients into different VLAN group.

Virtual LAN function provides you a very convenient way to manage hosts by grouping them based on the physical port. The multi-subnet can let a small businesses have much better isolation for multi-occupancy applications. Go to **LAN** page and select **VLAN**. The following page will appear. Click **Enable** to invoke VLAN function.

Below is an example page in Vigor2832n:

LAN >> VLAN Configuration ?

VLAN Configuration

Enable

	LAN				Wireless LAN				VLAN Tag			
	P1	P2	P3	P4	SSID1	SSID2	SSID3	SSID4	Subnet	Enable	VID	Priority
VLAN0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1 ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0 ▾
VLAN1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 2 ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0 ▾
VLAN2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 3 ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0 ▾
VLAN3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 4 ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0 ▾
VLAN4	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1 ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0 ▾
VLAN5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1 ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0 ▾
VLAN6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1 ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0 ▾
VLAN7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1 ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0 ▾

Permit untagged device in P1 to access router

- For each VLAN row, if enable is checked for the VLAN Tag then the corresponding VID will be applied to wired LAN traffic.
- Wireless LAN traffic is always untagged, but will still be a member of the VLAN group selected.
- Each VID must be unique.



Info

Settings in this page only applied to LAN port but not WAN port.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
------	-------------

Enable	Click it to enable VLAN configuration.
LAN	P1 - P4 - Check the LAN port(s) to group them under the selected VLAN.
Wireless LAN	SSID1 - SSID4 - Check the SSID boxes to group them under the selected VLAN.
Subnet	Choose one of them to make the selected VLAN mapping to the specified subnet only. For example, LAN1 is specified for VLAN0. It means that PCs grouped under VLAN0 can get the IP address(es) that specified by the subnet.
VLAN Tag	<p>Enable - Check the box to enable the function of VLAN with tag.</p> <p>The router will add specific VLAN number to all packets on the LAN while sending them out.</p> <p>Please type the tag value and specify the priority for the packets sending by LAN.</p> <p>VID - Type the value as the VLAN ID number. The range is from 0 to 4095.</p> <p>Priority - Type the packet priority number for such VLAN. The range is from 0 to 7.</p>
Permit untagged device in P1 to access router	It can help users to communicate with the router still even though configuring wrong VLAN tag setting. It is recommended to enable the management port (LAN 1) to ensure the data transmission is unimpeded.



Info

Leave one VLAN untagged at least to prevent from not connecting to Vigor router due to unexpected error.

Inter-LAN Routing

The Vigor router supports up to 8 VLANs. Each VLAN can be set up to use one or more of the Ethernet ports and wireless LAN Service Set Identifiers (SSIDs). Within the grid of VLANs (horizontal rows) and LAN interfaces (vertical columns),

- all hosts within the same VLAN (horizontal row) are visible to one another
- all hosts connected to the same LAN or WLAN interface (vertical column) are visible to one another if
 - they belong to the same VLAN, or
 - they belong to different VLANs, and inter-LAN routing (LAN>>General Setup) between them is enabled (see below).

Force router to use "DNS server IP address" settings specified in LAN1 ▾

Inter-LAN Routing

Subnet	LAN 1	LAN 2	LAN 3	LAN 4
LAN 1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
LAN 2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
LAN 3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
LAN 4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

OK

Inter-LAN Routing allows different LAN subnets to be interconnected or isolated. It is only available when the VLAN functionality is enabled. In the Inter-LAN Routing matrix, a selected checkbox means that the 2 intersecting LANs can communicate with each other.

Vigor2832 Series features a hugely flexible VLAN system. In its simplest form, each of the Gigabit LAN ports can be isolated from each other, for example to feed different companies or departments but keeping their local traffic completely separated.

Configuring port-based VLAN for wireless and non-wireless clients

1. All the wire network clients are categorized to group VLAN0 in subnet 192.168.1.0/24 (LAN1).
2. All the wireless network clients are categorized to group VLAN1 in subnet 192.168.2.0/24 (LAN2).
3. Open LAN>>VLAN Configuration. Check the boxes according to the statement in step 1 and Step 2.

LAN >> VLAN Configuration ?

VLAN Configuration

	LAN				Wireless LAN				VLAN Tag			
	P1	P2	P3	P4	SSID1	SSID2	SSID3	SSID4	Subnet	Enable	VID	Priority
VLAN0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1 ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input style="width: 40px;" type="text" value="0"/>	<input style="width: 40px;" type="text" value="0"/> ▾
VLAN1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	LAN 2 ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input style="width: 40px;" type="text" value="0"/>	<input style="width: 40px;" type="text" value="0"/> ▾
VLAN2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 3 ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input style="width: 40px;" type="text" value="0"/>	<input style="width: 40px;" type="text" value="0"/> ▾
VLAN3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 4 ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input style="width: 40px;" type="text" value="0"/>	<input style="width: 40px;" type="text" value="0"/> ▾
VLAN4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1 ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input style="width: 40px;" type="text" value="0"/>	<input style="width: 40px;" type="text" value="0"/> ▾
VLAN5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1 ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input style="width: 40px;" type="text" value="0"/>	<input style="width: 40px;" type="text" value="0"/> ▾
VLAN6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1 ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input style="width: 40px;" type="text" value="0"/>	<input style="width: 40px;" type="text" value="0"/> ▾
VLAN7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1 ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input style="width: 40px;" type="text" value="0"/>	<input style="width: 40px;" type="text" value="0"/> ▾

Permit untagged device in P1 to access router

1. For each VLAN row, if enable is checked for the VLAN Tag then the corresponding VID will be applied to wired LAN traffic.
2. Wireless LAN traffic is always untagged, but will still be a member of the VLAN group selected.
3. Each VID must be unique.

OK
Clear
Cancel

4. Click OK.
5. Open LAN>>General Setup. If you want to let the clients in both groups communicate with each other, simply activate Inter-LAN Routing by checking the box between LAN1 and LAN2.

Force router to use "DNS server IP address" settings specified in LAN1 ▾

Inter-LAN Routing

Subnet	LAN 1	LAN 2	LAN 3	LAN 4
LAN 1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
LAN 2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
LAN 3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
LAN 4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

OK

Vigor router supports up to six private IP subnets on LAN. Each can be independent (isolated) or common (able to communicate with each other). This is ideal for departmental or multi-occupancy applications.



Info

As for the VLAN applications, refer to "Appendix I: VLAN Application on Vigor Router" for more detailed information.

II-2-3 Bind IP to MAC

This function is used to bind the IP and MAC address in LAN to have a strengthening control in network. When this function is enabled, all the assigned IP and MAC address binding together cannot be changed. If you modified the binding IP or MAC address, it might cause you not access into the Internet.

Click LAN and click **Bind IP to MAC** to open the setup page.

Bind IP to MAC

Enable
 Disable

Strict Bind

Apply Strict Bind to Subnet

ARP Table | [Select All](#) | [Sort](#) | [Refresh](#) | [Add/Update to IP Bind List](#)

IP Address	Mac Address	HOST ID
192.168.1.1	14-49-BC-02-37-08	
192.168.1.10	60-A4-4C-E6-5A-4F	
192.168.1.11	14-49-BC-44-A0-B9	

IP Address
 Mac Address :::::
 Comment Max: 12 characters

IP Bind List (Limit: 1024 entries) | [Select All](#) | [Sort](#)

Index	IP Address	Mac Address	Host ID	Comment
-------	------------	-------------	---------	---------

Backup IP Bind List : Upload From File: 未選擇任何檔案

Note:

1. IP-MAC binding presets DHCP Allocations.
2. If Strict Bind is enabled, unspecified LAN clients in the selected subnets cannot access the Internet.
3. Comment can not contain characters " and '.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Click this radio button to invoke this function. However, IP/MAC which is not listed in IP Bind List also can connect to Internet.
Disable	Click this radio button to disable this function. All the settings on this page will be invalid.
Strict Bind	<p>Check the box to block the connection of the IP/MAC which is not listed in IP Bind List.</p> <p>LAN clients will be assigned IP addresses according to the MAC-to-IP address associations on this page. LAN client whose MAC address has not been bound to an IP address will be denied network access.</p> <p>Note: Before selecting Strict Bind, make sure at least one valid MAC address has been bound to an IP address. Otherwise no LAN clients will have network access, and it will not be possible to connect to the router to make changes to its configuration.</p> <p>Apply Strict Bind to Subnet - Choose the subnet(s) for</p>

	<p>applying the rules of Bind IP to MAC.</p> <p>Apply Strict Bind to Subnet:</p> <p><input type="button" value="Select All"/> <input type="button" value="Clear All"/></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Subnet</th> <th>IP Address</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> LAN1</td> <td>192.168.1.80</td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> LAN2</td> <td>192.168.2.1</td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> LAN3</td> <td>192.168.3.1</td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> LAN4</td> <td>192.168.4.1</td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> IP Routed Subnet</td> <td>192.168.0.1</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Close"/></p>	Subnet	IP Address	<input type="checkbox"/> LAN1	192.168.1.80	<input type="checkbox"/> LAN2	192.168.2.1	<input type="checkbox"/> LAN3	192.168.3.1	<input type="checkbox"/> LAN4	192.168.4.1	<input type="checkbox"/> IP Routed Subnet	192.168.0.1
Subnet	IP Address												
<input type="checkbox"/> LAN1	192.168.1.80												
<input type="checkbox"/> LAN2	192.168.2.1												
<input type="checkbox"/> LAN3	192.168.3.1												
<input type="checkbox"/> LAN4	192.168.4.1												
<input type="checkbox"/> IP Routed Subnet	192.168.0.1												
ARP Table	This table is the LAN ARP table of this router. The information for IP and MAC will be displayed in this field. Each pair of IP and MAC address listed in ARP table can be selected and added to IP Bind List by clicking Add below.												
Select All	Click this link to select all the items in the ARP table.												
Sort	Reorder the table based on the IP address.												
Refresh	Refresh the ARP table listed below to obtain the newest ARP table information.												
Add / Update	<p>IP Address - Type the IP address that will be used for the specified MAC address.</p> <p>Mac Address - Type the MAC address that is used to bind with the assigned IP address.</p> <p>Comment - Type a brief description for the entry.</p> <p>Show Comment - Check this box to display the comment on IP Bind List box.</p>												
Add	It allows you to add the one you choose from the ARP table or the IP/MAC address typed in Add and Edit to the table of IP Bind List .												
Update	It allows you to edit and modify the selected IP address and MAC address that you create before.												
Delete	You can remove any item listed in IP Bind List . Simply click and select the one, and click Delete . The selected item will be removed from the IP Bind List .												
IP Bind List	It displays a list for the IP bind to MAC information.												
Backup	Store the configuration for Bind IP to MAC as a file.												
Restore	Restore the previously stored configuration file and apply to such page.												



Info

Before you select Strict Bind, you have to bind one set of IP/MAC address for one PC. If not, no one of the PCs can access into Internet. And the web user interface of the router might not be accessed.

When you finish the configuration, click **OK** to save the settings.

II-2-4 LAN Port Mirror

LAN port mirror can be applied for the users in LAN. Generally speaking, this function copies traffic from one or more specific ports to a target port. This mechanism helps manager track the network errors or abnormal packets transmission without interrupting the flow of data access the network. By the way, user can apply this function to monitor all traffics which user needs to check.

There are some advantages supported in this feature. First, it is more economical without other detecting equipments to be set up. Second, it may be able to view traffic on one or more ports within a VLAN at the same time. Third, it can transfer all data traffics to be mirrored to one analyzer connecting to the mirroring port. Last, it is more convenient and easy to configure in user's interface.

LAN >> LAN Port Mirror

LAN Port Mirror

Port Mirror:						
<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable						
	Port1	Port2	Port3	Port4	WAN1	WAN2
Mirror Port		<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>		
Mirrored Tx Port	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Mirrored Rx Port	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Note:

The mirrored WAN1 is a software mirror, it will lead to a substantial decline in performance.

OK

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Port Mirror	Check Enable to activate this function. Or, check Disable to close this function.
Mirror Port	Select a port to view traffic sent from mirrored ports.
Mirrored Tx Port	Select which ports are necessary to be mirrored for transmitting the packets.
Mirrored Rx Port	Select which ports are necessary to be mirrored for receiving the packets.

After finishing all the settings here, please click OK to save the configuration.

II-2-5 Wired 802.1x

IEEE 802.1x is an IEEE Standard for port-based Network Access Control (PNAC). It is part of the IEEE 802.1 group of networking protocols. It provides an authentication mechanism for the device that is attached to a LAN or WLAN.

Wired 802.1x provides authentication for one network device on each LAN port. The RADIUS Server settings must be configured before enabling 802.1x because the EAP (Extensible Authentication Protocol) Authenticator relies on the RADIUS Server in its authentication process. Each LAN port with Wired 802.1x configured will only forward 802.1x packets and block all other packets until the authentication has successfully completed.

Wired 802.1X

LAN 802.1X:

Enable

Authentication Type: External RADIUS ▾

802.1X ports:

P1 P2 P3 P4

Note:

1. 802.1X enabled LAN ports only support a single attached device using EAPOL authentication. To authenticate multiple devices through a LAN port you need an 802.1X-capable switch. Then configure 802.1X on the attached switch instead.
2. Please configure [External RADIUS](#) or [Local 802.1X](#) for authentication.
3. Authentication by External RADIUS supports PEAP, EAP-TLS and EAP-TTLS.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Check the box to enable LAN 802.1x function.
Authentication Type	Use the drop down list to choose which server (External RADIUS or Local 802.1x) will be used for authenticating LAN user.
802.1X ports	After enabling the function, simply specify the LAN port(s) to apply such function.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

II-3 Hardware Acceleration

Hardware Acceleration is also called PPA in DrayTek for it is based on Protocol Processing Engine (PPE) of Infineon. It can only support 128 sessions for network traffic (IN & OUT) with implementing three kinds of modes - Disable, Auto and Manual.



Info

Such feature is only supported by certain firmware version.

When the data traffic is heavy and data transmission is getting slowly and slowly, you can configure this page to accelerate the data streaming by hardware itself. Open **Hardware Acceleration** to access into the following page:

Hardware Acceleration >> Setup

Mode:

Protocol: TCP UDP

Option: Accelerate heaviest traffic sessions

Specific Hosts:

Index	Enable	Dest Port Start	Dest Port End	Private IP	
1.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="button" value="Choose PC"/>
2.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="button" value="Choose PC"/>
3.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="button" value="Choose PC"/>
4.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="button" value="Choose PC"/>
5.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="button" value="Choose PC"/>

WAN Information:

	Status	TX	RX
WAN1-ADSL	Enable	--	--
WAN2-Ethernet	Enable	--	V

	Status	TX	RX
WAN1-ADSL	Disable	--	--
WAN2-Ethernet	Enable	V	V

Note:

1. If Hardware Acceleration is enabled, the accelerated sessions will bypass Traffic Graph.
2. Hardware Acceleration and WAN(Ethernet WAN) Budget can't be enabled simultaneously.
3. Hardware Acceleration only support WAN >> Internet Access "PPPoE" and "Static or Dynamic IP" mode

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Mode	<p>Disable - The default setting.</p> <p>Auto - When the hardware acceleration is configured with the Auto mode, the sessions with the heaviest loading and the lower latency traffic will be added into PPA. However, the Auto mode does not support UDP protocol by designed.</p> <p>Manual - The Manual mode implements three sub-items-- <i>Accelerate most heavy traffic sessions</i>, <i>Apply the Class Rule in Quality of Service</i>, and <i>Specific Hosts</i>. Each of these sub-items can support TCP and UDP protocol.</p>

Protocol	There are two types supported by this function, TCP and UDP.
Option	<p>Accelerate heaviest traffic sessions - Such option is available in Auto Mode, too. But the UDP protocol is only supported in this sub-item.</p> <p>Specific Hosts - This sub-item provides 5 hosts for adding NAT sessions into the PPA. For the PPA only supports 128 sessions, these hosts will share these sessions. Therefore, the performance will be lower than only one host.</p> <p>Choose this option to specify certain PCs on LAN to apply the hardware acceleration.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Enable - Check the box to make PC(s) specified in the selected index entry to be applied. ● Dest Port Start - Type the starting port for the PC(s) in LAN. ● Dest Port End - Type the ending port for the PC(s) in LAN. ● Private IP/Choose PC - Type the IP address as the selected host. Or click the Choose PC button to specify one IP address from the pop-up window.

Checking the PPA status

For checking whether the rule of PPA is working or not, a user can login to Vigor2862 series by using telnet. User can view how many sessions are transferring in each direction of PPA table after entering "ppa -v".

```

> ppa -v
% PPA mode is Auto
% PPA mode is Manual (traffic)
% PPA time is 10
% PPA range is 255
*****
WAN Acceleration session
Session - Src_ip:Src_port ----- Dest_ip:Dest_port --- Nat_ip:Nat_port
*****
⏱
*****
LAN Acceleration session
Session - Src_ip:Src_port ----- Dest_ip:Dest_port --- Nat_ip:Nat_port
*****
0 - 192.168. 1. 10: 2938 - 119.236.154.122: 5590 - 192.168. 3. 10:52524
Src_mac:00:22:15:8f:85:59 ---- Dest_mac:00:50:7f:37:c8:4c
1 - 192.168. 1. 10: 2952 - 193. 88. 6. 13:33033 - 192.168. 3. 10:52538
Src_mac:00:22:15:8f:85:59 ---- Dest_mac:00:50:7f:37:c8:4c

```

II-4 NAT

Usually, the router serves as an NAT (Network Address Translation) router. NAT is a mechanism that one or more private IP addresses can be mapped into a single public one. Public IP address is usually assigned by your ISP, for which you may get charged. Private IP addresses are recognized only among internal hosts.

When the outgoing packets destined to some public server on the Internet reach the NAT router, the router will change its source address into the public IP address of the router, select the available public port, and then forward it. At the same time, the router shall list an entry in a table to memorize this address/port-mapping relationship. When the public server response, the incoming traffic, of course, is destined to the router's public IP address and the router will do the inversion based on its table. Therefore, the internal host can communicate with external host smoothly.

The benefit of the NAT includes:

- **Save cost on applying public IP address and apply efficient usage of IP address.** NAT allows the internal IP addresses of local hosts to be translated into one public IP address, thus you can have only one IP address on behalf of the entire internal hosts.
- **Enhance security of the internal network by obscuring the IP address.** There are many attacks aiming victims based on the IP address. Since the attacker cannot be aware of any private IP addresses, the NAT function can protect the internal network.



Info

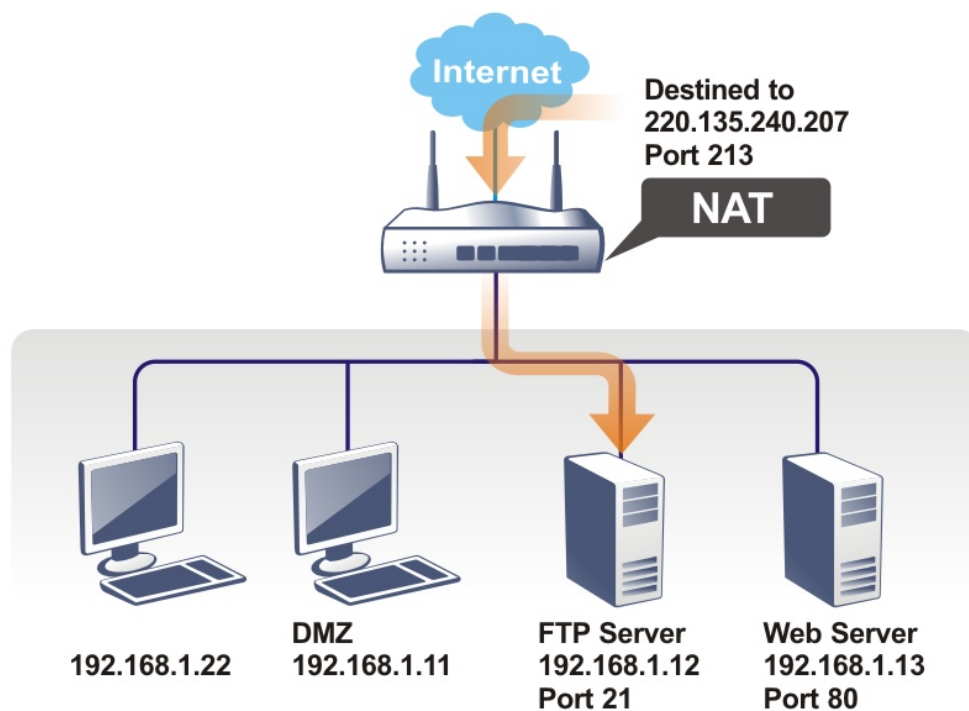
On NAT page, you will see the private IP address defined in RFC-1918. Usually we use the 192.168.1.0/24 subnet for the router. As stated before, the NAT facility can map one or more IP addresses and/or service ports into different specified services. In other words, the NAT function can be achieved by using port mapping methods.

Web User Interface

Routing
NAT
Port Redirection
DMZ Host
Open Ports
Port Triggering
ALG
Hardware Acceleration

II-4-1 Port Redirection

Port Redirection is usually set up for server related service inside the local network (LAN), such as web servers, FTP servers, E-mail servers etc. Most of the case, you need a public IP address for each server and this public IP address/domain name are recognized by all users. Since the server is actually located inside the LAN, the network well protected by NAT of the router, and identified by its private IP address/port, the goal of Port Redirection function is to forward all access request with public IP address from external users to the mapping private IP address/port of the server.



The port redirection can only apply to incoming traffic.

To use this function, please go to NAT page and choose **Port Redirection** web page. The **Port Redirection Table** provides 40 port-mapping entries for the internal hosts.

Port Redirection | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Index	Enable	Service Name	WAN Interface	Protocol	Public Port	Source IP	Private IP
<u>1.</u>	<input type="checkbox"/>		All			Any	
<u>2.</u>	<input type="checkbox"/>		All			Any	
<u>3.</u>	<input type="checkbox"/>		All			Any	
<u>4.</u>	<input type="checkbox"/>		All			Any	
<u>5.</u>	<input type="checkbox"/>		All			Any	
<u>6.</u>	<input type="checkbox"/>		All			Any	
<u>7.</u>	<input type="checkbox"/>		All			Any	
<u>8.</u>	<input type="checkbox"/>		All			Any	
<u>9.</u>	<input type="checkbox"/>		All			Any	
<u>10.</u>	<input type="checkbox"/>		All			Any	

<< [1-10](#) | [11-20](#) | [21-30](#) | [31-40](#) >> [Next](#) >>

Note:
 The port number values set in this page might be invalid due to the same values configured for Management Port Setup in [System Maintenance>>Management, Open VPN and SSL VPN](#).

Each item is explained as follows:

Item	Description
Index	Display the number of the profile.
Enable	Check the box to enable the port redirection profile.
Service Name	Display the description of the specific network service.
WAN Interface	Display the WAN IP address used by the profile.
Protocol	Display the transport layer protocol (TCP or UDP).
Public Port	Display the port number which will be redirected to the specified Private IP and Port of the internal host.
Source IP	Display the IP object of the source IP.
Private IP	Display the IP address of the internal host providing the service.

Press any number under Index to access into next page for configuring port redirection.

NAT >> Port Redirection

Index No. 1

<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	
Mode	Single ▼
Service Name	<input type="text"/>
Protocol	TCP ▼
WAN Interface	ALL ▼
Public Port	<input type="text" value="0"/>
Source IP	Any ▼
Private IP	<input type="text"/>
Private Port	<input type="text" value="0"/>

Note:

In "Range" Mode the End IP will be calculated automatically once the Public Port and Start IP have been entered.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Check this box to enable such port redirection setting.
Mode	Two options (Single and Range) are provided here for you to choose. To set a range for the specific service, select Range . In Range mode, if the public port (start port and end port) and the starting IP of private IP had been entered, the system will calculate and display the ending IP of private IP automatically.
Service Name	Enter the description of the specific network service.
Protocol	Select the transport layer protocol (TCP or UDP).
WAN Interface	Select the WAN IP used for port redirection. There are eight WAN IP alias that can be selected and used for port redirection. The default setting is All which means all the incoming data from any port will be redirected to specified range of IP address and port.
Public Port	Specify which port can be redirected to the specified Private IP and Port of the internal host. If you choose Range as the port redirection mode, you will see two boxes on this field. Type the required number on the first box (as the starting port) and the second box (as the ending port).
Source IP	Use the drop down list to specify an IP object. Or click IP Object link to create a new one for applying.
Private IP	Specify the private IP address of the internal host providing the service. If you choose Range as the port redirection mode, you will see two boxes on this field. Type a complete IP address in the first box (as the starting point). The second one will be assigned automatically later.
Private Port	Specify the private port number of the service offered by the internal host.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

Note that the router has its own built-in services (servers) such as Telnet, HTTP and FTP etc. Since the common port numbers of these services (servers) are all the same, you may need to reset the router in order to avoid confliction.

For example, the built-in web user interface in the router is with default port 80, which may conflict with the web server in the local network, http://192.168.1.13:80. Therefore, you need to change the router's http port to any one other than the default port 80 to avoid conflict, such as 8080. This can be set in the System Maintenance >>Management Setup. You then will access the admin screen of by suffixing the IP address with 8080, e.g., http://192.168.1.1:8080 instead of port 80.

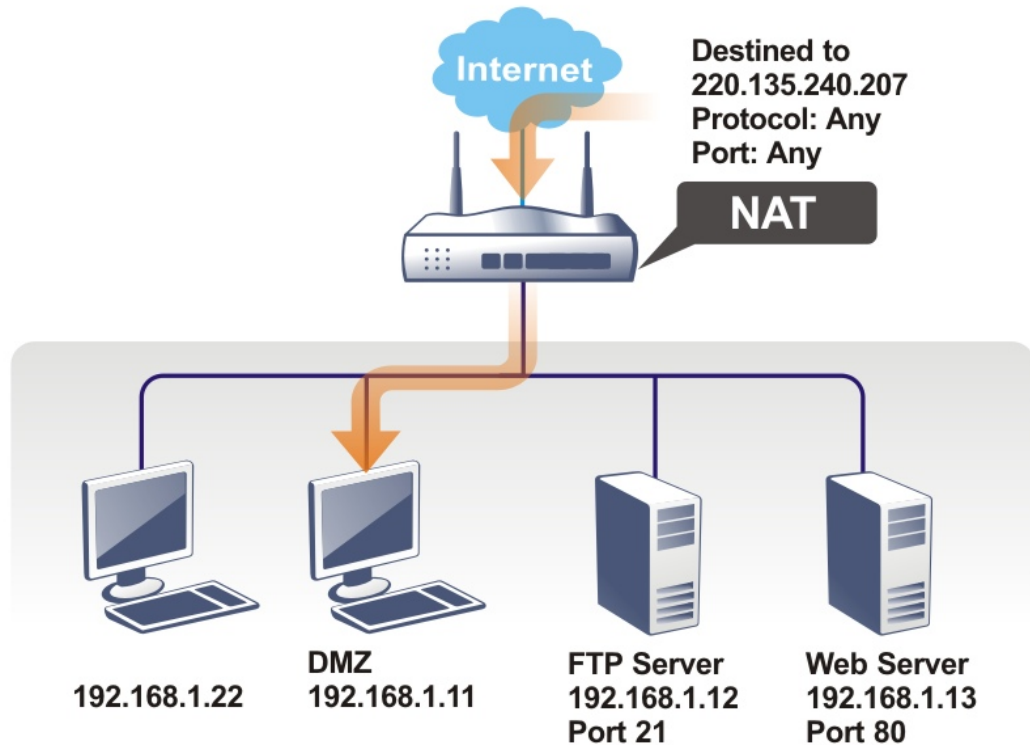
System Maintenance >> Management



IPv4 Management Setup	IPv6 Management Setup	LAN Access Setup
Router Name <input type="text" value="DrayTek"/>		
<input type="checkbox"/> Default:Disable Auto-Logout <input type="checkbox"/> Enable Validation Code in Internet/LAN Access Note: IE8 and below version does NOT support DrayOS CAPTCHA auth code.	Management Port Setup <input checked="" type="radio"/> User Define Ports <input type="radio"/> Default Ports Telnet Port <input type="text" value="23"/> (Default: 23) HTTP Port <input type="text" value="80"/> (Default: 80) HTTPS Port <input type="text" value="443"/> (Default: 443) FTP Port <input type="text" value="21"/> (Default: 21) TR069 Port <input type="text" value="8069"/> (Default: 8069) SSH Port <input type="text" value="22"/> (Default: 22) Note: Ports 8001 and 8043 are used for Hotspot Web Portal.	
Internet Access Control <input type="checkbox"/> Allow management from the Internet Domain name allowed <input type="text"/> <input type="checkbox"/> FTP Server <input type="checkbox"/> HTTP Server <input type="checkbox"/> Enforce HTTPS Access <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> HTTPS Server <input type="checkbox"/> Telnet Server <input type="checkbox"/> TR069 Server <input type="checkbox"/> SSH Server <input type="checkbox"/> SNMP Server <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Disable PING from the Internet	Brute Force Protection <input type="checkbox"/> Enable brute force login protection <input type="checkbox"/> FTP Server <input type="checkbox"/> HTTP Server <input type="checkbox"/> HTTPS Server	

II-4-2 DMZ Host

As mentioned above, **Port Redirection** can redirect incoming TCP/UDP or other traffic on particular ports to the specific private IP address/port of host in the LAN. However, other IP protocols, for example Protocols 50 (ESP) and 51 (AH), do not travel on a fixed port. Vigor router provides a facility **DMZ Host** that maps ALL unsolicited data on any protocol to a single host in the LAN. Regular web surfing and other such Internet activities from other clients will continue to work without inappropriate interruption. **DMZ Host** allows a defined internal user to be totally exposed to the Internet, which usually helps some special applications such as Netmeeting or Internet Games etc.



The security properties of NAT are somewhat bypassed if you set up DMZ host. We suggest you to add additional filter rules or a secondary firewall.

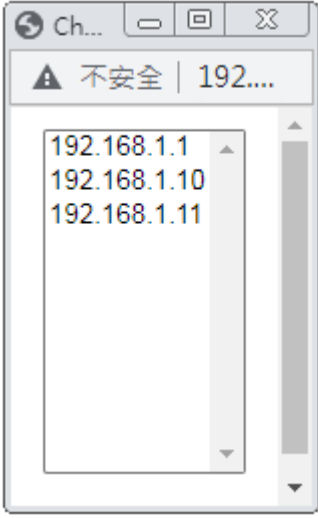
Click **DMZ Host** to open the following page. You can set different DMZ host for each WAN interface. Click the WAN tab to switch into the configuration page for that WAN.

NAT >> DMZ Host Setup

DMZ Host Setup			
WAN1	WAN2	WAN3	WAN4
WAN 1 None <input type="button" value="v"/> Private IP <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Choose IP"/>			
<input type="button" value="OK"/>			

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
WAN1	Choose Private IP or None.
Private IP	Enter the private IP address of the DMZ host, or click Choose

	PC to select one.
Choose IP	<p>Click this button and then a window will automatically pop up, as depicted below. The window consists of a list of private IP addresses of all hosts in your LAN network. Select one private IP address in the list to be the DMZ host.</p>  <p>When you have selected one private IP from the above dialog, the IP address will be shown on the screen. Click OK to save the setting.</p>

DMZ Host for WAN2, WAN3, or WAN4 is slightly different with WAN1.

See the following figure.

NAT >> DMZ Host Setup

DMZ Host Setup		WAN1	WAN2	WAN3	WAN4
WAN 2					
Enable	Private IP		0.0.0.0		Choose IP
<input type="checkbox"/>					
OK					

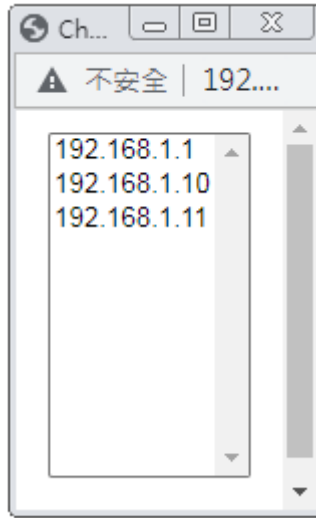
If you previously have set up WAN Alias for PPPoE or Static or Dynamic IP mode in WAN2 interface, you will find them in Aux. WAN IP for your selection.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Check to enable the DMZ Host function.
Private IP	Enter the private IP address of the DMZ host, or click Choose PC to select one.

Choose IP

Click this button and then a window will automatically pop up, as depicted below. The window consists of a list of private IP addresses of all hosts in your LAN network. Select one private IP address in the list to be the DMZ host.



When you have selected one private IP from the above dialog, the IP address will be shown on the screen. Click **OK** to save the setting.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

II-4-3 Open Ports

Open Ports allows you to open a range of ports for the traffic of special applications.

Common application of Open Ports includes P2P application (e.g., BT, KaZaA, Gnutella, WinMX, eMule and others), Internet Camera etc. Ensure that you keep the application involved up-to-date to avoid falling victim to any security exploits.

Click **Open Ports** to open the following page:

NAT >> Open Ports

Open Ports Setup						Set to Factory Default
Index	Enable	Comment	WAN Interface	Source IP	Local IP Address	
1.	<input type="checkbox"/>			Any		
2.	<input type="checkbox"/>			Any		
3.	<input type="checkbox"/>			Any		
4.	<input type="checkbox"/>			Any		
5.	<input type="checkbox"/>			Any		
6.	<input type="checkbox"/>			Any		
7.	<input type="checkbox"/>			Any		
8.	<input type="checkbox"/>			Any		
9.	<input type="checkbox"/>			Any		
10.	<input type="checkbox"/>			Any		

<< [1-10](#) | [11-20](#) | [21-30](#) | [31-40](#) >>

[Next >>](#)

Note:

The port number values set in this page might be invalid due to the same values configured for Management Port Setup in [System Maintenance>>Management, Open VPN](#) and [SSL VPN](#).

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Index	Indicate the relative number for the particular entry that you want to offer service in a local host. You should click the appropriate index number to edit or clear the corresponding entry.
Enable	Check the box to enable the open port profile.
Comment	Specify the name for the defined network service.
WAN Interface	Display the WAN interface used by such index.
Aux. WAN IP	Display the IP alias setting used by such index. If no IP alias setting exists, such field will not appear.
Source IP	Display the name of the IP object.
Local IP Address	Display the private IP address of the local host offering the service.
Status	Display the state for the corresponding entry. X or V is to represent the Inactive or Active state.

To add or edit port settings, click one index number on the page. The index entry setup page will pop up. In each index entry, you can specify 10 port ranges for diverse services.

Index No. 1

Enable Open Ports

Comment

WAN Interface

Source IP

Private IP

	Protocol	Start Port	End Port		Protocol	Start Port	End Port
1.	TCP/UDP	0	0	2.	TCP/UDP	0	0
3.	TCP/UDP	0	0	4.	TCP/UDP	0	0
5.	TCP/UDP	0	0	6.	TCP/UDP	0	0
7.	TCP/UDP	0	0	8.	TCP/UDP	0	0
9.	TCP/UDP	0	0	10.	TCP/UDP	0	0

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable Open Ports	Check to enable this entry.
Comment	Make a name for the defined network application/service.
WAN Interface	Specify the WAN interface that will be used for this entry.
Source IP	Use the drop down list to specify an IP object. Or click IP Object link to create a new one for applying.
WAN IP	Specify the WAN IP address that will be used for this entry. This setting is available when WAN IP Alias is configured.
Private IP	Enter the private IP address of the local host or click Choose PC to select one. Choose IP - Click this button and, subsequently, a window having a list of private IP addresses of local hosts will automatically pop up. Select the appropriate IP address of the local host in the list.
Protocol	Specify the transport layer protocol. It could be TCP, UDP, or ----- (none) for selection.
Start Port	Specify the starting port number of the service offered by the local host.
End Port	Specify the ending port number of the service offered by the local host.

After finishing all the settings here, please click OK to save the configuration.

II-4-4 Port Triggering

Port Triggering is a variation of open ports function.

The key difference between "open port" and "port triggering" is:

- Once the OK button is clicked and the configuration has taken effect, "open port" keeps the ports opened forever.

- Once the OK button is clicked and the configuration has taken effect, "port triggering" will only attempt to open the ports once the triggering conditions are met.
- The duration that these ports are opened depends on the type of protocol used. The "default" durations are shown below and these duration values can be modified via telnet commands.

TCP: 86400 sec.

UDP: 180 sec.

IGMP: 10 sec.

TCP WWW: 60 sec.

TCP SYN: 60 sec.

NAT >> Port Triggering

Port Triggering							Set to Factory Default
Index	Enable	Comment	Triggering Protocol	Source IP	Triggering Port	Incoming Protocol	Incoming Port
1.	<input type="checkbox"/>			Any			
2.	<input type="checkbox"/>			Any			
3.	<input type="checkbox"/>			Any			
4.	<input type="checkbox"/>			Any			
5.	<input type="checkbox"/>			Any			
6.	<input type="checkbox"/>			Any			
7.	<input type="checkbox"/>			Any			
8.	<input type="checkbox"/>			Any			
9.	<input type="checkbox"/>			Any			
10.	<input type="checkbox"/>			Any			

<< [1-10](#) | [11-20](#) >> [Next](#) >>

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Comment	Display the text which memorizes the application of this rule.
Enable	Check the box to enable the Port Triggering profile.
Comment	Display the text which memorizes the application of this rule.
Triggering Protocol	Display the protocol of the triggering packets.
Source IP	Display the name of the IP object.
Triggering Port	Display the port of the triggering packets.
Incoming Protocol	Display the protocol for the incoming data of such triggering profile.
Incoming Port	Display the port for the incoming data of such triggering profile.

Click the index number link to open the configuration page.

NAT >> Port Triggering

No. 1

<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	
Service	User Defined ▾
Comment	<input type="text"/>
Source IP	Any ▾
Triggering Protocol	--- ▾
Triggering Port	<input type="text"/>
Incoming Protocol	--- ▾
Incoming Port	<input type="text"/>
Note:	
	The Triggering Port and Incoming Port should be input like this : 123-456,777-789 (legal),123-456,789 (legal), but 123-456-789 (illegal).

OK Clear Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Check to enable this entry.
Service	Choose the predefined service to apply for such trigger profile.
Comment	Type the text to memorize the application of this rule.
Source IP	Use the drop down list to specify an IP object. Or click IP Object link to create a new one for applying.
Triggering Protocol	Select the protocol (TCP, UDP or TCP/UDP) for such triggering profile.
Triggering Port	Type the port or port range for such triggering profile.
Incoming Protocol	When the triggering packets received, it is expected the incoming packets will use the selected protocol. Select the protocol (TCP, UDP or TCP/UDP) for the incoming data of such triggering profile.
Incoming Port	Type the port or port range for the incoming packets.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

II-4-5 ALG

ALG means **Application Layer Gateway**. There are two methods provided by Vigor router, RTSP (Real Time Streaming Protocol) ALG and SIP (Session Initiation Protocol) ALG, for processing the packets of voice and video.

RTSP ALG makes RTSP message, RTCP message, and RTP packets of voice and video be transmitted and received correctly via NAT by Vigor router.

However, SIP ALG makes SIP message and RTP packets of voice be transmitted and received correctly via NAT by Vigor router.

NAT >> ALG

ALG (Application Layer Gateway) | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Enable ALG

<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	Protocol	Listen Port		TCP	UDP
<input type="checkbox"/>	SIP	5060	(1~65535)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	RTSP	554	(1~65535)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable ALG	Check to enable such function.
Listen Port	Type a port number for SIP or RTSP protocol.
TCP	Check the box to make correspond protocol message packet from TCP transmit and receive via NAT.
UDP	Check the box to make correspond protocol message packet from UDP transmit and receive via NAT.

II-5 Applications

Dynamic DNS

The ISP often provides you with a dynamic IP address when you connect to the Internet via your ISP. It means that the public IP address assigned to your router changes each time you access the Internet. The Dynamic DNS feature lets you assign a domain name to a dynamic WAN IP address. It allows the router to update its online WAN IP address mappings on the specified Dynamic DNS server. Once the router is online, you will be able to use the registered domain name to access the router or internal virtual servers from the Internet. It is particularly helpful if you host a web server, FTP server, or other server behind the router.

Before you use the Dynamic DNS feature, you have to apply for free DDNS service to the DDNS service providers. The router provides up to three accounts from three different DDNS service providers. Basically, Vigor routers are compatible with the DDNS services supplied by most popular DDNS service providers such as www.dyndns.org, www.no-ip.com, www.dtdns.com, www.changeip.com, www.dynamic-nameserver.com. You should visit their websites to register your own domain name for the router.

LAN DNS / DNS Forwarding

The LAN DNS lets the network administrators host servers with privacy and security. When the network administrators of your office set up FTP, Mail or Web server inside LAN, you can specify specific private IP address (es) to correspondent servers. Thus, even the remote PC is adopting public DNS as the DNS server, the LAN DNS resolution on Vigor2832 Series will respond the specified private IP address.

Schedule

The Vigor router has a built-in clock which can update itself manually or automatically by means of Network Time Protocols (NTP). As a result, you can not only schedule the router to dialup to the Internet at a specified time, but also restrict Internet access to certain hours so that users can connect to the Internet only during certain hours, say, business hours. The schedule is also applicable to other functions.

RADIUS/TACACS+

Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS) is a security authentication client/server protocol that supports authentication, authorization and accounting, which is widely used by Internet service providers. It is the most common method of authenticating and authorizing dial-up and tunneled network users.

The built-in RADIUS client feature enables the router to assist the remote dial-in user or a wireless station and the RADIUS server in performing mutual authentication. It enables centralized remote access authentication for network management.

LDAP /Active Directory Setup

Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) is a communication protocol for using in TCP/IP network. It defines the methods to access distributing directory server by clients, work on directory and share the information in the directory by clients. The LDAP standard is established by the work team of Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF).

As the name described, LDAP is designed as an effect way to access directory service without the complexity of other directory service protocols. For LDAP is defined to perform, inquire and modify the information within the directory, and acquire the data in the directory securely, therefore users can apply LDAP to search or list the directory object, inquire or manage the active directory.

UPnP

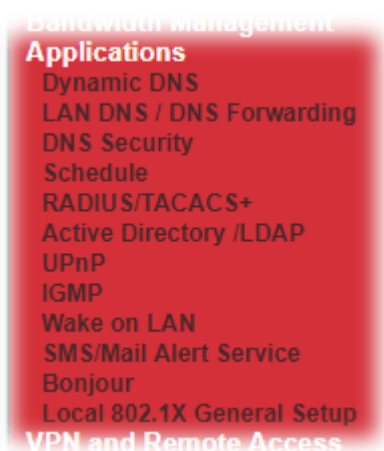
The **UPnP** (Universal Plug and Play) protocol is supported to bring to network connected devices the ease of installation and configuration which is already available for directly connected PC peripherals with the existing Windows 'Plug and Play' system. For NAT routers, the major feature of UPnP on the router is "NAT Traversal". This enables applications inside the firewall to automatically open the ports that they need to pass through a router.

Wake on LAN

A PC client on LAN can be woken up by the router it connects. When a user wants to wake up a specified PC through the router, he/she must type correct MAC address of the specified PC on this web page of **Wake on LAN (WOL)** of this router.

In addition, such PC must have installed a network card supporting WOL function. By the way, WOL function must be set as "Enable" on the BIOS setting.

Web User Interface



II-5-1 Dynamic DNS

Enable the Function and Add a Dynamic DNS Account

1. Assume you have a registered domain name from the DDNS provider, say *hostname.dyndns.org*, and an account with username: *test* and password: *test*.
2. Open **Applications>>Dynamic DNS**.
3. Check **Enable Dynamic DNS Setup**.

Applications >> Dynamic DNS Setup

Dynamic DNS Setup [Set to Factory Default](#)

Enable Dynamic DNS Setup [View Log](#) [Force Update](#)

Auto-Update interval Min(s) (180~14400)

Accounts:

Index	Enable	WAN Interface	Domain Name
<u>1.</u>	<input type="checkbox"/>	WAN1 First	
<u>2.</u>	<input type="checkbox"/>	WAN1 First	
<u>3.</u>	<input type="checkbox"/>	WAN1 First	
<u>4.</u>	<input type="checkbox"/>	WAN1 First	
<u>5.</u>	<input type="checkbox"/>	WAN1 First	
<u>6.</u>	<input type="checkbox"/>	WAN1 First	

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable Dynamic DNS Setup	Check this box to enable DDNS function.
Set to Factory Default	Clear all profiles and recover to factory settings.
View Log	Display DDNS log status.

Force Update	Force the router updates its information to DDNS server.
Auto-Update interval	Set the time for the router to perform auto update for DDNS service.
Index	Click the number below Index to access into the setting page of DDNS setup to set account(s).
Enable	Check the box to enable such account.
WAN Interface	Display the WAN interface used.
Domain Name	Display the domain name that you set on the setting page of DDNS setup.

4. Select Index number 1 to add an account for the router. Check **Enable Dynamic DNS Account**, and choose correct Service Provider: *dyndns.org*, type the registered hostname: *hostname* and domain name suffix: *dyndns.org* in the **Domain Name** block. The following two blocks should be typed your account Login Name: *test* and Password: *test*.

Applications >> Dynamic DNS Setup >> Dynamic DNS Account Setup

Index : 1

Enable Dynamic DNS Account
 WAN Interface: WAN1 First
 Service Provider: dyn.com (www.dyn.com)
 Service Type: Dynamic
 Domain Name: chronic6653 .dyndns.org dyndns.org
 Login Name: chronic6653
 Password:

Wildcards
 Backup MX
 Mail Extender:
 Determine WAN IP: WAN IP

If **User-Defined** is specified as the service provider, the web page will be changed slightly as follows:

Enable Dynamic DNS Account
 WAN Interface: WAN1 First
 Service Provider: User-Defined
 Provider Host: changeip.org
 Service API: /dynamic/dns/update.asp?u=jo...cp=jo...hostname=j...changeip.orgsip=##IP##scmd=update&offline=0
 Auth Type: basic
 Connection Type: Http
 Server Response:
 Login Name: chronic6653
 Password:

Wildcards
 Backup MX
 Mail Extender:
 Determine WAN IP: Internet IP

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable Dynamic DNS Account	Check this box to enable the current account. If you did check the box, you will see a check mark appeared on the Active column of the previous web page in step 2).
WAN Interface	<p>WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4 First - While connecting, the router will use WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4 as the first channel for such account. If WAN1/WAN2/WAN3 /WAN4 fails, the router will use another WAN interface instead.</p> <p>WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4 Only - While connecting, the router will use WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4 as the only channel for such account.</p>
Service Provider	Select the service provider for the DDNS account.
Service Type	Select a service type (Dynamic, Custom or Static). If you choose Custom, you can modify the domain that is chosen in the Domain Name field.
Domain Name	Type in one domain name that you applied previously. Use the drop down list to choose the desired domain.
Login Name	Type in the login name that you set for applying domain.
Password	Type in the password that you set for applying domain.
Provider Host	Type the IP address or the domain name of the host which provides related service. Note that such option is available when Customized is selected as Service Provider.
Service API	Type the API information obtained from DDNS server. Note that such option is available when Customized is selected as Service Provider. (e.g: /dynamic/dns/update.asp?u=jo***&p=jo*****&hostname=j***.changeip.org&ip=###IP### &cmd=update&offline=0)
Auth Type	Two types can be used for authentication. Basic - Username and password defined later can be shown from the packets captured. URL - Username and password defined later can be shown in URL. (e.g., http://ns1.vigorddns.com/ddns.php?username=xxxx&password=xxxx&domain=xxxx.vigorddns.com) Note that such option is available when Customized is selected as Service Provider.
Connection Type	There are two connection types (HTTP and HTTPS) to be specified. Note that such option is available when Customized is selected as Service Provider.
Server Response	Type any text that you want to receive from the DDNS server. Note that such option is available when Customized is selected as Service Provider.
Wildcard and Backup MX	The Wildcard and Backup MX (Mail Exchange) features are not supported for all Dynamic DNS providers. You could get more detailed information from their websites.
Mail Extender	If the mail server is defined with another name, please type the name in this area. Such mail server will be used as

	backup mail exchange.
Determine WAN IP	<p>If a Vigor router is installed behind any NAT router, you can enable such function to locate the real WAN IP.</p> <p>When the WAN IP used by Vigor router is private IP, this function can detect the public IP used by the NAT router and use the detected IP address for DDNS update.</p> <p>There are two methods offered for you to choose:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● WAN IP - If it is selected and the WAN IP of Vigor router is private, DDNS update will take place right away. ● Internet IP - If it is selected and the WAN IP of Vigor router is private, it will be converted to public IP before DDNS update takes place.

5. Click OK button to activate the settings. You will see your setting has been saved.

DrayDDNS Settings

DrayDDNS, a new DDNS service developed by DrayTek, can record multiple WAN IP (IPv4) on single domain name. It is convenient for users to use and easily to set up. Each Vigor Router is available to register one domain name.

Choose **DrayTek Global** as the service provider, the web page will be displayed as follows:

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable Dynamic DNS Account	Check this box to enable the current account. If you did check the box, you will see a check mark appeared on the Active column of the previous web page in step 2).
Service Provider	<p>Choose DrayDDNS (Global) as the service provider.</p> <p>Wizard - This button is available when DrayTek Global is selected as Service Provider. To activate the DrayTek's DDNS service, click it to enable license issued by DrayTek through Wizards>>Service Activation Wizard.</p> <p>Refer to section A-1 How to use DrayDDNS? for detailed information.</p>
Status	Display if the license is activated or not.
Determine WAN IP	<p>If a Vigor router is installed behind any NAT router, you can enable such function to locate the real WAN IP.</p> <p>When the WAN IP used by Vigor router is private IP, this function can detect the public IP used by the NAT router and use the detected IP address for DDNS update.</p> <p>There are two methods offered for you to choose:</p>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● WAN IP - If it is selected and the WAN IP of Vigor router is private, DDNS update will take place right away. ● Internet IP - If it is selected and the WAN IP of Vigor router is private, it will be converted to public IP before DDNS update takes place.
WAN Interfaces	WAN1/WAN2/WAN3 or LTE/WAN4 - While connecting, the router will use WAN1/WAN2/WAN3 or LTE /WAN4 as the channel for such account.

Disable the Function and Clear all Dynamic DNS Accounts

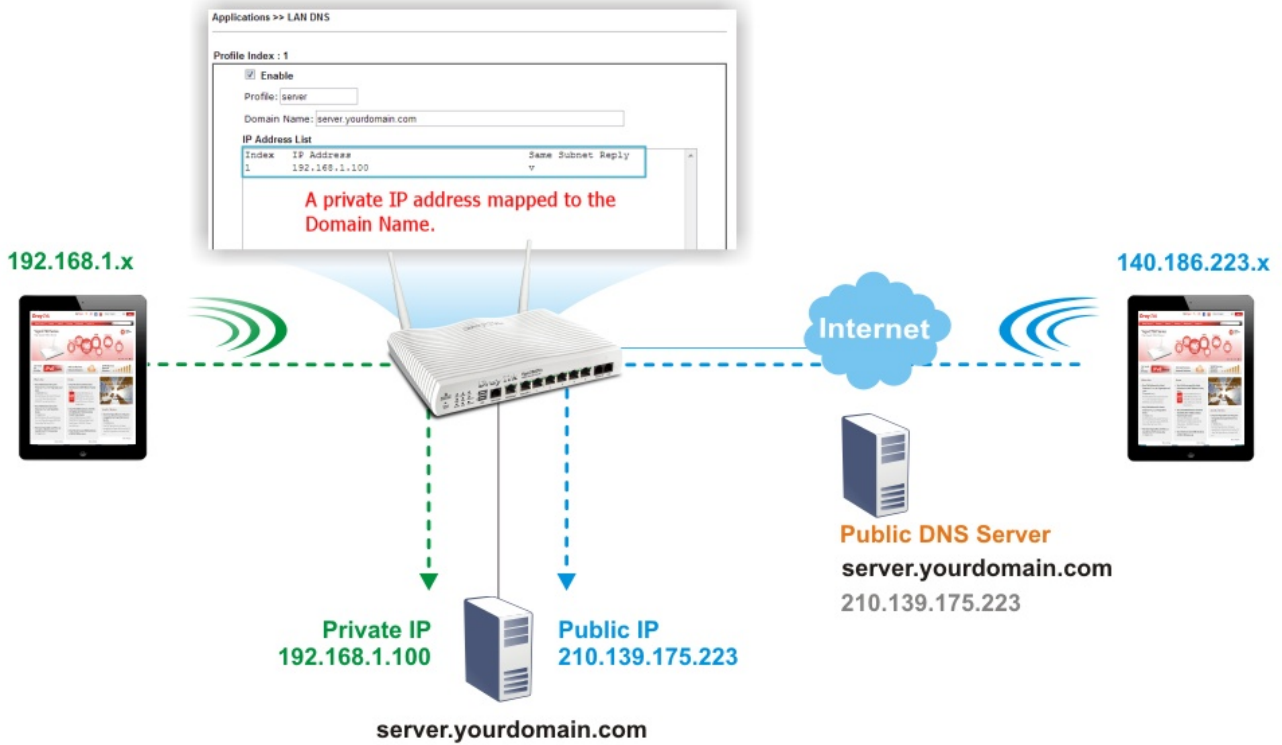
Uncheck **Enable Dynamic DNS Setup**, and click **Clear All** button to disable the function and clear all accounts from the router.

Delete a Dynamic DNS Account

Click the **Index** number you want to delete and then click **Clear All** button to delete the account.

II-5-2 LAN DNS / DNS Forwarding

The LAN DNS lets the network administrators host servers with privacy and security. When the network administrators of your office set up FTP, Mail or Web server inside LAN, you can specify specific private IP address (es) to correspondent servers. Thus, even the remote PC is adopting public DNS as the DNS server, the LAN DNS resolution on Vigor2832 Series will respond the specified private IP address.



Simply click Application>>LAN DNS / DNS Forwarding to open the following page.

Applications >> LAN DNS / DNS Forwarding

LAN DNS Resolution / Conditional DNS Forwarding

| Set to Factory Default |

Index	Enable	Profile	Domain Name	Type	DNS Server
1.	<input type="checkbox"/>			-	
2.	<input type="checkbox"/>			-	
3.	<input type="checkbox"/>			-	
4.	<input type="checkbox"/>			-	
5.	<input type="checkbox"/>			-	
6.	<input type="checkbox"/>			-	
7.	<input type="checkbox"/>			-	
8.	<input type="checkbox"/>			-	
9.	<input type="checkbox"/>			-	
10.	<input type="checkbox"/>			-	

<< 1-10 | 11-20 | 21-30 | 31-40 | 41-50 | 51-60 | 61-70 | 71-80 | 81-90 | 91-100 | 101-110 | 111-120 >>

OK

Each item is explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Clear all profiles and recover to factory settings.

Index	Click the number below Index to access into the setting page.
Enable	Check the box to enable the selected profile.
Profile	Display the name of the LAN DNS profile.
Domain Name	Display the domain name of the LAN DNS profile.
Forwarding	Display that such profile is conditional DNS forwarding or not.
DNS Server	Display the IP address of the DNS Server.

To configure a LAN DNS profile, click on its index to bring up the configuration page.

Applications >> LAN DNS / DNS Forwarding

Profile Index : 1

Enable

Profile:

Type: LAN DNS ▼

Domain Name:

Note:

1. Support wildcard subdomain, ex: *.example.com
2. One domain Name has only one IPv4 address and IPv6 address in the same subnet.

CNAME(Alias Domain Name):

IP Address List (Max. 40 entries)

Index	IP Address	Same Subnet Reply

Or,

Applications >> LAN DNS / DNS Forwarding

Profile Index : 1

Enable

Profile:

Type: DNS Forwarding ▼

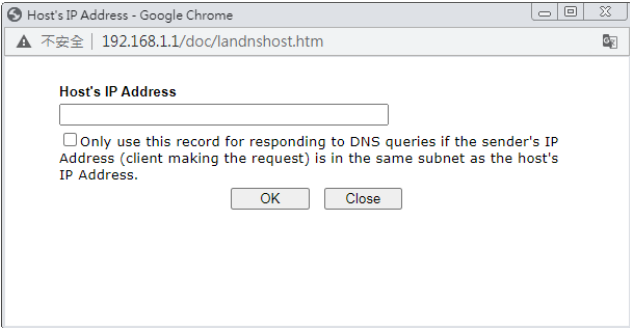
Domain Name:

Note:

1. Support wildcard subdomain, ex: *.example.com
2. Support full wildcard, ex: *
3. Full wildcard will not save to DNS cache table, and DNS server field only support IP.

DNS Server IP/Host Name:

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Check this box to enable such profile.
Profile	<p>Type a name for such profile.</p> <p>Note: If you type a name here for LAN DNS and click OK to save the configuration, the name also will be applied to conditional DNS forwarding automatically.</p>
Type	Select LAN DNS or DNS Forwarding
If LAN DNS is selected	<p>Domain Name - Enter the domain name for the router to look for in DNS queries to intercept and reply to. Wildcards in the form of asterisks (*) can be used to match a domain level. For example, *.draytek.com will match domain names such as www.draytek.com and ftp.draytek.com, whereas www.draytek.* will match domain names such as www.draytek.com and www.draytek.co.uk.</p> <p>CNAME - Click Add to add an domain name alias for the domain name. Click Delete next to an alias entry to delete it.</p> <p>IP Address List - The IP address listed here will be used for mapping with the domain name specified above. In general, one domain name maps with one IP address. If required, you can configure two IP addresses mapping with the same domain name.</p> <p>Add -Click Add to bring up the Add IP Address dialog box:</p>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Host's IP Address - Enter the IP address to be returned in response to a DNS query for the configured domain names and aliases. ● Only responds to the DNS... - Select to use this IP address only if the IP address of the source of the DNS query belongs to the same subnet as the host IP address entered above. <p>After changes have been made, click OK to save and dismiss the dialog box, or Close to discard the changes and dismiss the dialog box.</p> <p>Delete -To delete an IP address, click on it and then click Delete.</p>
If DNS Forwarding is selected	<p>Domain Name - Enter the domain name for the router to look for in DNS queries to intercept and reply to. Wildcards in the form of asterisks (*) can be used to match a domain level. For example, *.draytek.com will match domain names such as www.draytek.com and ftp.draytek.com, whereas www.draytek.* will match domain names such as www.draytek.com and www.draytek.co.uk.</p>

	DNS Server IP / Host Name - Enter the IP address of the DNS server or the host name you want to use for DNS forwarding.
--	---

To save changes made to the LAN DNS profile, click **OK**. To clear the profile and restore the factory default blank values, click **Clear**.

II-5-3 DNS Security

DNS security is able to ensure that the incoming data is not falsified and the source of the data is secure and correct to prevent from DNS attack by someone.

II-5-3-1 General Setup

All of WAN interfaces of Vigor router can be configured with DNS Security enabled respectively.

Application >> DNS Security



DNS Security

General Setup		Domain Diagnosis		Refresh
Interface	Enable	Primary DNS	Secondary DNS	Bogus DNS Reply
WAN1	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	---	Pass ▼
WAN2	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	---	Pass ▼
WAN3	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	---	Pass ▼
WAN4	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	---	Pass ▼

Note:

- The DNS server supports DNSSEC
- The DNS server does not support DNSSEC, function may not work as expected even if it is enabled

OK

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Interface	There are four WAN interfaces allowed to be set with DNS security enabled.
Enable	Check the box to enable the DNS security management.
Primary DNS	Display the IP address of primary DNS obtained from DHCP server or specified by Static WAN.
Secondary DNS	Display the IP address of secondary DNS obtained from DHCP server or specified by Static WAN.
Bogus DNS Reply	Sometime, Vigor router might encounter packets from bogus DNS inquiry. There are two ways to reply such DNS inquiry. Drop - Discard the packets. Pass - Accept the packets and let them pass through Vigor router.

II-5-3-2 Domain Diagnose

This page is used to configure settings for manually detecting if the domain is secure not.

Application >> DNS Security



DNS Security

General Setup | **Domain Diagnosis** | **DNS Cache**

Domain: IPv4 IPv6

Interface:

DNS Server:

Note:
If the domain has not been queried before, it will take a few seconds to process.

Result | [Clear](#) |

Domain Name	IP Address	Interface	Verify Result

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Domain	Type the domain name or IP address (IPv4/IPv6) that you want to query.
Interface	Specify the interface required for executing diagnose.
DNS Server	Type the IP address of the DNS Server which will diagnose the domain specified above.
Diagnose	Click it to perform the diagnosis for the domain.
Result	The diagnosed information will be displayed on such field.

II-5-4 Schedule

The Vigor router has a built-in clock which can update itself manually or automatically by means of Network Time Protocols (NTP). As a result, you can not only schedule the router to dialup to the Internet at a specified time, but also restrict Internet access to certain hours so that users can connect to the Internet only during certain hours, say, business hours. The schedule is also applicable to other functions.

You have to set your time before set schedule. In **System Maintenance>> Time and Date** menu, press **Inquire Time** button to set the Vigor router's clock to current time of your PC. The clock will reset once if you power down or reset the router. There is another way to set up time. You can inquiry an NTP server (a time server) on the Internet to synchronize the router's clock. This method can only be applied when the WAN connection has been built up.

Applications >> Schedule

Schedule : Current System Time | [System time set](#) | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Index	Enable	Comment	Time	Frequency
1	<input type="checkbox"/>			Sun. <input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>			Sun. <input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>			Sun. <input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>			Sun. <input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>			Sun. <input type="checkbox"/>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>			Sun. <input type="checkbox"/>
7	<input type="checkbox"/>			Sun. <input type="checkbox"/>
8	<input type="checkbox"/>			Sun. <input type="checkbox"/>
9	<input type="checkbox"/>			Sun. <input type="checkbox"/>
10	<input type="checkbox"/>			Sun. <input type="checkbox"/>
11	<input type="checkbox"/>			Sun. <input type="checkbox"/>
12	<input type="checkbox"/>			Sun. <input type="checkbox"/>
13	<input type="checkbox"/>			Sun. <input type="checkbox"/>
14	<input type="checkbox"/>			Sun. <input type="checkbox"/>
15	<input type="checkbox"/>			Sun. <input type="checkbox"/>

Force on Force down

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Current System Time	Display the time Vigor router used.
System time set	Click it to access into the time setup page (System Maintenance>>Time and Date).
Set to Factory Default	Clear all profiles and recover to factory settings.

Index	Click the number below Index to access into the setting page of schedule.
Enable	Check the box to enable such schedule profile.
Comment	Display the name of the time schedule.
Time	Display the valid time period by time bar.
Frequency	Display which day(s) will be always on and which day(s) will be always off of the schedule profile by color boxes. <input type="radio"/> - If it lights in green, it means such schedule is active.

You can set up to 15 schedules. Then you can apply them to your Internet Access or VPN and Remote Access >> LAN-to-LAN settings.

To add a schedule:

1. Click any index, say Index No. 1.
2. The detailed settings of the call schedule with index 1 are shown below.

Applications >> Schedule

Index No. 1 Current System Time | [System time set](#) |

Enable Schedule Setup

Comment

Start Date (yyyy-mm-dd) - -

Start Time (hh:mm) :

Duration Time (hh:mm) :

End Time (hh:mm) :

Action

How Often

Once

Weekdays

Sun Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri Sat

Monthly, on date

Cycle duration: days (Cycle will start on the Start Date.)

Note:
Comment can only contain A-Z a-z 0-9 , . { } - _ () ^ \$! ~ ` |

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable Schedule Setup	Check to enable the schedule.
Comment	Type a short description for such schedule.
Start Date (yyyy-mm-dd)	Specify the starting date of the schedule.
Start Time (hh:mm)	Specify the starting time of the schedule.
Duration Time (hh:mm)	Specify the duration (or period) for the schedule.
End Time (hh:mm)	It will be calculated automatically when Start Time and Duration Time are configured well.

Action	Specify which action Call Schedule should apply during the period of the schedule. Force On -Force the connection to be always on. Force Down -Force the connection to be always down.
How Often	Specify how often the schedule will be applied. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Once -The schedule will be applied just once ● Weekdays -Specify which days in one week should perform the schedule. ● Monthly, on date - The router will only execute the action applied such schedule on the date (1 to 28) of a month. ● Cycle duration - Type a number as cycle duration. Then, any action applied such schedule will be executed per several days. For example, "3" is selected as cycle duration. That means, the action applied such schedule will be executed every three days since the date defined on the Start Date.

3. Click OK button to save the settings.

Example

Suppose you want to control the PPPoE Internet access connection to be always on (Force On) from 9:00 to 18:00 for whole week. Other time the Internet access connection should be disconnected (Force Down).

Office
Hour:

(Force On)



Mon - Sun 9:00 am to 6:00 pm

1. Make sure the PPPoE connection and **Time Setup** is working properly.
2. Configure the PPPoE always on from 9:00 to 18:00 for whole week.
3. Configure the **Force Down** from 18:00 to next day 9:00 for whole week.
4. Assign these two profiles to the PPPoE Internet access profile. Now, the PPPoE Internet connection will follow the schedule order to perform **Force On** or **Force Down** action according to the time plan that has been pre-defined in the schedule profiles.

II-5-5 RADIUS/TACACS+

Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS) is a security authentication client/server protocol that supports authentication, authorization and accounting, which is widely used by Internet service providers. It is the most common method of authenticating and authorizing dial-up and tunneled network users.

II-5-5-1 External RADIUS

The built-in RADIUS client feature enables the router to assist the remote dial-in user or a wireless station and the RADIUS server in performing mutual authentication. It enables centralized remote access authentication for network management.

Vigor router can be operated as a RADIUS client. This web page is used to configure settings for external RADIUS server. Then LAN users of Vigor router will be authenticated and accounted by such server for network application.

Applications >> RADIUS/TACACS+

External RADIUS
Internal RADIUS
External TACACS+

Enable
 Comments:
 RADIUS Request Interval sec (2~30)

Primary Server

 Primary Server
 Secret
 Authentication Port
 Retry times(1~3)

Secondary Server

 Secondary Server
 Secret
 Authentication Port
 Retry times(1~3)

RADIUS Server Status Log

[Refresh](#) | [Clear](#) |

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Check to enable RADIUS client feature.
Comments	Enter a brief description.
RADIUS Request Interval	Set a timeout value for the router waiting for a response from the RADIUS server. If no response, Vigor router will send the authentication request again.
Primary Server	<p>Primary Server - Enter the IP address of RADIUS server.</p> <p>Secret - The RADIUS server and client share a secret that is used to authenticate the messages sent between them. Both sides must be configured to use the same shared secret. The maximum length of the shared secret you can set is 36 characters.</p> <p>Authentication Port - The UDP port number that the RADIUS server is using. The default value is 1812, based on RFC 2138.</p> <p>Retry - Enter a times number for sending the access request to the RADIUS server. When reaching the threshold of retry number, Vigor system will switch and send the request to the other RADIUS server (e.g., secondary server).</p>

Secondary Server	<p>Secondary Server - Enter the IP address of RADIUS server.</p> <p>Secret - The RADIUS server and client share a secret that is used to authenticate the messages sent between them. Both sides must be configured to use the same shared secret. The maximum length of the shared secret you can set is 36 characters.</p> <p>Authentication Port - The UDP port number that the RADIUS server is using. The default value is 1812, based on RFC 2138.</p> <p>Retry - Enter a times number for sending the access request to the RADIUS server. When reaching the threshold of retry number, Vigor system will switch and send the request to the primary RADIUS server.</p>
RADIUS Server Status Log	Display the record of current status of RADIUS server.

After finished the above settings, click OK button to save the settings.

II-5-5-2 Internal RADIUS

Except for being a built-in RADIUS client, Vigor router also can be operated as a RADIUS server which performs security authentication by itself. This page is used to configure settings for internal RADIUS server. Then LAN user of Vigor router will be authenticated by Vigor router directly.

Applications >> RADIUS/TACACS+

External RADIUS
Internal RADIUS
External TACACS+

Enable

Authentication Port

RADIUS Client Access List

Index	Enable	Shared Secret	IP Address	IP Mask	IPv6 Address	IPv6 Length
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="Max: 31 character"/>	<input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>	<input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>	<input type="text" value="::"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="Max: 31 character"/>	<input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>	<input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>	<input type="text" value="::"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="Max: 31 character"/>	<input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>	<input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>	<input type="text" value="::"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="Max: 31 character"/>	<input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>	<input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>	<input type="text" value="::"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>

Authentication

Method

802.1X Method

Support 802.1X Method

EAP_TTLS/PAP EAP_TTLS/MSCHAP EAP_TTLS/MSCHAPv2

EAP_PEAP/MSCHAPv2

User Profile

Available List

Authentication List

Synchronize Internal RADIUS user list to Local 802.1X user list.

Note:

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Check to enable internal RADIUS client feature.
Authentication Port	Set a port number for internal RADIUS server.
RADIUS Client Access List	<p>Allow to configure that clients under specified domain (IPv4 and IPv6) must be authenticated with the specified shared secret.</p> <p>Enable - Check to enable RADIUS client feature.</p> <p>Shared Secret - The RADIUS server and client share a secret that is used to authenticate the messages sent between them. Both sides must be configured to use the same shared secret. The maximum length of the shared secret you can set is 36 characters.</p> <p>IP Address - Type the IP address of the wired/wireless client.</p> <p>IP Mask - Type the subnet mask required for the IP address.</p> <p>IPv6 Address - Type the IPv6 address of the wired/wireless client.</p> <p>IPv6 Length - Type the prefix length required for the IPv6 address.</p>
Authentication	<p>Specify the way to authenticate the wireless client.</p> <p>PAP Only / PAP/CHAP/MS-CHAP/MS-CHAPv2 - Choose PAP Only. Or choose the one which supports PAP, CHAP, MS-CHAP and MS-CHAPv2.</p> <p>Support 802.1X Method - The built in RADIUS server offered by Vigor router can act as the AAA server. Check the box to enable the function of authentication mechanism.</p>
User Profile	<p>During the process of security authentication, user account and user password will be required for identity authentication. Before configuring such page, create at least one user profile in User Management>>User Profile first.</p> <p>Select All - Click it to select all of the user profiles in Available List.</p> <p>Clear All- Click to remove all of the user profiles in Available List.</p> <p>Available List - The user profiles without RADIUS server enabled in User Management >> User Profile will be listed in this field.</p> <p>Authentication List -The user profiles with RADIUS server enabled in User Management >> User Profile will be listed in this field.</p>
Synchronize Internal RADIUS user list to Local 802.1X user list	<p>Users can be authenticated by RADIUS server and local 802.1X to get certain network service. It is not necessary to create new user profiles (containing user accounts and user passwords) for RADIUS and local 802.1X respectively.</p> <p>Simply check this box; all of the user profiles (prepared for RADIUS server authentication) listed in Authentication List will be synchronized for local 802.1X user authentication.</p>

After finished the above settings, click OK button to save the settings.

II-5-5-3 External TACACS+

It means Terminal Access Controller Access-Control System Plus. It works like RADIUS does. Click the TACACS+ Setup to open the following page:

Applications >> RADIUS/TACACS+

External RADIUS Internal RADIUS External TACACS+

Enable

Server IP Address Max: 15 characters

Destination Port 49

Type ASCII

Shared Secret Max: 36 characters

Confirm Shared Secret Max: 36 characters

OK Clear Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Check to enable TACACS+ feature.
Server IP Address	Enter the IP address of TACACS+ server.
Destination Port	The UDP port number that the TACACS+ server is using.
Shared Secret	The TACACS+ server and client share a secret that is used to authenticate the messages sent between them. Both sides must be configured to use the same shared secret.
Confirm Shared Secret	Re-type the Shared Secret for confirmation.

After finished the above settings, click OK button to save the settings.

II-5-6 Active Directory/ LDAP

Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) is a communication protocol for using in TCP/IP network. It defines the methods to access distributing directory server by clients, work on directory and share the information in the directory by clients. The LDAP standard is established by the work team of Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF).

As the name described, LDAP is designed as an effect way to access directory service without the complexity of other directory service protocols. For LDAP is defined to perform, inquire and modify the information within the directory, and acquire the data in the directory securely, therefore users can apply LDAP to search or list the directory object, inquire or manage the active directory.

General Setup

This page allows you to enable the function and specify general settings for LDAP server.

Applications >> Active Directory /LDAP

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Check to enable such function.
Bind Type	There are three types of bind type supported. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Simple Mode - Just simply do the bind authentication without any search action. ● Anonymous - Perform a search action first with Anonymous account then do the bind authentication. ● Regular Mode- Mostly it is the same with anonymous mode. The different is that, the server will firstly check if you have the search authority. For the regular mode, you'll need to type in the Regular DN and Regular Password .
Server Address	Enter the IP address of LDAP server.
Destination Port	Type a port number as the destination port for LDAP server.
Use SSL	Check the box to use the port number specified for SSL.
Regular DN	Type this setting if Regular Mode is selected as Bind Type .
Regular Password	Specify a password if Regular Mode is selected as Bind Type .

After finished the above settings, click OK button to save the settings.

Active Directory / LDAP Profiles

You can configure eight AD/LDAP profiles. These profiles would be used with User Management for different purposes in management.



Applications >> Active Directory /LDAP

Index	Name	Distinguished Name
1.		
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		
6.		
7.		
8.		

Click any index number link to open the following page.

Applications >> Active Directory /LDAP>>Server Profiles

Index No. 1

Name	<input type="text"/>
Common Name Identifier	<input type="text"/>
Base Distinguished Name	<input type="text"/> 
Additional Filter	<input type="text"/>
Group Distinguished Name	<input type="text"/> 


Note:

Please type in your additional filter for BaseDN search request. For example, "gidNumber=500" for OpenLDAP, and "msNPAllowDialin=TRUE" for AD.

OK

Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Name	Type a name for such profile. The length of the user name is limited to 19 characters.
Common Name Identifier	Type or edit the common name identifier for the LDAP server. The common name identifier for most LDAP server is "cn".
Base Distinguished Name / Group Distinguished Name	Type or edit the distinguished name used to look up entries on the LDAP server. Sometimes, you may forget the Distinguished Name since it's too long. Then you may click the  button to list all the account information on the AD/LDAP Server to assist you finish the setup.

Additional Filter

Type the condition for additional filter.

After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save and exit this page. A new profile has been created.

II-5-7 UPnP

The UPnP (Universal Plug and Play) protocol is supported to bring to network connected devices the ease of installation and configuration which is already available for directly connected PC peripherals with the existing Windows 'Plug and Play' system. For NAT routers, the major feature of UPnP on the router is "NAT Traversal". This enables applications inside the firewall to automatically open the ports that they need to pass through a router.



Info

UPnP is required for some applications such as PPS, Skype, eMule...and etc. If you are not familiar with UPnP, it is suggested to turn off this function for security.

Applications >> UPnP

UPnP

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable UPnP Service	Default WAN ▾
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable Connection Control Service	
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable Connection Status Service	

Note:

To allow NAT pass-through to a UPnP enabled client the connection control service must also be enabled.

OK

Clear

Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable UPNP Service	Accordingly, you can enable either the Connection Control Service or Connection Status Service .
Default WAN	It is used to specify the WAN interface for applying such function.

The reminder as regards concern about Firewall and UPnP:

Can't work with Firewall Software

Enabling firewall applications on your PC may cause the UPnP function not working properly. This is because these applications will block the accessing ability of some network ports.

Security Considerations

Activating the UPnP function on your network may incur some security threats. You should consider carefully these risks before activating the UPnP function.

- Some Microsoft operating systems have found out the UPnP weaknesses and hence you need to ensure that you have applied the latest service packs and patches.
- Non-privileged users can control some router functions, including removing and adding port mappings.

The UPnP function dynamically adds port mappings on behalf of some UPnP-aware applications. When the applications terminate abnormally, these mappings may not be removed.

II-5-8 IGMP

IGMP is the abbreviation of *Internet Group Management Protocol*. It is a communication protocol which is mainly used for managing the membership of Internet Protocol multicast groups.

II-5-8-1 General Setting

Applications >> IGMP

General setting	Working status
<input type="checkbox"/> IGMP Proxy IGMP Proxy acts as a multicast proxy for hosts on the LAN side. Enable IGMP proxy to access any multicast group. This function takes no effect when Bridge Mode is enabled .	
Interface	WAN1 ▾
IGMP version	Auto ▾
General Query Interval	125 (seconds)
Add PPP header (Encapsulate IGMP in PPPoE)	<input type="checkbox"/>
Enable IGMP syslog	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> IGMP Snooping Enable: Forwards multicast traffic only to ports that are members of that group. Disable: Treats multicast traffic the same as broadcast traffic.	
<input type="checkbox"/> IGMP Fast Leave The router stops forwarding multicast traffic to a LAN port as soon as it receives a leave message from that port. Each LAN port should have no more than one IGMP host connected.	
IGMP Accept List	Any ▾
Only allow the IP of the LAN device to be included in the specified object/group to use IGMP.	
<input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
IGMP Proxy	<p>Check this box to enable this function. The application of multicast will be executed through WAN /PVC/VLAN port. In addition, such function is available in NAT mode.</p> <p>Interface - Specify an interface for packets passing through.</p> <p>IGMP version - At present, two versions (v2 and v3) are supported by Vigor router. Choose the correct version based on the IPTV service you subscribe.</p> <p>General Query Interval - Vigor router will periodically check which IP obtaining IPTV service by sending query. It might cause inconvenience for client. Therefore, set a suitable time (unit: second) as the query interval to limit the frequency of query sent by Vigor router.</p> <p>Add PPP header - Check this box if the interface type for IGMP is PPPoE. It depends on the specifications regulated by each ISP. If you have no idea to enable or disable, simply contact your ISP providers.</p> <p>Enable IGMP syslog - Check the box to save the IGMP record on Syslog.</p>

IGMP Snooping	Check this box to enable this function. Multicast traffic will be forwarded to ports that have members of that group. Disabling IGMP snooping will make multicast traffic treated in the same manner as broadcast traffic.
IGMP Fast Leave	Check this box to make the router stop forwarding multicast traffic to a LAN port as soon as it receives a leave message from that port. Each LAN port should have one IGMP host connected.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

II-5-8-2 Working Group

Applications >> IGMP

General setting	Working status
-----------------	----------------

| [Refresh](#) |

Multicast Group Table

Index	Group ID	P1	P2	P3	P4
-------	----------	----	----	----	----

IGMP Device Table

Index	MAC Address	IP Address	Interface	IGMP Version
-------	-------------	------------	-----------	--------------

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Refresh	Click this link to renew the working multicast group status.
Group ID	This field displays the ID port for the multicast group. The available range for IGMP starts from 224.0.0.0 to 239.255.255.254.
P1 to P4	It indicates the LAN port used for the multicast group.

II-5-9 Wake on LAN

A PC client on LAN can be woken up by the router it connects. When a user wants to wake up a specified PC through the router, he/she must type correct MAC address of the specified PC on this web page of **Wake on LAN (WOL)** of this router.

In addition, such PC must have installed a network card supporting WOL function. By the way, WOL function must be set as "Enable" on the BIOS setting.

Applications >> Wake on LAN

Wake on LAN

Wake by:	<input type="text" value="MAC Address"/>
IP Address:	<input type="text" value="--"/>
MAC Address:	<input type="text" value=""/> <input type="text" value=""/> <input type="text" value=""/> <input type="text" value=""/> <input type="text" value=""/> <input type="text" value=""/> <input type="button" value="Wake Up!"/>
Result	<input type="text"/>

Note:

Wake on LAN integrates with [Bind IP to MAC](#) function; only bound PCs can wake up through IP.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Wake by	Two types provide for you to wake up the binded IP. <ul style="list-style-type: none">● If you choose Wake by MAC Address, you have to type the correct MAC address of the host in MAC Address boxes.● If you choose Wake by IP Address, you have to choose the correct IP address.
IP Address	The IP addresses that have been configured in Firewall>>Bind IP to MAC will be shown in this drop down list. Choose the IP address from the drop down list that you want to wake up.
MAC Address	Type any one of the MAC address of the bound PCs.
Wake Up	Click this button to wake up the selected IP. See the following figure. The result will be shown on the box.

II-5-10 SMS / Mail Alert Service

The function of SMS (Short Message Service)/Mail Alert is that Vigor router sends a message to user's mobile or e-mail box through specified service provider to assist the user knowing the real-time abnormal situations.

Vigor router allows you to set up to 10 SMS profiles which will be sent out according to different conditions.

SMS Alert

This page allows you to specify SMS provider, who will get the SMS, what the content is and when the SMS will be sent.

Applications >> SMS / Mail Alert Service

SMS Alert		Mail Alert		Set to Factory Default		
Index	Enable	SMS Provider	Recipient Number	Notify Profile	Schedule(1-15)	
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 - ???		1 - ???	None	None
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 - ???		1 - ???	None	None
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 - ???		1 - ???	None	None
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 - ???		1 - ???	None	None
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 - ???		1 - ???	None	None
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 - ???		1 - ???	None	None
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 - ???		1 - ???	None	None
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 - ???		1 - ???	None	None
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 - ???		1 - ???	None	None
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 - ???		1 - ???	None	None

Note:

All the SMS Alert profiles share the same "Sending Interval" setting if they use the same SMS Provider.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Check the box to enable such profile.
SMS Provider	Use the drop down list to choose SMS service provider. You can click SMS Provider link to define the SMS server.
Recipient Number	Type the phone number of the one who will receive the SMS.
Notify Profile	Use the drop down list to choose a message profile. The recipient will get the content stated in the message profile. You can click the Notify Profile link to define the content of the SMS.
Schedule (1-15)	Enter the schedule number that the SMS will be sent out. You can click the Schedule(1-15) link to define the schedule.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

Mail Alert

This page allows you to specify Mail Server profile, who will get the notification e-mail, what the content is and when the message will be sent.

Application >> SMS / Mail Alert Service

SMS Alert		Mail Alert		Set to Factory Default	
Index	Enable	Mail Service	Mail Address	Notify Profile	Schedule(1-15)
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 - ??? ▾		1 - ??? ▾	None ▾ None ▾
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 - ??? ▾		1 - ??? ▾	None ▾ None ▾
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 - ??? ▾		1 - ??? ▾	None ▾ None ▾
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 - ??? ▾		1 - ??? ▾	None ▾ None ▾
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 - ??? ▾		1 - ??? ▾	None ▾ None ▾
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 - ??? ▾		1 - ??? ▾	None ▾ None ▾
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 - ??? ▾		1 - ??? ▾	None ▾ None ▾
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 - ??? ▾		1 - ??? ▾	None ▾ None ▾
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 - ??? ▾		1 - ??? ▾	None ▾ None ▾
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 - ??? ▾		1 - ??? ▾	None ▾ None ▾

Note:

All the Mail Alert profiles share the same "Sending Interval" setting if they use the same Mail Server.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Check the box to enable such profile.
Mail Service	Use the drop down list to choose mail service object. All of the available objects are created in Object Settings>>SMS/Mail Service Option . If there is no object listed, click Mail Service link to define a new one with specified service provider.
Mail Address	Enter the e-mail address of the one who will receive the notification message.
Notify Profile	Use the drop down list to choose a message profile. The recipient will get the content stated in the message profile. You can click the Notify Profile link to define the content of the mail message.
Schedule (1-15)	Enter the schedule number that the notification will be sent out. You can click the Schedule(1-15) link to define the schedule.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

II-5-11 Bonjour

Bonjour is a service discovery protocol which is a built-in service in Mac OS X; for Windows or Linux platform, there is correspondent software to enable this function for free.

Usually, users have to configure the router or personal computers to use above services. Sometimes, the configuration (e.g., IP settings, port number) is complicated and not easy to complete. The purpose of Bonjour is to decrease the settings configuration (e.g., IP setting). If the host and user's computer have the plug-in Bonjour driver install, they can utilize the service offered by the router by clicking the router name icon. In short, what the Clients/users need to know is the name of the router only.

To enable the Bonjour service, click **Applications>>Bonjour** to open the following page. Check the box(es) of the server service(s) that you want to share to the LAN clients.

Applications >> Bonjour



Bonjour Setup

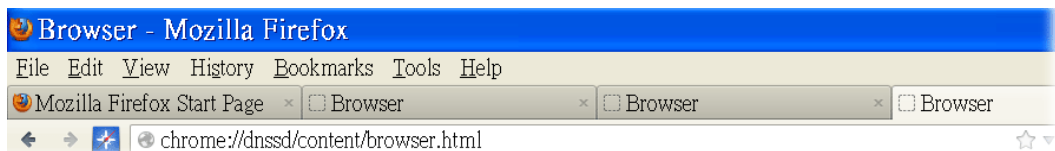
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable Bonjour Service
<input type="checkbox"/> HTTP Server
<input type="checkbox"/> Telnet Server
<input type="checkbox"/> FTP Server
<input type="checkbox"/> SSH Server
<input type="checkbox"/> LPR Printer Server

OK

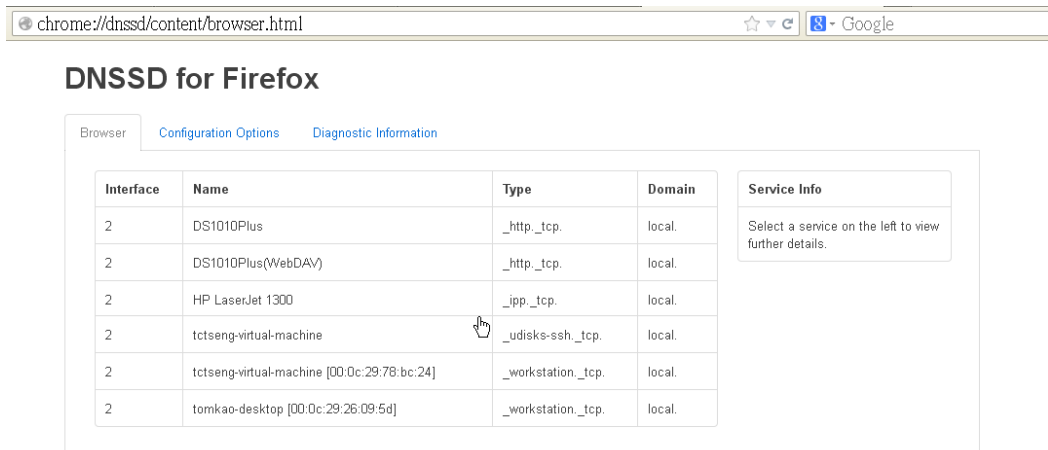
Cancel

Below shows an example for applying the Bonjour feature that Vigor router can be used as the FTP server.

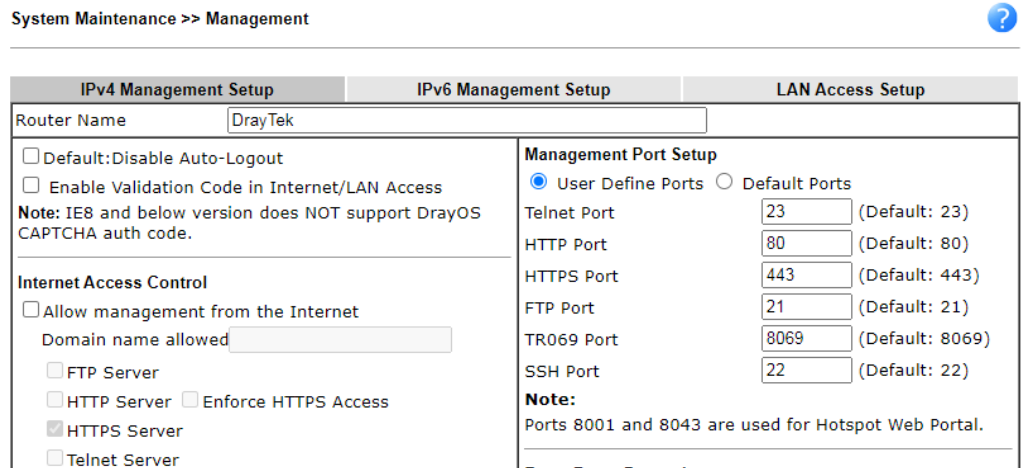
1. Here, we use Firefox and DNSSD to discover the service in such case. Therefore, just ensure the Bonjour client program and DNSSD for Firefox have been installed on the computer.



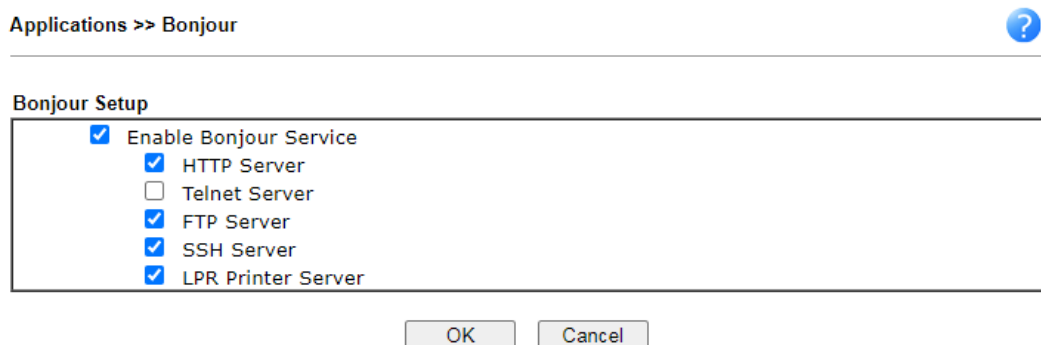
- Open the web browser, Firefox. If Bonjour and DNSSD have been installed, you can open the web page (DNSSD) and see the following results.



- Open **System Maintenance >> Management**. Type a name as the Router Name and click **OK**.



- Next, open **Applications >> Bonjour**. Check the service that you want to use via Bonjour.



- Open the DNSSD page again. The available items will be changed as the follows. It means the Vigor router (based on Bonjour protocol) is ready to be used as a printer server, FTP server, SSH Server, Telnet Server, and HTTP Server.

DNSSD for Firefox

Browser Configuration Options Diagnostic Information

Interface	Name	Type	Domain	Service Info
2	DS1010Plus	_http_tcp	local.	Select a service on the left to view further details.
2	DS1010Plus(WebDAV)	_http_tcp	local.	
2	HP LaserJet 1300	_ipp_tcp	local.	
2	Vigor Router	_ftp_tcp	local.	
2	Vigor Router	_http_tcp	local.	
2	Vigor Router	_printer_tcp	local.	
2	Vigor Router	_ssh_tcp	local.	
2	Vigor Router	_telnet_tcp	local.	
2	tctseng-virtual-machine	_udisks-ssh_tcp	local.	
2	tctseng-virtual-machine [00:0c:29:78:bc:24]	_workstation_tcp	local.	
2	tomkao-desktop [00:0c:29:26:09:5d]	_workstation_tcp	local.	

- Now, any page or document can be printed out through Vigor router (installed with a printer).

Print

Printer Name: Microsoft XPS Document Writer (selected)
Status: Auto HP LaserJet 1200 Series PCL on RD-KC
Type: Auto Microsoft XPS Document Writer on RD-KC
Location: Auto Microsoft XPS Document Writer on TIM-PC
Comment: Vigor Router

Print to file

Print range: All pages, Pages (1), Selection

Copies: Number of copies: 1, Collate

Buttons: Options..., OK, Cancel, Help

II-5-12 Local 802.1X General Setup

Such page allows you to configure general settings for Local 802.1X server built in Vigor router. The local 802.X server can be used to authenticate wired and wireless LAN clients.

[Applications >> Local 802.1X General Setup](#)

Local 802.1X General Setup

Enable

EAP_TTLS/PAP EAP_TTLS/MSCHAP EAP_TTLS/MSCHAPv2
 EAP_PEAP/MSCHAPv2

User Profile

Available List		Authentication List
<div style="border: 1px solid gray; height: 100px;"></div>	<input type="button" value="»"/> <input type="button" value="«"/>	<div style="border: 1px solid gray; height: 100px;"></div>

Sync [User Profile](#) Setting to Internal Radius

Note:

1. Only the user profiles which is enabled in [User Management >> User Profile](#) will be listed here.
2. [Wireless LAN](#) and [Wired 802.1X](#) used the same [User Profile](#) as its identity and password.

Local 802.1X General Setup

Enable

 EAP_TTLS/PAP EAP_TTLS/MSCHAP EAP_TTLS/MSCHAPv2
 EAP_PEAP/MSCHAPv2

User Profile

Select All
Clear All

Available List

>>

 <<

Authentication List

Sync User Profile Setting to Internal RADIUS

Note:

1. Only the user profiles which is enabled in **User Management >> User Profile** will be listed here.
2. **Wireless LAN** and **Wired 802.1X** used the same **User Profile** as its identity and password.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description				
Enable	Click it to enable the built-in 802.1X server. At present, such feature can be used for wireless and wired 802.1x authentication.				
User Profile	Select All - Click to add all User Profiles to the 802.1X server. All profiles will appear under the Authentication List. Clear All - Remove all user profiles from the 802.1X server. All profiles will appear under Available List.				
Sync User Profile	Make the enabling/disabling setting for both Internal RADIUS and Local 802.1X synchronize for all of the user profiles (User Management>>User Profile). For example, if Local 802.1x is configured as Enabled (checked), the Internal RADIUS will be configured as Enabled too. <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;"> <p>3. Internal Services</p> <table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 50%;"><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Internal RADIUS</td> <td style="width: 50%;"><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Local 802.1X</td> </tr> </table> <p>Note: Internal Services means the account and password of this user profile can be used by other application.</p> <p style="text-align: center;"> <input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Refresh"/> <input type="button" value="Clear"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> </p> </div> If Local 802.1X is configured as Disabled (unchecked), the Internal RADIUS will be changed as Disabled too, even if it is enabled previously. <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;"> <p>3. Internal Services</p> <table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 50%;"><input type="checkbox"/> Internal RADIUS</td> <td style="width: 50%;"><input type="checkbox"/> Local 802.1X</td> </tr> </table> <p>Note: Internal Services means the account and password of this user profile can be used by other application.</p> <p style="text-align: center;"> <input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Refresh"/> <input type="button" value="Clear"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> </p> </div>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Internal RADIUS	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Local 802.1X	<input type="checkbox"/> Internal RADIUS	<input type="checkbox"/> Local 802.1X
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Internal RADIUS	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Local 802.1X				
<input type="checkbox"/> Internal RADIUS	<input type="checkbox"/> Local 802.1X				

OK	Click it to save the settings.
Cancel	Click it to give up all settings configuration.

When you finish the configuration, please click **OK** to save and exit this page.

Application Notes

A-1 How to Implement the LDAP/AD Authentication for User Management?

For simplifying the configuration of LDAP authentication for User Access Management, we implement "Group" feature.

There is no need to pre-configure user profile for each user on Vigor router anymore. We only need to configure the Groups DN, then the Vigor router (e.g., Vigor2832 series) can pass the authentication to LDAP server with the pre-defined Group path.

Below shows the configuration steps:

1. Access into the web user interface of the Vigor router.
2. Open **Applications>>Active Directory /LDAP** to get the following page for configuring LDAP related settings.

Applications >> Active Directory /LDAP

The screenshot shows the configuration page for Active Directory /LDAP Profiles. The page has three tabs: "General Setup", "Active Directory /LDAP Profiles" (which is selected), and "Set to Factory Default". The configuration fields are as follows:

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	
Bind Type	Regular Mode ▾
Server Address	172.16.2.8
Destination Port	389 <input type="checkbox"/> Use SSL
Regular DN	uid=vpntest,ou=vpnuser,dc=ms,dc=draytek
Regular Password	*****



At the bottom of the form are two buttons: "OK" and "Cancel".

There are three types of bind type supported:

- **Simple Mode** - Just simply do the bind authentication without any search action.
 - **Anonymous** - Perform a search action first with Anonymous account then do the bind authentication.
 - **Regular Mode**- Mostly it is the same with anonymous mode. The different is that, the server will firstly check if you have the search authority.
For the regular mode, you'll need to type in the **Regular DN** and **Regular Password**.
3. Create LDAP server profiles. Click the **Active Directory /LDAP** tab to open the profile web page and click any one of the index number link.

If we have two groups "RD1" and "SHRD" on LDAP server, we can configure two LDAP server profiles with different Group Distinguished Name.

Index No. 1



Name	<input type="text" value="rd1"/>
Common Name Identifier	<input type="text" value="uid"/>
Base Distinguished Name	<input type="text" value="ou=people,dc=ms,de=draytek,dc=company"/> 
Additional Filter	<input type="text" value="cn=shrd,ou=group,dc=ms,dc=draytek"/>
Group Distinguished Name	<input type="text"/> 

Note:

Please type in your additional filter for BaseDN search request. For example, "gidNumber=500" for OpenLDAP, and "msNPAllowDialin=TRUE" for AD.

and

Index No. 2

Name	<input type="text" value="shrd"/>
Common Name Identifier	<input type="text" value="uid"/>
Base Distinguished Name	<input type="text" value="ou=people,dc=ms,dc=draytek,dc=company"/> 
Additional Filter	<input type="text" value="cn=shrd,ou=group,dc=ms,dc=draytek"/>
Group Distinguished Name	<input type="text"/> 

Note:

Please type in your additional filter for BaseDN search request. For example, "gidNumber=500" for OpenLDAP, and "msNPAllowDialin=TRUE" for AD.

- Click OK to save the settings above.
- Open User Management>>General Setup. Select User-Based as the Mode option.

General Setup

<p>Mode Selection:</p> <p><input type="radio"/> Rule-Based is a management method based on IP address. Administrator may set different firewall rules to different IP address.</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> User-Based is a management method based on user profiles. Administrator may set different firewall rules to different user profiles.</p> <p>Notice for User-Based mode:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> In User-Based mode, Active Rules in Firewall will be applied to all LAN clients, packets that matches the Active Rules will be blocked or pass immediately, no user authentication is required. Only Inactive Rules in Firewall can be set for individual user profile. In User-Based mode, packets that do not match Active Rules will need authentication, and the Inactive Rule applied to the specific user profile will then take effect. <p>Authentication page:</p>

6. Then open **VPN and Remote Access >> PPP General Setup** to check the profile(s) that will be authenticated with LDAP server.

VPN and Remote Access >> PPP General Setup

PPP General Setup

PPP/MP Protocol
 Dial-In PPP Authentication: PAP/CHAP/MS-CHAP/MS-CHAPv2
 Dial-In PPP Encryption(MPPE): Optional MPPE
 Mutual Authentication (PAP): Yes No
 Username: Max: 23 characters
 Password: Max: 19 characters

IP Address Assignment for Dial-In Users when DHCP is disabled.

	Start IP Address	IP Pool Counts
LAN 1	192.168.1.200	50
LAN 2	192.168.2.200	50
LAN 3	192.168.3.200	50
LAN 4	192.168.4.200	50

PPP Authentication Methods

Remote Dial-in User
 RADIUS
 AD/LDAP
 rd1
 shrd
 TACACS+

Note:

1. Please select 'PAP Only 'Dial-In PPP Authentication', if you want to use AD/LDAP or TACACS+ for PPP Authentication.
2. Default priority is Remote Dial-in User -> RADIUS -> AD/LDAP -> TACACS+.
3. Vigor router also supports Frame-IP-Address from RADIUS server to assign IP address to VPN client.

While using RADIUS or LDAP Authentication:
 Assign IP from subnet: LAN1

OK

After above configurations, users belong to either "rd1" or "shrd" group can access Internet after inputting their credentials on LDAP server.

A-2 How to use DrayDDNS?

Vigor router supports various DDNS service providers, user can set up user-defined profile to update the DDNS even the service provider is not on the list. Now, DrayTek starts to support our own DDNS service - DrayDDNS. We will provide a domain name for each Vigor Router, this single domain name can record IP addresses of all WAN.

Activate DrayDDNS License

1. Go to **Wizards >> Service Activation Wizard**, wait for the router to connect to MyVigor server, then tick **DT-DDNS** and **I have read and accept the above Agreement**, click **Next**.

Service Activation Wizard

Select the service type that you want to activate

Activation Date : 2017-02-23

Web Content Filter(WCF) Service :

BPIJM [License Agreement](#)
This is a web content filter that is provided by the German government. It is a free service without any guarantee and will expire one year after activation. You may re-activate the service after expiry.

Cyren 30-Days Free Trial [License Agreement](#)
This is a worldwide web content filter service. The free trail license can only be used once. At the end of the free trail period you may purchase the official one-year Cyren Web Content Filter from an authorized DrayTek reseller.

APP Enforcement(APPE) Service :

DT-APPE [License Agreement](#)
Upgrade APPE Signature automatically.

Dynamic DNS(DDNS) Service :

DT-DDNS [License Agreement](#)
This is a Dynamic Domain Name Service that is provided by DrayTek company. It is a free service will expire 1 year after activation. You may re-activate the service after expiry.

Domain Name : .drayddns.com

*** Please note that the DrayDDNS service is currently for internal use only.**

I have read and accept the above Agreement. (Please check this box).

2. Confirm the information, then click **Activate**.

Service Activation Wizard

Please confirm your settings

Service Type : Trial version
Service Activated : Dynamic DNS (192.168.1.154.drayddns.com)

Please click **Back** to re-select service type you to activate.

3. MyVigor server will reply with the service activation information.

DrayTek Service Activation

Service Name	Start Date	Expire Date	Status
Web Content filter	---	---	Not Activated
APP Enforcement	---	---	Not Activated
DDNS	2017-02-23	2018-02-23	DT-DDNS

Please check if the license fits with the service provider of your signature. To ensure normal operation for your router, update your signature again is recommended.

Configure DDNS Profile

1. Go to Applications >> Dynamic DNS Setup,
 - a. Tick Enable Dynamic DNS Setup
 - b. Click an available profile index
 - c. Tick Enable Dynamic DNS Account
 - d. Select DrayTek Global (www.drayddns.com) as Service Provider
 - e. Select the WAN you would like to upload the IP to DDNS server
 - f. Click Get domain
 - g. Click OK on the pop up notification window

The screenshot displays the 'Dynamic DNS Setup' configuration page. In the 'Dynamic DNS Setup' section, the 'Enable Dynamic DNS Setup' checkbox is checked. Below it, the 'Auto-Update interval' is set to 1440 minutes. A table lists available accounts with indices 1 through 6, all pointing to 'WAN1 First'. The 'Dynamic DNS Account Setup' section for 'Index : 2' shows 'Enable Dynamic DNS Account' checked, 'Service Provider' set to 'DrayTek Global (www.drayddns.com)', and 'Status' as 'Activated' with start and end dates. The 'Domain Name' is '.drayddns.com' and the 'Determine Real WAN IP' is set to 'WAN IP'. A 'Get domain' button is visible. At the bottom, a pop-up notification window from IP 192.168.193.10 provides instructions and an 'OK' button.

- Wait few seconds for router to get the domain name, then, we can click the profile to check the information of license and domain name.

Applications >> Dynamic DNS Setup

Dynamic DNS Setup | Set to Factory Default |

Enable Dynamic DNS Setup View Log Force Update

Auto-Update interval Min(s) (180~14400)

Accounts:

Index	WAN Interface	Domain Name	Active
1.	WAN1 Only	Customized	v
2.	WAN 1/2/3/4	115.100.154.draydns.com	v
3.	WAN1 First		x
4.	WAN1 First		
5.	WAN1 First		
6.	WAN1 First		

Applications >> Dynamic DNS Setup >> Dynamic DNS Account Setup

Index : 2

Enable Dynamic DNS Account

Service Provider

Status **Activated [Start Date:2017-02-23 Expire Date:2018-02-23]**

Domain Name Edit domain

Determine Real WAN IP

Determine WAN IP

OK Clear Cancel

Modify Domain Name

Currently, only the domain name is allowed to be modified MyVigor website. We will need to register the router to MyVigor server, and log in to MyVigor website to modify it.

- Please visit <https://myvigor.draytek.com/> or go to Applications >> Dynamic DNS Setup >> DrayDDNS profile and click Edit domain.

Applications >> Dynamic DNS Setup >> Dynamic DNS Account Setup

Index : 2

Enable Dynamic DNS Account

Service Provider

Status **Activated [Start Date:2017-02-23 Expire Date:2018-02-23]**

Domain Name Edit domain

Determine Real WAN IP

Determine WAN IP

OK Clear Cancel

- Log in to MyVigor Website, choose the profile, then click Edit DDNS settings.

My Information - My Products

Device Information

Device Name : TWT2832
Serial Number : 11503991114
Model : Vigor2832 Series

Rename Transfer Back

Device's Service Expired License

Service	Provider	Action	Status	Start Date	Expired Date	Note
WCF	BPJM	Activate	● On	-	-	-
WCF	Cyren	Trial	● On	-	-	-
APPE	DT-APPE	Activate	● On	-	-	-
DDNS	DT-DDNS	Renew	● On	2017-02-23	2018-02-23	Edit DDNS settings

3. Input the desired Domain name (e.g., XXXX25) and click Update.

Edit DDNS Settings

Please note that the DrayDDNS service is currently for internal use only.

Domain Name	<input type="text" value="XXXX25"/>	<input type="text" value=".draydns.com"/>
Current IP	<input type="text" value="192.168.39.44"/>	<input type="button" value="Get PC's Internet IP"/>
Last Update	2017/2/24 14:27:20	
Status	Update success	
	<input type="button" value="Update"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Reset"/>

4. Vigor router will get the modified domain name when the it performs next DDNS updating. We can click Sync domain to accelerate this process.

Applications >> Dynamic DNS Setup >> Dynamic DNS Account Setup

Index : 2

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Dynamic DNS Account		
Service Provider	DrayTek Global (www.draydns.com) ▼	
Status	Activated [Start Date:2017-02-23 Expire Date:2018-02-23]	
Domain Name	<input type="text" value="XXXX25"/>	<input type="text" value=".draydns.com"/> <input type="button" value="Sync domain"/>
WAN Interfaces	WAN IP ▼	
	WAN 1 ▲	
	WAN 2	
	WAN 3	
	WAN 4 ▼	
Determine WAN IP		

After few seconds, the router will get the new domain name and print it on the profiles list.


Applications >> Dynamic DNS Setup

Dynamic DNS Setup | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Enable Dynamic DNS Setup [View Log](#) [Force Update](#)

Auto-Update interval Min(s) (180~14400)

Accounts:

Index	WAN Interface	Domain Name	Active
1.	WAN1 Only	Customized	v
2.	WAN 1/2/3/4	 draydns.com	v
3.	WAN1 First		x
4.	WAN1 First		x
5.	WAN1 First		x
6.	WAN1 First		x


Applications >> Dynamic DNS Setup

Dynamic DNS Setup | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Enable Dynamic DNS Setup [View Log](#) [Force Update](#)

Auto-Update interval Min(s) (180~14400)

Accounts:

Index	WAN Interface	Domain Name	Active
1.	WAN1 Only	Customized	v
2.	WAN 1/2/3/4	 25.draydns.com	v
3.	WAN1 First		x
4.	WAN1 First		x
5.	WAN1 First		x
6.	WAN1 First		x

II-6 Routing

Route Policy (also well known as PBR, policy-based routing) is a feature where you may need to get a strategy for routing. The packets will be directed to the specified interface if they match one of the policies. You can setup route policies in various reasons such as load balance, security, routing decision, and etc.

Through protocol, IP address, port number and interface configuration, Route Policy can be used to configure any routing rules to fit actual request. In general, Route Policy can easily reach the following purposes:

Load Balance

You may manually create policies to balance the traffic across network interface.

Specify Interface

Through dedicated interface (WAN/LAN/VPN), the data can be sent from the source IP to the destination IP.

Address Mapping

Allows you specify the outgoing WAN IP address (es) for an internal private IP address or a range of internal private IP addresses.

Priority

The router will determine which policy will be adopted for transmitting the packet according to the priority of Static Route and Route Policy.

Failover to/Failback

Packets will be sent through another Interface or follow another Policy when the original interface goes down (**Failover to**). Once the original interface resumes service (**Failback**), the packets will be returned to it immediately.

Other routing

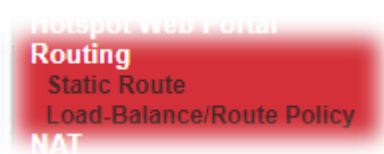
Specify routing policy to determine the direction of the data transmission.



Info

For more detailed information about using policy route, refer to Support >>FAQ/Application Notes on www.draytek.com.

Web User Interface



II-6-1 Static Route

Go to **LAN** to open setting page and choose **Static Route**. The router offers IPv4 and IPv6 for you to configure the static route. Both protocols bring different web pages.

II-6-1-1 Static Route for IPv4

Routing >> Static Route Setup

IPv4			IPv6			Set to Factory Default	View Routing Table
Index	Enable	Destination Address	Index	Enable	Destination Address		
1.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	6.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		
2.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	7.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		
3.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	8.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		
4.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	9.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		
5.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	10.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		

<< [1-10](#) | [11-20](#) | [21-30](#) | [31-40](#) >>

[Next](#) >>

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description								
Index	The number (1 to 40) under Index allows you to open next page to set up static route.								
Enable	Check the box to enable the profile.								
Destination Address	Displays the destination address of the static route.								
Set to Factory Default	Clear all of the settings and return to factory default settings.								
Viewing Routing Table	<p>Displays the routing table for your reference.</p> <p>Diagnostics >> View Routing Table</p> <p>IPv4 Refresh</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Key</th> <th>Destination</th> <th>Gateway</th> <th>Interface</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>C~</td> <td>192.168.1.0/ 255.255.255.0</td> <td>directly connected</td> <td>LAN1</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Key	Destination	Gateway	Interface	C~	192.168.1.0/ 255.255.255.0	directly connected	LAN1
Key	Destination	Gateway	Interface						
C~	192.168.1.0/ 255.255.255.0	directly connected	LAN1						

II-6-2 Load-Balance /Route Policy

It allows network administrator to manage the outbound traffic more specifically. The policy set in Load-Balance/Route Policy always has higher priority than **Default Route** and **Auto Load Balance** set in WAN >> **Internet Access**, and always has lower priority than the **Firewall Rules**. Administrator may also define a priority to this policy.

II-6-2-1 General Setup

General Setup lists all the policies and shows whether the policy is enabled/disabled, what are the criteria to match, and through which the interface should the traffic to go if the criteria are matched, and also its priority.

Routing >> Load-Balance/Route Policy ?

Load-Balance/Route Policy 10 rules per page | [Set to Factory Default](#) | [Diagnose](#) |

Index	Enable	Comment	Protocol	Interface	Priority	Src IP Start	Src IP End	Dest IP Start	Dest IP End	Dest Port Start	Dest Port End	Move Up	Move Down
1	<input type="checkbox"/>		Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any		Down
2	<input type="checkbox"/>		Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	UP	Down
3	<input type="checkbox"/>		Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	UP	Down
4	<input type="checkbox"/>		Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	UP	Down
5	<input type="checkbox"/>		Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	UP	Down
6	<input type="checkbox"/>		Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	UP	Down
7	<input type="checkbox"/>		Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	UP	Down
8	<input type="checkbox"/>		Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	UP	Down
9	<input type="checkbox"/>		Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	UP	Down
10	<input type="checkbox"/>		Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	UP	Down

<< [1-10](#) | [11-20](#) | [21-30](#) | [31-40](#) | [41-50](#) >> [Next](#) >>

- Wizard Mode: most frequently used settings in three pages
 Advance Mode: all settings in one page

OK

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Index	Click the number of index to access into the configuration web page.
Enable	Check this box to enable this policy.
Protocol	Display the protocol used for this policy.
Interface	Display the interface to send packets to once the policy is matched.
Interface Address	Display the WAN IP or WAN IP alias address which is used as source IP of the outgoing packets.
Src IP Start	Displays the IP address for the start of the source IP.
Src IP End	Displays the IP address for the end of the source IP.
Dest IP Start	Displays the IP address for the start of the destination IP.
Dest IP End	Displays the IP address for the end of the destination IP.
Dest Port Start	Displays the IP address for the start of the destination port.
Dest Port End	Displays the IP address for the end of the destination port.

Move UP/Move Down	Use Up or Down link to move the order of the policy.
Wizard Mode	Allow to configure frequently used (simple and basic) settings of route policy via three setting pages.
Advance Mode	Allows to configure detailed settings of route policy.

To use Wizard Mode, simple do the following steps:

1. Click the Wizard Mode radio button.
2. Click Index 1. The setting page will appear as follows:

Routing >> Load-Balance/Route Policy

Index: 1 Criteria

Load-Balance/Route Policy applies to packets that meet the following criteria

Source IP Any
 Src IP Start Src IP End
 ~

Destination IP Any
 Dest IP Start Dest IP End
 ~

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Source IP	<p>Any - Any IP can be treated as the source IP.</p> <p>Src IP Start - Type the source IP start for the specified WAN interface.</p> <p>Src IP End - Type the source IP end for the specified WAN interface. If this field is blank, it means that all the source IPs inside the LAN will be passed through the WAN interface.</p>
Destination IP	<p>Any - Any IP can be treated as the destination IP.</p> <p>Dest IP Start- Type the destination IP start for the specified WAN interface.</p> <p>Dest IP End - Type the destination IP end for the specified WAN interface. If this field is blank, it means that all the destination IPs will be passed through the WAN interface.</p>

3. Click Next to get the following page.

Routing >> Load-Balance/Route Policy

Index: 1 Interface

Load-Balance/Route Policy directs the packets to the interface below

Interface ▼

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Interface	Use the drop down list to choose an interface or VPN profile. Packets match with the above criteria will be transferred to the interface chosen here.

- After specifying the interface, click Next to get the following page.

Routing >> Load-Balance/Route Policy

Index: 1 NAT or Routing

Based on the settings in the previous pages, we guess you want to have: Force NAT

The current setting is:

Force NAT

Force Routing

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Force NAT /Force Routing	It determines which mechanism that the router will use to forward the packet to WAN.

- After choosing the mechanism, click Next to get the summary page for reference.

Routing >> Load-Balance/Route Policy

Index: 1 Configuration Summary

Criteria

Source IP Any

Destination IP 192.168.1.6 ~ 192.168.1.65

Interface

WAN1

More options

Force NAT

- If there is no error, click Finish to complete wizard setting.

Routing >> Load-Balance/Route Policy ?

Load-Balance/Route Policy 10 rules per page | [Set to Factory Default](#) | [Diagnose](#) |

Index	Enable	Comment	Protocol	Interface	Priority	Src IP Start	Src IP End	Dest IP Start	Dest IP End	Dest Port Start	Dest Port End	Move Up	Move Down
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	192.168.1.6	192.168.1.65	Any	Any		Down
2	<input type="checkbox"/>		Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	UP	Down
3	<input type="checkbox"/>		Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	UP	Down
4	<input type="checkbox"/>		Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	UP	Down

To use **Advance Mode**, do the following steps:

1. Click the **Advance Mode** radio button.
2. Click **Index 2** to access into the following page.

Routing >> Load-Balance/Route Policy

Index: 1

Enable

Comment

Criteria

Protocol

Source

Destination

Start: End:

Destination Port

Send via if Criteria Matched

Interface WAN/LAN

VPN

Gateway Default Gateway

Specific Gateway

Packet Forwarding to WAN/LAN via Force NAT

Force Routing

Failover to WAN/LAN

VPN

Route Policy

Gateway Default Gateway

Specific Gateway

Priority

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Check this box to enable this policy.
Comment	Type a brief explanation for such profile.
Protocol	Use the drop-down menu to choose a proper protocol for the WAN interface.
Source	<p>Any - Any IP can be treated as the source IP.</p> <p>IP Range - Define a range of IP address as source IP addresses.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Start - Type an address as the starting IP for such profile. ● End - Type an address as the ending IP for such profile. <p>IP Subnet - Define a subnet containing IP address and mask address.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Network - Type an IP address here. ● Mask - Use the drop down list to choose a suitable mask for the network. <p>IP Object / IP Group- Use the drop down list to choose a preconfigured IP object/group.</p>

Destination	<p>Any - Any IP can be treated as the destination IP.</p> <p>IP Range - Define a range of IP address as destination IP addresses.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Start - Type an address as the starting IP for such profile. ● End - Type an address as the ending IP for such profile. <p>IP Subnet - Define a subnet containing IP address and mask address.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Network - Type an IP address here. ● Mask - Use the drop down list to choose a suitable mask for the network. <p>Domain Name - Specify a domain name as the destination.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Select - Click it to choose an existing domain name defined in Objects Setting>>String Object. ● Delete - Remove current used domain name. ● Add - Create a new domain name as the destination. <p>IP Object / IP Group- Use the drop down list to choose a preconfigured IP object/group.</p>
Destination Port	<p>Any - Any port number can be treated as the destination port.</p> <p>Dest Port Range -</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Start - Type the destination port start for the destination IP. ● End - Type the destination port end for the destination IP. If this field is blank, it means that all the destination ports will be passed through the WAN interface.
Send to if criteria matched	<p>Interface - Use the drop down list to choose a WAN or LAN interface or VPN profile. Packets match with the above criteria will be transferred to the interface chosen here.</p> <p>Gateway IP - Specific gateway is used only when you want to forward the packets to the desired gateway. Usually, Default Gateway is selected in default.</p> <p>Packet Forwarding to WAN/LAN via - When you choose WAN (e.g., WAN1) as the Interface for packet transmission, you have to specify the way the packet forwarded to. Choose Force NAT or Force Routing.</p> <p>Failover to - Check this button to lead the data passing through specific interface (WAN/LAN/VPN/Route Policy) automatically when the selected interface (defined in Send via if criteria matched) is down.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● WAN/LAN - Use the drop down list to choose an interface as an auto failover interface. ● VPN - Use the drop down list to choose a VPN tunnel as a failover tunnel. ● Route Policy - Use the drop down list to choose an existed route policy profile. ● Default Gateway - Specific gateway is used only when you want to forward the packets to the desired gateway. Usually, Default Gateway is selected in default.
Priority	<p>Packets will be transmitted based on all routes or Route Policy. Vigor router will determine which rule will be adopted for transmitting the packet according to the priority</p>

	of Static Route and Route Policy.
--	-----------------------------------

	The greater the value is, the lower the priority is. Default value for route policy is "200" which means it has higher priority than the default route.
--	---

3. When you finish the configuration, please click **OK** to save and exit this page.

II-6-2-2 Diagnose

With the analysis done by such page, possible path (static route, routing table or policy route) of the packets sent out of the router can be traced.

Diagnostics >> Route Policy Diagnosis ?

Test how the packets will be routed

- Mode Analyze a single packet
 Analyze multiple packets by uploading an input file

Packet Information

Protocol

Src IP

Dst IP

Dst Port

Analyze

Analysis



Matched Route

Matched	Priority
192.168.1.0/255.255.255.0 LAN1	150

Matched Policy

Matched	Priority	failovered
Route Policy 1	200	No

close

OR

Diagnostics >> Route Policy Diagnosis ?

Test how the packets will be routed

- Mode Analyze a single packet
 Analyze multiple packets by uploading an input file

Input File

未選擇任何檔案 [\(download an example input file\)](#)

Analyze

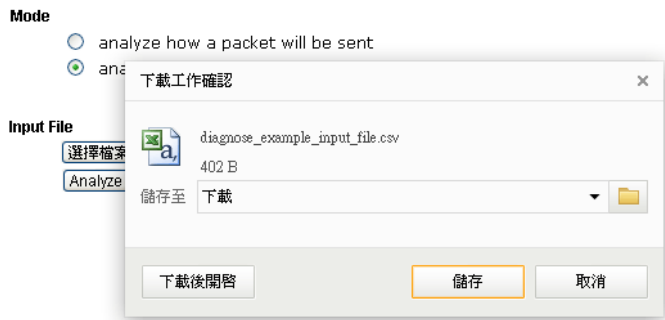
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Mode	<p>Analyze how a packet will be sent - Choose such mode to make Vigor router analyze how a single packet will be sent by a route policy.</p> <p>Analyze how multiple packets... - Choose such mode to make Vigor router analyze how multiple packets in a specified file will be sent by a route policy.</p>
Packet Information	<p>Specify the nature of the packets to be analyzed by Vigor router.</p> <p>Protocol- Specify a protocol for diagnosis.</p> <p>Src IP - Type an IP address as the source IP.</p> <p>Dst IP - Type an IP address as the destination IP.</p>

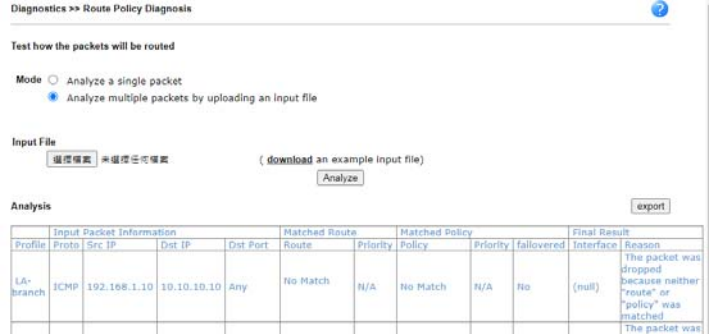
Dst Port - Use the drop down list to specify the destination port.

Analyze - Click it to perform the job of analyzing. The analyzed result will be shown on the page. If required, click **export analysis** to export the result as a file.

Input File - Select - Click the download link to get a blank example file. Then, click such button to select that blank ".csv" file for saving the result of analysis.



Analyze - Click it to perform the job of analyzing. The analyzed result will be shown on the page. If required, click **export analysis** to export the result as a file.



Note that the analysis was based on the current "load-balance/route policy" settings, we do not guarantee it will be 100% the same as the real case.

Application Notes

A-1 How to set up Address Mapping with Route Policy?

Address Mapping is used to map a specified private IP or a range of private IPs of NAT subnet into a specified WAN IP (or WAN IP alias IP). Refer to the following figure.

This document introduces how to set up address mapping with Route Policy. When a WAN interface has multiple public IP addresses, Administrator may specify the outgoing IP for certain internal IP address by a Route Policy.

1. Set up WAN IP Alias. Go to **WAN >> Internet Access >> WAN1 >> Details Page**, and click on **WAN IP Alias** button.

Index	Enable	Aux. WAN IP
1.	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
2.	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	172.17.1.1
3.	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	172.17.2.2
4.	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0
5.	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0
6.	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0
7.	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0
8.	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0

<< 1-8 | 9-16 | 17-24 | 25-32 >> **Next >>**

- Check **Enable**.
- Enter the WAN IP address.
- Click **OK** to save.

After setting up the WAN IP Alias, the IP addresses will be shown in the drop-down list of Interface in Route Policy setting.

- Go to **Routing>>Load Balance/Route policy**. Create a Route Policy for specific IP address to send from specific WAN IP Address.

Routing >> Load-Balance/Route Policy

Index: 2

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Enable
Comment	Floor_1 <input type="button" value="Delete"/>
Criteria	
Protocol	Any
Source	IP Range
	Start: 192.168.1.20 End: 192.168.1.30
Destination	Any
Destination Port	Any
Send via if Criteria Matched	
Interface	<input checked="" type="radio"/> WAN/LAN <input type="radio"/> VPN
	WAN1 <input type="button" value="v"/> VPN 1.??? <input type="button" value="v"/>
Gateway	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Default Gateway <input type="radio"/> Specific Gateway
Packet Forwarding to WAN/LAN via	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Force NAT <input type="radio"/> Force Routing
<input type="checkbox"/> Failover to	<input checked="" type="radio"/> WAN/LAN <input type="radio"/> VPN <input type="radio"/> Route Policy
	Default WAN <input type="button" value="v"/> VPN 1.??? <input type="button" value="v"/> Index 1 <input type="button" value="v"/>
	Gateway <input checked="" type="radio"/> Default Gateway <input type="radio"/> Specific Gateway 0.0.0.0
Priority	

- Enable this policy.
 - Enter **Source IP** as the range of private IP address.
 - Leave the **Destination IP** and **Port** as **Any**.
 - Select **Interface** as **WAN**, and then select Interface address from the drop-down list. (The List can be edited in **WAN IP Alias** setting.)
 - Enable **Failover** to other WAN so the traffic will be sent via other Interface when the path fails. But do not enable this option if you want the traffic only to use a designated IP address.
 - Click **OK** to save.
- After the above configuration, packet source from the range between 192.168.1.20 and 192.168.1.30 sent to the Internet will use the public IP 172.17.1.1.

This page is left blank.

Part III Wireless LAN



Wireless

Wireless LAN enables high mobility so WLAN users can simultaneously access all LAN facilities just like on a wired LAN as well as Internet access.

III-1 Wireless LAN

This function is used for “n” models only.

Over recent years, the market for wireless communications has enjoyed tremendous growth. Wireless technology now reaches or is capable of reaching virtually every location on the surface of the earth. Hundreds of millions of people exchange information every day via wireless communication products. The Vigor2832 wireless series router (with “n” in model name) is designed for maximum flexibility and efficiency of a small office/home. Any authorized staff can bring a built-in WLAN client PDA or notebook into a meeting room for conference without laying a clot of LAN cable or drilling holes everywhere. Wireless LAN enables high mobility so WLAN users can simultaneously access all LAN facilities just like on a wired LAN as well as Internet access.

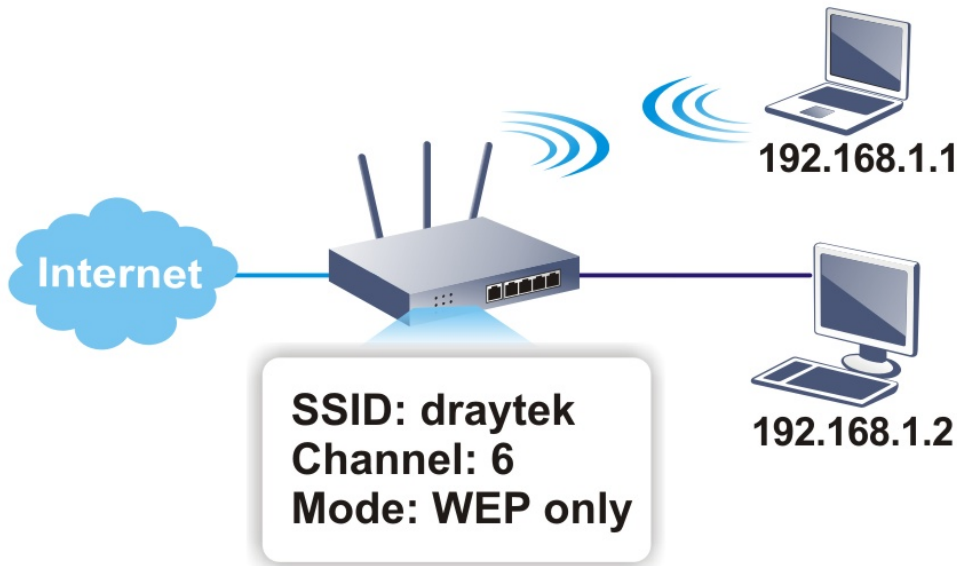
Vigor2832 wireless router is a highly integrated wireless local area network (WLAN) for 2.4 GHz 802.11n WLAN applications. Vigor2832 “n” series router supports 802.11n up to 300 Mbps for 40 MHz channel operations.



Info

The actual data throughput will vary according to the network conditions and environmental factors, including volume of network traffic, network overhead and building materials.

In an Infrastructure Mode of wireless network, Vigor wireless router plays a role as an Access Point (AP) connecting to lots of wireless clients or Stations (STA). All the STAs will share the same Internet connection via Vigor wireless router. The **General Settings** will set up the information of this wireless network, including its SSID as identification, located channel etc.



Multiple SSIDs

Vigor router supports four SSID settings for wireless connections. Each SSID can be defined with different name and download/upload rate for selecting by stations connected to the router wirelessly.

Real-time Hardware Encryption

Vigor Router is equipped with a hardware AES encryption engine so it can apply the highest protection to your data without influencing user experience.

Complete Security Standard Selection

To ensure the security and privacy of your wireless communication, we provide several prevailing standards on market.

WEP (Wired Equivalent Privacy) is a legacy method to encrypt each frame transmitted via radio using either a 64-bit or 128-bit key. Usually access point will preset a set of four keys and it will communicate with each station using only one out of the four keys.

WPA (Wi-Fi Protected Access), the most dominating security mechanism in industry, is separated into two categories: WPA-personal or called WPA Pre-Share Key (WPA/PSK), and WPA-Enterprise or called WPA/802.1x.

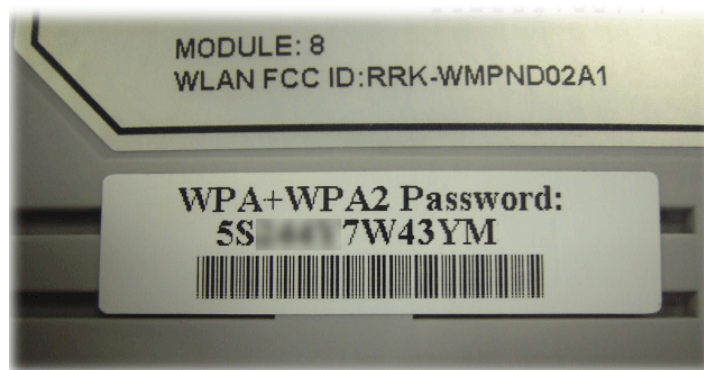
In WPA-Personal, a pre-defined key is used for encryption during data transmission. WPA applies Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP) for data encryption while WPA2 applies AES. The WPA-Enterprise combines not only encryption but also authentication.

Since WEP has been proved vulnerable, you may consider using WPA for the most secure connection. You should select the appropriate security mechanism according to your needs. No matter which security suite you select, they all will enhance the over-the-air data protection and /or privacy on your wireless network. The Vigor wireless router is very flexible and can support multiple secure connections with both WEP and WPA at the same time.



Info

The password (PSK) of default security mode is provided and stated on the label pasted on the bottom of the router. For the wireless client who wants to access into Internet through such router, please input the default PSK value for connection.



Separate the Wireless and the Wired LAN- WLAN Isolation

It enables you to isolate your wireless LAN from wired LAN for either quarantine or limit access reasons. To isolate means neither of the parties can access each other. To elaborate an example for business use, you may set up a wireless LAN for visitors only so they can connect to Internet without hassle of the confidential information leakage. For a more flexible deployment, you may add filters of MAC addresses to isolate users' access from wired LAN.

Manage Wireless Stations - Station List

It will display all the stations in your wireless network and the status of their connection.

WPS

WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup) provides easy procedure to make network connection between wireless station and wireless access point (vigor router) with the encryption of WPA and WPA2.



Web User Interface



III-1-1 Wireless Wizard

The wireless wizard allows you to configure settings specified for a host AP (for home use or internal use for a company) and specified for a guest AP (for any wireless clients accessing into Internet).

Follow the steps listed below:

1. Open Wizards>>Wireless Wizard.
2. The screen of wireless wizard will be shown as follows. This page will be used for internal users in a company or your home.

Wireless Wizard

Host AP Configuration

Name:	<input type="text" value="DrayTek"/>
Mode:	<input type="text" value="Mixed(11b+11g+11n)"/>
Channel:	<input type="text" value="Channel 6, 2437MHz"/>
Security Key:	<input type="text" value="*****"/>
Note:	The host AP configured here will be used for home or internal company use.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Name	Type the SSID name of this router for wireless 2.4GHz. The default name is defined with DrayTek. Change the name if required.
Mode	At present, the router can connect to 11b Only, 11n Only (2.4GHz), 11g Only, Mixed (11b+11g), Mixed (11g+11n), and Mixed (11b+11g+11n) stations simultaneously. Simply choose

	Mix (11b+11g+11n) mode.
Channel	Means the channel of frequency of the wireless LAN. The default channel is 6. You may switch channel if the selected channel is under serious interference. If you have no idea of choosing the frequency, please select Auto to let system determine for you.
Security Key	The wireless mode offered by this wizard is WPA2/PSK. The WPA encrypts each frame transmitted from the radio using the key, which either PSK (Pre-Shared Key) entered manually in this field below or automatically negotiated via 802.1x authentication. Either 8~63 ASCII characters, such as 012345678(or 64 Hexadecimal digits leading by 0x, such as "0x321253abcde...").
Next	Click it to get into the next setting page.
Cancel	Exit the wireless wizard without saving any changes.

- After typing the required information, click **Next**. The settings in the page limit the wireless station (guest) accessing into Internet but not being allowed to share the LAN network and VPN connection.

Wireless Wizard

Guest AP Configuration

Enable
 Disable

Name:

Security key:

Bandwidth Limit:
 Enable
 Total Upload kbps
 Total Download kbps

Note:
The configured guest AP will not be able to access VPN connections or communicate with wireless devices connecting to the router's other APs. The guest AP will be configured to be not able to connect to LAN interfaces also. However if the VLAN configurations were already made, then the guest AP will be able to connect to LAN ports belonging in the same VLAN group. This AP interface is by default configured for Internet access only.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable/Disable	Click it to enable or disable settings in this page.
Name	Type the SSID name of this router. (SSID1)
Security Key	The wireless mode offered by this wizard is WPA2/PSK. The WPA encrypts each frame transmitted from the radio using the key, which either PSK (Pre-Shared Key) entered manually in this field below or automatically negotiated via 802.1x authentication. Either 8~63 ASCII characters, such as 012345678(or 64 Hexadecimal digits leading by 0x, such as "0x321253abcde...").
Bandwidth Limit	It controls the data transmission rate through wireless connection. Total Upload - Check Enable and type the transmitting rate for data upload. Default value is 30,000 kbps.

	Total Download - Type the transmitting rate for data download. Default value is 30,000 kbps.
Next	Click it to get into the next setting page.
Cancel	Exit the wireless wizard without saving any changes.

4. After typing the required information, click **Next**.
5. The following page will display the configuration summary for wireless setting.

Wireless Wizard

Configuration Summary

Basic Wireless Settings

Mode: Mixed(11b+11g+11n)
Channel: Channel 6, 2437MHz

Host AP Configurations

Name: DrayTek
Security key: *****

Guest AP Configurations

Status: Disabled
Name: DrayTek_Guest
Security key: *****
Bandwidth Limit: Disabled

6. Click **Finish** to complete the wireless settings configuration.

III-1-2 General Setup

By clicking the **Wireless LAN >> General Settings**, a new web page will appear so that you could configure the SSID and the wireless channel. Please refer to the following figure for more information.

Wireless LAN >> General Setup

General Setting (IEEE 802.11)

Enable Wireless LAN

Radio

Mode:

Channel:

SSID

Index	Enable	SSID	Hide SSID	Isolate Member	Isolate VPN
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="DrayTek"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="DrayTek_Guest"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="Max: 31 characters"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="Max: 31 characters"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Schedule

Schedule Profile

Schedule 1:

Schedule 2:

Schedule 3:

Schedule 4:

Note:

1. Isolate Member: Prevent the clients associated with this SSID from accessing each other.
2. Isolate VPN: Block the wireless clients from accessing the VPN network and prevent wireless traffic being sent to VPN connections.
3. Only the action "Force Down" in the Schedule Profile will be applied to WLAN, other actions will be ignored.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable Wireless LAN	Check the box to enable wireless function.
Mode	At present, the router can connect to 11b Only, 11g Only, 11n Only (2.4GHz), Mixed (11b+11g), Mixed (11g+11n), and Mixed (11b+11g+11n) stations simultaneously. Simply choose Mixed (11b+11g+11n) mode.
Channel	Means the channel of frequency of the wireless LAN. The default channel is 6. You may switch channel if the selected channel is under serious interference. If you have no idea of choosing the frequency, please select Auto to let system determine for you.
SSID	Means the identification of the wireless LAN. SSID can be any text numbers or various special characters.
Hide SSID	Check it to prevent from wireless sniffing and make it harder

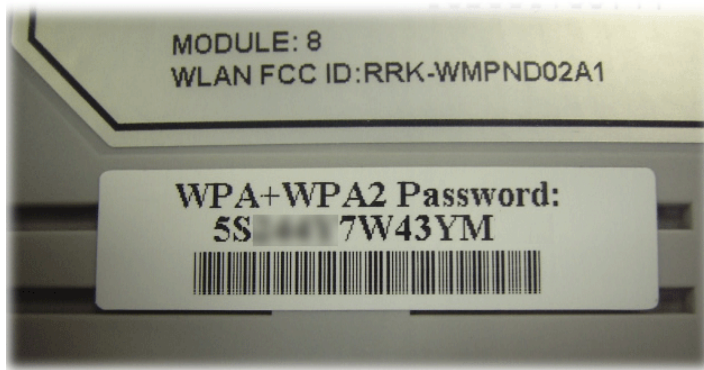
	for unauthorized clients or STAs to join your wireless LAN. Depending on the wireless utility, the user may only see the information except SSID or just cannot see any thing about Vigor wireless router while site surveying. The system allows you to set four sets of SSID for different usage. In default, the first set of SSID will be enabled. You can hide it for your necessity.
Isolate	Member -Check this box to make the wireless clients (stations) with the same SSID not accessing for each other. VPN - Check this box to make the wireless clients (stations) with different VPN not accessing for each other.
Schedule Profiles	Set the wireless LAN to work at certain time interval only. You may choose up to 4 schedules out of the 15 schedules pre-defined in Applications >> Schedule setup. The default setting of this field is blank and the function will always work.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

III-1-3 Security

This page allows you to set security with different modes for SSID 1, 2, 3 and 4 respectively. After configuring the correct settings, please click OK to save and invoke it.

The password (PSK) of default security mode is provided and stated on the label pasted on the bottom of the router. For the wireless client who wants to access into Internet through such router, please input the default PSK value for connection.




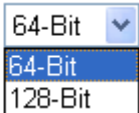
By clicking the Security, a new web page will appear so that you could configure the settings of WPA and WEP.

Wireless LAN >> Security Settings

SSID 1	SSID 2	SSID 3	SSID 4
SSID			
Mode: <input type="text" value="DrayTek"/>			
Mode: <input type="text" value="WPA2/PSK"/>			
<u>WPA</u>			
Encryption Mode: TKIP for WPA/AES for WPA2			
Pre-Shared Key(PSK): <input type="text" value="....."/>			
Password Strength: <input type="button" value="Weak"/> <input type="button" value="Medium"/> <input type="button" value="Strong"/>			
EAPOL Key Retry: <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable			
Note: Type 8~63 ASCII characters, for example: "cfgs01a2...". For strong passwords: 1. Use at least 12 characters. 2. Include at least 3 of the following 4 types of characters: digits, uppercase letters, lowercase letters, and non-alphanumeric characters (such as \$ % ^).			
<u>WEP</u>			
Encryption Mode: <input type="text" value="64-Bit"/>			
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Key 1 : <input type="text"/>			
<input type="radio"/> Key 2 : <input type="text"/>			
<input type="radio"/> Key 3 : <input type="text"/>			
<input type="radio"/> Key 4 : <input type="text"/>			
Note: For 64 bit WEP key configurations, please insert 5 ASCII characters, for example: "AB312". For 128 bit WEP key configurations, please insert 13 ASCII characters.			

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
------	-------------

Mode	<p>There are several modes provided for you to choose.</p>  <p>Info You should also set RADIUS Server simultaneously if 802.1x mode is selected.</p> <p>Disable - Turn off the encryption mechanism.</p> <p>WEP-Accepts only WEP clients and the encryption key should be entered in WEP Key.</p> <p>WEP/802.1x Only - Accepts only WEP clients and the encryption key is obtained dynamically from RADIUS server with 802.1X protocol.</p> <p>WPA/802.1x Only- Accepts only WPA clients and the encryption key is obtained dynamically from RADIUS server with 802.1X protocol.</p> <p>WPA2/802.1x Only- Accepts only WPA2 clients and the encryption key is obtained dynamically from RADIUS server with 802.1X protocol.</p> <p>Mixed (WPA+WPA2/802.1x only) - Accepts WPA and WPA2 clients simultaneously and the encryption key is obtained dynamically from RADIUS server with 802.1X protocol.</p> <p>WPA/PSK-Accepts only WPA clients and the encryption key should be entered in PSK.</p> <p>WPA2/PSK-Accepts only WPA2 clients and the encryption key should be entered in PSK.</p> <p>Mixed (WPA+ WPA2)/PSK - Accepts WPA and WPA2 clients simultaneously and the encryption key should be entered in PSK.</p>
WPA	<p>The WPA encrypts each frame transmitted from the radio using the key, which either PSK (Pre-Shared Key) entered manually in this field below or automatically negotiated via 802.1x authentication. Either 8~63 ASCII characters, such as 012345678(or 64 Hexadecimal digits leading by 0x, such as "0x321253abcde...").</p> <p>Pre-Shared Key (PSK) - Either 8~63 ASCII characters, such as 012345678. (or 64 Hexadecimal digits leading by 0x, such as "0x321253abcde...").</p> <p>Password Strength - The system will display the password strength (represented with the word of weak, medium or strong) of the PSK specified above.</p> <p>EAPOL Key Retry - The default setting is "Enable". It can make sure that the key will be installed and used once in order to prevent key reinstallation attack.</p>
WEP	<p>64-Bit - For 64 bits WEP key, either 5 ASCII characters, such as 12345 (or 10 hexadecimal digitals leading by 0x, such as 0x4142434445.)</p> <p>128-Bit - For 128 bits WEP key, either 13 ASCII characters, such as ABCDEFGHIJKLM (or 26 hexadecimal digits leading by 0x, such as 0x414243444546474849A4B4C4D).</p> <p>Encryption Mode: </p> <p>All wireless devices must support the same WEP encryption bit size and have the same key. Four keys can be entered</p>

	here, but only one key can be selected at a time. The keys can be entered in ASCII or Hexadecimal. Check the key you wish to use.
--	---

After finishing all the settings here, please click OK to save the configuration.

III-1-4 Access Control

In the **Access Control**, the router may restrict wireless access to certain wireless clients only by locking their MAC address into a black or white list. The user may block wireless clients by inserting their MAC addresses into a black list, or only let them be able to connect by inserting their MAC addresses into a white list.

In the **Access Control** web page, users may configure the **white/black** list modes used by each SSID and the MAC addresses applied to their lists.

Wireless LAN >> Access Control

Access Control

Enable Mac Address Filter SSID 1 White List ▼ SSID 2 White List ▼
 SSID 3 White List ▼ SSID 4 White List ▼

MAC Address Filter(Limit: 64 entries)

Index	Attribute	MAC Address	Apply SSID	Comment
<div style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 100%; height: 100%;"></div>				

Client's MAC Address : : : : : :

Apply SSID : SSID 1 SSID 2 SSID 3 SSID 4

Attribute : s: Isolate the station from LAN

Comment :

Backup Access Control: Upload From File: 未選擇任何檔案

Note:
Support AP ACL configuration file restoration.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable Mac Address Filter	Select to enable the MAC Address filter for wireless LAN identified with SSID 1 to 4 respectively. All the clients (expressed by MAC addresses) listed in the box can be grouped under different wireless LAN. For example, they can be grouped under SSID 1 and SSID 2 at the same time if you check SSID 1 and SSID 2.
MAC Address Filter	Display all MAC addresses that are edited before.
Client's MAC Address	Manually enter the MAC address of wireless client.
Apply SSID	After entering the client's MAC address, check the box of the SSIDs desired to insert this MAC address into their access control list.
Attribute	s: Isolate the station from LAN - select to isolate the wireless connection of the wireless client of the MAC address from LAN.

Comment	Enter a brief description for the specified client's MAC address.
Add	Add a new MAC address into the list.
Delete	Delete the selected MAC address in the list.
Edit	Edit the selected MAC address in the list.
Cancel	Give up the access control set up.
OK	Click it to save the access control list.
Clear All	Clean all entries in the MAC address list.
Backup Access Control	Settings on this web page can be saved as a file which can be restored in the future by this device or other device.
Upload From File	Restore wireless access control settings and applied onto this device.

After finishing all the settings here, please click OK to save the configuration.

III-1-5 WPS

WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup) provides easy procedure to make network connection between wireless station and wireless access point (vigor router) with the encryption of WPA and WPA2.



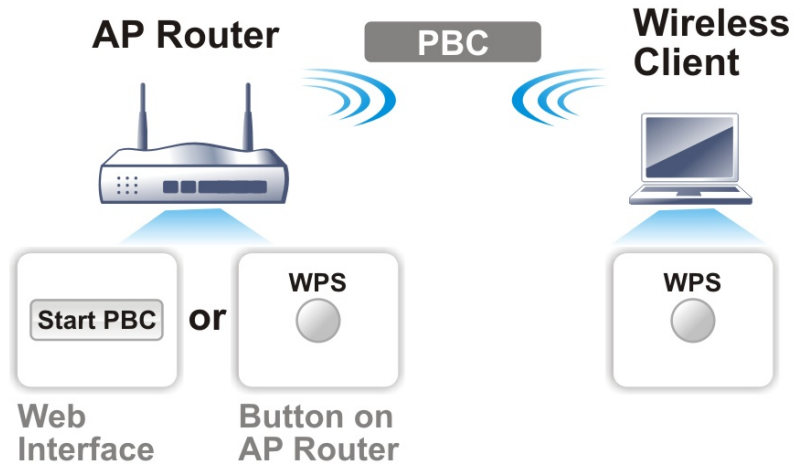
Info

WPS is available for the wireless station with WPS supported.

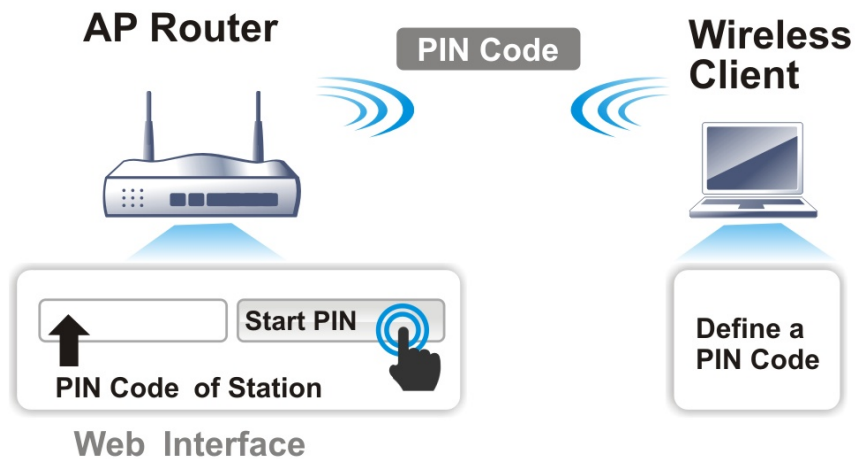
It is the simplest way to build connection between wireless network clients and vigor router. Users do not need to select any encryption mode and type any long encryption passphrase to setup a wireless client every time. He/she only needs to press a button on wireless client, and WPS will connect for client and router automatically.

There are two methods to do network connection through WPS between AP and Stations: pressing the *Start PBC* button or using *PIN Code*.

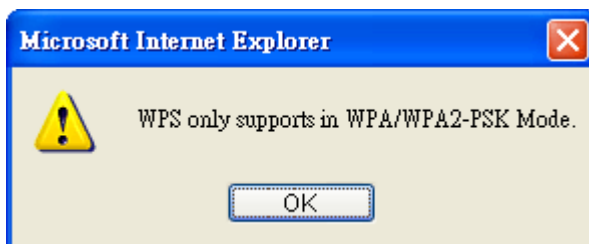
- On the side of Vigor 3220 series which served as an AP, press **WPS** button once on the front panel of the router or click **Start PBC** on web configuration interface. On the side of a station with network card installed, press **Start PBC** button of network card.



- If you want to use PIN code, you have to know the PIN code specified in wireless client. Then provide the PIN code of the wireless client you wish to connect to the vigor router.




For WPS is supported in WPA-PSK or WPA2-PSK mode, if you do not choose such mode in Wireless LAN>>Security, you will see the following message box.



Please click OK and go back Wireless LAN>>Security to choose WPA-PSK or WPA2-PSK mode and access WPS again.

Below shows Wireless LAN>>WPS web page:

Wireless LAN >> WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup)

Enable WPS 

Wi-Fi Protected Setup Information

WPS Status	Configured
SSID	DrayTek
Authentication Mode	WPA2/PSK


Device Configure


Configure via Push Button	<input type="button" value="Start PBC"/>
Configure via Client PinCode	<input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Start PIN"/>


Status: Ready

Note:

WPS can help your wireless client automatically connect to the Access point.

: WPS is Disabled.

: WPS is Enabled.

: Waiting for WPS requests from wireless clients.

Available settings are explained as follows:

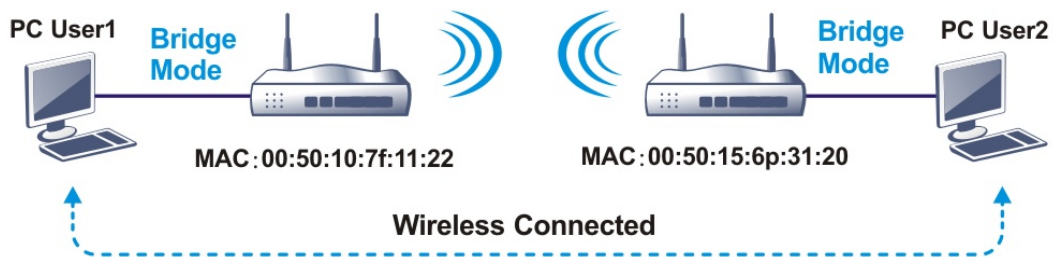
Item	Description
Enable WPS	Check this box to enable WPS setting.
WPS Status	Display related system information for WPS. If the wireless security (encryption) function of the router is properly configured, you can see 'Configured' message here.
SSID	Display the SSID1 of the router. WPS is supported by SSID1 only.
Authentication Mode	Display current authentication mode of the router. Only WPA2/PSK and WPA/PSK support WPS.
Configure via Push Button	Click Start PBC to invoke Push-Button style WPS setup procedure. The router will wait for WPS requests from wireless clients about two minutes. The WPS LED on the router will blink fast when WPS is in progress. It will return to normal condition after two minutes. (You need to setup WPS within two minutes)
Configure via Client PinCode	Please input the PIN code specified in wireless client you wish to connect, and click Start PIN button. The WPS LED on the router will blink fast when WPS is in progress. It will return to normal condition after two minutes. (You need to setup WPS within two minutes)

III-1-6 WDS

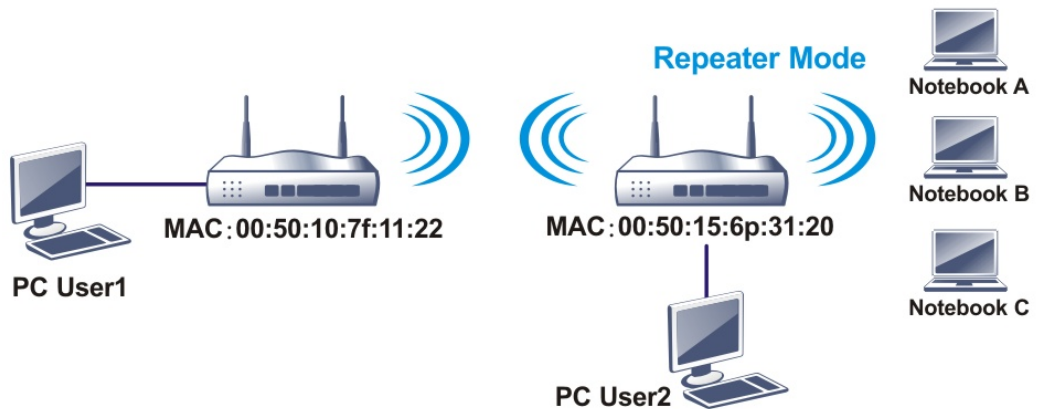
WDS means Wireless Distribution System. It is a protocol for connecting two access points (AP) wirelessly. Usually, it can be used for the following application:

- Provide bridge traffic between two LANs through the air.
- Extend the coverage range of a WLAN.

To meet the above requirement, two WDS modes are implemented in Vigor router. One is Bridge, the other is Repeater. Below shows the function of WDS-bridge interface:

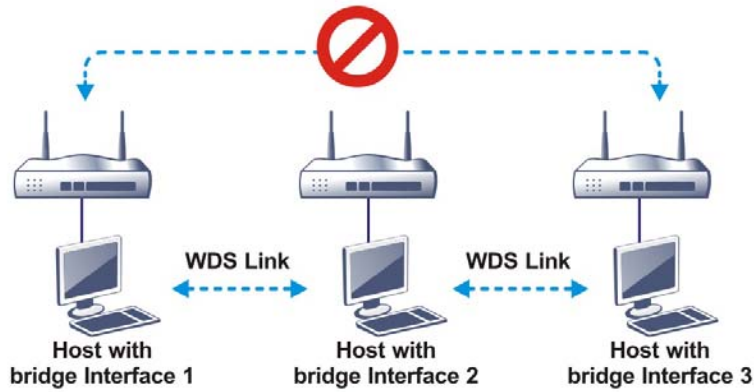


The application for the WDS-Repeater mode is depicted as below:



The major difference between these two modes is that: while in Repeater mode, the packets received from one peer AP can be repeated to another peer AP through WDS links. Yet in Bridge mode, packets received from a WDS link will only be forwarded to local wired or wireless hosts. In other words, only Repeater mode can do WDS-to-WDS packet forwarding.

In the following examples, hosts connected to Bridge 1 or 3 can communicate with hosts connected to Bridge 2 through WDS links. However, hosts connected to Bridge 1 CANNOT communicate with hosts connected to Bridge 3 through Bridge 2.



Click WDS from Wireless LAN menu. The following page will be shown.

Wireless LAN >> WDS Settings

| [Set to Factory Default](#) |

WDS Settings

<p>Mode: Disable ▾</p> <hr/> <p>Security:</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable <input type="radio"/> Pre-shared Key</p> <hr/> <p>Pre-shared Key:</p> <p>Type:</p> <p><input type="radio"/> WPA <input checked="" type="radio"/> WPA2</p> <p>Key: Max: 63 characters</p> <p>Note: WPA and WPA2 are not compatible with DrayTek WPA.</p> <p>Type 8~63 ASCII characters, for example: "cfs01a2..."</p>	<p>Bridge</p> <p>Enable <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Peer MAC Address</p> <table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td></tr> <tr><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td></tr> <tr><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td></tr> <tr><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td></tr> </table> <p>Note: Disable unused links to get better performance.</p> <hr/> <p>Repeater</p> <p>Enable <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Peer MAC Address</p> <table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td></tr> <tr><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td></tr> <tr><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td></tr> <tr><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td></tr> </table> <hr/> <p>Access Point Function:</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable</p> <hr/> <p>Status:</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Send "Hello" message to peers.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Link Status</p> <p>Note: The status is valid only when the peer also supports this function.</p>																																																

Note: Channel Bandwidth will affect the connection of WDS. If failed, please check [Channel Bandwidth](#) setting.

OK Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Mode	<p>Choose the mode for WDS setting. Disable mode will not invoke any WDS setting. Bridge mode is designed to fulfill the first type of application. Repeater mode is for the second one.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px; width: fit-content;"> Disable ▾ Disable Bridge Repeater </div>

Security	There are three types for security, Disable and Pre-shared key . The setting you choose here will make the following WEP or Pre-shared key field valid or not. Choose one of the types for the router.
Pre-shared Key	Type - There are some types for you to choose. WPA and WPA2 are used for WDS devices (e.g.2920n wireless router, you can set the encryption mode as WPA or WPA2 to establish your WDS system between AP and the router. Key - Type 8 ~ 63 ASCII characters or 64 hexadecimal digits leading by "0x".
Bridge	If you choose Bridge as the connecting mode, please type in the peer MAC address in these fields. Four peer MAC addresses are allowed to be entered in this page at one time. Yet please disable the unused link to get better performance. If you want to invoke the peer MAC address, remember to check Enable box in the front of the MAC address after typing.
Repeater	If you choose Repeater as the connecting mode, please type in the peer MAC address in these fields. Four peer MAC addresses are allowed to be entered in this page at one time. Similarly, if you want to invoke the peer MAC address, remember to check Enable box in the front of the MAC address after typing.
Access Point Function	Click Enable to make this router serve as an access point; click Disable to cancel this function.
Status	It allows user to send "hello" message to peers. Yet, it is valid only when the peer also supports this function.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

III-1-7 Advanced Setting

This page allows users to set advanced settings such as operation mode, channel bandwidth, guard interval, and aggregation MSDU for wireless data transmission.

Wireless LAN >> Advanced Setting

HT Physical Mode

Operation Mode	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Mixed Mode <input type="radio"/> Green Field
Channel Bandwidth	<input type="radio"/> 20 <input checked="" type="radio"/> 20/40 <input type="radio"/> 40
Guard Interval	<input type="radio"/> long <input checked="" type="radio"/> auto
Aggregation MSDU(A-MSDU)	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable
Long Preamble	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable
Tx Power	<input checked="" type="radio"/> 100% <input type="radio"/> 80% <input type="radio"/> 60% <input type="radio"/> 30% <input type="radio"/> 20% <input type="radio"/> 10%
WMM Capable	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable
APSD Capable	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable
Fragment Length (256 - 2346)	<input type="text" value="2346"/> bytes
RTS Threshold (1 - 2347)	<input type="text" value="2347"/> bytes
Country Code	<input type="text"/> (Reference)

OK

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Operation Mode	<p>Mixed Mode - the router can transmit data with the ways supported in both 802.11a/b/g and 802.11n standards. However, the entire wireless transmission will be slowed down if 802.11g or 802.11b wireless client is connected.</p> <p>Green Field - to get the highest throughput, please choose such mode. Such mode can make the data transmission happen between 11n systems only. In addition, it does not have protection mechanism to avoid the conflict with neighboring devices of 802.11a/b/g.</p>
Channel Bandwidth	<p>20- the router will use 20Mhz for data transmission and receiving between the AP and the stations.</p> <p>20/40 - Vigor Router will scan for nearby wireless AP, and then use 20MHz if the number of AP is more than 10, or use 40MHz if it's not.</p> <p>40- the router will use 40Mhz for data transmission and receiving between the AP and the stations.</p>
Guard Interval	It is to assure the safety of propagation delays and reflections for the sensitive digital data. If you choose auto as guard interval, the AP router will choose short guard interval (increasing the wireless performance) or long guard interval for data transmit based on the station capability.
Aggregation MSDU	Aggregation MSDU can combine frames with different sizes. It is used for improving MAC layer's performance for some brand's clients. The default setting is Enable .
Long Preamble	This option is to define the length of the sync field in an 802.11 packet. Most modern wireless network uses short preamble with 56 bit sync field instead of long preamble with 128 bit sync field. However, some original 11b wireless network devices only support long preamble. Click Enable to use Long Preamble if needed to communicate with this kind

	of devices.
Tx Power	Set the power percentage for transmission signal of access point. The greater the value is, the higher intensity of the signal will be.
WMM Capable	WMM is an abbreviation of Wi-Fi Multimedia. It defines the priority levels for four access categories derived from 802.1d (prioritization tabs). The categories are designed with specific types of traffic, voice, video, best effort and low priority data. There are four accessing categories - AC_BE , AC_BK, AC_VI and AC_VO for WMM. To apply WMM parameters for wireless data transmission, please click the Enable radio button.
APSD Capable	APSD (automatic power-save delivery) is an enhancement over the power-save mechanisms supported by Wi-Fi networks. It allows devices to take more time in sleeping state and consume less power to improve the performance by minimizing transmission latency. The default setting is Disable .
Fragment Length (256 - 2346)	Set the Fragment threshold of wireless radio. Do not modify default value if you don't know what it is, default value is 2346.
RTS Threshold (1 - 2347)	Minimize the collision (unit is bytes) between hidden stations to improve wireless performance. Set the RTS threshold of wireless radio. Do not modify default value if you don't know what it is, default value is 2347.
Country Code	Vigor router broadcasts country codes by following the 802.11d standard. However, some wireless stations will detect / scan the country code to prevent conflict occurred. If conflict is detected, wireless station will be warned and is unable to make network connection. Therefore, changing the country code to ensure successful network connection will be necessary for some clients.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

III-1-8 Bandwidth Management

The downstream or upstream from FTP, HTTP or some P2P applications will occupy large of bandwidth and affect the applications for other programs. Please use Bandwidth Management to make the bandwidth usage more efficient.

Wireless LAN >> Bandwidth Management

SSID 1	SSID 2	SSID 3	SSID 4
SSID:		DrayTek	
Enable		<input type="checkbox"/>	
Bandwidth Limit Type		Auto Adjustment ▼	
Total Upload Limit(Kbps)		<input type="text" value="30000"/>	
Total Download Limit(Kbps)		<input type="text" value="30000"/>	

Note:

1. Download: Traffic going to any station.Upload: Traffic being sent from a wireless station.
2. Allow auto adjustment could make the best utilization of available bandwidth.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
SSID	Display the specific SSID name.
Enable	Check this box to enable the bandwidth management for clients.
Bandwidth Limit Type	Auto Adjustment - Bandwidth limit is determined by the system automatically. Per Station Limit - Bandwidth limit is determined according to the limitation of the wireless client.
Total Upload Limit	It is available when Auto Adjustment is selected. Type a value to define the maximum data traffic (uploading) for all of the wireless clients connecting to Vigor2832.
Total Download Limit	It is available when Auto Adjustment is selected. Type a value to define the maximum data clientstations connecting to Vigor2832.
Upload Limit	It is available when Per Station Limit is selected. Type a value to define the maximum data traffic (uploading) for each wireless client connecting to Vigor2832.
Download Limit	It is available when Per Station Limit is selected Type a value to define the maximum data traffic (downloading) for each wireless client connecting to Vigor2832.

After finishing this web page configuration, please click OK to save the settings

III-1-9 AP Discovery

Vigor router can scan all regulatory channels and find working APs in the neighborhood. Based on the scanning result, users will know which channel is clean for usage. Also, it can be used to facilitate finding an AP for a WDS link. Notice that during the scanning process (about 5 seconds), no client is allowed to connect to Vigor.

This page is used to scan the existence of the APs on the wireless LAN. Yet, only the AP which is in the same channel of this router can be found. Please click **Scan** to discover all the connected APs.

Wireless LAN >> Access Point Discovery

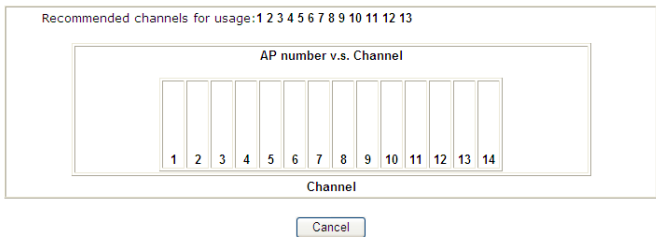
Access Point List

Index	BSSID	Channel	RSSI	SSID	Authentication
<input type="button" value="Scan"/>					
See Statistics .					
Add to WDS Settings :					
AP's MAC address		<input type="text"/> : <input type="text"/> : <input type="text"/> : <input type="text"/> : <input type="text"/> : <input type="text"/>			
<input type="button" value="Add to"/>		<input checked="" type="radio"/> Bridge <input type="radio"/> Repeater			

Note:

1. During the scanning process (~5 seconds), no station is allowed to connect with the router.
2. AP Discovery can only support up to 32 APs displayed on the screen.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Scan	It is used to discover all the connected AP. The results will be shown on the box above this button.
Statistics	It displays the statistics for the channels used by APs. 
Add to	If you want the found AP applying the WDS settings, please type in the AP's MAC address on the bottom of the page and click Bridge or Repeater. Next, click Add to. Later, the MAC address of the AP will be added to Bridge or Repeater field of WDS settings page.

III-1-10 Airtime Fairness

Airtime fairness is essential in wireless networks that must support critical enterprise applications.

Most of the applications are either symmetric or require more downlink than uplink capacity; telephony and email send the same amount of data in each direction, while video streaming and web surfing involve more traffic sent from access points to clients than the other way around. This is essential for ensuring predictable performance and quality-of-service, as well as allowing 802.11n and legacy clients to coexist on the same network. Without airtime fairness, offices using mixed mode networks risk having legacy clients slow down the entire network or letting the fastest client(s) crowd out other users.

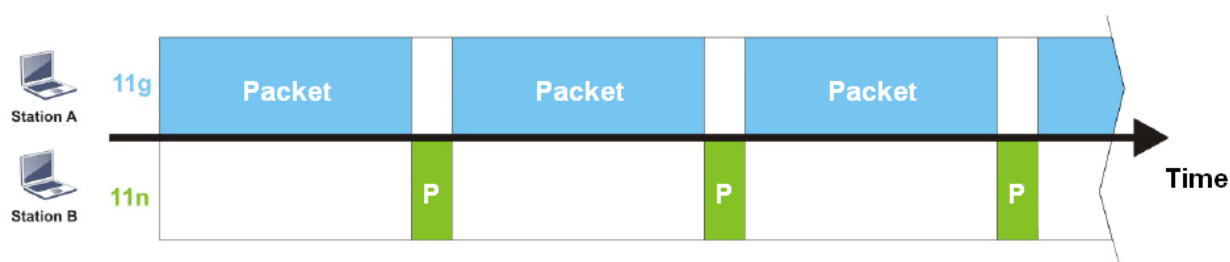
With airtime fairness, every client at a given quality-of-service level has equal access to the network's airtime.

The wireless channel can be accessed by only one wireless station at the same time.

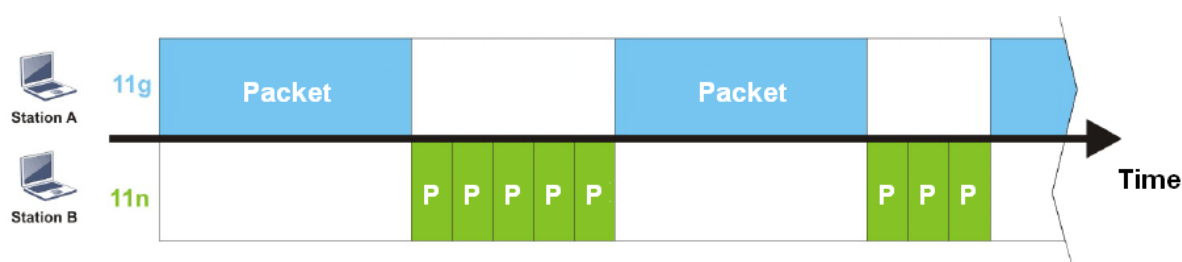
The principle behind the IEEE802.11 channel access mechanisms is that each station has *equal probability* to access the channel. When wireless stations have similar data rate, this principle leads to a fair result. In this case, stations get similar channel access time which is called airtime.

However, when stations have various data rate (e.g., 11g, 11n), the result is not fair. The slow stations (11g) work in their slow data rate and occupy too much airtime, whereas the fast stations (11n) become much slower.

Take the following figure as an example, both Station A(11g) and Station B(11n) transmit data packets through Vigor router. Although they have equal probability to access the wireless channel, Station B(11n) gets only a little airtime and waits too much because Station A(11g) spends longer time to send one packet. In other words, Station B(fast rate) is obstructed by Station A(slow rate).



To improve this problem, Airtime Fairness is added for Vigor router. Airtime Fairness function tries to assign *similar airtime* to each station (A/B) by controlling TX traffic. In the following figure, Station B(11n) has higher probability to send data packets than Station A(11g). By this way, Station B(fast rate) gets fair airtime and its speed is not limited by Station A(slow rate).



It is similar to automatic Bandwidth Limit. The dynamic bandwidth limit of each station depends on instant active station number and airtime assignment. Please note that Airtime Fairness of 2.4GHz and 5GHz are independent. But stations of different SSIDs function together, because they all use the same wireless channel. IN SPECIFIC ENVIRONMENTS, this function can reduce the bad influence of slow wireless devices and improve the overall wireless performance.

Suitable environment:

- (1) Many wireless stations.
- (2) All stations mainly use download traffic.
- (3) The performance bottleneck is wireless connection.

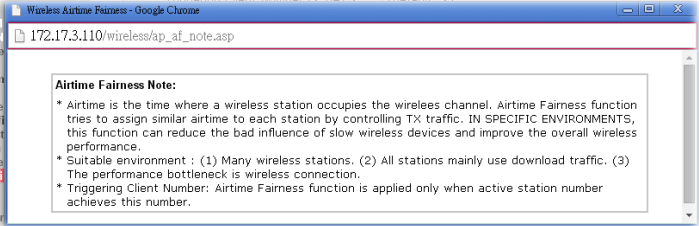
Wireless LAN >> Airtime Fairness

Enable Airtime Fairness
 Triggering Client Number (2 ~ 64) (Default: 2)

Note:

Please enable or disable this function according to the real situation and user experience. It is NOT suitable for all environments.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
<p>Enable Airtime Fairness</p>	<p>Try to assign similar airtime to each wireless station by controlling TX traffic.</p> <p>Airtime Fairness - Click the link to display the following screen of airtime fairness note.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;">  </div> <p>Triggering Client Number -Airtime Fairness function is applied only when active station number achieves this number.</p>

After finishing this web page configuration, please click **OK** to save the settings.



Info

Airtime Fairness function and Bandwidth Limit function should be mutually exclusive. So their webs have extra actions to ensure these two functions are not enabled simultaneously.

III-1-11 Station List

Station List provides the knowledge of connecting wireless clients now along with its status code. There is a code summary below for explanation. For convenient Access Control, you can select a WLAN station and click Add to Access Control below.

Wireless LAN >> Station List

Station List

		General		Advanced
Index	Status	IP Address	MAC Address	Associated with
<div style="border: 1px solid black; height: 100px; width: 100%;"></div>				
<input type="button" value="Refresh"/>				
Status Codes :				
C: Connected, No encryption.				
E: Connected, WEP.				
P: Connected, WPA.				
A: Connected, WPA2.				
B: Blocked by Access Control.				
N: Connecting.				
F: Fail to pass WPA/PSK authentication.				
<hr/>				
Add to <u>Access Control</u> :				
Client's MAC address <input type="text"/> : <input type="text"/> : <input type="text"/> : <input type="text"/> : <input type="text"/> : <input type="text"/>				

Note:

After a station connects to the router successfully, it may be turned off without notice. In that case, it will still be on the list until the connection expires.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Refresh	Click this button to refresh the status of station list.
Add	Click this button to add current typed MAC address into Access Control.

Part IV VPN



VPN



SSL VPN



Certificate
Management

A Virtual Private Network (VPN) is the extension of a private network that encompasses links across shared or public networks like the Internet. In short, by VPN technology, you can send data between two computers across a shared or public network in a manner that emulates the properties of a point-to-point private link.

It is a form of VPN that can be used with a standard Web browser.

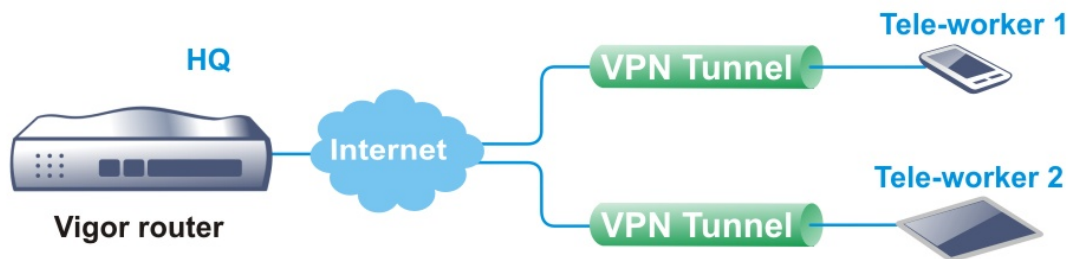
A digital certificate works as an electronic ID, which is issued by a certification authority (CA). It contains information such as your name, a serial number, expiration dates etc., and the digital signature of the certificate-issuing authority so that a recipient can verify that the certificate is real. Here Vigor router support digital certificates conforming to standard X.509.

IV-1 VPN and Remote Access

A Virtual Private Network (VPN) is the extension of a private network that encompasses links across shared or public networks like the Internet. In short, by VPN technology, you can send data between two computers across a shared or public network in a manner that emulates the properties of a point-to-point private link.

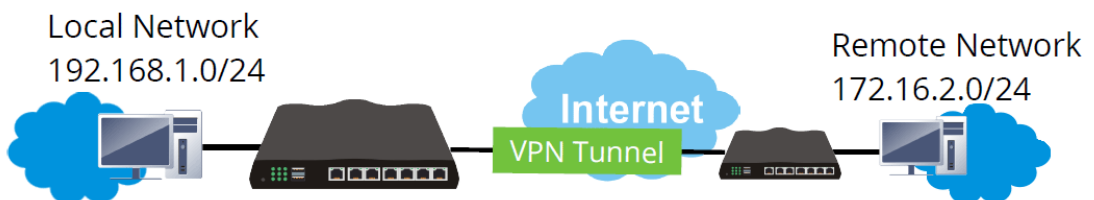
The VPN built is suitable for:

- Communication between home office and customer
- Secure connection between Teleworker, staff on business trip and main office
- Exchange data between remote office and main office
- POS between chain store and headquarters



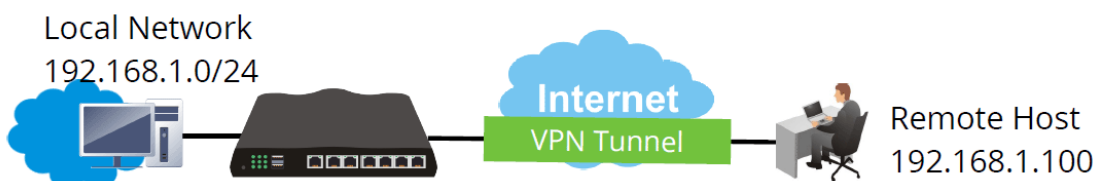
Site-to-Site (LAN-to-LAN)

- A connection between two router's LAN networks.
- Allows employees in branch offices and head office to share the same network resources.



Remote Access (Remote Dial-in)

- A connection between the remote host and router's LAN network. The host will use an IP address in the local subnet.
- Allows employees to access the company's internal resources when they are traveling.



Web User Interface



IV-1-1 VPN Client Wizard

Such wizard is used to configure VPN settings for VPN client. Such wizard will guide to set the LAN-to-LAN profile for VPN dial out connection (from server to client) step by step.

1. Open Wizards>>VPN Client Wizard. The following page will appear.

VPN Client Wizard

Choose VPN Establishment Environment

LAN-to-LAN VPN Client Mode Selection:

Please choose a LAN-to-LAN Profile:

Note:

1. Please use Route Mode for typical LAN-to-LAN tunnels.
2. If the remote network is only expecting a single client or IP and is not configured to route the subnet then select NAT Mode.
3. If you are unsure of your configuration select Route Mode.

< Back Next > Finish Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
LAN-to-LAN Client Mode Selection	Choose the client mode. Route Mode/NAT Mode - If the remote network only allows you to dial in with single IP, please choose NAT mode, otherwise please choose Route Mode.
Please choose a	There are 32 VPN profiles for users to set.

- When you finish the mode and profile selection, please click **Next** to open the following page.

VPN Client Wizard

VPN Connection Setting

Security Ranking: Very High L2TP over IPSec High IPSec / SSL Medium PPTP (Encryption) Low L2TP / PPTP (None Encryption)	Throughput Ranking: Very High L2TP / PPTP (None Encryption) High IPSec Medium L2TP over IPSec / PPTP (Encryption) Low SSL
--	--

Select VPN Type:

In this page, you have to select suitable VPN type for the VPN client profile. There are seven types provided here. Different type will lead to different configuration page. After making the choices for the client profile, please click **Next**. You will see different configurations based on the selection(s) you made.



Info

The following descriptions for VPN Type are based on the Route Mode specified in LAN-to-LAN Client Mode Selection.

When you choose **PPTP (None Encryption)** or **PPTP (Encryption)**, you will see the following graphic:

VPN Client Wizard

VPN Client PPTP Encryption Settings

Profile Name	???
VPN Dial-Out Through	WAN1 First
<input type="checkbox"/> Always on	
Server IP/Host Name for VPN (e.g. draytek.com or 123.45.67.89)	
Username	???
Password	
Remote Network IP	0.0.0.0
Remote Network Mask	255.255.255.0 / 24
Local Network IP	192.168.1.80
Local Network Mask	255.255.255.0 / 24

< Back Next > Finish Cancel

When you choose IPsec, you will see the following graphic:

VPN Client Wizard

VPN Client IPsec Settings

Profile Name	???
VPN Dial-Out Through	WAN1 First
<input type="checkbox"/> Always on	
Server IP/Host Name for VPN (e.g. draytek.com or 123.45.67.89)	
IKE Authentication Method	
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Pre-Shared Key	
Confirm Pre-Shared Key	
<input type="radio"/> Digital Signature (X.509)	
Peer ID	None
Local ID	
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Alternative Subject Name First	
<input type="radio"/> Subject Name First	
Local Certificate	None
IPsec Security Method	
<input type="radio"/> Medium (AH)	
<input checked="" type="radio"/> High (ESP)	AES with Authentication
Remote Network IP	0.0.0.0
Remote Network Mask	255.255.255.0 / 24
Local Network IP	192.168.1.80
Local Network Mask	255.255.255.0 / 24

< Back Next > Finish Cancel

When you choose L2TP, you will see the following graphic:

VPN Client Wizard

VPN Client L2TP Settings

Profile Name	???
VPN Dial-Out Through	WAN1 First
<input type="checkbox"/> Always on	
Server IP/Host Name for VPN (e.g. draytek.com or 123.45.67.89)	
Username	???
Password	
Remote Network IP	0.0.0.0
Remote Network Mask	255.255.255.0 / 24
Local Network IP	192.168.1.80
Local Network Mask	255.255.255.0 / 24

< Back Next > Finish Cancel

When you choose L2TP over IPsec (Nice to Have) or L2TP over IPsec (Must), you will see the following graphic:

VPN Client Wizard

VPN Client L2TP over IPsec (Nice to Have) Settings

Profile Name	???
VPN Dial-Out Through	WAN1 First
<input type="checkbox"/> Always on	
Server IP/Host Name for VPN (e.g. draytek.com or 123.45.67.89)	
IKE Authentication Method	
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Pre-Shared Key	
Confirm Pre-Shared Key	
<input type="radio"/> Digital Signature (X.509)	
Peer ID	None
Local ID	
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Alternative Subject Name First	
<input type="radio"/> Subject Name First	
Local Certificate	None
IPsec Security Method	
<input type="radio"/> Medium (AH)	
<input checked="" type="radio"/> High (ESP)	AES with Authentication
Username	???
Password	
Remote Network IP	0.0.0.0
Remote Network Mask	255.255.255.0 / 24
Local Network IP	192.168.1.80
Local Network Mask	255.255.255.0 / 24

< Back Next > Finish Cancel

When you choose SSL, you will see the following graphic:

VPN Client Wizard

Profile Name	???
VPN Dial-Out Through	WAN1 First ▼
<input type="checkbox"/> Always on	
Server IP/Host Name for VPN (e.g. draytek.com or 123.45.67.89)	
Server Port (for SSL Tunnel):	443
Username	???
Password	
Remote Network IP	0.0.0.0
Remote Network Mask	255.255.255.0 / 24 ▼
Local Network IP	192.168.1.80
Local Network Mask	255.255.255.0 / 24 ▼

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Profile Name	Type a name for such profile. The length of the file is limited to 10 characters.
VPN Dial-Out Through	Use the drop down menu to choose a proper WAN interface for this profile. This setting is useful for dial-out only. WAN1 First/ WAN2 First /WAN3 First/WAN4 First - While connecting, the router will use WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4/WAN5 as the first channel for VPN connection. If WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4 fails, the router will use another WAN interface instead. WAN1 Only /WAN2 Only/WAN3 Only/WAN4 Only - While connecting, the router will use WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4 as the only channel for VPN connection. WAN1 Only: Only establish VPN if WAN2 down - If WAN2 failed, the router will use WAN1 for VPN connection. WAN2 Only: Only establish VPN if WAN1 down - If WAN1 failed, the router will use WAN2 for VPN connection.
Always On	Check to enable router always keep VPN connection.
Server IP/Host Name for VPN	Type the IP address of the server or type the host name for such VPN profile.
Server Port (for SSL Tunnel)	Type a port number for SSL tunnel.
IKE Authentication Method	IKE Authentication Method usually applies to those are remote dial-in user or node (LAN to LAN) which uses dynamic IP address and IPsec-related VPN connections such as L2TP over IPsec and IPsec tunnel. Pre-Shared Key - Specify a key for IKE authentication. Confirm Pre-Shared Key -Confirm the pre-shared key.
Digital Signature (X.509)	Click Digital Signature to invoke this function. Peer ID - Choose the peer ID selection from the drop down

	list. Local ID - Choose Alternative Subject Name First or Subject Name First . Local Certificate - Use the drop down list to choose one of the certificates for using. You have to configure one certificate at least previously in Certificate Management >> Local Certificate . Otherwise, the setting you choose here will not be effective.
IPsec Security Method	Medium - Authentication Header (AH) means data will be authenticated, but not be encrypted. By default, this option is active. High - Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) means payload (data) will be encrypted and authenticated. You may select encryption algorithm from Data Encryption Standard (DES), Triple DES (3DES), and AES.
User Name	This field is used to authenticate for connection when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. The length of the user name is limited to 11 characters.
Password	This field is used to authenticate for connection when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. The length of the password is limited to 11 characters.
Remote Network IP	Please type one LAN IP address (according to the real location of the remote host) for building VPN connection.
Remote Network Mask	Please type the network mask (according to the real location of the remote host) for building VPN connection.
Local Network IP	Enter the local network IP for TCP / IP configuration.
Local Network Mask	Enter the local network mask for TCP / IP configuration.

- After finishing the configuration, please click **Next**. The confirmation page will be shown as follows. If there is no problem, you can click one of the radio buttons listed on the page and click **Finish** to execute the next action.

VPN Client Wizard

Please confirm your settings

LAN-to-LAN Index:	1
Profile Name:	test
VPN Connection Type:	SSL
VPN Dial-Out Through:	WAN1 First
Always on:	No
Server IP/Host Name:	123.45.67.89
Server Port:	443
Remote Network IP:	0.0.0.0
Remote Network Mask:	255.255.255.0
Local Network IP:	192.168.1.80
Local Network Mask:	255.255.255.0

Click **Back** to modify changes if necessary. Otherwise,click **Finish** to save the current settings and proceed to the following action:

Go to the VPN Connection Management.
 Do another VPN Client Wizard setup.
 View more detailed configurations.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Go to the VPN Connection Management	Click this radio button to access VPN and Remote Access>>Connection Management for viewing VPN Connection status.
Do another VPN Server Wizard Setup	Click this radio button to set another profile of VPN Server through VPN Server Wizard.
View more detailed configuration	Click this radio button to access VPN and Remote Access>>LAN to LAN for viewing detailed configuration.

IV-1-2 VPN Server Wizard

Such wizard is used to configure VPN settings for VPN server. Such wizard will guide to set the LAN-to-LAN profile for VPN dial in connection (from client to server) step by step.

1. Open **Wizards>>VPN Server Wizard**. The following page will appear.

VPN Server Wizard

Choose VPN Establishment Environment

VPN Server Mode Selection: Site to Site VPN (LAN-to-LAN) ▼

Please choose a LAN-to-LAN Profile: 1 x ??? ▼

Please choose a Dial-in User Accounts: [Index] [Status] [Name] ▼

Allowed Dial-in Type:

PPTP

IPsec

L2TP with IPsec Policy None ▼

SSL Tunnel

< Back
Next >
Finish
Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
VPN Server Mode Selection	Choose the direction for the VPN server. Site to Site VPN - To set a LAN-to-LAN profile automatically, please choose Site to Site VPN. Remote Dial-in User -You can manage remote access by maintaining a table of remote user profile, so that users can be authenticated to dial-in via VPN connection.
Please choose a LAN-to-LAN Profile	This item is available when you choose Site to Site VPN (LAN-to-LAN) as VPN server mode. There are 32 VPN profiles for users to set.
Please choose a Dial-in User Accounts	This item is available when you choose Remote Dial-in User (Teleworker) as VPN server mode. There are 32 VPN tunnels for users to set.
Allowed Dial-in Type	This item is available after you choose any one of dial-in user account profiles. Next, you have to select suitable dial-in type for the VPN server profile. There are several types provided here (similar to VPN Client Wizard).

	<input type="checkbox"/> PPTP <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IPsec <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> L2TP with IPsec Policy None ▾ <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSL Tunnel
<p>Different Dial-in Type will lead to different configuration page. In addition, adjustable items for each dial-in type will be changed according to the VPN Server Mode (Site to Site VPN and Remote Dial-in User) selected.</p>	

- After making the choices for the server profile, please click **Next**. You will see different configurations based on the selection you made. Here we take the examples of choosing **Site-to-Site VPN** as the **VPN Server Mode**.

When you check **PPTP**, you will see the following graphic:

VPN Server Wizard

VPN Authentication Setting

Profile Name	<input style="width: 150px;" type="text" value="???"/>
PPTP / L2TP / L2TP over IPsec / SSL Tunnel Authentication	
Username	<input style="width: 150px;" type="text" value="???"/>
Password	<input style="width: 150px;" type="password"/>
Peer IP/VPN Client IP	<input style="width: 150px;" type="text"/>
Site to Site Information	
Remote Network IP	<input style="width: 150px;" type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>
Remote Network Mask	<input style="width: 150px;" type="text" value="255.255.255.0 / 24"/>
Local Network IP	<input style="width: 150px;" type="text" value="192.168.1.80"/>
Local Network Mask	<input style="width: 150px;" type="text" value="255.255.255.0 / 24"/>

When you check PPTP & IPsec & L2TP (three types) or PPTP & IPsec (two types) or L2TP with Policy (Nice to Have/Must), you will see the following graphic:

VPN Server Wizard

VPN Authentication Setting

Profile Name	???
PPTP / L2TP / L2TP over IPsec / SSL Tunnel Authentication	
Username	???
Password	
IPsec / L2TP over IPsec Authentication	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pre-Shared Key	
Confirm Pre-Shared Key	
<input type="checkbox"/> Digital Signature (X.509)	
Peer ID	None
Local ID	
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Alternative Subject Name First	
<input type="radio"/> Subject Name First	
Peer IP/VPN Client IP	
Peer ID	
Site to Site Information	
Remote Network IP	0.0.0.0
Remote Network Mask	255.255.255.0 / 24
Local Network IP	192.168.1.80
Local Network Mask	255.255.255.0 / 24

< Back Next > Finish Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Profile Name	Type a name for such profile. The length of the file is limited to 10 characters.
User Name	This field is used to authenticate for connection when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. The length of the name is limited to 11 characters.
Password	This field is used to authenticate for connection when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. The length of the name is limited to 11 characters.
Pre-Shared Key	For IPsec/L2TP IPsec authentication, you have to type a pre-shared key. The length of the name is limited to 64 characters.
Confirm Pre-Shared Key	Type the pre-shared key again for confirmation.
Digital Signature (X.509)	Check the box of Digital Signature to invoke this function. Peer ID - Choose the peer ID selection from the drop down list. Local ID - Choose Alternative Subject Name First or Subject Name First .
Peer IP/VPN Client IP	Type the WAN IP address or VPN client IP address for the remote client.
Peer ID	Type the ID name for the remote client. The length of the name is limited to 47 characters.

Remote Network IP	Please type one LAN IP address (according to the real location of the remote host) for building VPN connection.
Remote Network Mask	Please type the network mask (according to the real location of the remote host) for building VPN connection.
Local Network IP	Enter the local network IP for TCP / IP configuration.
Local Network Mask	Enter the local network mask for TCP / IP configuration.

3. After finishing the configuration, please click **Next**. The confirmation page will be shown as follows. If there is no problem, you can click one of the radio buttons listed on the page and click **Finish** to execute the next action.

VPN Server Wizard

Please Confirm Your Settings

VPN Environment:	Site to Site VPN (LAN-to-LAN)
Index:	1
Profile Name:	testtest
Username:	tes45678
Allowed Service:	PPTP+IPsec+L2TP
Peer IP/VPN Client IP:	192.168.1.69
Peer ID:	carrie
Remote Network IP:	172.16.3.88
Remote Network Mask:	255.255.255.0
Local Network IP:	192.168.1.80
Local Network Mask:	255.255.255.0

Click **Back** to modify changes if necessary. Otherwise, click **Finish** to save the current settings and proceed to the following action:

Go to the VPN Connection Management.
 Do another VPN Server Wizard setup.
 View more detailed configurations.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Go to the VPN Connection Management	Click this radio button to access VPN and Remote Access>>Connection Management for viewing VPN Connection status.
Do another VPN Server Wizard Setup	Click this radio button to set another profile of VPN Server through VPN Server Wizard.
View more detailed configuration	Click this radio button to access VPN and Remote Access>>LAN to LAN for viewing detailed configuration.

IV-1-3 Remote Access Control

Enable the necessary VPN service as you need. If you intend to run a VPN server inside your LAN, you should disable the VPN service of Vigor Router to allow VPN tunnel pass through, as well as the appropriate NAT settings, such as DMZ or open port.

VPN and Remote Access >> Remote Access Control Setup

Remote Access Control Setup

<input type="checkbox"/> Enable PPTP VPN Service
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable IPSec VPN Service
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable L2TP VPN Service
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable SSL VPN Service
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable OpenVPN Service

Note:

To allow VPN pass-through to a separate VPN server on the LAN, disable any services above that use the same protocol and ensure that NAT Open Ports or Port Redirection is also configured.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

IV-1-4 PPP General Setup

This submenu only applies to PPP-related VPN connections, such as PPTP, L2TP, L2TP over IPsec.

VPN and Remote Access >> PPP General Setup

PPP General Setup

<p>PPP/MP Protocol</p> <p>Dial-In PPP Authentication: <input type="text" value="PAP/CHAP/MS-CHAP/MS-CHAPv2"/></p> <p>Dial-In PPP Encryption(MPPE): <input type="text" value="Optional MPPE"/></p> <p>Mutual Authentication (PAP): <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Username: <input type="text" value="Max: 23 characters"/></p> <p>Password: <input type="text" value="Max: 19 characters"/></p> <p>IP Address Assignment for Dial-In Users when DHCP is disabled.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>Start IP Address</th> <th>IP Pool Counts</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>LAN 1</td> <td><input type="text" value="192.168.1.200"/></td> <td><input type="text" value="50"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>LAN 2</td> <td><input type="text" value="192.168.2.200"/></td> <td><input type="text" value="50"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>LAN 3</td> <td><input type="text" value="192.168.3.200"/></td> <td><input type="text" value="50"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>LAN 4</td> <td><input type="text" value="192.168.4.200"/></td> <td><input type="text" value="50"/></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>		Start IP Address	IP Pool Counts	LAN 1	<input type="text" value="192.168.1.200"/>	<input type="text" value="50"/>	LAN 2	<input type="text" value="192.168.2.200"/>	<input type="text" value="50"/>	LAN 3	<input type="text" value="192.168.3.200"/>	<input type="text" value="50"/>	LAN 4	<input type="text" value="192.168.4.200"/>	<input type="text" value="50"/>	<p>PPP Authentication Methods</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Remote Dial-in User</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> RADIUS</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AD/LDAP</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> rd1</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> TACACS+</p> <p>Note:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Please select 'PAP Only 'Dial-In PPP Authentication',if you want to use AD/LDAP or TACACS+ for PPP Authentication. 2. Default priority is Remote Dial-in User -> RADIUS -> AD/LDAP -> TACACS+. 3. Vigor router also supports Frame-IP-Address from RADIUS server to assign IP address to VPN client. <p>While using RADIUS or LDAP Authentication:</p> <p>Assign IP from subnet: <input type="text" value="LAN1"/></p>
	Start IP Address	IP Pool Counts														
LAN 1	<input type="text" value="192.168.1.200"/>	<input type="text" value="50"/>														
LAN 2	<input type="text" value="192.168.2.200"/>	<input type="text" value="50"/>														
LAN 3	<input type="text" value="192.168.3.200"/>	<input type="text" value="50"/>														
LAN 4	<input type="text" value="192.168.4.200"/>	<input type="text" value="50"/>														

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Dial-In PPP Authentication	<p>PAP Only - elect this option to force the router to authenticate dial-in users with the PAP protocol.</p> <p>PAP/CHAP/MS-CHAP/MS-CHAPv2 - Selecting this option means the router will attempt to authenticate dial-in users with the CHAP protocol first. If the dial-in user does not support this protocol, it will fall back to use the PAP protocol for authentication.</p>
Dial-In PPP Encryption (MPPE)	<p>Optional MPPE - This option represents that the MPPE encryption method will be optionally employed in the router for the remote dial-in user. If the remote dial-in user does not support the MPPE encryption algorithm, the router will transmit "no MPPE encrypted packets". Otherwise, the MPPE encryption scheme will be used to encrypt the data.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Require MPPE (40/128bits) - Selecting this option will force the router to encrypt packets by using the MPPE encryption algorithm. In addition, the remote dial-in user will use 40-bit to perform encryption prior to using 128-bit for encryption. In other words, if 128-bit MPPE encryption method is not available, then 40-bit encryption scheme will be applied to encrypt the data. ● Maximum MPPE - This option indicates that the router will use the MPPE encryption scheme with maximum bits (128-bit) to encrypt the data.
Mutual Authentication	The Mutual Authentication function is mainly used to

(PAP)	<p>communicate with other routers or clients who need bi-directional authentication in order to provide stronger security, for example, Cisco routers. So you should enable this function when your peer router requires mutual authentication. You should further specify the User Name and Password of the mutual authentication peer.</p> <p>The length of the name/password is limited to 23/19 characters.</p>
IP Address Assignment for Dial-In Users (when DHCP Disable set)	<p>Assigned IP Start - Enter a start IP address for the dial-in PPP connection for LAN1.</p> <p>LAN2 ~ LAN4 will be available if it is enabled. Refer to LAN>>General Setup for enabling the LAN interface.</p>
PPP Authentication Methods	<p>Select the method(s) to be used for authentication in PPP connection.</p>
PPTP LDAP Profile	<p>Configured LDAP profiles will be listed under such item. Simply check the one you want to enable the PPP authentication by LDAP server profiles.</p> <p>However, if there is no profile listed, simply click the link of PPTP LDAP Profile to create/add some new LDAP profiles you want.</p>
While using Radius or LDAP Authentication	<p>If PPP connection will be authenticated via RADIUS server or LDAP profiles, it is necessary to specify the LAN profile for the dial-in user to get IP from.</p>

IV-1-5 SSL General Setup

SSL VPN (Secure Sockets Layer virtual private network) is a form of VPN that encrypts traffic using SSL, which is the same technology used on secured websites. Because of SSL's prominence as an encryption protocol on the Internet, most networks have few restrictions on SSL traffic, and as a result SSL VPN is more likely to work when other VPN technologies experience difficulties due to obstacles such as firewalls and Network Address Translation (NAT).

In short,

- It is not necessary for users to preinstall VPN client software for executing SSL VPN connection.
- There are less restrictions for the data encrypted through SSL VPN in comparing with traditional VPN.

This page determines the general configuration for SSL VPN Server and SSL Tunnel.

SSL VPN >> SSL General Setup

SSL General Setup

Bind to WAN	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WAN1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WAN2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WAN3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WAN4
Port	<input type="text" value="443"/>	(Default: 443)		
Server Certificate	<input type="text" value="self-signed"/>			

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Bind to WAN	Select the WAN interfaces to accept inbound SSL VPN connections.
Port	The port to be used for SSL VPN server. This is separate from the management port (HTTPS Port) which is configured in System Maintenance>>Management . The default setting is 443.
Server Certificate	Specify the certificate to be used for SSL connections. Select a certificate from imported or generated certificates on the router, or choose Self-signed to use the router's built-in default certificate. The selected certificate can be used in SSL VPN server and HTTPS Web Proxy.

To save changes on this page, select **OK**; to discard changes, select **Cancel**.

IV-1-6 IPsec General Setup

In IPsec General Setup, there are two major parts of configuration.

There are two phases of IPsec.

- Phase 1: negotiation of IKE parameters including encryption, hash, Diffie-Hellman parameter values, and lifetime to protect the following IKE exchange, authentication of both peers using either a Pre-Shared Key or Digital Signature (x.509). The peer that starts the negotiation proposes all its policies to the remote peer and then remote peer tries to find a highest-priority match with its policies. Eventually to set up a secure tunnel for IKE Phase 2.
- Phase 2: negotiation IPsec security methods including Authentication Header (AH) or Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) for the following IKE exchange and mutual examination of the secure tunnel establishment.

There are two encapsulation methods used in IPsec, **Transport** and **Tunnel**. The **Transport** mode will add the AH/ESP payload and use original IP header to encapsulate the data payload only. It can just apply to local packet, e.g., L2TP over IPsec. The **Tunnel** mode will not only add the AH/ESP payload but also use a new IP header (Tunneled IP header) to encapsulate the whole original IP packet.

Authentication Header (AH) provides data authentication and integrity for IP packets passed between VPN peers. This is achieved by a keyed one-way hash function to the packet to create a message digest. This digest will be put in the AH and transmitted along with packets. On the receiving side, the peer will perform the same one-way hash on the packet and compare the value with the one in the AH it receives.

Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) is a security protocol that provides data confidentiality and protection with optional authentication and replay detection service.

VPN and Remote Access >> IPsec General Setup

VPN IKE/IPsec General Setup

(Dial-in settings for Remote Dial-In users and LAN-to-LAN VPN Client with Dynamic IP.)

IKE Authentication Method		
Certificate	None ▾	
Preferred Local ID	Alternative Subject Name ▾	
General Pre-Shared Key	Max: 64 characters	
Confirm General Pre-Shared Key		
XAuth User Pre-Shared Key	Max: 64 characters	
Confirm XAuth User Pre-Shared Key		
IPsec Security Method		
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Basic	<input type="radio"/> Medium	<input type="radio"/> High
Encryption: AES/3DES/DES		
HMAC: SHA256/SHA1/MD5		
DH Group: G21/G20/G19/G14/G5/G2/G1		
AH: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable		

OK

Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
IKE Authentication Method	<p>This usually applies to those are remote dial-in user or node (LAN-to-LAN) which uses dynamic IP address and IPsec-related VPN connections such as L2TP over IPsec and IPsec tunnel. There are two methods offered by Vigor router for you to authenticate the incoming data coming from remote dial-in user, Certificate (X.509) and Pre-Shared Key.</p> <p>Certificate - X.509 certificates can be used for IKE authentication. To set up certificates on the router, go to the Certificate Management section.</p> <p>Preferred Local ID - Specify the preferred local ID information (Alternative Subject Name First or Subject Name First) for IPsec authentication while the client is using the general setting (without a specific Peer IP or ID in the VPN profile).</p> <p>General Pre-Shared Key- Define the PSK key for general authentication.</p> <p>Confirm General Pre-Shared Key- Re-enter the characters to confirm the pre-shared key.</p> <p>XAuth User Pre-Shared Key - Define the PSK key for IPsec XAuth authentication.</p> <p>Confirm XAuth User Pre-Shared Key- Re-enter the characters to confirm the pre-shared key for IPsec XAuth authentication.</p> <p>Note: Any packets from the remote dial-in user which does not match the rule defined in VPN and Remote Access>>Remote Dial-In User will be applied with the method specified here.</p>
IPsec Security Method	<p>Available methods include Basic, Medium and High. Each method offers different encryption, HMAC and DH Group.</p> <p>Basic - Authentication Header (AH) means data will be authenticated, but not be encrypted. By default, this option is active.</p> <p>Medium - When this option is selected, the Authentication Header (AH) protocol can be used to provide authentication to IPsec traffic.</p> <p>High - When this option is selected, the Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) protocol can be used to provide authentication and encryption to IPsec traffic. Three encryption standards are supported for ESP: DES, 3DES and AES, in ascending order of security.</p>

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

IV-1-7 IPsec Peer Identity

To use digital certificate for peer authentication in either LAN-to-LAN connection or Remote User Dial-In connection, here you may edit a table of peer certificate for selection. As shown below, the router provides 32 entries of digital certificates for peer dial-in users.

VPN and Remote Access >> IPsec Peer Identity

X509 Peer ID Accounts: | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Index	Enable	Name	Index	Enable	Name
1.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	17.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???
2.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	18.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???
3.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	19.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???
4.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	20.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???
5.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	21.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???
6.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	22.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???
7.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	23.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???
8.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	24.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???
9.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	25.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???
10.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	26.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???
11.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	27.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???
12.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	28.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???
13.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	29.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???
14.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	30.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???
15.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	31.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???
16.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	32.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???

OK

Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Click it to clear all indexes.
Index	Click the number below Index to access into the setting page of IPsec Peer Identity.
Enable	Check the box to enable the profile.
Name	Display the profile name of that index.

Click each index to edit one peer digital certificate. There are three security levels of digital signature authentication: Fill each necessary field to authenticate the remote peer. The following explanation will guide you to fill all the necessary fields.

Profile Index : 1

Enable this account

Profile Name

Accept Any Peer ID

Accept Subject Alternative Name

Type ▼

IP

Accept Subject Name

Country (C)

State (ST)

Location (L)

Organization (O)

Organization Unit (OU)

Common Name (CN)

Email (E)

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable this account	Check it to enable such account profile.
Profile Name	Type the name of the profile. The maximum length of the name you can set is 32 characters.
Accept Any Peer ID	Click to accept any peer regardless of its identity.
Accept Subject Alternative Name	Click to check one specific field of digital signature to accept the peer with matching value. The field can be IP Address , Domain , or E-mail Address . The box under the Type will appear according to the type you select and ask you to fill in corresponding setting.
Accept Subject Name	Click to check the specific fields of digital signature to accept the peer with matching value. The field includes Country (C) , State (ST) , Location (L) , Organization (O) , Organization Unit (OU) , Common Name (CN) , and Email (E) .

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

IV-1-8 OpenVPN

OpenVPN offers a convenient way for users to build VPN between local end and remote end.

With integrating of OpenVPN, Vigor router can help users to achieve more robust, reliable and secure private connections for business needs.

There are two advantages of OpenVPN:

- It can be operated on different systems such as Windows, Linux, and MacOS.
- Based on the standard protocol of SSL encryption, OpenVPN can provide you with a scalable client/server mode, permitting multi-client to connect to a single OpenVPN Server process over a single TCP or UDP port.

IV-1-8-1 General Setup

Before establishing OpenVPN connection, general settings for OpenVPN service shall be configured first.

VPN and Remote Access >> OpenVPN



OpenVPN Server Setup | Client Config

General Setup

UDP Enable
UDP Port
TCP Enable
TCP Port
Cipher Algorithm
HMAC Algorithm
Certificate Authentication

Certificates Setup

Certificate Source Router generated certificates
 Uploading certificates to Router

Trust CA
Server Certificate

Note: OpenVPN on vigor only support TUN device interface currently. So please setup corresponding configurations on the client side.

OK

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable UDP	Check the box to enable UDP port setting for OpenVPN. UDP Port - Enter a number.
Enable TCP	Check the box to enable TCP port setting for OpenVPN. TCP Port - Enter a number.

Cipher Algorithm	Two encryptions are supported, AES128 and AES256.
HMAC Algorithm	The HMAC algorithm only supports SHA1/SHA256.
Certificate Authentication	<p>If certificate authentication is required for OpenVPN, simply check the box to apply the trusted CA certificate and local certificate for OpenVPN tunnel.</p> <p>Certificate authentication can offer more secure VPN tunnel between the client and the router.</p>
Certificate Source	<p>Select a source for the certificate to be used for OpenVPN.</p> <p>Router generated certificates - Router-generated certificates that will be used for OpenVPN.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● GENERATE - Click to generate a certificate. ● Delete all certificate - Click to remove all certificates generated by the router. <p>Uploading certificates to Router - Third-party certificates will be used for OpenVPN.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Trust CA - Use the dropdown list to select a trusted CA certificate that has already been uploaded to the router. To upload Trusted CA certificates to the router, click the Trust CA label and you will be taken to the Certificate Management >> Trusted CA Certificate page to perform the operation. ● Server Certificate - Use the dropdown list to select a server certificate that has already been uploaded to the router. To upload server certificates to the router, click the Server Certificate label and you will be taken to the Certificate Management >> Local Certificate page to perform the operation.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

IV-1-8-2 Client Config

The settings on this page can be downloaded as a file. Later, such file can be imported and applied to remote end's CPE (as VPN client). Then, a private connection via OpenVPN tunnel between the server and the client can be connected successfully.



OpenVPN Server Setup	Client Config
Remote Server	<input checked="" type="radio"/> IP <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="radio"/> Domain <input type="text"/> <input type="radio"/> VPN matcher
Transport Protocol	<input type="text" value="UDP"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>
Auto Dial-Out	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable
Set VPN as Default Gateway	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable
Cache password for auto reconnect	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable
UDP Ping	<input type="text" value="10"/> Second
UDP Ping exit	<input type="text" value="60"/> Second
File Name	<input type="text"/> .ovpn
Client cert	<input type="text"/> .cert
Client key	<input type="text"/> .key
Mail Profile	<input type="text" value="1 - ???"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>
Mail Address	<input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Send Email"/>

Note:

1. Please make sure the Client cert and the Client key are located in the same folder with .ovpn file.
2. Please make sure that WAN can be used as OpenVPN server.
3. Cache password for auto reconnect.
 Enabled: Cache password in virtual memory for re-authentication to keep VPN always connected.
 Disabled: Type password manually when re-authentication needed. VPN may disconnect during re-authentication.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Remote Server	<p>The OpenVPN client will use the IP address or domain name to connect to the router. Select either IP or Domain.</p> <p>IP - The OpenVPN configuration file will use the numeric IP address as the server address.</p> <p>Domain - The OpenVPN configuration file will use the domain as the server address. You need to ensure that the domain resolves to the IP address of a router WAN port.</p> <p>VPN matcher - The OpenVPN configuration file will use the VPN matcher as the server address.</p>
Transport Protocol	Simply choose UDP or TCP as protocol for building OpenVPN connection between the server and the remote client.
Auto Dial-Out	<p>Enable - If selected, the remote client can auto-dial to this Vigor router to build an OpenVPN tunnel.</p> <p>Disable - Select to disable the function.</p>
Set VPN as Default Gateway	Enable - If selected, the Vigor router will be treated as a "default" gateway for OpenVPN clients. The OpenVPN client will redirect all the traffic to the Vigor router via the OpenVPN tunnel.

	Disable - Select to disable the function.
Cache password for auto reconnect	Enable - The default setting. Save the config information with the password required for the OpenVPN tunnel connection. Disable - Save the config information without the password information. If it is selected, the user must re-enter the password for authentication while setting the network connection via OpenVPN tunnel.
UDP Ping	Ping remote device over the UDP control channel, if no packets have been sent for the number of seconds configured here.
UDP Ping exit	Let OpenVPN exit after the seconds set here if no reception of a ping or other packet from the remote device.
File Name	Enter the filename of the configuration file to be downloaded from the router.
Client cert	Each client in an OpenVPN connection must have its certificate and private key. Enter the certificate file name obtained from 3rd party provider
Client key	Enter the private key file name obtained from 3rd party provider
Mail Profile	The system administrator can send an email containing the OpenVPN client configuration to someone who needs it. Later, the recipient can use the configuration to connect to the company's Intranet. It is useful and convenient for Smart VPN Client user or employee on a business trip. Mail Address - Enter the IP address of the recipient. Send Email - After clicking this button, the recipient will receive an email with the content of OpenVPN client configuration.
Export	The settings in this page can be saved as a file after clicking such button. Later, the downloaded file can be imported to the VPN client for building OpenVPN connection.

IV-1-9 Remote Dial-in User

You can manage remote access by maintaining a table of remote user profile, so that users can be authenticated to dial-in via VPN connection. You may set parameters including specified connection peer ID, connection type (VPN connection - including PPTP, IPsec Tunnel, and L2TP by itself or over IPsec) and corresponding security methods, etc.

The router provides 32 access accounts for dial-in users. Besides, you can extend the user accounts to the RADIUS server through the built-in RADIUS client function. The following figure shows the summary table.



Remote Access User Accounts: | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Index	Enable	User	Status	Index	Enable	User	Status
1.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	---	17.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	---
2.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	---	18.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	---
3.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	---	19.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	---
4.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	---	20.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	---
5.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	---	21.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	---
6.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	---	22.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	---
7.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	---	23.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	---
8.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	---	24.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	---
9.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	---	25.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	---
10.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	---	26.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	---
11.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	---	27.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	---
12.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	---	28.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	---
13.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	---	29.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	---
14.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	---	30.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	---
15.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	---	31.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	---
16.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	---	32.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???	---

Note:
User Accounts need to be added into User Group to enable SSL Portal Login.

Backup setting to file: <input type="button" value="Backup"/>	Restore From File: <input type="button" value="選擇檔案"/> 未選擇任何檔案 <input type="button" value="Restore"/>
--	--

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Click to clear all indexes.
Index	Click the number below Index to access into the setting page of Remote Dial-in User.
Enable	Check the box to enable the profile.
User	Display the username for the specific dial-in user of the LAN-to-LAN profile. The symbol ??? represents that the profile is empty.
Status	Display the access state of the specific dial-in user. The symbol V and X represent the specific dial-in user to be active and inactive, respectively.

Click each index to edit one remote user profile. Each Dial-In Type requires you to fill the different corresponding fields on the right. If the fields gray out, it means you may leave it untouched. The following explanation will guide you to fill all the necessary fields.

Index No. 1

User account and Authentication <input type="checkbox"/> Enable this account Idle Timeout <input type="text" value="300"/> second(s)		Username <input type="text" value="???"/> Password <input type="text" value="Max: 19 characters"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Enable Mobile One-Time Passwords(mOTP) PIN Code <input type="text"/> Secret <input type="text"/>
Allowed Dial-In Type <input type="checkbox"/> PPTP <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IPsec Tunnel <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IKEv1/IKEv2 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IKEv2 EAP <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IPsec XAuth <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> L2TP with IPsec Policy <input type="text" value="None"/> <input type="text"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSL Tunnel <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> OpenVPN Tunnel <input type="checkbox"/> Specify Remote Node Remote Client IP <input type="text"/> or Peer ID <input type="text"/> Netbios Naming Packet <input checked="" type="radio"/> Pass <input type="radio"/> Block Multicast via VPN <input type="radio"/> Pass <input checked="" type="radio"/> Block (for some IGMP,IP-Camera,DHCP Relay..etc.)		IKE Authentication Method <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pre-Shared Key IKE Pre-Shared Key <input type="text" value="Max: 64 characters"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Digital Signature(X.509) <input type="text" value="None"/>
Subnet <input type="text" value="LAN 1"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Assign Static IP Address <input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>		IPsec Security Method <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Medium(AH) High(ESP) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES Local ID (optional) <input type="text"/>

Note:

1. Username can not contain characters ' \' and \\.
2. OpenVPN tunnel does not support mOTP.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
User account and Authentication	<p>Enable this account - Check the box to enable this function.</p> <p>Idle Timeout- If the dial-in user is idle over the limitation of the timer, the router will drop this connection. By default, the Idle Timeout is set to 300 seconds.</p>
Allowed Dial-In Type	<p>PPTP - Allow the remote dial-in user to make a PPTP VPN connection through the Internet. You should set the User Name and Password of remote dial-in user below.</p> <p>IPsec Tunnel - Allow the remote dial-in user to make an IPsec VPN connection through Internet.</p> <p>L2TP with IPsec Policy - Allow the remote dial-in user to make a L2TP VPN connection through the Internet. You can select to use L2TP alone or with IPsec. Select from below:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● None - Do not apply the IPsec policy. Accordingly, the VPN connection employed the L2TP without IPsec policy can be viewed as one pure L2TP connection. ● Nice to Have - Apply the IPsec policy first, if it is applicable during negotiation. Otherwise, the dial-in VPN connection becomes one pure L2TP connection. ● Must -Specify the IPsec policy to be definitely applied on the L2TP connection. <p>SSL Tunnel - Allow the remote dial-in user to make an SSL</p>

	<p>VPN connection through Internet.</p> <p>OpenVPN Tunnel - Allow the remote dial-in user to set a VPN connection through OpenVPN.</p> <p>Specify Remote Node -You can specify the IP address of the remote dial-in user, ISDN number or peer ID (used in IKE aggressive mode).</p> <p>Uncheck the checkbox means the connection type you select above will apply the authentication methods and security methods in the general settings.</p> <p>Netbios Naming Packet -</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Pass - Click it to have an inquiry for data transmission between the hosts located on both sides of VPN Tunnel while connecting. ● Block - When there is conflict occurred between the hosts on both sides of VPN Tunnel in connecting, such function can block data transmission of Netbios Naming Packet inside the tunnel. <p>Multicast via VPN - Some programs might send multicast packets via VPN connection.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Pass - Click this button to let multicast packets pass through the router. ● Block - This is default setting. Click this button to let multicast packets be blocked by the router. <p>User Name - This field is applicable when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. The length of the name is limited to 23 characters.</p> <p>Password - This field is applicable when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. The length of the password is limited to 19 characters.</p> <p>Enable Mobile One-Time Passwords (mOTP) - Check this box to make the authentication with mOTP function.</p> <p>PIN Code - Type the code for authentication (e.g, 1234).</p> <p>Secret - Use the 32 digit-secret number generated by mOTP in the mobile phone (e.g., e759bb6f0e94c7ab4fe6).</p>
Subnet	<p>Chose one of the subnet selections for such VPN profile.</p> <p>Assign Static IP Address - Please type a static IP address for the subnet you specified.</p>
IKE Authentication Method	<p>This group of fields is applicable for IPsec Tunnels and L2TP with IPsec Policy when you specify the IP address of the remote node. The only exception is Digital Signature (X.509) can be set when you select IPsec tunnel either with or without specifying the IP address of the remote node.</p> <p>Pre-Shared Key - Check the box of Pre-Shared Key to invoke this function and type in the required characters (1-63) as the pre-shared key.</p> <p>Digital Signature (X.509) - Check the box of Digital Signature to invoke this function and Select one predefined Profiles set in the VPN and Remote Access >>IPsec Peer Identity.</p>
IPsec Security Method	<p>This group of fields is a must for IPsec Tunnels and L2TP with IPsec Policy when you specify the remote node. Check the Medium, DES, 3DES or AES box as the security method.</p> <p>Medium-Authentication Header (AH) means data will be authenticated, but not be encrypted. By default, this option is invoked. You can uncheck it to disable it.</p>

	<p>High-Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) means payload (data) will be encrypted and authenticated. You may select encryption algorithm from Data Encryption Standard (DES), Triple DES (3DES), and AES.</p> <p>Local ID (Optional)- Specify a local ID to be used for Dial-in setting in the LAN-to-LAN Profile setup. This item is optional and can be used only in IKE aggressive mode.</p>
--	---

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

IV-1-10 LAN to LAN

Here you can manage LAN-to-LAN connections by maintaining a table of connection profiles. You may set parameters including specified connection direction (dial-in or dial-out), connection peer ID, connection type (VPN connection - including PPTP, IPsec Tunnel, and L2TP by itself or over IPsec) and corresponding security methods, etc.

The following figure shows the summary table according to the item (All/Trunk) selected for View.

VPN and Remote Access >> LAN to LAN ?

LAN-to-LAN Profiles: | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

View: All Trunk

Index	Enable	Name	Remote Network	Status	Index	Enable	Name	Remote Network	Status
1.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---	17.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---
2.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---	18.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---
3.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---	19.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---
4.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---	20.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---
5.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---	21.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---
6.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---	22.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---
7.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---	23.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---
8.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---	24.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---
9.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---	25.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---
10.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---	26.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---
11.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---	27.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---
12.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---	28.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---
13.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---	29.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---
14.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---	30.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---
15.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---	31.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---
16.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---	32.	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---

Pass packets from LAN in Routing mode to VPN
 Pass Packets to WAN when VPN disconnects

Backup setting to file:

Upload From File: 未選擇任何檔案

[XXXXXX]:This Dial-out profile has already joined for VPN Load Balance Mechanism]
 [XXXXXX]:This Dial-out profile has already joined for VPN Backup Mechanism]
 [XXXXXX]:This Dial-out profile does not join for VPN TRUNK]

The following shows profiles joined into VPN Load Balance and VPN Backup mechanism.

VPN and Remote Access >> LAN to LAN

LAN-to-LAN Profiles:

View: All Trunk

Name	Activate	Members	Status
Loadbalan1	v	VPN-2	Offline
		Connection	Offline

OK Cancel

[XXXXXX:This Dial-out profile has already joined for VPN Load Balance Mechanism]

[XXXXXX:This Dial-out profile has already joined for VPN Backup Mechanism]

If there is no profile joined yet, this page will be shown as follows:

VPN and Remote Access >> LAN to LAN

LAN-to-LAN Profiles:

View: All Trunk

Name	Activate	Members	Status
------	----------	---------	--------

OK Cancel

[XXXXXX:This Dial-out profile has already joined for VPN Load Balance Mechanism]

[XXXXXX:This Dial-out profile has already joined for VPN Backup Mechanism]

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
View	All - Click it to display the LAN to LAN profiles. Trunk - Click it to display the Trunk profiles.
Set to Factory Default	Click to clear all indexes.
Name	Indicate the name of the LAN-to-LAN profile. The symbol ??? represents that the profile is empty.
Active	V - means the profile has been enabled. X - means the profile has not been enabled.
Status	Indicate the status of individual profiles. The symbol V and X represent the profile to be active and inactive, respectively.

To edit each profile:

1. Click each index to edit each profile and you will get the following page. Each LAN-to-LAN profile includes 5 subgroups. If the fields gray out, it means you may leave it untouched. The following explanations will guide you to fill all the necessary fields.

Profile Index : 1

1. Common Settings

Profile Name <input type="text" value="???"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Enable this profile	Call Direction <input checked="" type="radio"/> Both <input type="radio"/> Dial-Out <input type="radio"/> Dial-in <input type="checkbox"/> Always on Idle Timeout <input type="text" value="300"/> second(s) <input type="checkbox"/> Enable PING to keep IPsec tunnel alive PING to the IP <input type="text"/>
VPN Dial-Out Through <input type="text" value="WAN1 First"/>	
Netbios Naming Packet <input checked="" type="radio"/> Pass <input type="radio"/> Block Multicast via VPN <input type="radio"/> Pass <input checked="" type="radio"/> Block (for some IGMP,IP-Camera,DHCP Relay,.etc.)	

2. Dial-Out Settings

Type of Server I am calling <input checked="" type="radio"/> PPTP <input type="radio"/> IPsec Tunnel <input type="text" value="IKEv1"/> <input type="radio"/> L2TP with IPsec Policy <input type="text" value="None"/> <input type="radio"/> SSL Tunnel	Username <input type="text" value="???"/> Password <input type="text" value="Max: 15 characters"/> PPP Authentication <input type="text" value="PAP/CHAP/MS-CHAP/MS-CHAPv2"/> VJ Compression <input checked="" type="radio"/> On <input type="radio"/> Off
Server IP/Host Name for VPN. (such as draytek.com or 123.45.67.89) <input type="text" value="Max: 41 characters"/> Server Port (for SSL Tunnel): <input type="text" value="443"/>	IKE Authentication Method <input checked="" type="radio"/> Pre-Shared Key <input type="text" value="IKE Pre-Shared Key"/> <input type="text" value="Max: 64 characters"/> <input type="radio"/> Digital Signature(X.509) Peer ID <input type="text" value="None"/> Local ID <input checked="" type="radio"/> Alternative Subject Name First <input type="radio"/> Subject Name First Local Certificate <input type="text" value="None"/>
	IPsec Security Method <input type="radio"/> Medium(AH) <input checked="" type="radio"/> High(ESP) <input type="text" value="AES with Authentication"/> <input type="button" value="Advanced"/>
	Schedule Profile <input type="text" value="None"/> , <input type="text" value="None"/> , <input type="text" value="None"/> , <input type="text" value="None"/>

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Common Settings	<p>Profile Name - Specify a name for the profile of the LAN-to-LAN connection.</p> <p>Enable this profile - Check here to activate this profile.</p> <p>VPN Dial-Out Through - Use the drop down menu to choose a proper WAN interface for this profile. This setting is useful for dial-out only.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● WAN1 First/ WAN2 First/ WAN3 First/WAN4 First - While connecting, the router will use WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4 as the first channel for VPN connection. If WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4 fails, the router will use another WAN interface instead. ● WAN1 Only /WAN2 Only/WAN3 Only/WAN4 Only /WAN5 Only- While connecting, the router will use WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4 as the only channel for VPN connection. ● WAN1 Only: Only establish VPN if WAN2 down - If WAN2 failed, the router will use WAN1 for VPN connection. ● WAN2 Only: Only establish VPN if WAN1 down - If WAN1 failed, the router will use WAN2 for VPN connection. <p>Netbios Naming Packet</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Pass - click it to have an inquiry for data transmission

	<p>between the hosts located on both sides of VPN Tunnel while connecting.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Block - When there is conflict occurred between the hosts on both sides of VPN Tunnel in connecting, such function can block data transmission of Netbios Naming Packet inside the tunnel. <p>Multicast via VPN - Some programs might send multicast packets via VPN connection.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Pass - Click this button to let multicast packets pass through the router. ● Block - This is default setting. Click this button to let multicast packets be blocked by the router. <p>Call Direction - Specify the allowed call direction of this LAN-to-LAN profile.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Both:-initiator/responder ● Dial-Out- initiator only ● Dial-In- responder only. <p>Always On-Check to enable router always keep VPN connection.</p> <p>Idle Timeout: The default value is 300 seconds. If the connection has been idled over the value, the router will drop the connection.</p> <p>Enable PING to keep IPsec tunnel alive - This function is to help the router to determine the status of IPsec VPN connection, especially useful in the case of abnormal VPN IPsec tunnel disruption. For details, please refer to the note below. Check to enable the transmission of PING packets to a specified IP address.</p> <p>Enable PING to keep IPsec tunnel alive is used to handle abnormal IPsec VPN connection disruption. It will help to provide the state of a VPN connection for router's judgment of redial. Normally, if any one of VPN peers wants to disconnect the connection, it should follow a serial of packet exchange procedure to inform each other. However, if the remote peer disconnects without notice, Vigor router will by no where to know this situation. To resolve this dilemma, by continuously sending PING packets to the remote host, the Vigor router can know the true existence of this VPN connection and react accordingly. This is independent of DPD (dead peer detection).</p> <p>PING to the IP - Enter the IP address of the remote host that located at the other-end of the VPN tunnel.</p>
Dial-Out Settings	<p>Type of Server I am calling - PPTP - Build a PPTP VPN connection to the server through the Internet. You should set the identity like User Name and Password below for the authentication of remote server.</p> <p>IPsec Tunnel - Build an IPsec VPN connection to the server through Internet.</p> <p>L2TP with IPsec Policy - Build a L2TP VPN connection through the Internet. You can select to use L2TP alone or with IPsec. Select from below:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● None: Do not apply the IPsec policy. Accordingly, the VPN connection employed the L2TP without IPsec policy can be viewed as one pure L2TP connection. ● Nice to Have: Apply the IPsec policy first, if it is applicable during negotiation. Otherwise, the dial-out

	<p>VPN connection becomes one pure L2TP connection.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Must: Specify the IPsec policy to be definitely applied on the L2TP connection. <p>SSL Tunnel - Build an SSL VPN connection to the server through Internet.</p> <p>User Name - This field is applicable when you select, PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. The length of the name is limited to 49 characters.</p> <p>Password - This field is applicable when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. The length of the password is limited to 15 characters.</p> <p>PPP Authentication - This field is applicable when you select, PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. PAP/CHAP/MS-CHAP/MS-CHAPv2 is the most common selection due to compatibility.</p> <p>VJ compression - This field is applicable when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. VJ Compression is used for TCP/IP protocol header compression. Normally set to On to improve bandwidth utilization.</p> <p>IKE Authentication Method - This group of fields is applicable for IPsec Tunnels and L2TP with IPsec Policy.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Pre-Shared Key - Input 1-63 characters as pre-shared key. ● Digital Signature (X.509) - Select one predefined Profiles set in the VPN and Remote Access >>IPsec Peer Identity. <p>Peer ID - Select one of the predefined Profiles set in VPN and Remote Access >>IPsec Peer Identity.</p> <p>Local ID - Specify a local ID (Alternative Subject Name First or Subject Name First) to be used for Dial-in setting in the LAN-to-LAN Profile setup. This item is optional and can be used only in IKE aggressive mode.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Local Certificate - Select one of the profiles set in Certificate Management>>Local Certificate. <p>IPsec Security Method - This group of fields is a must for IPsec Tunnels and L2TP with IPsec Policy.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Medium AH (Authentication Header) means data will be authenticated, but not be encrypted. By default, this option is active. ● High (ESP-Encapsulating Security Payload)- means payload (data) will be encrypted and authenticated. Select from below: ● DES without Authentication -Use DES encryption algorithm and not apply any authentication scheme. ● DES with Authentication-Use DES encryption algorithm and apply MD5 or SHA-1 authentication algorithm. ● 3DES without Authentication-Use triple DES encryption algorithm and not apply any authentication scheme. ● 3DES with Authentication-Use triple DES encryption algorithm and apply MD5 or SHA-1 authentication algorithm. ● AES without Authentication-Use AES encryption algorithm and not apply any authentication scheme. ● AES with Authentication-Use AES encryption algorithm
--	---

and apply MD5 or SHA-1 authentication algorithm.

Advanced - Specify mode, proposal and key life of each IKE phase, Gateway, etc.

The window of advance setup is shown as below:

IKE advanced settings

IKE phase 1 mode: Main mode Aggressive mode

IKE phase 1 proposal: Auto

IKE phase 2 proposal: HMAC_SHA1/HMAC_MD5

IKE phase 1 key lifetime: 28800 (900 - 86400)

IKE phase 2 key lifetime: 3600 (600 - 86400)

Perfect Forward Secret: Disable Enable

Local ID:

Note: If you select 'Auto' in IKE phase 1 proposal, the router will send the following proposals to negotiate with the remote site. The proposals include: DES_(MD5|SHA)_G1, 3DES_MD5_G1, 3DES_MD5_G2, 3DES_(MD5|SHA)_G5, AES128_MD5_(G2|G5), AES256_SHA_(G2|G5), AES256_SHA_G14

OK Close

IKE phase 1 mode -Select from **Main mode** and **Aggressive mode**. The ultimate outcome is to exchange security proposals to create a protected secure channel. **Main mode** is more secure than **Aggressive mode** since more exchanges are done in a secure channel to set up the IPsec session. However, the **Aggressive mode** is faster. The default value in Vigor router is **Main mode**.

- **IKE phase 1 proposal**-To propose the local available authentication schemes and encryption algorithms to the VPN peers, and get its feedback to find a match. Two combinations are available for **Aggressive mode** and nine for **Main mode**. We suggest you select the combination that covers the most schemes.
- **IKE phase 2 proposal**-To propose the local available algorithms to the VPN peers, and get its feedback to find a match. Three combinations are available for both modes. We suggest you select the combination that covers the most algorithms.
- **IKE phase 1 key lifetime**-For security reason, the lifetime of key should be defined. The default value is 28800 seconds. You may specify a value in between 900 and 86400 seconds.
- **IKE phase 2 key lifetime**-For security reason, the lifetime of key should be defined. The default value is 3600 seconds. You may specify a value in between 600 and 86400 seconds.
- **Perfect Forward Secret (PFS)**-The IKE Phase 1 key will be reused to avoid the computation complexity in phase 2. The default value is inactive this function.

Local ID-In **Aggressive mode**, Local ID is on behalf of the IP address while identity authenticating with remote VPN server. The length of the ID is limited to 47 characters.

Schedule Profile - Set the wireless LAN to work at certain time interval only. You may choose up to 4 schedules out of the 15 schedules pre-defined in **Applications >> Schedule** setup. The default setting of this field is blank and the function will always work.

3. Dial-In Settings

<p>Allowed Dial-In Type</p> <input type="checkbox"/> PPTP <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IPsec Tunnel(IKEv1/IKEv2) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IPsec XAuth <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> L2TP with IPsec Policy None ▾ <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSL Tunnel	<p>Username <input style="width: 100px;" type="text" value="???"/></p> <p>Password(Max 11 char) <input style="width: 100px;" type="text" value="Max: 11 characters"/></p> <p>VJ Compression <input checked="" type="radio"/> On <input type="radio"/> Off</p> <hr/> <p>IKE Authentication Method</p> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pre-Shared Key <input style="width: 100px;" type="text" value="IKE Pre-Shared Key"/> Max: 64 characters
<input type="checkbox"/> Specify Remote VPN Gateway Peer VPN Server IP <input style="width: 100px;" type="text"/> or Peer ID <input style="width: 100px;" type="text" value="Max: 47 characters"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Digital Signature(X.509) None ▾ Local ID <input checked="" type="radio"/> Alternative Subject Name First <input type="radio"/> Subject Name First
<p>IPsec Security Method</p> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Medium(AH) High(ESP) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES	

4. GRE Settings

<input type="checkbox"/> Enable IPsec Dial-Out function GRE over IPsec <input type="checkbox"/> Logical Traffic My GRE IP <input style="width: 100px;" type="text"/> Peer GRE IP <input style="width: 100px;" type="text"/>

5. TCP/IP Network Settings

My WAN IP <input style="width: 100px;" type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/> Remote Gateway IP <input style="width: 100px;" type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/> Remote Network IP <input style="width: 100px;" type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/> Remote Network Mask 255.255.255.0 / 24 ▾ Local Network IP <input style="width: 100px;" type="text" value="192.168.1.80"/> Local Network Mask 255.255.255.0 / 24 ▾ <input type="button" value="More"/>	RIP Direction Disable ▾ From first subnet to remote network, you have to do <input style="width: 50px;" type="button" value="Route"/> <input type="checkbox"/> IPsec VPN with the Same Subnets <input type="checkbox"/> Change default route to this VPN tunnel (Only active if one single WAN is up)
--	--

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Dial-In Settings	<p>Allowed Dial-In Type - Determine the dial-in connection with different types.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● PPTP - Allow the remote dial-in user to make a PPTP VPN connection through the Internet. You should set the User Name and Password of remote dial-in user below. ● IPsec Tunnel- Allow the remote dial-in user to trigger an IPsec VPN connection through Internet. ● L2TP with IPsec Policy - Allow the remote dial-in user to make a L2TP VPN connection through the Internet. You can select to use L2TP alone or with IPsec. Select from below: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ None - Do not apply the IPsec policy. Accordingly, the VPN connection employed the L2TP without IPsec policy can be viewed as one pure L2TP connection. ■ Nice to Have - Apply the IPsec policy first, if it is applicable during negotiation. Otherwise, the dial-in VPN connection becomes one pure L2TP connection. ■ Must - Specify the IPsec policy to be definitely applied on the L2TP connection. ● SSL Tunnel- Allow the remote dial-in user to trigger an SSL VPN connection through Internet. <p>Specify Remote VPN Gateway - You can specify the IP address of the remote dial-in user or peer ID (should be the same with the ID setting in dial-in type) by checking the box.</p>

	<p>Also, you should further specify the corresponding security methods on the right side.</p> <p>If you uncheck the checkbox, the connection type you select above will apply the authentication methods and security methods in the general settings.</p> <p>User Name - This field is applicable when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. The length of the name is limited to 11 characters.</p> <p>Password - This field is applicable when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. The length of the password is limited to 11 characters.</p> <p>VJ Compression - VJ Compression is used for TCP/IP protocol header compression. This field is applicable when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above.</p> <p>IKE Authentication Method - This group of fields is applicable for IPsec Tunnels and L2TP with IPsec Policy when you specify the IP address of the remote node. The only exception is Digital Signature (X.509) can be set when you select IPsec tunnel either with or without specify the IP address of the remote node.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Pre-Shared Key - Check the box of Pre-Shared Key to invoke this function and type in the required characters (1-63) as the pre-shared key. ● Digital Signature (X.509) -Check the box of Digital Signature to invoke this function and select one predefined Profiles set in the VPN and Remote Access >>IPsec Peer Identity. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Local ID - Specify which one will be inspected first. ■ Alternative Subject Name First - The alternative subject name (configured in Certificate Management>>Local Certificate) will be inspected first. ■ Subject Name First - The subject name (configured in Certificate Management>>Local Certificate) will be inspected first. <p>IPsec Security Method - This group of fields is a must for IPsec Tunnels and L2TP with IPsec Policy when you specify the remote node.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Medium- Authentication Header (AH) means data will be authenticated, but not be encrypted. By default, this option is active. ● High- Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) means payload (data) will be encrypted and authenticated. You may select encryption algorithm from Data Encryption Standard (DES), Triple DES (3DES), and AES.
<p>GRE Settings</p>	<p>Enable IPsec Dial-Out function GRE over IPsec: Check this box to verify data and transmit data in encryption with GRE over IPsec packet after configuring IPsec Dial-Out setting. Both ends must match for each other by setting same virtual IP address for communication.</p> <p>Logical Traffic: Such technique comes from RFC2890. Define logical traffic for data transmission between both sides of VPN tunnel by using the characteristic of GRE. Even hacker can decipher IPsec encryption, he/she still cannot ask LAN site to do data transmission with any information. Such</p>

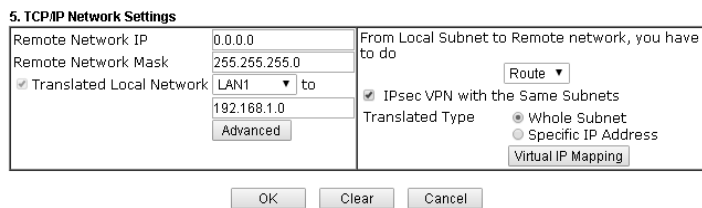
	<p>function can ensure the data transmitted on VPN tunnel is really sent out from both sides. This is an optional function. However, if one side wants to use it, the peer must enable it, too.</p> <p>My GRE IP: Type the virtual IP for router itself for verified by peer.</p> <p>Peer GRE IP: Type the virtual IP of peer host for verified by router.</p>
<p>TCP/IP Network Settings</p>	<p>My WAN IP -This field is only applicable when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. The default value is 0.0.0.0, which means the Vigor router will get a PPP IP address from the remote router during the IPCP negotiation phase. If the PPP IP address is fixed by remote side, specify the fixed IP address here. Do not change the default value if you do not select PPTP or L2TP.</p> <p>Remote Gateway IP - This field is only applicable when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. The default value is 0.0.0.0, which means the Vigor router will get a remote Gateway PPP IP address from the remote router during the IPCP negotiation phase. If the PPP IP address is fixed by remote side, specify the fixed IP address here. Do not change the default value if you do not select PPTP or L2TP.</p> <p>Remote Network IP/ Remote Network Mask - Add a static route to direct all traffic destined to this Remote Network IP Address/Remote Network Mask through the VPN connection. For IPsec, this is the destination clients IDs of phase 2 quick mode.</p> <p>Local Network IP / Local Network Mask - Display the local network IP and mask for TCP / IP configuration. You can modify the settings if required.</p> <p>More - Add a static route to direct all traffic destined to more Remote Network IP Addresses/ Remote Network Masks through the VPN connection. This is usually used when you find there are several subnets behind the remote VPN router.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px;"> <p>192.168.1.1/doc/121MRt.htm</p> <p>Profile Index :1</p> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px;"> <p style="text-align: right;">Remote Network</p> <p>Network IP <input type="text"/></p> <p>Netmask <input type="text" value="255.255.255.255 / 32"/></p> <p style="text-align: right;"> <input type="button" value="Add"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> </p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Create Phase2 SA for each subnet.(IPsec)</p> </div> <p style="text-align: center;"> <input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Close"/> </p> </div> <p>RIP Direction - The option specifies the direction of RIP (Routing Information Protocol) packets. You can enable/disable one of direction here. Herein, we provide four options: TX/RX Both, TX Only, RX Only, and Disable.</p> <p>From first subnet to remote network, you have to do - If the remote network only allows you to dial in with single IP,</p>

please choose **NAT**, otherwise choose **Route**.
Change default route to this VPN tunnel - Check this box to change the default route with this VPN tunnel.

IPSec VPN with the Same subnet

For both ends (e.g., different sections in a company) are within the same subnet, there is a function which allows you to build Virtual IP mapping between two ends. Thus, when VPN connection established, the router will change the IP address according to the settings configured here and block sessions which are not coming from the IP address defined in the Virtual IP Mapping list.

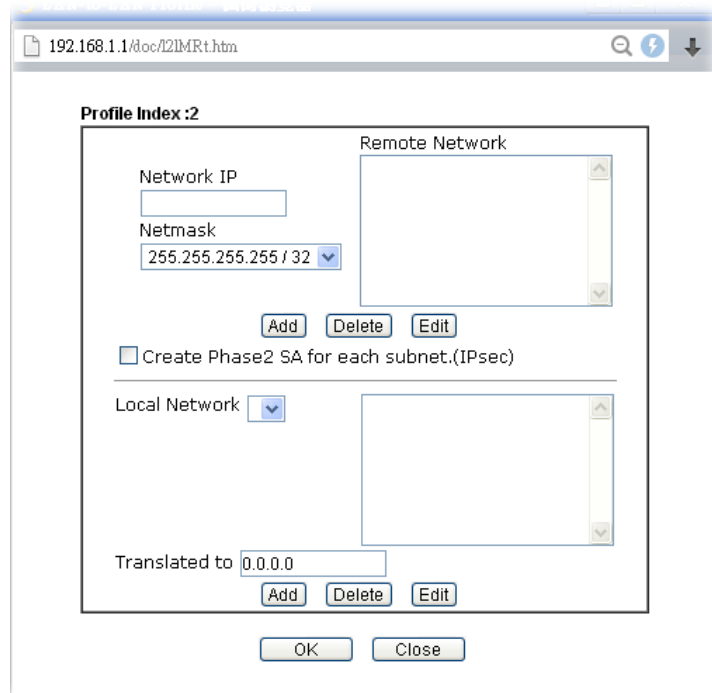
After checking the box of **IPSec VPN with the Same subnet**, the options under **TCP/IP Network Settings** will be changed as shown below:



Remote Network IP/ Remote Network Mask - Add a static route to direct all traffic destined to this Remote Network IP Address/Remote Network Mask through the VPN connection. For IPSec, this is the destination clients IDs of phase 2 quick mode.

Translated Local Network - This function is enabled in default. Use the drop down list to specify a LAN port as the transferred direction. Then specify an IP address. Click **Advanced** to configure detailed settings if required.

Advanced - Add a static route to direct all traffic destined to more Remote Network IP Addresses/ Remote Network Mask through the VPN connection. This is usually used when you find there are several subnets behind the remote VPN router.

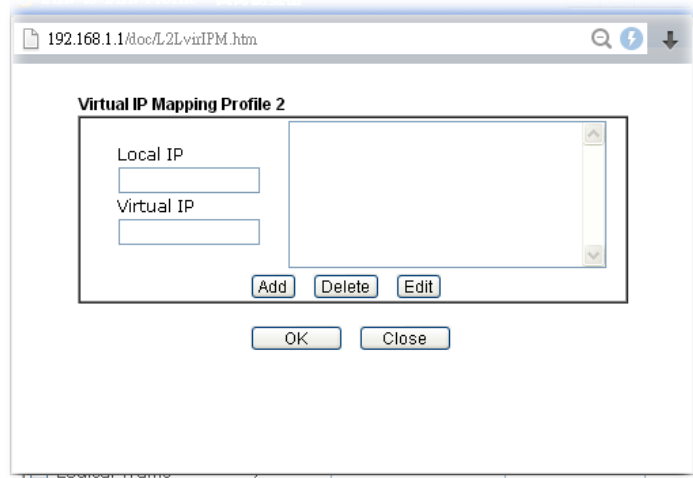


Translated Type - There are two types for you to choose.

- **Whole Subnet**

- **Specific IP Address**

Virtual IP Mapping - A pop up dialog will appear for you to specify the local IP address and the mapping virtual IP address.



2. After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

IV-1-11 VPN Trunk Management

VPN trunk includes four features - VPN Backup, VPN load balance, GRE over IPsec, and Binding tunnel policy.

Features of VPN TRUNK – VPN Backup Mechanism

VPN TRUNK Management is a backup mechanism which can set multiple VPN tunnels as backup tunnel. It can assure the network connection not to be cut off due to network environment blocked by any reason.

- VPN TRUNK-VPN Backup mechanism can judge abnormal situation for the environment of VPN server and correct it to complete the backup of VPN Tunnel in real-time.
- VPN TRUNK-VPN Backup mechanism is compliant with all WAN modes (single/multi)
- Dial-out connection types contain IPsec, PPTP, L2TP, L2TP over IPsec and ISDN (depends on hardware specification)
- The web page is simple to understand and easy to configure
- Fully compliant with VPN Server LAN Site Single/Multi Network
- Mail Alert support, please refer to **System Maintenance >> SysLog / Mail Alert** for detailed configuration
- Syslog support, please refer to **System Maintenance >> SysLog / Mail Alert** for detailed configuration
- Specific ERD (Environment Recovery Detection) mechanism which can be operated by using Telnet command

VPN TRUNK-VPN Backup mechanism profile will be activated when initial connection of single VPN tunnel is off-line. Before setting VPN TRUNK -VPN Backup mechanism backup profile, please configure at least two sets of LAN-to-LAN profiles (with fully configured dial-out settings) first, otherwise you will not have selections for grouping Member1 and Member2.

Features of VPN TRUNK – VPN Load Balance Mechanism

VPN Load Balance Mechanism can set multiple VPN tunnels for using as traffic load balance tunnel. It can assist users to do effective load sharing for multiple VPN tunnels according to real line bandwidth. Moreover, it offers three types of algorithms for load balancing and binding tunnel policy mechanism to let the administrator manage the network more flexibly.

- Three types of load sharing algorithm offered, Round Robin, Weighted Round Robin and Fastest
- Binding Tunnel Policy mechanism allows users to encrypt the data in transmission or specified service function in transmission and define specified VPN Tunnel for having effective bandwidth management
- Dial-out connection types contain IPsec, PPTP, L2TP, L2TP over IPsec and GRE over IPsec
- The web page is simple to understand and easy to configure
- The TCP Session transmitted by using VPN TRUNK-VPN Load Balance mechanism will not be lost due to one of VPN Tunnels disconnected. Users do not need to reconnect with setting TCP/UDP Service Port again. The VPN Load Balance function can keep the transmission for internal data on tunnel stably



Backup Profile List | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Note:
[Active:NO] The LAN-to-LAN Profile is disabled or under Dial-In(Call Direction) at present.

No.	Status	Name	Member1 (Active) Type	Member2 (Active) Type

Advanced

Load Balance Profile List | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Note:
[Active:NO] The LAN-to-LAN Profile is disabled or under Dial-In(Call Direction) at present.

No.	Status	Name	Member1 (Active) Type	Member2 (Active) Type

Advanced

General Setup

Status Enable Disable

Profile Name

Member1

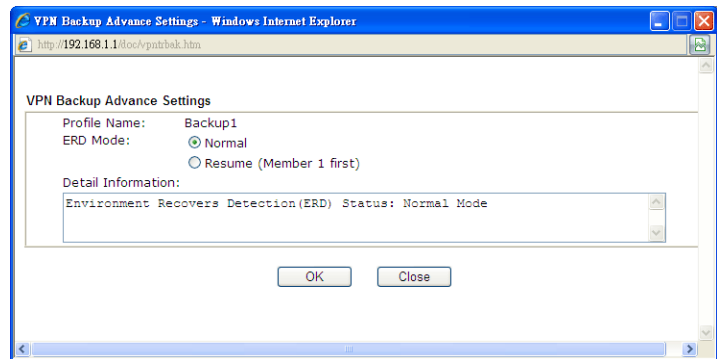
Member2

Active Mode Backup Load Balance

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Backup Profile List	<p>Set to Factory Default - Click to clear all VPN TRUNK-VPN Backup mechanism profile.</p> <p>No - The order of VPN TRUNK-VPN Backup mechanism profile.</p> <p>Status - "v" means such profile is enabled; "x" means such profile is disabled.</p> <p>Name - Display the name of VPN TRUNK-VPN Backup mechanism profile.</p> <p>Member1 - Display the dial-out profile selected from the Member1 drop down list below.</p> <p>Active - "Yes" means normal condition. "No" means the state might be disabled or that profile currently is set with Dial-in mode (for call direction) in LAN-to-LAN.</p> <p>Type - Display the connection type for that profile, such as IPsec, PPTP, L2TP, L2TP over IPsec (NICE), L2TP over IPsec(MUST) and so on.</p> <p>Member2 - Display the dial-out profile selected from the Member2 drop down list below.</p>

Advanced - This button is available only when LAN to LAN profile (or more) is created.



Detailed information for this dialog, see later section - **Advanced Load Balance and Backup**.

Load Balance Profile List

Set to Factory Default - Click to clear all VPN TRUNK-VPN Load Balance mechanism profile.

No - The order of VPN TRUNK-VPN Load Balance mechanism profile.

Status - "v" means such profile is enabled; "x" means such profile is disabled.

Name - Display the name of VPN TRUNK-VPN Load Balance mechanism profile.

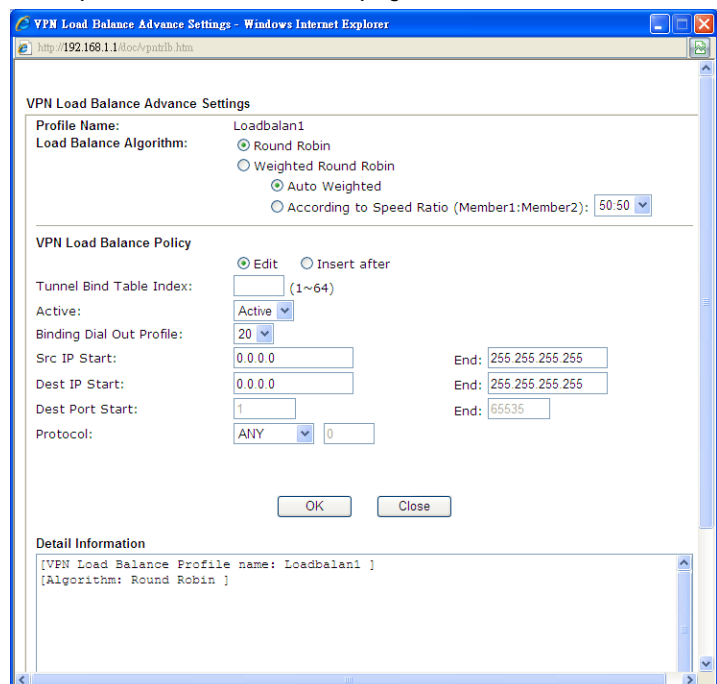
Member1 - Display the dial-out profile selected from the Member1 drop down list below.

Active - "Yes" means normal condition. "No" means the state might be disabled or that profile currently is set with Dial-in mode (for call direction) in LAN-to-LAN.

Type - Display the connection type for that profile, such as IPsec, PPTP, L2TP, L2TP over IPsec (NICE), L2TP over IPsec(MUST) and so on.

Member2 - Display the dial-out profile selected from the Member2 drop down list below.

Advanced - This button is only available when there is one or more profiles created in this page.



	Detailed information for this dialog, see later section - Advanced Load Balance and Backup .
General Setup	<p>Status- After choosing one of the profile listed above, please click Enable to activate this profile. If you click Disable, the selected or current used VPN TRUNK-Backup/Load Balance mechanism profile will not have any effect for VPN tunnel.</p> <p>Profile Name- Type a name for VPN TRUNK profile. Each profile can group two VPN connections set in LAN-to-LAN. The saved VPN profiles in LAN-to-LAN will be shown on Member1 and Member2 fields. The length of the name is limited to 11 characters.</p> <p>Member 1/Member2 - Display the selection for LAN-to-LAN dial-out profiles (configured in VPN and Remote Access >> LAN-to-LAN) for you to choose for grouping under certain VPN TRUNK-VPN Backup/Load Balance mechanism profile.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● No - Index number of LAN-to-LAN dial-out profile. ● Name - Profile name of LAN-to-LAN dial-out profile. ● Connection Type - Connection type of LAN-to-LAN dial-out profile. ● VPN ServerIP (Private Network) - VPN Server IP of LAN-to-LAN dial-out profiles. <p>Active Mode - Display available mode for you to choose. Choose Backup or Load Balance for your router.</p> <p>Add - Add and save new profile to the backup profile list. The corresponding members (LAN-to-LAN profiles) grouped in such new VPN TRUNK - VPN Backup mechanism profile will be locked. The profiles in LAN-to-LAN will be displayed in red. VPN TRUNK - VPN Load Balance mechanism profile will be locked. The profiles in LAN-to-LAN will be displayed in blue.</p> <p>Update - Click this button to save the changes to the Status (Enable or Disable), profile name, member1 or member2.</p> <p>Delete - Click this button to delete the selected VPN TRUNK profile. The corresponding members (LAN-to-LAN profiles) grouped in the deleted VPN TRUNK profile will be released and that profiles in LAN-to-LAN will be displayed in black.</p>

Time for activating VPN TRUNK – VPN Backup mechanism profile

VPN TRUNK - VPN Backup mechanism will be activated automatically after the initial connection of single VPN Tunnel off-line. The content in Member1/2 within VPN TRUNK - VPN Backup mechanism backup profile is similar to dial-out profile configured in LAN-to-LAN web page. VPN TRUNK - VPN Backup mechanism backup profile will process and handle everything unless it is off-line once it is activated.

Time for activating VPN TRUNK – VPN Load Balance mechanism profile

After finishing the connection for one tunnel, the other tunnel will dial out automatically within two seconds. Therefore, you can choose any one of members under VPN Load Balance for dialing out.

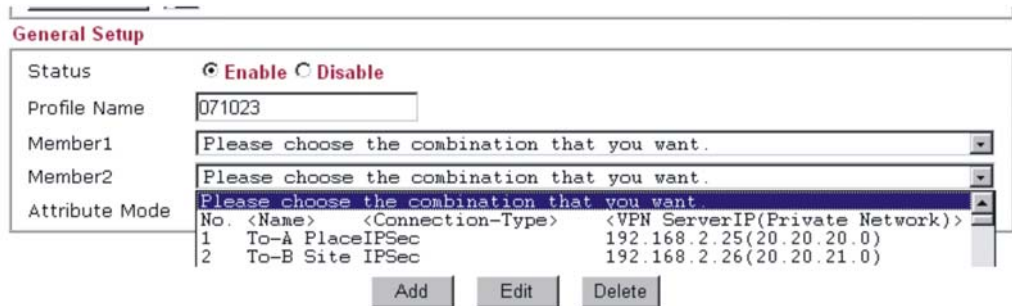
Time for activating VPN TRUNK –Dial-out when VPN Load Balance Disconnected

For there is one Tunnel created and connected successfully, to keep the load balance effect between two tunnels, auto-dial will be executed within two seconds.

To close two tunnels of load balance after connecting, please click **Disable** for **Status** in **General Setup** field.

How can you set a VPN TRUNK-VPN Backup/Load Balance mechanism profile?

1. First of all, go to **VPN and Remote Access>>LAN-to-LAN**. Set two or more LAN-to-LAN profiles first that will be used for Member1 and Member2. If you do not set enough LAN-to-LAN profiles, you cannot operate VPN TRUNK - VPN Backup /Load Balance mechanism profile management well.
2. Access into **VPN and Remote Access>>VPN TRUNK Management**.
3. Set one group of VPN TRUNK - VPN Backup/Load Balance mechanism backup profile by choosing **Enable** radio button; type a name for such profile (e.g., 071023); choose one of the LAN-to-LAN profiles from Member1 drop down list; choose one of the LAN-to-LAN profiles from Member2 drop down list; and click **Add** at last.



4. Take a look for LAN-to-LAN profiles. Index 1 is chosen as Member1; index 2 is chosen as Member2. For such reason, LAN-to-LAN profiles of 1 and 2 will be expressed in red to indicate that they are fixed. If you delete the VPN TRUNK - VPN Backup/Load Balance mechanism profile, the selected LAN-to-LAN profiles will be released and expressed in black.

LAN-to-LAN Profiles:

View: All Trunk

Index	Name	Active	Status
<u>1.</u>	To-A Place	V	offline
<u>2.</u>	To-B Site	V	offline
<u>3.</u>	To-C Place	V	offline
<u>4.</u>	To-D Site	V	offline
5.	???	X	---

How can you set a GRE over IPsec profile?

1. Please go to LAN to LAN to set a profile with IPsec.
2. If the router will be used as the VPN Server (i.e., with virtual address 192.168.50.200). Please type 192.168.50.200 in the field of My GRE IP. Type IP address (192.168.50.100) of the client in the field of Peer GRE IP. See the following graphic for an example.

		High(ESP)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DES	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES
4. Gre over IPsec Settings					
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable IPsec Dial-Out function GRE over IPsec					
<input type="checkbox"/> Logical Traffic	My GRE IP	192.168.50.200	Peer GRE IP	192.168.50.100	
5. TCP/IP Network Settings					
My WAN IP	0.0.0.0		RIP Direction	Disable	
Remote Gateway IP	192.168.1.1		From first subnet to remote network, you have to do		
Remote Network IP	192.168.1.0		Route		
Remote Network Mask	255.255.255.0				
Local Network IP	192.168.25.1		<input type="checkbox"/> Change default route to this VPN tunnel (Only single WAN supports this)		
Local Network Mask	255.255.255.0				
		<input type="button" value="More"/>			

3. Later, on peer side (as VPN Client): please type 192.168.50.100 in the field of My GRE IP and type IP address of the server (192.168.50.200) in the field of Peer GRE IP.

		High(ESP)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DES	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES
4. Gre over IPsec Settings					
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable IPsec Dial-Out function GRE over IPsec					
<input type="checkbox"/> Logical Traffic	My GRE IP	192.168.50.100	Peer GRE IP	192.168.50.200	
5. TCP/IP Network Settings					
My WAN IP	0.0.0.0		RIP Direction	Disable	
Remote Gateway IP	192.168.25.1		From first subnet to remote network, you have to do		
Remote Network IP	192.168.25.0		Route		
Remote Network Mask	255.255.255.0				
Local Network IP	192.168.1.1		<input type="checkbox"/> Change default route to this VPN tunnel (Only single WAN supports this)		
Local Network Mask	255.255.255.0				
		<input type="button" value="More"/>			

Advanced Load Balance and Backup

After setting profiles for load balance, you can choose any one of them and click Advance for more detailed configuration. The windows for advanced load balance and backup are different. Refer to the following explanation:

Advanced Load Balance

VPN Load Balance Advance Settings

Profile Name: LB

Load Balance Algorithm: Round Robin
 Weighted Round Robin
 Auto Weighted
 According to Speed Ratio (Member1:Member2): 50:50

VPN Load Balance Policy

Edit Insert after

Tunnel Bind Table Index: (1~64)

Active: Active

Binding Dial Out Profile: 1

Src IP Start: 0.0.0.0 End: 255.255.255.255

Dest IP Start: 0.0.0.0 End: 255.255.255.255

Dest Port Start: 1 End: 65535

Protocol: ANY 0

OK Close

Detail Information

[VPN Load Balance Profile name: LB]
 [Algorithm: Round Robin]

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Profile Name	List the load balance profile name.
Load Balance Algorithm	<p>Round Robin - Based on packet base, both tunnels will send the packet alternatively. Such method can reach the balance of packet transmission with fixed rate.</p> <p>Weighted Round Robin - Such method can reach the balance of packet transmission with flexible rate. It can be divided into Auto Weighted and According to Speed Ratio. Auto Weighted can detect the device speed (10Mbps/100Mbps) and switch with fixed value ratio (3:7) for packet transmission. If the transmission rate for packets on both sides of the tunnels is the same, the value of Auto Weighted should be 50:50. According to Speed Ratio allows user to</p>

	adjust suitable rate manually. There are 100 groups of rate ratio for Member1:Member2 (range from 1:99 to 99:1).
VPN Load Balance Policy	<p>Below shows the algorithm for Load Balance.</p> <p>Edit - Click this radio button for assign a blank table for configuring Binding Tunnel.</p> <p>Insert after - Click this radio button to adding a new binding tunnel table.</p> <p>Tunnel Bind Table Index- 128 Binding tunnel tables are provided by this device. Specify the number of the tunnel for such Load Balance profile.</p> <p>Active - In-active/Delete can delete this binding tunnel table. Active can activate this binding tunnel table.</p> <p>Binding Dial Out Index - Specify connection type for transmission by choosing the index (LAN to LAN Profile Index) for such binding tunnel table.</p> <p>Scr IP Start /End- Specify source IP addresses as starting point and ending point.</p> <p>Dest IP Start/End - Specify destination IP addresses as starting point and ending point.</p> <p>Dest Port Start /End- Specify destination service port as starting point and ending point.</p> <p>Protocol - Any means when the source IP, destination IP, destination port and fragment conditions match with the settings specified here, such binding tunnel table can be established for TCP Service Port/UDP Service Port/ICMP/IGMP specified here.</p> <p>TCP means when the source IP, destination IP, destination port and fragment conditions match with the settings specified here and TCP Service Port also fits the number here, such binding tunnel table can be established. UDP means when the source IP, destination IP, destination port and fragment conditions match with the settings specified here and UDP Service Port also fits the number here, such binding tunnel table can be established. TCP/UPD means when the source IP, destination IP, destination port and fragment conditions match with the settings specified here and TCP/UDP Service Port also fits the number here, such binding tunnel table can be established. ICMP means when the source IP, destination IP, destination port and fragment conditions match with the settings specified here and ICMP Service Port also fits the number here, such binding tunnel table can be established. IGMP means when the source IP, destination IP, destination port and fragment conditions match with the settings specified here and IGMP Service Port also fits the number here, such binding tunnel table can be established. Other means when the source IP, destination IP, destination port and fragment conditions match with the settings specified here with different TCP Service Port/UDP Service Port/ICMP/IGMP, such binding tunnel table can be established.</p>
Detail Information	This field will display detailed information for Binding Tunnel Policy. Below shows a successful binding tunnel policy for load balance:

To configure a successful binding tunnel, you have to:
Type Binding Src IP range (Start and End) and Binding Des IP range (Start and End). Choose TCP/UDP, IGMP/ICMP or Other as Binding Protocol.

Advanced Backup

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Profile Name	List the backup profile name.
ERD Mode	ERD means "Environment Recovers Detection". Normal - choose this mode to make all dial-out VPN TRUNK backup profiles being activated alternatively. Resume - when VPN connection breaks down or disconnects, Member 1 will be the top priority for the system to do VPN connection.
Detail Information	This field will display detailed information for Environment Recovers Detection.

IV-1-12 Connection Management

You can find the summary table of all VPN connections. You may disconnect any VPN connection by clicking Drop button. You may also aggressively Dial-out by using Dial-out Tool and clicking Dial button.

VPN and Remote Access >> Connection Management

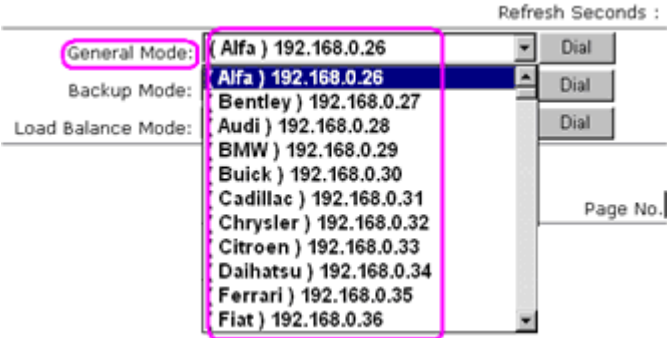
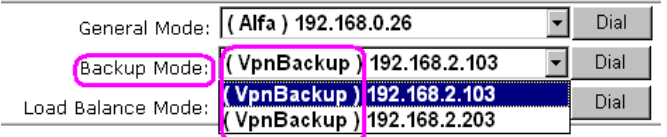
Dial-out Tool | Refresh |

General Mode:	<input type="text" value=""/>	<input type="button" value="Dial"/>
Backup Mode:	(BP) 123.45.67.89	<input type="button" value="Dial"/>
Load Balance Mode:	<input type="text" value=""/>	<input type="button" value="Dial"/>

VPN Connection Status

All VPN Status		LAN-to-LAN VPN Status		Remote Dial-in User Status				
VPN	Type	Remote IP	Virtual Network	Tx Pkts	Tx Rate(bps)	Rx Pkts	Rx Rate(bps)	UpTime
xxxxxxxx : Data is encrypted.								
xxxxxxxx : Data isn't encrypted.								

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Dial-out Tool	<p>General Mode - This field displays the profile configured in LAN-to-LAN (with Index number and VPN Server IP address). The VPN connection built by General Mode does not support VPN backup function.</p>  <p>Backup Mode - This field displays the profile name saved in VPN TRUNK Management (with Index number and VPN Server IP address). The VPN connection built by Backup Mode supports VPN backup function.</p>  <p>Dial - Click this button to execute dial out function.</p> <p>Refresh Seconds - Choose the time for refresh the dial information among 5, 10, and 30.</p> <p>Refresh - Click this button to refresh the whole connection status.</p>

Application Notes

A-1 How to Build a LAN-to-LAN VPN Between Remote Office and Headquarter via IPsec Tunnel (Main Mode)



Configuration on Vigor Router for Head Office

1. Log into the web user interface of Vigor router.
2. Open **VPN and Remote Access >> LAN to LAN** to create a LAN-to-LAN profile. The following settings are for a permanent VPN connection.

VPN and Remote Access >> LAN to LAN ?

LAN-to-LAN Profiles: | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

View: All Trunk

Index	Enable	Name	Remote Network	Status	Index	Enable	Name	Remote Network	Status
<u>1.</u>	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---	<u>17.</u>	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---
<u>2.</u>	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---	<u>18.</u>	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---
<u>3.</u>	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---	<u>19.</u>	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---
<u>4.</u>	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---	<u>20.</u>	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---

3. Click any index number to open the configuration page. Type a name which is easy for identification for such profile (in this case, type *VPN Server*), and check the box of **Enable This Profile**. For Vigor router will be set as a server, the call direction shall be set as **Dial-in** and set 0 as **Idle Timeout**.

VPN and Remote Access >> LAN to LAN

Profile Index : 1

1. Common Settings

Profile Name

Enable this profile

VPN Dial-Out Through

Netbios Naming Packet Pass Block

Multicast via VPN Pass Block
(for some IGMP, IP-Camera, DHCP Relay..etc.)

Call Direction Both Dial-Out Dial-in

Always on

Idle Timeout second(s)

Enable PING to keep alive

PING to the IP

2. Dial-Out Settings

4. Now navigate to the next section, **Dial-In Settings** to check PPTP, IPsec Tunnel and L2TP boxes. Check the box of **Specify Remote...** and type the Peer VPN Server IP (e.g.,

218.242.130.19 in this case). Press the **IKE Pre-Shared Key** button to set the PSK; and select **Medium (AH)** or **High (ESP)** as the security method.

3. Dial-In Settings

<p>Allowed Dial-In Type</p> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> PPTP <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IPsec Tunnel <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> L2TP with IPsec Policy None	<p>Username <input type="text" value="???"/></p> <p>Password <input type="password"/></p> <p>VJ Compression <input type="radio"/> On <input checked="" type="radio"/> Off</p>
<p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Specify Remote VPN Gateway</p> <p>Peer VPN Server IP <input type="text" value="218.242.130.19"/></p> <p>or Peer ID <input type="text"/></p>	<p>IKE Authentication Method</p> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pre-Shared Key <input type="button" value="IKE Pre-Shared Key"/> <input type="text"/>
	<p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Digital Signature(X.509)</p> <p>None</p> <p>Local ID</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Alternative Subject Name First <input type="radio"/> Subject Name First</p>
	<p>IPsec Security Method</p> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Medium(AH) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> High(ESP) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES

4. Gre over IPsec Settings

<p><input type="checkbox"/> Enable IPsec Dial-Out function GRE over IPsec</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Logical Traffic My GRE IP <input type="text"/> Peer GRE IP <input type="text"/></p>	<p>High(ESP) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES</p>
---	---

4. Gre over IPsec Settings

<p><input type="checkbox"/> Enable IPsec Dial-Out function GRE over IPsec</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Logical Traffic My GRE IP <input type="text"/> Peer GRE IP <input type="text"/></p>	<p>High(ESP) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES</p>
---	---

5. TCP/IP Network Settings

<p>My WAN IP <input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/></p> <p>Remote Gateway IP <input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/></p> <p>Remote Network IP <input type="text" value="192.168.1.0"/></p> <p>Remote Network Mask <input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/></p> <p>Local Network IP <input type="text" value="192.168.1.9"/></p> <p>Local Network Mask <input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/></p> <p><input type="button" value="More"/></p>	<p>RIP Direction Disable</p> <p>From first subnet to remote network, you have to do</p> <p>Route</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Change default route to this VPN tunnel (Only single WAN supports this)</p>
--	--

- Click **OK** to save the settings.
- Open **VPN and Remote Access>>Connection Management** to check the dial-in connection status (from branch office).

VPN and Remote Access >> Connection Management

Dial-out Tool Refresh Seconds : 5

VPN Connection Status

Current Page: 1 Page No.

VPN	Type	Remote IP	Virtual Network	Tx Pkts	Tx Rate (Bps)	Rx Pkts	Rx Rate (Bps)	UpTime
1 (VPN Server)	IPSec Tunnel DES-SHA1 Auth	218.242.130.19	192.168.1.0/24	353	3	291	3	0:13:58 <input type="button" value="Drop"/>

xxxxxxx : Data is encrypted.
xxxxxxx : Data isn't encrypted.

Configuration on Vigor Router for Branch Office

1. Log into the web user interface of Vigor router.
2. Open VPN and Remote Access>>LAN to LAN to create a LAN-to-LAN profile. The following settings are for a permanent VPN connection.

VPN and Remote Access >> LAN to LAN

LAN-to-LAN Profiles: [Set to Factory Default](#)

View: All Trunk

Index	Enable	Name	Remote Network	Status	Index	Enable	Name	Remote Network	Status
<u>1.</u>	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---	<u>17.</u>	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---
<u>2.</u>	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---	<u>18.</u>	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---
<u>3.</u>	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---	<u>19.</u>	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---
<u>4.</u>	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---	<u>20.</u>	<input type="checkbox"/>	???		---

3. Click any index number to open the configuration page. Type a name which is easy for identification for such profile (in this case, type *VPN Client*), and check the box of **Enable This Profile**. For such Vigor router will be set as a **client**, the call direction shall be set as **Dial-out**. Check the box of **Always on** for a permanent VPN connection.

VPN and Remote Access >> LAN to LAN

Profile Index : 1

1. Common Settings

Profile Name

Enable this profile

VPN Dial-Out Through

Netbios Naming Packet Pass Block

Multicast via VPN Pass Block
(for some IGMP,IP-Camera,DHCP Relay..etc.)

Call Direction Both Dial-Out Dial-in

Always on

Idle Timeout second(s)

Enable PING to keep alive

PING to the IP

2. Dial.Out Settings

- Now navigate to the next section, **Dial-Out Settings** to select the **IPsec Tunnel** service and type the remote server IP/host name (e.g., 218.242.133.91, in this case). Press the **IKE Pre-Shared Key** button to set the PSK; and select **Medium (AH)** or **High (ESP)** as the security method.

2. Dial-Out Settings

Type of Server I am calling <input type="radio"/> PPTP <input checked="" type="radio"/> IPsec Tunnel <input type="radio"/> L2TP with IPsec Policy None	Username <input type="text" value="???"/> Password <input type="text"/> PPP Authentication PAP/CHAP VJ Compression <input type="radio"/> On <input checked="" type="radio"/> Off
Server IP/Host Name for VPN. (such as draytek.com or 123.45.67.89) <input type="text" value="218.242.133.91"/>	IKE Authentication Method <input checked="" type="radio"/> Pre-Shared Key <input type="button" value="IKE Pre-Shared Key"/> <input type="text" value="●●●●●●●●"/> <input type="radio"/> Digital Signature(X.509) Peer ID None Local ID <input checked="" type="radio"/> Alternative Subject Name First <input type="radio"/> Subject Name First
	IPsec Security Method <input type="radio"/> Medium(AH) <input checked="" type="radio"/> High(ESP) 3DES with Authentication <input type="button" value="Advanced"/>
	Index(1-15) in <u>Schedule</u> Setup: <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/>

- Continue to navigate to the **TCP/IP Network Settings** for setting the LAN IP for the remote side.

4. Gre over IPsec Settings <input type="checkbox"/> Enable IPsec Dial-Out function GRE over IPsec <input type="checkbox"/> Logical Traffic My GRE IP <input type="text"/> Peer GRE IP <input type="text"/>	
5. TCP/IP Network Settings	
My WAN IP <input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/> Remote Gateway IP <input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Remote Network IP <input type="text" value="172.17.1.0"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Remote Network Mask <input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/> Local Network IP <input type="text" value="192.168.1.9"/> Local Network Mask <input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/> <input type="button" value="More"/>	RIP Direction Disable From first subnet to remote network, you have to do <input type="button" value="Route"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Change default route to this VPN tunnel (Only single WAN supports this)	
<input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Clear"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	

- Click **OK** to save the settings.

- Open **VPN and Remote Access >> Connection Management** to check the dial-in connection status (from head office).

VPN and Remote Access >> Connection Management

Dial-out Tool Refresh Seconds : Refresh

VPN Connection Status

Current Page: 1 Page No. Go

VPN	Type	Remote IP	Virtual Network	Tx Pkts	Tx Rate (Bps)	Rx Pkts	Rx Rate (Bps)	UpTime	
1 (VPN Client)	IPSec Tunnel DES-SHA1 Auth	218.242.133.91	172.17.1.0/24	8	3	132	36	0:6:41	<input type="button" value="Drop"/>

xxxxxxxx : Data is encrypted.
xxxxxxxx : Data isn't encrypted.

IV-2 Certificate Management

A digital certificate works as an electronic ID, which is issued by a certification authority (CA). It contains information such as your name, a serial number, expiration dates etc., and the digital signature of the certificate-issuing authority so that a recipient can verify that the certificate is real. Here Vigor router support digital certificates conforming to standard X.509.

Any entity wants to utilize digital certificates should first request a certificate issued by a CA server. It should also retrieve certificates of other trusted CA servers so it can authenticate the peer with certificates issued by those trusted CA servers.

Here you can manage generate and manage the local digital certificates, and set trusted CA certificates. Remember to adjust the time of Vigor router before using the certificate so that you can get the correct valid period of certificate.

Web User Interface



IV-2-1 Local Certificate

Certificate Management >> Local Certificate

X509 Local Certificate Configuration

Name	Subject	Status	Modify	
---	---	---	<input type="button" value="View"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>
---	---	---	<input type="button" value="View"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>
---	---	---	<input type="button" value="View"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>

Note:

1. Please setup the "System Maintenance >> Time and Date" correctly before signing the local certificate.
2. The Time Zone MUST be setup correctly!!

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Generate	Click this button to open Generate Certificate Request window. Type in all the information that the window requests. Then click Generate again.
Import	Click this button to import a saved file as the certification information.
Refresh	Click this button to refresh the information listed below.
View	Click this button to view the detailed settings for certificate request.
Delete	Click this button to delete selected name with certification information.

GENERATE

Click this button to open Generate Certificate Signing Request window. Type in all the information that the window request such as certificate name (used for identifying different certificate), subject alternative name type and relational settings for subject name. Then click GENERATE again.

Generate Certificate Signing Request

Certificate Name	<input type="text"/>
Subject Alternative Name	
Type	IP Address <input type="button" value="v"/>
IP	<input type="text"/>
Subject Name	
Country (C)	<input type="text"/>
State (ST)	<input type="text"/>
Location (L)	<input type="text"/>
Organization (O)	<input type="text"/>
Organization Unit (OU)	<input type="text"/>
Common Name (CN)	<input type="text"/>
Email (E)	<input type="text"/>
Key Type	RSA <input type="button" value="v"/>
Key Size	2048 Bit <input type="button" value="v"/>
Algorithm	SHA-256 <input type="button" value="v"/>



Info

Please be noted that "Common Name" must be configured with router's WAN IP or domain name.

After clicking GENERATE, the generated information will be displayed on the window below:

X509 Local Certificate Configuration

Name	Subject	Status	Modify	
server	/C=TW/ST=Hsinchu/L=Hsinchu/O...	Requesting	<input type="button" value="View"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>
---	---	---	<input type="button" value="View"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>
---	---	---	<input type="button" value="View"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>

Note:

1. Please setup the "System Maintenance >> Time and Date" correctly before signing the local certificate.
2. The Time Zone MUST be setup correctly!!

IMPORT

Vigor router allows you to generate a certificate request and submit it the CA server, then import it as "Local Certificate". If you have already gotten a certificate from a third party, you may import it directly. The supported types are PKCS12 Certificate and Certificate with a private key.

Click this button to import a saved file as the certification information. There are three types of local certificate supported by Vigor router.

Certificate Management >> Local Certificate

Import X509 Local Certificate

Upload Local Certificate
 Select a local certificate file.
 Certificate file: 未選擇任何檔案
 Click [Import](#) to upload the local certificate.

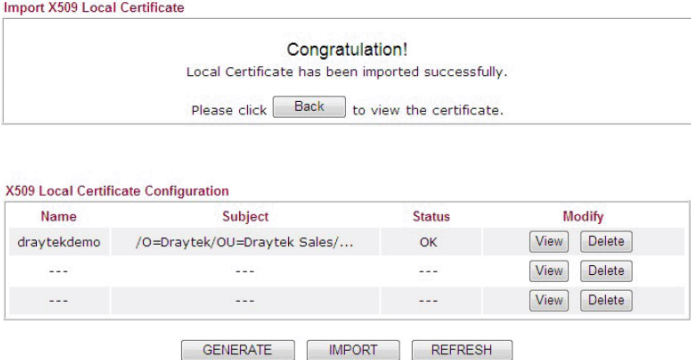
Upload PKCS12 Certificate
 Select a PKCS12 file.
 PKCS12 file: 未選擇任何檔案
 Password:
 Click [Import](#) to upload the PKCS12 file.

Upload Certificate and Private Key
 Select a certificate file and a matchable Private Key.
 Certificate file: 未選擇任何檔案
 Key file: 未選擇任何檔案
 Password:
 Click [Import](#) to upload the local certificate and private key.

Note:

1. If a certificate chain consists of a CA certificate plus one or more intermediate CA certificates, please combine them to one before uploading it.
2. The certificate file size cannot be over 8KB.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description																
Upload Local Certificate	<p>It allows users to import the certificate which is generated by Vigor router and signed by CA server.</p> <p>If you have done well in certificate generation, the Status of the certificate will be shown as "OK".</p>  <p>The screenshot shows a 'Congratulation!' message: 'Local Certificate has been imported successfully. Please click [Back] to view the certificate.' Below it is the 'X509 Local Certificate Configuration' table:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Name</th> <th>Subject</th> <th>Status</th> <th>Modify</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>draytekdemo</td> <td>/O=Draytek/OU=Draytek Sales/...</td> <td>OK</td> <td><input type="button" value="View"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>---</td> <td>---</td> <td>---</td> <td><input type="button" value="View"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>---</td> <td>---</td> <td>---</td> <td><input type="button" value="View"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Buttons: <input type="button" value="GENERATE"/> <input type="button" value="IMPORT"/> <input type="button" value="REFRESH"/></p>	Name	Subject	Status	Modify	draytekdemo	/O=Draytek/OU=Draytek Sales/...	OK	<input type="button" value="View"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/>	---	---	---	<input type="button" value="View"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/>	---	---	---	<input type="button" value="View"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/>
Name	Subject	Status	Modify														
draytekdemo	/O=Draytek/OU=Draytek Sales/...	OK	<input type="button" value="View"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/>														
---	---	---	<input type="button" value="View"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/>														
---	---	---	<input type="button" value="View"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/>														
Upload PKCS12 Certificate	<p>It allows users to import the certificate whose extensions are usually .pfx or .p12. And these certificates usually need passwords.</p> <p>Note: PKCS12 is a standard for storing private keys and certificates securely. It is used in (among other things) Netscape and Microsoft Internet Explorer with their import and export options.</p>																
Upload Certificate and Private Key	<p>It is useful when users have separated certificates and private keys. And the password is needed if the private key is</p>																

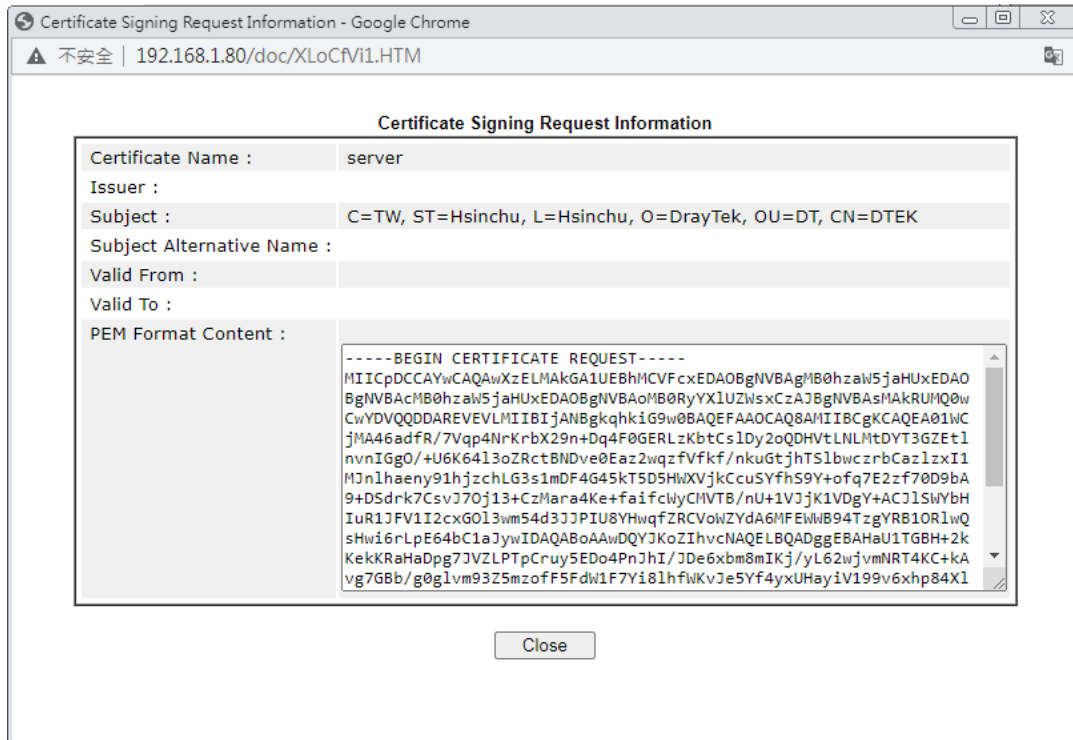
encrypted.

REFRESH

Click this button to refresh the information listed below.

View

Click this button to view the detailed settings for certificate request.



Info

You have to copy the certificate request information from above window. Next, access your CA server and enter the page of certificate request, copy the information into it and submit a request. A new certificate will be issued to you by the CA server. You can save it.

Delete

Click this button to remove the selected certificate.

IV-2-2 Trusted CA Certificate

Trusted CA certificate lists three sets of trusted CA certificate. In addition, you can build a RootCA certificate if required.

When the local client and remote client are required to make certificate authentication (e.g., IPsec X.509) for data passing through SSL tunnel and avoiding the attack of MITM, a trusted root certificate authority (Root CA) will be used to authenticate the digital certificates offered by both ends.

However, the procedure of applying digital certificate from a trusted root certificate authority is complicated and time-consuming. Therefore, Vigor router offers a mechanism which allows you to generate root CA to save time and provide convenience for general user. Later, such root CA generated by DrayTek server can perform the issuing of local certificate.



Info

Root CA can be deleted but not edited. If you want to modify the settings for a Root CA, please delete the one and create another one by clicking Create Root CA.

Certificate Management >> Trusted CA Certificate

X509 Trusted CA Certificate Configuration

Name	Subject	Status	Modify
Root CA	---	---	<input type="button" value="Create"/>
Trusted CA-1	---	---	<input type="button" value="View"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/>
Trusted CA-2	---	---	<input type="button" value="View"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/>
Trusted CA-3	---	---	<input type="button" value="View"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/>

Note:

1. Please setup the "System Maintenance >> [Time and Date](#)" correctly before you try to generate a RootCA!!
2. The Time Zone MUST be setup correctly!!

Creating a RootCA

Click **Create** to open the following page. Type in all the information that the window request such as certificate name (used for identifying different certificate), subject alternative name type and relational settings for subject name. Then click **GENERATE** again.

Certificate Management >> Root CA Certificate

Generate Root CA

Certificate Name	Root CA
Subject Alternative Name	
Type	IP Address ▼
IP	<input type="text"/>
Subject Name	
Country (C)	<input type="text"/>
State (ST)	<input type="text"/>
Location (L)	<input type="text"/>
Organization (O)	<input type="text"/>
Organization Unit (OU)	<input type="text"/>
Common Name (CN)	<input type="text"/>
Email (E)	<input type="text"/>
Key Type	RSA ▼
Key Size	2048 Bit ▼
Algorithm	SHA-256 ▼

Importing a Trusted CA

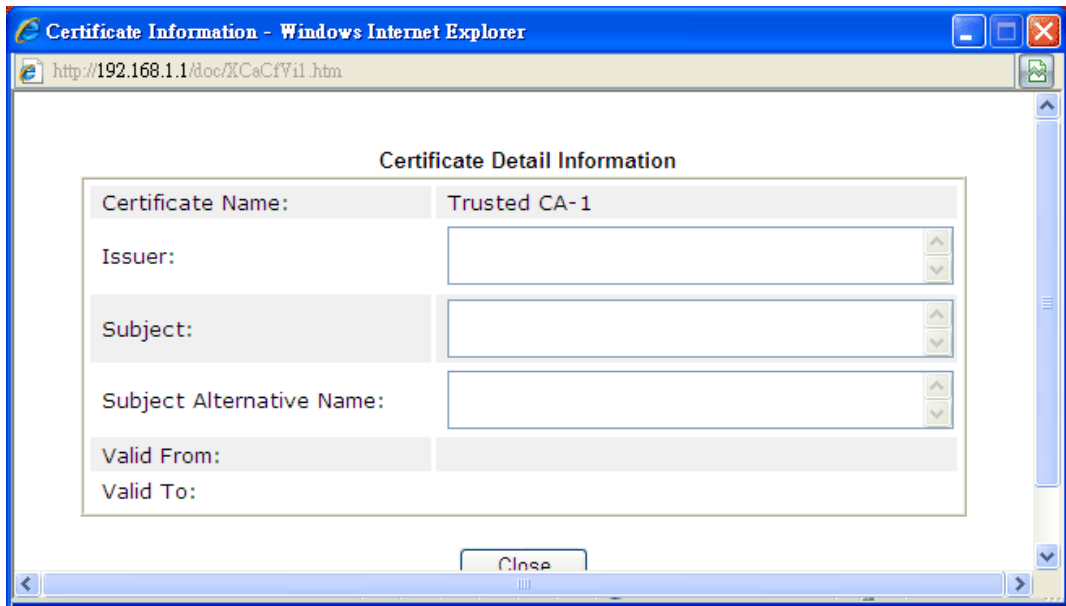
To import a pre-saved trusted CA certificate, please click **IMPORT** to open the following window. Use **Browse...** to find out the saved text file. Then click **Import**. The one you imported will be listed on the Trusted CA Certificate window.

Certificate Management >> Trusted CA Certificate

Import X509 Trusted CA Certificate

Select a trusted CA certificate file.
<input type="button" value="選擇檔案"/> 未選擇任何檔案
Click Import to upload the certification.
<input type="button" value="Import"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>

For viewing each trusted CA certificate, click **View** to open the certificate detail information window. If you want to delete a CA certificate, choose the one and click **Delete** to remove all the certificate information.



IV-2-3 Certificate Backup

Local certificate and Trusted CA certificate for this router can be saved within one file. Please click **Backup** on the following screen to save them. If you want to set encryption password for these certificates, please type characters in both fields of **Encrypt password** and **Confirm password**.

Also, you can use **Restore** to retrieve these two settings to the router whenever you want.

Certificate Management >> Certificate Backup

Certificate Backup / Restoration

Backup	
Encrypt password:	<input type="text" value="Max: 23 characters"/>
Confirm password:	<input type="text"/>
Click <input type="button" value="Backup"/> to download certificates to your local PC as a file.	
Restoration	
Select a backup file to restore.	
<input type="button" value="選擇檔案"/> 未選擇任何檔案	
Decrypt password:	<input type="text"/>
Click <input type="button" value="Restore"/> to upload the file.	

IV-2-4 Self-Signed Certificate

A self-signed certificate is a *unique* identification for the device (e.g., Vigor router) which generates the certificate by itself to ensure the router security. Such self-signed certificate is signed with its own private key.

The self-signed certificate will be applied in SSL VPN, HTTPS, and so on. In addition, it can be created for free by using a wide variety of tools.

Certificate Management >> Self-Signed Certificate

Self-Signed Certificate Information

Certificate Name :	self-signed
Issuer :	C=TW, ST=HsinChu, L=HuKou, O=DrayTek Corp., OU=DrayTek Support, CN=Vigor Router
Subject :	C=TW, ST=HsinChu, L=HuKou, O=DrayTek Corp., OU=DrayTek Support, CN=Vigor Router
Subject Alternative Name :	DNS:www.draytek.com
Valid From :	Jan 10 09:05:43 2023 GMT
Valid To :	Feb 9 09:05:43 2024 GMT
PEM Format Content :	<pre>-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE----- MIIDpjCCAo6gAwIBAgIJA08ikoq/1r11MA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBCwUAMHgx CzAJBgNV BAYTA1RXMRawDgYDVQQIDAdIc2luQ2h1MQ4wDAYDVQQHDAVIdUtvdTEwMBQGA1UE CgwNRHJheVRlayBDb3JwLjEYMBYGA1UECwwPRHJheVRlayBTdXBwb3J0MRUwEwYD VQDDAxlwawdvc iBSb3V0ZXIwHhcNMjMwMTEwMDkwNTQzWWhcNMjMwMjA5MDkwNTQz WjB4MQswCQYDVQQGEwJUVzEQMA4GA1UECAwHSHNpbkNodTEOMAwGA1UEBwwFSHVL b3Ux FjAUBGNVBAoMDURyYXlUZlZwsgQ29ycC4xGDAwBgNVBAsMD0RyYXlUZlZwsgU3Vw cG9ydEVMbGGA1UEAwwlbn3Igm91dGVyMIIIBjANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQEFAAOCAQ8AMIIB CgKCAQEAsRLCPE2t0StpVqbneUXHNV+FKOzX60xc thF1fhun2Uyxre z s aYCGVGKsX0Cwm6GYozoIntUg8+bi6TOENasdoG1f69JuT+GkHiYXNBnVmnXoDhvd eDxUZSBhS7yETSgZ5d6S1b3b3rDuNckJ/5Ueoo04oS LqEXEpeYdj5VKQAJY1etYa 5RIJh+52wq6GdAxSwhSg2CZvRfiaSQMi+icye1Q73+tSSz+pdIT0Q46Wlyj28V91t ZbZi1jGK67IZofovjgJ+rKyFqe3RMC4ivuQBEEZKYyQuk0QC++/rBkb8J2vsJXZd0 3D+8GwIU0X8fnjVSDfGZfB5NwvzKkYoKq0G9pwIDAQABozMwMTATBgNVHSUEDDAK BgggrBgEFBQC DATAaBgNVHREEEzARgg93d3cuZHJheXRlay5jb20wDQYJKoZIhvcN AQELBQADggEBAGBJ9CccI/q3dL3uTKAHPGgoQ4Zt//IFG48ybsGdPG06oA6cHO u+sn6mSVLU+x1xzZcBIhu0MuV6d42xnPR39g/t/fZ/oiVu95j6p6T71MfjYpgpI /I5oaYEor5UCNNFMy3Anw2IJ6qMxpH88GT/77ik5mU1TIHQBPzHRA LxfmX6IE KFJKDqJVdOudLRDREFFZuXDRfh2+eTH91+z s6khKOpY01N0CyExwSxpFZgkhrUP Eaa0xL5oIJuMcp38hbXeVcyXxKuHcfn+1tTgqgBrDU0tUvMn+0kLfnj8GH/fi0AZ F7ddrO+mzP5CBngHh7uiXHOE+ALXuDBarBY= -----END CERTIFICATE-----</pre>

Note:

1. Please setup the [System Maintenance >> Time and Date](#) correctly before you try to regenerate a self-signed certificate!!
2. The Time Zone MUST be setup correctly!!

Regenerate

This page is left blank.

Part V Security



Firewall



CSM

While the broadband users demand more bandwidth for multimedia, interactive applications, or distance learning, security has been always the most concerned. The firewall of the Vigor router helps to protect your local network against attack from unauthorized outsiders. It also restricts users in the local network from accessing the Internet.

CSM is an abbreviation of Central Security Management which is used to control IM/P2P usage, filter the web content and URL content to reach a goal of security management.

V-1 Firewall

While the broadband users demand more bandwidth for multimedia, interactive applications, or distance learning, security has been always the most concerned. The firewall of the Vigor router helps to protect your local network against attack from unauthorized outsiders. It also restricts users in the local network from accessing the Internet. Furthermore, it can filter out specific packets that trigger the router to build an unwanted outgoing connection.

Firewall Facilities

The users on the LAN are provided with secured protection by the following firewall facilities:

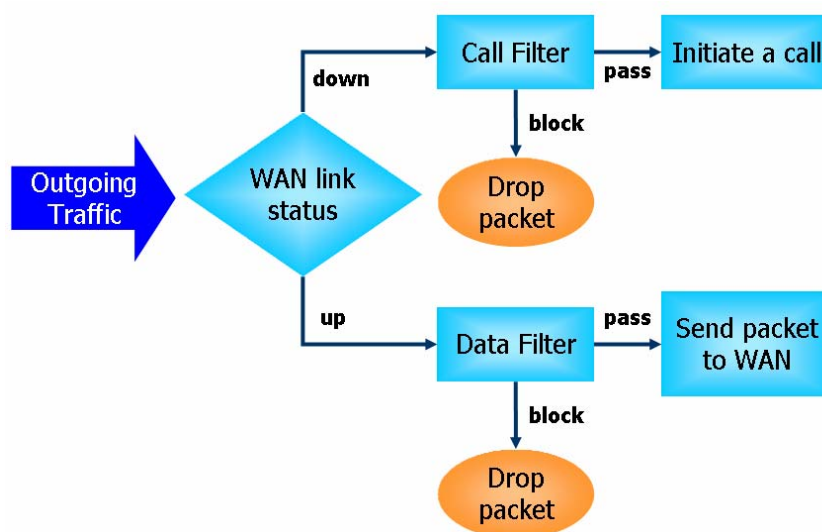
- User-configurable IP filter (Call Filter/ Data Filter).
- Stateful Packet Inspection (SPI): tracks packets and denies unsolicited incoming data
- Selectable Denial of Service (DoS) /Distributed DoS (DDoS) attacks protection

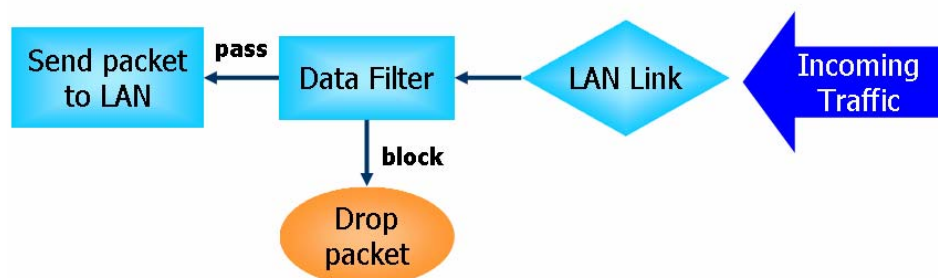
IP Filters

Depending on whether there is an existing Internet connection, or in other words "the WAN link status is up or down", the IP filter architecture categorizes traffic into two: **Call Filter** and **Data Filter**.

- **Call Filter** - When there is no existing Internet connection, **Call Filter** is applied to all traffic, all of which should be outgoing. It will check packets according to the filter rules. If legal, the packet will pass. Then the router shall "initiate a call" to build the Internet connection and send the packet to Internet.
- **Data Filter** - When there is an existing Internet connection, **Data Filter** is applied to incoming and outgoing traffic. It will check packets according to the filter rules. If legal, the packet will pass the router.

The following illustrations are flow charts explaining how router will treat incoming traffic and outgoing traffic respectively.





Stateful Packet Inspection (SPI)

Stateful inspection is a firewall architecture that works at the network layer. Unlike legacy static packet filtering, which examines a packet based on the information in its header, stateful inspection builds up a state machine to track each connection traversing all interfaces of the firewall and makes sure they are valid. The stateful firewall of Vigor router not only examines the header information also monitors the state of the connection.

Denial of Service (DoS) Defense

The DoS Defense functionality helps you to detect and mitigate the DoS attack. The attacks are usually categorized into two types, the flooding-type attacks and the vulnerability attacks. The flooding-type attacks will attempt to exhaust all your system's resource while the vulnerability attacks will try to paralyze the system by offending the vulnerabilities of the protocol or operation system.

The DoS Defense function enables the Vigor router to inspect every incoming packet based on the attack signature database. Any malicious packet that might duplicate itself to paralyze the host in the secure LAN will be strictly blocked and a Syslog message will be sent as warning, if you set up Syslog server.

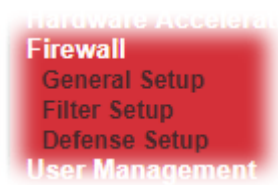
Also the Vigor router monitors the traffic. Any abnormal traffic flow violating the pre-defined parameter, such as the number of thresholds, is identified as an attack and the Vigor router will activate its defense mechanism to mitigate in a real-time manner.

The below shows the attack types that DoS/DDoS defense function can detect:

- | | |
|----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. SYN flood attack | 9. SYN fragment |
| 2. UDP flood attack | 10. Fraggle attack |
| 3. ICMP flood attack | 11. TCP flag scan |
| 4. Port Scan attack | 12. Tear drop attack |
| 5. IP options | 13. Ping of Death attack |
| 6. Land attack | 14. ICMP fragment |
| 7. Smurf attack | 15. Unassigned Numbers |
| 8. Trace route | |

Web User Interface

Below shows the menu items for Firewall.



V-1-1 General Setup

General Setup allows you to adjust settings of IP Filter and common options. Here you can enable or disable the **Call Filter** or **Data Filter**. Under some circumstance, your filter set can be linked to work in a serial manner. So here you assign the **Start Filter Set** only. Also you can configure the **Log Flag** settings, **Apply IP filter to VPN incoming packets**, and **Accept incoming fragmented UDP packets**.

Click **Firewall** and click **General Setup** to open the general setup page.

General Setup Page

Such page allows you to enable / disable Call Filter and Data Filter, determine general rule for filtering the incoming and outgoing data.

Firewall >> General Setup

General Setup

General Setup	Default Rule	
Call Filter	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable	Start Filter Set: <input type="text" value="Set#1"/>
Data Filter	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable	Start Filter Set: <input type="text" value="Set#2"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Allow pass inbound fragmented large packets (required for certain games and streaming)		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Strict Security Firewall		
Block routing connections initiated from WAN <input type="checkbox"/> IPv4 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IPv6		

Note:

Packets are filtered by firewall functions in the following order:
1.Data Filter Sets and Rules 2.Block routing connections initiated from WAN 3.Default Rule

OK Cancel

Backup Firewall : <input type="button" value="Backup"/>	Restore Firewall: <input type="button" value="選擇檔案"/> 未選擇任何檔案 <input type="button" value="Restore"/>
---	--

Note:

This will not backup the detail setting of Quality of Service and Schedule.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Call Filter	Check Enable to activate the Call Filter function. Assign a start filter set for the Call Filter.
Data Filter	Check Enable to activate the Data Filter function. Assign a start filter set for the Data Filter.
Always pass inbound fragmented....	Some on-line games (for example: Half Life) will use lots of fragmented UDP packets to transfer game data. Instinctively as a secure firewall, Vigor router will reject these fragmented packets to prevent attack unless you enable " Always pass inbound fragmented large packets ". By checking this box, you can play these kinds of on-line games. If security concern is in higher priority, you cannot enable " Always pass inbound fragmented large packet ".
Enable Strict Security Firewall	For the sake of security, the router will execute strict security checking for data transmission. Such feature is enabled in default. All the packets, while transmitting through Vigor router, will be filtered by firewall. If the firewall system (e.g., content filter server) does not make any response (pass or block) for these packets, then the router's firewall will block the packets directly.
Block routing connections initiated from WAN	Usually, IPv6 network sessions/traffic from WAN to LAN will be accepted by IPv6 firewall in default. IPv6 - To prevent remote client accessing into the PCs on LAN, check the box to make the packets (routed from WAN to LAN) via IPv6 being blocked by such router. It is effective only for the packets routed but not for packets translated by NAT. IPv4 - To prevent remote client accessing into the PCs on LAN, check the box to make the incoming packets via IPv4 being blocked by such router. It is effective only for the packets routed but not for packets translated by NAT.
Backup Firewall	Click Backup to save the firewall configuration.
Restore Firewall	Click Select to choose a firewall configuration file. Then click Restore to apply the file.

Default Rule Page

Such page allows you to choose filtering profiles including QoS, Load-Balance policy, WCF, APP Enforcement, URL Content Filter, for data transmission via Vigor router.

Firewall >> General Setup

General Setup

General Setup
Default Rule

Actions for default rule:	Action/Profile	Syslog
Application Filter	Pass ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>
Sessions Control	0 / 50000	<input type="checkbox"/>
Quality of Service	None ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>
User Management	None ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>
APP Enforcement	None ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>
URL Content Filter	None ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>
Web Content Filter	None ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>
DNS Filter	None ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>

Advance Setting Edit

OK Cancel

Backup Firewall : Backup
Restore Firewall: 選擇檔案 未選擇任何檔案 Restore

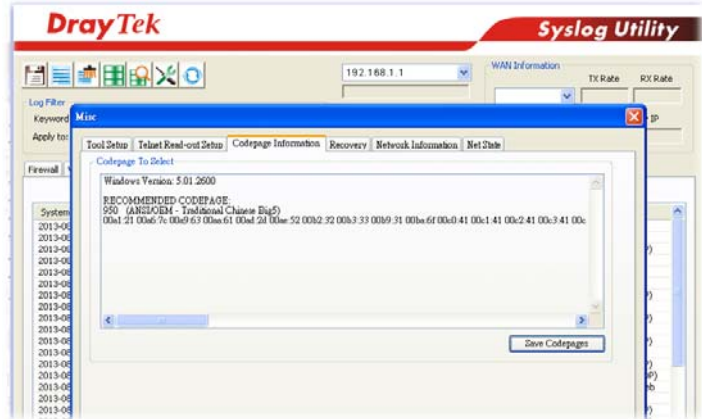
Note:

This will not backup the detail setting of Quality of Service and Schedule.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Filter	Select Pass or Block for the packets that do not match with the filter rules.
Sessions Control	The number typed here is the total sessions of the packets that do not match the filter rule configured in this page. The default setting is 60000.
Quality of Service	Choose one of the QoS rules to be applied as firewall rule. For detailed information of setting QoS, please refer to the related section later.
User Management	Such item is available only when Rule-Based is selected in User Management>>General Setup . The general firewall rule will be applied to the user/user group/all users specified here. Note: When there is no user profile or group profile existed, Create New User or Create New Group item will appear for you to click to create a new one.
APP Enforcement	Select an APP Enforcement profile for global IM/P2P application blocking. If there is no profile for you to select, please choose [Create New] from the drop down list in this

	<p>page to create a new profile. All the hosts in LAN must follow the standard configured in the APP Enforcement profile selected here. For detailed information, refer to the section of APP Enforcement profile setup. For troubleshooting needs, you can specify to record information for IM/P2P by checking the Log box. It will be sent to Syslog server. Please refer to section Syslog/Mail Alert for more detailed information.</p>
<p>URL Content Filter</p>	<p>Select one of the URL Content Filter profile settings (created in CSM>> URL Content Filter) for applying with this router. Please set at least one profile for choosing in CSM>> URL Content Filter web page first. Or choose [Create New] from the drop down list in this page to create a new profile. For troubleshooting needs, you can specify to record information for URL Content Filter by checking the Log box. It will be sent to Syslog server. Please refer to section Syslog/Mail Alert for more detailed information.</p>
<p>Web Content Filter</p>	<p>Select one of the Web Content Filter profile settings (created in CSM>> Web Content Filter) for applying with this router. Please set at least one profile for anti-virus in CSM>> Web Content Filter web page first. Or choose [Create New] from the drop down list in this page to create a new profile. For troubleshooting needs, you can specify to record information for Web Content Filter by checking the Log box. It will be sent to Syslog server. Please refer to section Syslog/Mail Alert for more detailed information.</p>
<p>DNS Filter</p>	<p>Select one of the DNS Filter profile settings (created in CSM>>DNS Filter) for applying with this router. Please set at least one profile in CSM>> Web Content Filter web page first. Or click the DNS Filter link in this page to create a new profile.</p>
<p>Advance Setting</p>	<p>Click Edit to open the following window. However, it is strongly recommended to use the default settings here.</p> <p>Firewall >> General Setup</p> <hr/> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px;"> <p>Advance Setting</p> <p>Codepage: <input type="text" value="ANSI(1252)-Latin I"/></p> <p>Window size: <input type="text" value="65535"/></p> <p>Session timeout: <input type="text" value="60"/> Minute</p> </div> <p style="text-align: center;"> <input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Close"/> </p> <p>Codepage - This function is used to compare the characters among different languages. Choose correct codepage can help the system obtain correct ASCII after decoding data from URL and enhance the correctness of URL Content Filter. The default value for this setting is ANSI 1252 Latin I. If you do not choose any codepage, no decoding job of URL will be processed. Please use the drop-down list to choose a codepage.</p> <p>If you do not have any idea of choosing suitable codepage, please open Syslog. From Codepage Information of Setup dialog, you will see the recommended codepage listed on the dialog box.</p>



Window size - It determines the size of TCP protocol (0-65535). The more the value is, the better the performance will be. However, if the network is not stable, small value will be proper.

Session timeout - Setting timeout for sessions can make the best utilization of network resources.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

V-1-2 Filter Setup

Click Firewall and click Filter Setup to open the setup page.

Firewall >> Filter Setup



Filter Setup		Set to Factory Default	
Set	Comments	Set	Comments
1.	Default Call Filter	7.	
2.	Default Data Filter	8.	
3.		9.	
4.		10.	
5.		11.	
6.		12.	

To edit or add a filter, click on the set number to edit the individual set. The following page will be shown. Each filter set contains up to 7 rules. Click on the rule number button to edit each rule. Check **Active** to enable the filter rule.

Firewall >> Filter Setup >> Edit Filter Set

Filter Set 1

Comments :

Rule	Enable	Comments	Direction	Src IP	Dst IP	Service Type	Action	CSM	Move Up	Move Down
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Block NetBios	LAN/RT/VPN -> WAN	Any	Any	TCP/UDP, Port: from 137~139 to any	Block Immediately			Down
2	<input type="checkbox"/>		LAN/RT/VPN -> WAN	Any	Any	Any	Pass Immediately		UP	Down
3	<input type="checkbox"/>		LAN/RT/VPN -> WAN	Any	Any	Any	Pass Immediately		UP	Down
4	<input type="checkbox"/>		LAN/RT/VPN -> WAN	Any	Any	Any	Pass Immediately		UP	Down
5	<input type="checkbox"/>		LAN/RT/VPN -> WAN	Any	Any	Any	Pass Immediately		UP	Down
6	<input type="checkbox"/>		LAN/RT/VPN -> WAN	Any	Any	Any	Pass Immediately		UP	Down
7	<input type="checkbox"/>		LAN/RT/VPN -> WAN	Any	Any	Any	Pass Immediately		UP	

Filter Set [1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) [6](#) [7](#) [8](#) [9](#) [10](#) [11](#) [12](#)

Next Filter Set

- Wizard Mode: most frequently used settings in three pages
 Advance Mode: all settings in one page

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Rule	Click a button numbered (1 ~ 7) to edit the filter rule. Click the button will open Edit Filter Rule web page. For the detailed information, refer to the following page.
Active	Enable or disable the filter rule.
Comment	Enter filter set comments/description. Maximum length is 23-character long.
Direction	Display the direction of packet flow

Src IP Dst IP	Display the source IP address and destination IP address of the rule.
Service Type	Display the protocol setting with source port and destination port value.
Action	Display the action taken when packets match the rule.
CSM	Display the CSM profile name used by such rule.
Move Up/Down	Use Up or Down link to move the order of the filter rules.
Next Filter Set	Set the link to the next filter set to be executed after the current filter run. Do not make a loop with many filter sets.
Wizard Mode	Allow to configure frequently used settings of filter rule via three setting pages
Advance Mode	Allow to configure detailed settings of filter rule in one page.

To use Wizard Mode, simple do the following steps:

1. Click the **Wizard Mode** radio button.
2. Click one of the index number link (e.g., **Index 2**) to access into the following page.

Firewall >> Edit Filter Set >> Edit Filter Rule Wizard

Filter Set 1 Rule 1

Firewall Rule applies to packets that meet the following criteria

Comments:

Direction:

Source IP:

Start IP Address

End IP Address

Subnet Mask

Destination IP:

Start IP Address

End IP Address

Subnet Mask

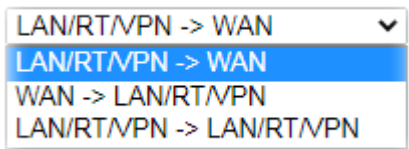
Protocol:

Source Port

Destination Port

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Comments	Enter filter set comments/description. Maximum length is 14- character long.
Direction	Set the direction of packet flow. It is for Data Filter only. For the Call Filter , this setting is not available since Call Filter is only applied to outgoing traffic.



Note: RT means routing domain for 2nd subnet or other

	LAN.
Source/Destination IP	To set the IP address manually, please choose Any Address/Single Address/Range Address/Subnet Address as the Address Type and Enter them in this dialog.
Protocol	Specify the protocol(s) which this filter rule will apply to.
Source Port / Destination Port	<p>(=) - when the first and last value are the same, it indicates one port; when the first and last values are different, it indicates a range for the port and available for this service type.</p> <p>(!=) - when the first and last value are the same, it indicates all the ports except the port defined here; when the first and last values are different, it indicates that all the ports except the range defined here are available for this service type.</p> <p>(>) - the port number greater than this value is available.</p> <p>(<) - the port number less than this value is available for this profile.</p>

3. Click Next to get the following page.

Firewall >> Edit Filter Set >> Edit Filter Rule Wizard

Filter Set 1 Rule 1

Based on the settings in the previous pages, we guess you want to have: **Pass**
The current setting is :

Pass Immediately

APP Enforcement:

URL Content Filter:

Web Content Filter:

DNS Filter:

Block Immediately

4. After configuring the above settings, click Next to get the summary page for reference.

Firewall >> Edit Filter Set >> Edit Filter Rule Wizard

Filter Set 1 Rule 1 Configuration Summary

Comments : xNetBios -> DNS

Direction

LAN/RT/VPN -> WAN

Criteria

Source IP	Any
Destination IP	Any
Protocol	TCP/UDP, Port: from 137 ~ 139 to 53

More options

Pass Immediately

APP Enforcement :	None
URL Content Filter :	None
Web Content Filter :	None
DNS Filter :	None

5. If there is no error, click **Finish** to complete wizard setting.

To use **Advance Mode**, do the following steps:

1. Click the **Advance Mode** radio button.
2. Click one of the index number linke (e.g., **Index 1**) to access into the following page.

Firewall >> Edit Filter Set >> Edit Filter Rule

Filter Set 1 Rule 1

Enable

Comments

Schedule Profile , , ,

Clear sessions when schedule is ON

Direction

Source IP

Destination IP

Service Type

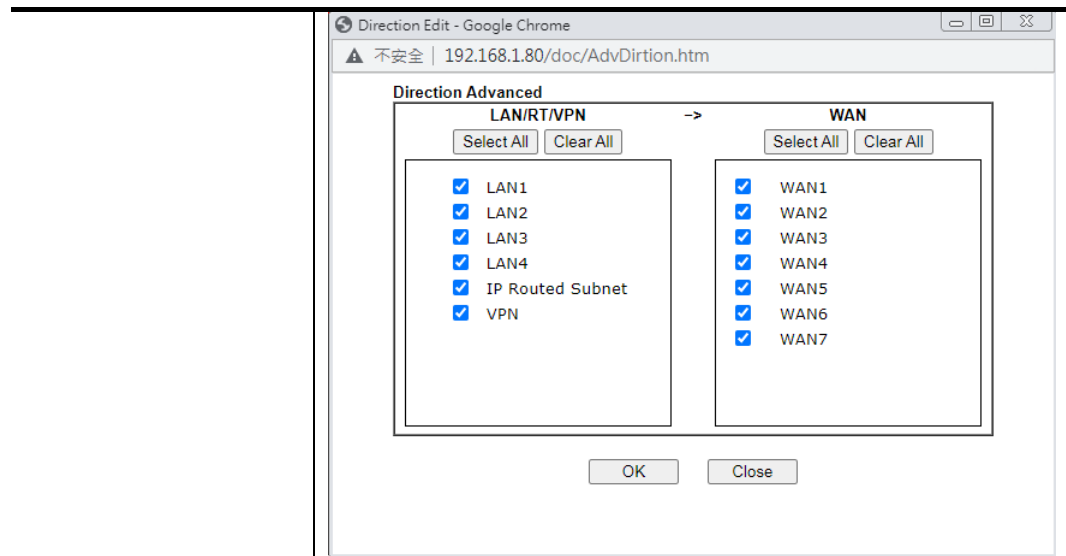
Fragments

Application	Action/Profile	Syslog
Filter	<input type="text" value="Block Immediately"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Branch to Other Filter Set	<input type="text" value="None"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Sessions Control	<input type="text" value="0 / 50000"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
MAC Bind IP	<input type="text" value="Non-Strict"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Quality of Service	<input type="text" value="None"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
User Management	<input type="text" value="None"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
APP Enforcement	<input type="text" value="None"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
URL Content Filter	<input type="text" value="None"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Web Content Filter	<input type="text" value="None"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
DNS Filter	<input type="text" value="None"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Advance Setting

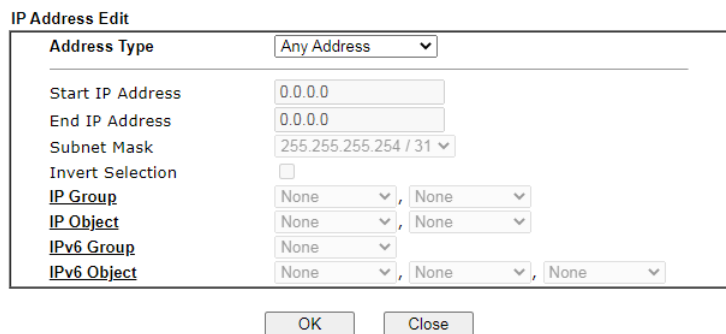
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Check this box to enable the filter rule.
Comments	Enter filter set comments/description. Maximum length is 14-character long.
Schedule Profile	Set PCs on LAN to work at certain time interval only. You may choose up to 4 schedules out of the 15 schedules pre-defined in Applications >> Schedule setup. The default setting of this field is blank and the function will always work.
Clear sessions when schedule ON	Check this box to clear the sessions when the above schedule profiles are applied.
Direction	Specify the direction of traffic flow to which this filter rule applies. Note: RT stands for the routing domain for 2nd subnet or other LAN. Advanced - After choosing the direction, click the Advanced button to specify interfaces for traffic flow.



Source IP/ Country
and
Destination IP /
Country

Click **Edit** to bring up the following dialog box to configure the source and destination IP addresses or country objects.



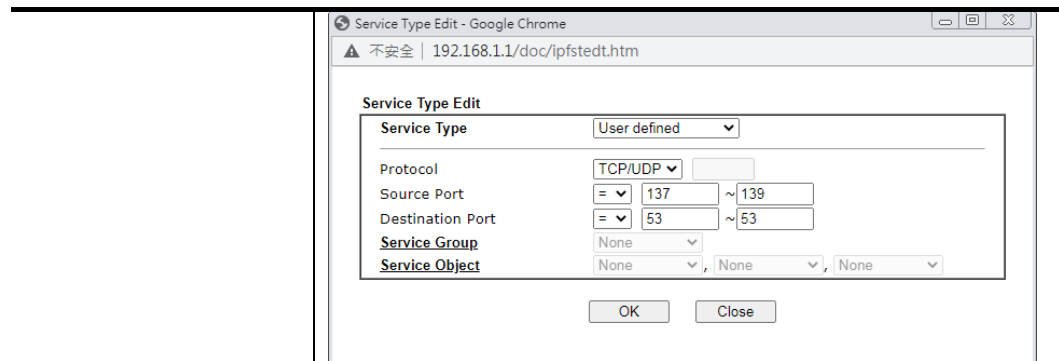
To set the IP address manually, please choose an Address Type and enter required information.

Address Type - Select from one of the following:

- Any Address - All IP addresses
- Single Address - Enter one IP address in Start IP address
- Range Address - Enter the Start and End IP Addresses
- Subnet Address - Enter the Start IP Address and the Subnet Mask. Example: Start IP Address 192.168.1.1 and Subnet Mask 255.255.255.128 means is the same as having the Start IP Address as 192.168.1.1 and the End IP Address as 192.168.1.127.
- Group and Objects - Allows selection of predefined IP Groups and IP Objects. For details on IP Groups and Objects, see the chapter on Objects Setting.

Service Type

Click **Edit** to bring up the following dialog box to configure the Service Type.



Service Type - To set the service type manually, please choose **User defined** as the Service Type.

- **User defined** - Configure the protocol, source and destination ports manually.
- **Group and Objects** - Select preconfigured Service Groups or Objects.

Protocol - Specify the protocol(s) which this filter rule will apply to.

Source/Destination Port -

- (=) - any port that falls within the specified range
- (!=) - any port that falls outside of the specified range
- (>) - a port whose number is greater than the specified value
- (<) - a port whose number is smaller than the specified value

Service Group/Object - Use the drop down list to select the desired Service Groups or Objects.

<p>Fragments</p>	<p>Specify the action for fragmented packets. And it is used for Data Filter only.</p> <p>Don't care -No action will be taken towards fragmented packets.</p> <p>Unfragmented -Apply the rule to unfragmented packets.</p> <p>Fragmented - Apply the rule to fragmented packets.</p> <p>Too Short - Apply the rule only to packets that are too short to contain a complete header.</p>
<p>Filter</p>	<p>Specifies the action to be taken when packets match the rule.</p> <p>Block Immediately - Packets matching the rule will be dropped immediately.</p> <p>Pass Immediately - Packets matching the rule will be passed immediately.</p> <p>Block If No Further Match - A packet matching the rule, and that does not match further rules, will be dropped.</p> <p>Pass If No Further Match - A packet matching the rule, and that does not match further rules, will be passed through.</p>
<p>Branch to other Filter Set</p>	<p>If the packet matches the filter rule, the next filter rule will branch to the specified filter set. Select next filter rule to branch from the drop-down menu. Be aware that the router will apply the specified filter rule for ever and will not return to previous filter rule any more.</p>
<p>Sessions Control</p>	<p>The number typed here is the total sessions of the packets that do not match the filter rule configured in this page. The</p>

	default setting is 60000.
MAC Bind IP	<p>Strict – Make the MAC address and IP address settings configured in IP Object for Source IP and Destination IP are bound for applying such filter rule.</p> <p>No-Strict - no limitation.</p>
Quality of Service	Choose one of the QoS rules to be applied as firewall rule. For detailed information of setting QoS, please refer to the related section later.
User Management	<p>Such item is available only when Rule-Based is selected in User Management>>General Setup. The general firewall rule will be applied to the user/user group/all users specified here.</p> <p>Note: When there is no user profile or group profile existed, Create New User or Create New Group item will appear for you to click to create a new one.</p>
APP Enforcement	Select an APP Enforcement profile for global IM/P2P application blocking. If there is no profile for you to select, please choose [Create New] from the drop down list in this page to create a new profile. All the hosts in LAN must follow the standard configured in the APP Enforcement profile selected here. For detailed information, refer to the section of APP Enforcement profile setup. For troubleshooting needs, you can specify to record information for IM/P2P by checking the Log box. It will be sent to Syslog server. Please refer to section Syslog/Mail Alert for more detailed information.
URL Content Filter	Select one of the URL Content Filter profile settings (created in CSM>> URL Content Filter) for applying with this router. Please set at least one profile for choosing in CSM>> URL Content Filter web page first. Or choose [Create New] from the drop down list in this page to create a new profile. For troubleshooting needs, you can specify to record information for URL Content Filter by checking the Log box. It will be sent to Syslog server. Please refer to section Syslog/Mail Alert for more detailed information.
Web Content Filter	Select one of the Web Content Filter profile settings (created in CSM>> Web Content Filter) for applying with this router. Please set at least one profile for anti-virus in CSM>> Web Content Filter web page first. Or choose [Create New] from the drop down list in this page to create a new profile. For troubleshooting needs, you can specify to record information for Web Content Filter by checking the Log box. It will be sent to Syslog server. Please refer to section Syslog/Mail Alert for more detailed information.
DNS Filter	Select one of the DNS Filter profile settings (created in CSM>>DNS Filter) for applying with this router. Please set at least one profile in CSM>> Web Content Filter web page first. Or click the DNS Filter link from the drop down list in this page to create a new profile.
Advance Setting	Click Edit to open the following window. However, it is strongly recommended to use the default settings here.

Filter Set 1 Rule 1

Advance Setting	
Codepage	ANSI(1252)-Latin I
Window size:	65535
Session timeout:	60 Minute
DrayTek Banner:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

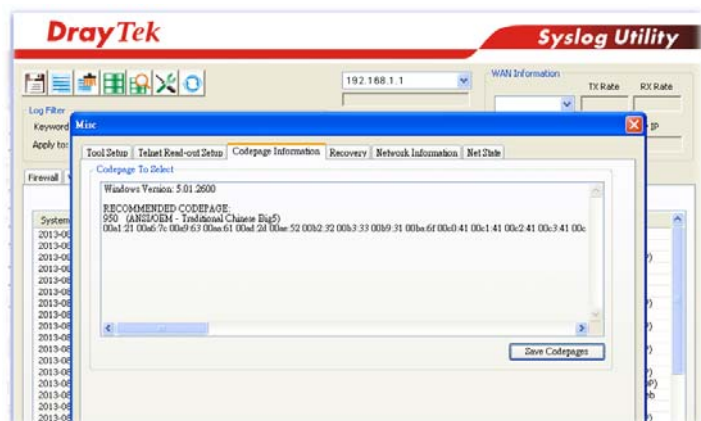
Strict Security Checking	
<input type="checkbox"/> APP Enforcement	

OK

Close

Codepage - This function is used to compare the characters among different languages. Choose correct codepage can help the system obtaining correct ASCII after decoding data from URL and enhance the correctness of URL Content Filter. The default value for this setting is ANSI 1252 Latin I. If you do not choose any codepage, no decoding job of URL will be processed. Please use the drop-down list to choose a codepage.

If you do not have any idea of choosing suitable codepage, please open Syslog. From Codepage Information of Setup dialog, you will see the recommended codepage listed on the dialog box.



Window size - It determines the size of TCP protocol (0-65535). The more the value is, the better the performance will be. However, if the network is not stable, small value will be proper.

Session timeout-Setting timeout for sessions can make the best utilization of network resources. However, Queue timeout is configured for TCP protocol only; session timeout is configured for the data flow which matched with the firewall rule.

DrayTek Banner - Please uncheck this box and the following screen will not be shown for the unreachable web page. The default setting is Enabled.

The requested Web page has been blocked by Web Content Filter.
Please contact your system administrator for further information.
[Powered by Draytek]

Strict Security Checking - All the packets, while transmitting through Vigor router, will be filtered by firewall settings configured by Vigor router. When the resource is inadequate, the packets will be blocked if Strict Security Checking is enabled. If Strict Security Checking is not enabled, then the packets will pass through the router.

Example

As stated before, all the traffic will be separated and arbitrated using one of two IP filters: call filter or data filter. You may preset 12 call filters and data filters in **Filter Setup** and even link them in a serial manner. Each filter set is composed by 7 filter rules, which can be further defined. After that, in **General Setup** you may specify one set for call filter and one set for data filter to execute first.

V-1-3 Defense Setup

As a sub-functionality of IP Filter/Firewall, there are 15 types of detect/ defense function in the DoS Defense setup. The DoS Defense functionality is disabled for default.

V-1-3-1 DoS Defense

Click Firewall and click DoS Defense to open the setup page.

Firewall >> Defense Setup

DoS Defense
Spoofing Defense

DoS defense

Enable DoS Defense
Select All
White/Black List Option
Log: Enable ▼

<input type="checkbox"/> Enable SYN flood defense	Threshold	<input type="text" value="2000"/>	packets / sec
	Timeout	<input type="text" value="10"/>	sec
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable UDP flood defense	Threshold	<input type="text" value="5000"/>	packets / sec
	Timeout	<input type="text" value="10"/>	sec
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable ICMP flood defense	Threshold	<input type="text" value="250"/>	packets / sec
	Timeout	<input type="text" value="10"/>	sec
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable Port Scan detection	Threshold	<input type="text" value="2000"/>	packets / sec
<input type="checkbox"/> Block IP options	<input type="checkbox"/> Block TCP flag scan		
<input type="checkbox"/> Block Land	<input type="checkbox"/> Block Tear Drop		
<input type="checkbox"/> Block Smurf	<input type="checkbox"/> Block Ping of Death		
<input type="checkbox"/> Block trace route	<input type="checkbox"/> Block ICMP fragment		
<input type="checkbox"/> Block SYN fragment	<input type="checkbox"/> Block Unassigned Numbers		
<input type="checkbox"/> Block Fraggle Attack			

Enable DoS defense function to prevent the attacks from hacker or crackers.

OK
Clear All
Cancel

Note:

Enabling the UDP Flood Defense option may affect UDP services, like NAT-T VPN, DNS, and VoIP service.

When you have UDP servers running, please increase the UDP threshold according to the Internet speed, or add the server IP into the White List. The suggested threshold value are as follows:

20M Bandwidth: 2,000 (packets/sec)

60M Bandwidth: 5,000 (packets/sec)

100M Bandwidth: 8,000 (packets/sec)

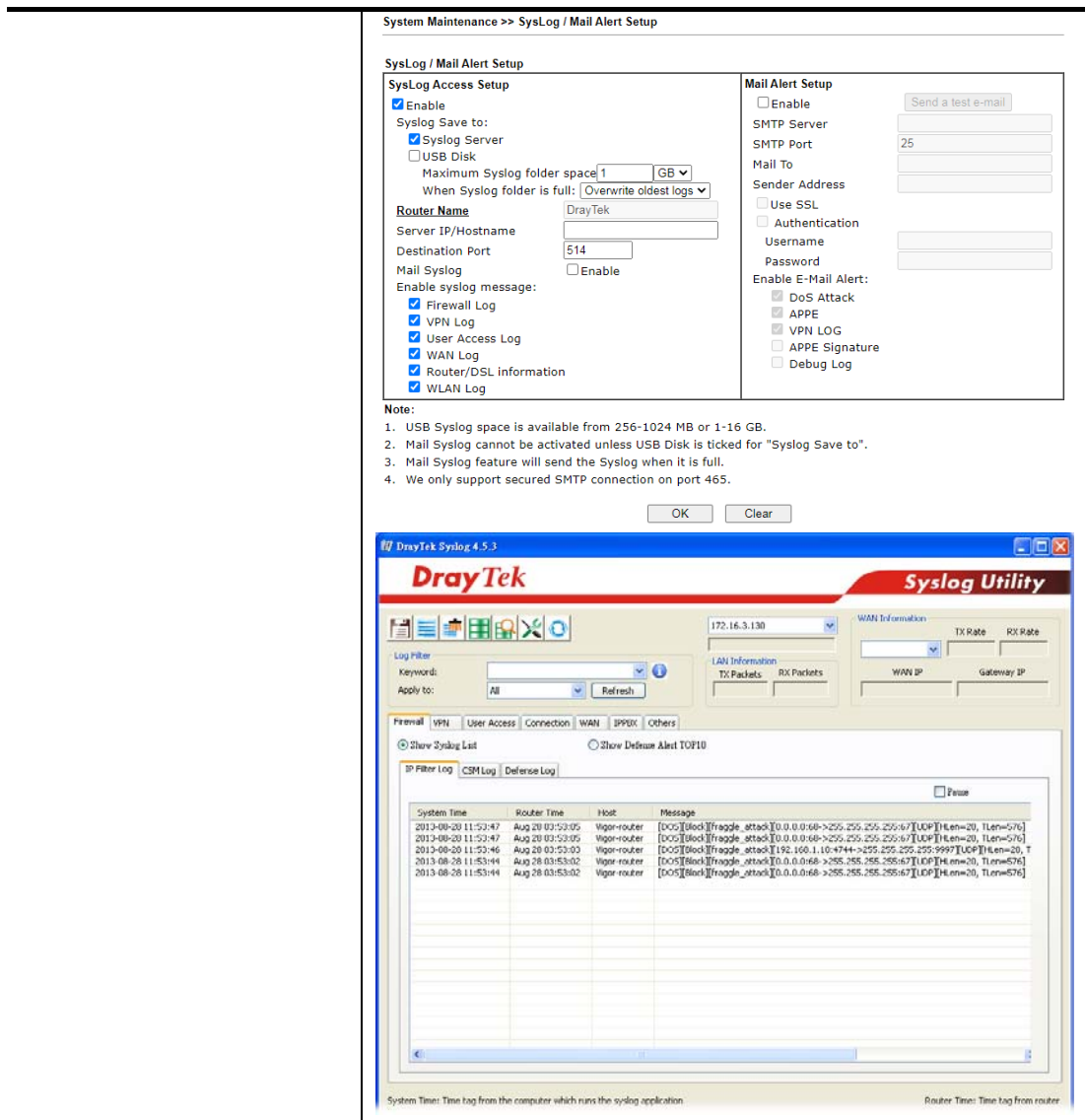
300M Bandwidth: 25,000 (packets/sec)

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable DoS Defense	Check the box to activate the DoS Defense Functionality. Select All - Click this button to select all the items listed below. White/Black List Option - Set white/black list of IPv4/IPv6 address.
Enable SYN flood defense	Check the box to activate the SYN flood defense function. Once detecting the Threshold of the TCP SYN packets from the Internet has exceeded the defined value, the Vigor router will start to randomly discard the subsequent TCP SYN packets for a period defined in Timeout. The goal for

	<p>this is prevent the TCP SYN packets' attempt to exhaust the limited-resource of Vigor router.</p> <p>By default, the threshold and timeout values are set to 2000 packets per second and 10 seconds, respectively. That means, when 2000 packets per second received, they will be regarded as "attack event" and the session will be paused for 10 seconds.</p>
Enable UDP flood defense	<p>Check the box to activate the UDP flood defense function. Once detecting the Threshold of the UDP packets from the Internet has exceeded the defined value, the Vigor router will start to randomly discard the subsequent UDP packets for a period defined in Timeout.</p> <p>The default setting for threshold and timeout are 2000 packets per second and 10 seconds, respectively. That means, when 2000 packets per second received, they will be regarded as "attack event" and the session will be paused for 10 seconds.</p>
Enable ICMP flood defense	<p>Check the box to activate the ICMP flood defense function. Similar to the UDP flood defense function, once if the Threshold of ICMP packets from Internet has exceeded the defined value, the router will discard the ICMP echo requests coming from the Internet.</p> <p>The default setting for threshold and timeout are 250 packets per second and 10 seconds, respectively. That means, when 250 packets per second received, they will be regarded as "attack event" and the session will be paused for 10 seconds.</p>
Enable PortScan detection	<p>Port Scan attacks the Vigor router by sending lots of packets to many ports in an attempt to find ignorant services would respond. Check the box to activate the Port Scan detection. Whenever detecting this malicious exploration behavior by monitoring the port-scanning Threshold rate, the Vigor router will send out a warning.</p> <p>By default, the Vigor router sets the threshold as 2000 packets per second. That means, when 2000 packets per second received, they will be regarded as "attack event".</p>
Block IP options	<p>Check the box to activate the Block IP options function. The Vigor router will ignore any IP packets with IP option field in the datagram header. The reason for limitation is IP option appears to be a vulnerability of the security for the LAN because it will carry significant information, such as security, TCC (closed user group) parameters, a series of Internet addresses, routing messages...etc. An eavesdropper outside might learn the details of your private networks.</p>
Block Land	<p>Check the box to enforce the Vigor router to defense the Land attacks. The Land attack combines the SYN attack technology with IP spoofing. A Land attack occurs when an attacker sends spoofed SYN packets with the identical source and destination addresses, as well as the port number to victims.</p>
Block Smurf	<p>Check the box to activate the Block Smurf function. The Vigor router will ignore any broadcasting ICMP echo request.</p>
Block trace route	<p>Check the box to enforce the Vigor router not to forward</p>

	any trace route packets.
Block SYN fragment	Check the box to activate the Block SYN fragment function. The Vigor router will drop any packets having SYN flag and more fragment bit set.
Block Fraggle Attack	<p>Check the box to activate the Block fraggle Attack function. Any broadcast UDP packets received from the Internet is blocked.</p> <p>Activating the DoS/DDoS defense functionality might block some legal packets. For example, when you activate the fraggle attack defense, all broadcast UDP packets coming from the Internet are blocked. Therefore, the RIP packets from the Internet might be dropped.</p>
Block TCP flag scan	Check the box to activate the Block TCP flag scan function. Any TCP packet with anomaly flag setting is dropped. Those scanning activities include <i>no flag scan</i> , <i>FIN without ACK scan</i> , <i>SYN FINscan</i> , <i>Xmas scan</i> and <i>full Xmas scan</i> .
Block Tear Drop	Check the box to activate the Block Tear Drop function. Many machines may crash when receiving ICMP datagrams (packets) that exceed the maximum length. To avoid this type of attack, the Vigor router is designed to be capable of discarding any fragmented ICMP packets with a length greater than 1024 octets.
Block Ping of Death	Check the box to activate the Block Ping of Death function. This attack involves the perpetrator sending overlapping packets to the target hosts so that those target hosts will hang once they re-construct the packets. The Vigor routers will block any packets realizing this attacking activity.
Block ICMP Fragment	Check the box to activate the Block ICMP fragment function. Any ICMP packets with more fragment bit set are dropped.
Block Unassigned Numbers	Check the box to activate the Block Unknown Protocol function. Individual IP packet has a protocol field in the datagram header to indicate the protocol type running over the upper layer. However, the protocol types greater than 100 are reserved and undefined at this time. Therefore, the router should have ability to detect and reject this kind of packets.
Warning Messages	<p>We provide Syslog function for user to retrieve message from Vigor router. The user, as a Syslog Server, shall receive the report sending from Vigor router which is a Syslog Client.</p> <p>All the warning messages related to DoS Defense will be sent to user and user can review it through Syslog daemon. Look for the keyword DoS in the message, followed by a name to indicate what kind of attacks is detected.</p>



V-1-3-2 Spoofing Defense

Open Firewall >> Defense Setup and click Spoofing Defense to open the setup page.

Firewall >> Defense Setup

DoS Defense Spoofing Defense

ARP Spoofing Defense Log:

- Block ARP replies with inconsistent source MAC addresses.
- Block ARP replies with inconsistent destination MAC addresses.
- Decline VRRP MAC into ARP table.

IP Spoofing Defense

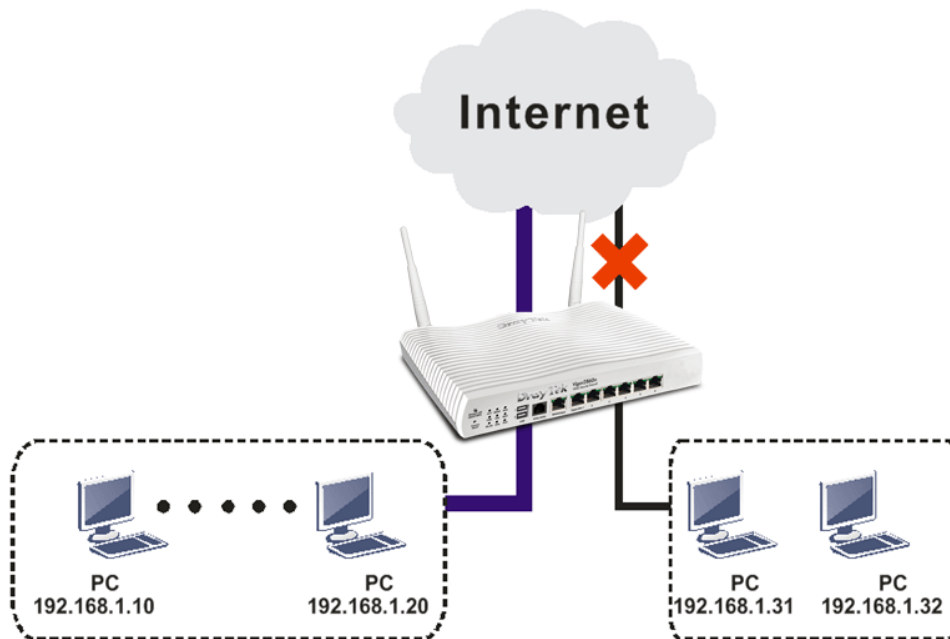
- Block IP packet from WAN with inconsistent source IP addresses.
- Block IP packet from LAN with inconsistent source IP addresses.

OK Cancel

Application Notes

A-1 How to Configure Certain Computers Accessing to Internet

We can specify certain computers (e.g., 192.168.1.10 ~ 192.168.1.20) accessing to Internet through Vigor router. Others (e.g., 192.168.1.31 and 192.168.1.32) outside the range can get the source from LAN only.



The way we can use is to set two rules under Firewall. For Rule 1 of Set 2 under Firewall>>Filter Setup is used as the default setting, we have to create a new rule starting from Filter Rule 2 of Set 2.

1. Access into the web user interface of Vigor router.
2. Open Firewall>>Filter Setup. Click the Set 2 link and choose the Filter Rule 2 button.

Firewall >> Filter Setup

Set	Comments	Set	Comments
1.	Default Data Filter	7.	
2.		8.	
3.		9.	
4.		10.	
5.		11.	
6.		12.	

Firewall >> Filter Setup >> Edit Filter Set

Filter Set

Comment: Default Data Filter

Rule	Enable	Comments	Direction	Src IP	Dst IP	Service Type	Action	CSM	Move Up	Move Down
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	xNetBios -> DNS	LAN/RT/VPN -> WAN	Any	Any	TCP/UDP, Port: from 137~139 to 53	Block Immediately			Down
2	<input type="checkbox"/>		LAN/RT/VPN -> WAN	Any	Any	Any	Pass Immediately		UP	Down

3. Check the box of **Check to enable the Filter Rule**. Type the comments (e.g., `block_all`). Choose **Block If No Further Match** for the **Filter** setting. Then, click **OK**.

Firewall >> Edit Filter Set >> Edit Filter Rule

Filter Set 1 Rule 2

Enable

Comments:

Schedule Profile
 None | None | None | None
 Clear sessions when schedule is ON

Direction: LAN/RT/VPN -> WAN [Advanced]

Source IP/Country: Any [Edit]

Destination IP/Country: Any [Edit]

Service Type: Any [Edit]

Fragments: Don't Care

Action/Profile: Block If No Further Match

Filter: [None]

Branch to Other Filter Set: [None]

Sessions Control: 0 / 50000

Syslog:



Info

In default, the router will check the packets starting with Set 2, Filter Rule 2 to Filter Rule 7. If Block If No Further Match for is selected for Filter, the firewall of the router would check the packets with the rules starting from Rule 3 to Rule 7. The packets not matching with the rules will be processed according to Rule 2.

4. Next, set another rule. Just open **Firewall>>Filter Setup**. Click the **Set 2** link and choose the **Filter Rule 3** button.
5. Check the box of **Enable**. Type the comments (e.g., `open_ip`). Click the **Edit** button for **Source IP**.

Firewall >> Edit Filter Set >> Edit Filter Rule

Filter Set 2 Rule 3

Enable

Comments:

Schedule Profile
 None | None | None | None
 Clear sessions when schedule is ON

Direction: LAN/RT/VPN -> WAN [Advanced]

Source IP: Any [Edit]

Destination IP: Any [Edit]

Service Type: Any [Edit]

Fragments: Don't Care

Application: [None]

Action/Profile: [None]

Syslog:

- A dialog box will be popped up. Choose **Range Address** as **Address Type** by using the drop down list. Type 192.168.1.10 in the field of **Start IP**, and type 192.168.1.20 in the field of **End IP**. Then, click **OK** to save the settings. The computers within the range can access into the Internet.

IP Address Edit

Address Type Range Address

Start IP Address 192.168.1.10

End IP Address 192.168.1.20

Subnet Mask 255.255.255.254 / 31

Invert Selection

IP Group None, None

IP Object None, None

IPv6 Group None

IPv6 Object None, None, None

OK Close

- Now, check the content of **Source IP** is correct or not. The action for **Filter** shall be set with **Pass Immediately**. Then, click **OK** to save the settings.

Firewall >> Edit Filter Set >> Edit Filter Rule

Filter Set 2 Rule 3

Enable

Comments open_ip

Schedule Profile None, None, None, None

Clear sessions when schedule is ON

Direction LAN/RT/VPN -> WAN Advanced

Source IP 192.168.1.10~192.168.1.20 Edit

Destination IP Any Edit

Service Type Any Edit

Fragments Don't Care

Application Action/Profile

Filter Pass Immediately Syslog

- Both filter rules have been created. Click **OK**.

Firewall >> Filter Setup >> Edit Filter Set

Filter Set 2

Comments : Default Data Filter

Rule	Enable	Comments	Direction	Src IP	Dst IP
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	xNetBios -> DNS	LAN/RT/VPN -> WAN	Any	Any
2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	block_all	LAN/RT/VPN -> WAN	Any	Any
3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	open_ip	LAN/RT/VPN -> WAN	192.168.1.10 ~ 192.168.1.20	Any

Now, all the settings are configured well. Only the computers with the IP addresses within 192.168.1.10 ~ 192.168.1.20 can access to Internet.

V-2 CSM (Central Security Management)

CSM is an abbreviation of **Central Security Management** which is used to control IM/P2P usage, filter the web content and URL content to reach a goal of security management.

APP Enforcement Filter

As the popularity of all kinds of instant messenger application arises, communication cannot become much easier. Nevertheless, while some industry may leverage this as a great tool to connect with their customers, some industry may take reserved attitude in order to reduce employee misuse during office hour or prevent unknown security leak. It is similar situation for corporation towards peer-to-peer applications since file-sharing can be convenient but insecure at the same time. To address these needs, we provide CSM functionality.

URL Content Filter

To provide an appropriate cyberspace to users, Vigor router equips with **URL Content Filter** not only to limit illegal traffic from/to the inappropriate web sites but also prohibit other web feature where malicious code may conceal.

Once a user type in or click on an URL with objectionable keywords, URL keyword blocking facility will decline the HTTP request to that web page thus can limit user's access to the website. You may imagine **URL Content Filter** as a well-trained convenience-store clerk who won't sell adult magazines to teenagers. At office, **URL Content Filter** can also provide a job-related only environment hence to increase the employee work efficiency. How can URL Content Filter work better than traditional firewall in the field of filtering? Because it checks the URL strings or some of HTTP data hiding in the payload of TCP packets while legacy firewall inspects packets based on the fields of TCP/IP headers only.

On the other hand, Vigor router can prevent user from accidentally downloading malicious codes from web pages. It's very common that malicious codes conceal in the executable objects, such as ActiveX, Java Applet, compressed files, and other executable files. Once downloading these types of files from websites, you may risk bringing threat to your system. For example, an ActiveX control object is usually used for providing interactive web feature. If malicious code hides inside, it may occupy user's system.

Web Content Filter

We all know that the content on the Internet just like other types of media may be inappropriate sometimes. As a responsible parent or employer, you should protect those in your trust against the hazards. With Web filtering service of the Vigor router, you can protect your business from common primary threats, such as productivity, legal liability, network and security threats. For parents, you can protect your children from viewing adult websites or chat rooms.

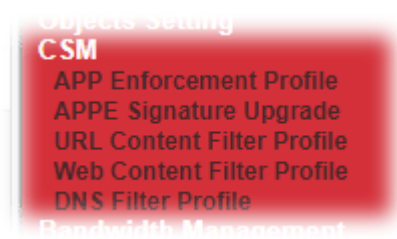
Once you have activated your Web Filtering service in Vigor router and chosen the categories of website you wish to restrict, each URL address requested (e.g. www.bbc.co.uk) will be checked against our server database. This database is updated as frequent as daily by a global team of Internet researchers. The server will look up the URL and return a category to your router. Your Vigor router will then decide whether to allow access to this site according to the categories you have selected. Please note that this action will not introduce any delay in your Web surfing because each of multiple load balanced database servers can handle millions of requests for categorization.



Info

The priority of URL Content Filter is higher than Web Content Filter.

Web User Interface



V-2-1 APP Enforcement Profile

You can define policy profiles for IM (Instant Messenger)/P2P (Peer to Peer)/Protocol/Misc application. This page allows you to set 32 profiles for different requirements. The APP Enforcement Profile will be applied in **Default Rule of Firewall>>General Setup** for filtering.

CSM >> APP Enforcement Profile



APP Enforcement Profile Table: [Set to Factory Default](#)

Profile	Name	Profile	Name
1.		17.	
2.		18.	
3.		19.	
4.		20.	
5.		21.	
6.		22.	
7.		23.	
8.		24.	
9.		25.	
10.		26.	
11.		27.	
12.		28.	
13.		29.	
14.		30.	
15.		31.	
16.		32.	

Note:

To make APP Enforcement profile effective, please go to [Firewall >> Filter Setup](#) page to create a firewall rule and select the desired profile.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Clear all profiles.
Profile	Display the number of the profile which allows you to click to set different policy.
Name	Display the name of the APP Enforcement Profile.

Click the number under Index column for settings in detail.

CSM >> APP Enforcement Profile

Profile Index : 1

Profile Name:

Category	Application			
Instant Message <input type="button" value="Select All"/> <input type="button" value="Clear All"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> AIM Login	<input type="checkbox"/> AliWW	<input type="checkbox"/> Ares	
	<input type="checkbox"/> BaiduHi	<input type="checkbox"/> Facebook/Instagram	<input type="checkbox"/> Fetion	
	<input type="checkbox"/> GaduGadu Protocol	<input type="checkbox"/> ICQ	<input type="checkbox"/> iSpQ	
	<input type="checkbox"/> KC	<input type="checkbox"/> LINE	<input type="checkbox"/> LinkedIn	
	<input type="checkbox"/> Paltalk	<input type="checkbox"/> PocoCall	<input type="checkbox"/> Qnext	
	<input type="checkbox"/> Signal	<input type="checkbox"/> Slack	<input type="checkbox"/> Snapchat	
	<input type="checkbox"/> Telegram	<input type="checkbox"/> Tencent QQ	<input type="checkbox"/> UC	
	<input type="checkbox"/> WebIM URLs	<input type="checkbox"/> WhatsApp		
	VoIP <input type="button" value="Select All"/> <input type="button" value="Clear All"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> RC Voice	<input type="checkbox"/> Skype	<input type="checkbox"/> TeamSpeak
		<input type="checkbox"/> TelTel	<input type="checkbox"/> WeChat	

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Profile Name	Type a name for the CSM profile. The maximum length of the name you can set is 15 characters.
Select All	Click it to choose all of the items in this page.
Clear All	Uncheck all the selected boxes.
Enable	Check the box to select the APP to be blocked by Vigor router.

The profiles configured here can be applied in the Firewall>>General Setup and Firewall>>Filter Setup pages as the standard for the host(s) to follow.

V-2-2 APPE Signature Upgrade

The APPE Enforcement Profile adopted by Vigor router will be treated as the APPE signature. DrayTek will periodically upgrade versions for all of the APPs supported by Vigor router. However, it might be inconvenient for users to upgrade the APP version one by one. This feature is specially designed to offer a quick method to execute APP version upgrade. Users can perform the APPE signature upgrade manually or configure the settings on this page to make Vigor router performing the APPE signature automatically.

CSM >> APPE Signature Upgrade

APP Enforcement License
[Status: **Inactivated**]

[Activate](#)

Upgrade Setting

APPE Module Version: 15.21 [APPE Support List](#)

Upgrade via interface:

(Waiting for WAN connection...)

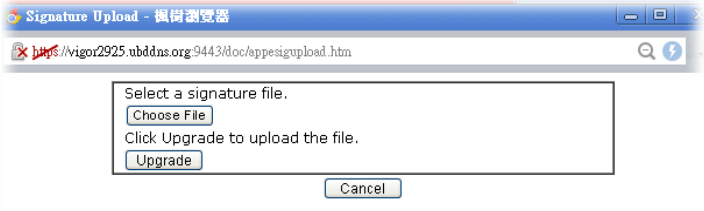
Setup Download Server	<input type="text" value="auto-selected"/>	Find more
Signature authentication / download message		
<pre>[2000-01-01 00:00:00] Load APPE signature failed. System will use APPE default signature.</pre>		

Upgrade Manually	<input type="button" value="Import"/>
-------------------------	---------------------------------------

Upgrade Automatically			
<input type="checkbox"/> Scheduled Update			
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Every:	<input type="text" value="1"/> (hour)	<input type="text" value="00"/> (minutes after the hour)	
<input type="radio"/> Daily:	<input type="text" value="0"/> (hour)	<input type="text" value="00"/> (minute)	
<input type="radio"/> Weekly:	<input type="text" value="Sunday"/> (day)	<input type="text" value="0"/> (hour)	<input type="text" value="00"/> (minute)

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Upgrade Setting	<p>APPE Module Version - Display current version status of APPE signature.</p> <p>New version from the Internet - Download button is available only when Vigor router detects new APPE version. After clicking it, a dialog will appear with information added to such new version. Click OK to exit the dialog and start the signature upgrade.</p> <p>Upgrade via interface - Choose one of the WAN interfaces as a channel for APPE signature upgrade.</p>
Setup Download Server	<p>Specify the download server by typing the URL of the server located. Or you can click Find more link to search the one you want.</p> <p>Signature authentication/download message - Display the status of APPE Signature Upgrade.</p>
Upgrade Manually	<p>Import - Click this button to open the following page. Press Choose File to locate the signature file which downloaded from MyVigor portal or FTP server previously. Then, click</p>

	<p>Upgrade and wait for the system completing the process.</p> 
<p>Upgrade Automatically</p>	<p>Scheduled Update - Check the box to make Vigor router upgrading the APPE signature based on the schedule configured here.</p>

After finishing all the settings, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

V-2-3 URL Content Filter Profile

To provide an appropriate cyberspace to users, Vigor router equips with **URL Content Filter** not only to limit illegal traffic from/to the inappropriate web sites but also prohibit other web feature where malicious code may conceal.

Once a user type in or click on an URL with objectionable keywords, URL keyword blocking facility will decline the HTTP request to that web page thus can limit user's access to the website. You may imagine **URL Content Filter** as a well-trained convenience-store clerk who won't sell adult magazines to teenagers. At office, **URL Content Filter** can also provide a job-related only environment hence to increase the employee work efficiency. How can URL Content Filter work better than traditional firewall in the field of filtering? Because it checks the URL strings or some of HTTP data hiding in the payload of TCP packets while legacy firewall inspects packets based on the fields of TCP/IP headers only.

On the other hand, Vigor router can prevent user from accidentally downloading malicious codes from web pages. It's very common that malicious codes conceal in the executable objects, such as ActiveX, Java Applet, compressed files, and other executable files. Once downloading these types of files from websites, you may risk bringing threat to your system. For example, an ActiveX control object is usually used for providing interactive web feature. If malicious code hides inside, it may occupy user's system.

For example, if you add key words such as "sex", Vigor router will limit web access to web sites or web pages such as "www.sex.com", "www.backdoor.net/images/sex/p_386.html". Or you may simply specify the full or partial URL such as "www.sex.com" or "sex.com".

Also the Vigor router will discard any request that tries to retrieve the malicious code.

Click **CSM** and click **URL Content Filter Profile** to open the profile setting page.



URL Content Filter Profile Table:

[Set to Factory Default](#)

Profile	Name	Profile	Name
1.		5.	
2.		6.	
3.		7.	
4.		8.	

Note:

To make URL Content Filter profile effective, please go to [Firewall >> Filter Setup](#) page to create a firewall rule and select the desired profile.

Administration Message (Max 255 characters)

[Default Message](#)

```
<body><center><br><p>The requested Web page has been blocked by URL Content Filter.<p>Please contact your system administrator for further information.</center></body>
```

OK

Each item is explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Clear all profiles.
Profile	Display the number of the profile which allows you to click to set different policy.
Name	Display the name of the URL Content Filter Profile.
Administration Message	You can type the message manually for your necessity. Default Message - You can type the message manually for your necessity or click this button to get the default message which will be displayed on the field of Administration Message .

You can set eight profiles as URL content filter. Simply click the index number under Profile to open the following web page.

CSM >> URL Content Filter Profile

Profile Index: 1

Profile Name:

Priority: Log:

1.URL Access Control

Enable URL Access Control Prevent web access from IP address

Action:

Exception List

2.Web Feature

Enable Web Feature Restriction

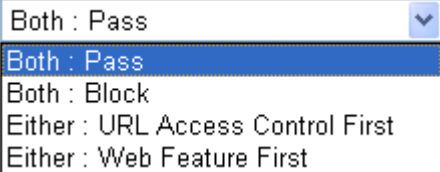
Action: **File Extension Profile:** Cookie Proxy Upload

OK

Clear

Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Profile Name	Type a name for the CSM profile. The maximum length of the name you can set is 15 characters.
Priority	<p>It determines the action that this router will apply.</p> <p>Both: Pass - The router will let all the packages that match with the conditions specified in URL Access Control and Web Feature below passing through. When you choose this setting, both configuration set in this page for URL Access Control and Web Feature will be inactive.</p> <p>Both: Block -The router will block all the packages that match with the conditions specified in URL Access Control and Web Feature below. When you choose this setting, both configuration set in this page for URL Access Control and Web Feature will be inactive.</p> <p>Either: URL Access Control First - When all the packages matching with the conditions specified in URL Access Control and Web Feature below, such function can determine the priority for the actions executed. For this one, the router will process the packages with the conditions set below for URL first, then Web feature second.</p> <p>Either: Web Feature First -When all the packages matching with the conditions specified in URL Access Control and Web Feature below, such function can determine the priority for the actions executed. For this one, the router will process the packages with the conditions set below for web feature first, then URL second.</p> 
Log	<p>Pass - Only the log about Pass will be recorded in Syslog.</p> <p>Block - Only the log about Block will be recorded in Syslog.</p> <p>All - All the actions (Pass and Block) will be recorded in Syslog.</p>
URL Access Control	<p>Enable URL Access Control - Check the box to activate URL Access Control. Note that the priority for URL Access Control is higher than Restrict Web Feature. If the web content match the setting set in URL Access Control, the router will execute the action specified in this field and ignore the action specified under Restrict Web Feature.</p> <p>Prevent web access from IP address - Check the box to deny any web surfing activity using IP address, such as http://202.6.3.2. The reason for this is to prevent someone dodges the URL Access Control. You must clear your browser cache first so that the URL content filtering facility operates properly on a web page that you visited before.</p> <p>Action - This setting is available only when Either : URL Access Control First or Either : Web Feature First is selected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Pass - Allow accessing into the corresponding webpage with the keywords listed on the box below. ● Block - Restrict accessing into the corresponding webpage with the keywords listed on the box below.

If the web pages do not match with the keyword set here, it will be processed with reverse action.

Exception List - Specify the object profile(s) as the exception list which will be processed in an opposite manner to the action selected above.

Group/Object Selections - The Vigor router provides several frames for users to define keywords and each frame supports multiple keywords. The keyword could be a noun, a partial noun, or a complete URL string. Multiple keywords within a frame are separated by space, comma, or semicolon. In addition, the maximal length of each frame is 32-character long. After specifying keywords, the Vigor router will decline the connection request to the website whose URL string matched to any user-defined keyword. It should be noticed that the more simplified the blocking keyword list is, the more efficiently the Vigor router performs.

Object/Group Edit

Keyword Object	None ▾
or Keyword Object	None ▾
or Keyword Object	None ▾
or Keyword Object	None ▾
or Keyword Object	None ▾
or Keyword Object	None ▾
or Keyword Object	None ▾
or Keyword Object	None ▾
or Keyword Group	None ▾
or Keyword Group	None ▾
or Keyword Group	None ▾
or Keyword Group	None ▾
or Keyword Group	None ▾
or Keyword Group	None ▾
or Keyword Group	None ▾
or Keyword Group	None ▾
or Keyword Group	None ▾

OK Close

Web Feature

Enable Restrict Web Feature - Check this box to make the keyword being blocked or passed.

Action - This setting is available only when **Either: URL Access Control First** or **Either: Web Feature First** is selected.

- **Pass** - Allow accessing into the corresponding webpage with the keywords listed on the box below.
- **Block** - Restrict accessing into the corresponding webpage with the keywords listed on the box below. If the web pages do not match with the specified feature set here, it will be processed with reverse action.

Cookie - Check the box to filter out the cookie transmission from inside to outside world to protect the local user's privacy.

Proxy - Check the box to reject any proxy transmission. To control efficiently the limited-bandwidth usage, it will be of great value to provide the blocking mechanism that filters out the multimedia files downloading from web pages.

Upload - Check the box to block the file upload by way of web page.

File Extension Profile - Choose one of the profiles that you

configured in **Object Setting>> File Extension Objects** previously for passing or blocking the file downloading.



After finishing all the settings, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

V-2-4 Web Content Filter Profile

There are three ways to activate WCF on vigor router, using **Service Activation Wizard**, by means of **CSM>>Web Content Filter Profile** or via **System Maintenance>>Activation**.

Service Activation Wizard allows you to use trial version of WCF directly without accessing into the server (**MyVigor**) located on <http://myvigor.draytek.com>.

However, if you use the **Web Content Filter Profile** page to activate WCF feature, it is necessary for you to access into the server (**MyVigor**) located on <http://myvigor.draytek.com>. Therefore, you need to register an account on <http://myvigor.draytek.com> for using corresponding service. Please refer to section of creating MyVigor account.

WCF adopts the mechanism developed and offered by certain service provider (e.g., DrayTek). No matter activating WCF feature or getting a new license for web content filter, you have to click **Activate** to satisfy your request. Be aware that service provider matching with Vigor router currently offers a period of time for trial version for users to experiment. If you want to purchase a formal edition, simply contact with the channel partner or your dealer.

Click **CSM** and click **Web Content Filter Profile** to open the profile setting page. The default setting for Setup Query Server /Setup Test Server is **auto-selected**. You can choose another server for your necessity by clicking **Find more** to open <http://myvigor.draytek.com> for searching another qualified and suitable one.



Info 1

Web Content Filter (WCF) is not a built-in service of Vigor router but a service powered by Commtouch. If you want to use such service (trial or formal edition), you have to perform the procedure of activation first. For the service of formal edition, please contact with your dealer/distributor for detailed information.

Info 2

Commtouch is merged by Cyren, and GlobalView services will be continued to deliver powerful cloud-based information security solutions! Refer to: <http://www.prnewswire.com/news-releases/commtouch-is-now-cyren-239025151.html>



Web-Filter License

[Activate](#)

[Status: **Inactivated**]

Setup Query Server	auto-selected	Find more
Setup Test Server	auto-selected	Find more

Web Content Filter Profile Table:

Cache : L1 + L2 Cache

[Set to Factory Default](#)

Profile	Name	Profile	Name
1.	Default	5.	
2.		6.	
3.		7.	
4.		8.	

Note:

To make Web Content Filter profile effective, please go to [Firewall >> Filter Setup](#) page to create a firewall rule and select the desired profile.

Administration Message (Max 255 characters)

[Default Message](#)

```
<body><center><br><br><br><p>The requested Web page <br> from %SIP% <br>to %URL% <br>that is categorized with %CL% <br>has been blocked by %RNAME% Web Content Filter.<p>Please contact your system administrator for further information.</center></body>
```

Legend:

%SIP% - Source IP , %DIP% - Destination IP , %URL% - URL
 %CL% - Category , %RNAME% - Router Name

OK

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Activate	Click it to access into MyVigor for activating WCF service.
Setup Query Server	It is recommended for you to use the default setting, auto-selected. You need to specify a server for categorize searching when you type URL in browser based on the web content filter profile.
Setup Test Server	It is recommended for you to use the default setting, auto-selected.
Find more	Click it to open http://myvigor.draytek.com for searching another qualified and suitable server.
Cache	<p>None - the router will check the URL that the user wants to access via WCF precisely, however, the processing rate is normal. Such item can provide the most accurate URL matching.</p> <p>L1 - the router will check the URL that the user wants to access via WCF. If the URL has been accessed previously, it will be stored in the router to be accessed quickly if required. Such item can provide accurate URL matching with faster rate.</p> <p>L2 - the router will check the URL that the user wants to access via WCF. If the data has been accessed previously, the IP addresses of source and destination IDs will be memorized for a short time (about 1 second) in the router. When the user tries to access the same destination ID, the router will check it by comparing the record stored. If it matches, the</p>

	page will be retrieved quickly. Such item can provide URL matching with the fastest rate. L1+L2 Cache - the router will check the URL with fast processing rate combining the feature of L1 and L2.
Set to Factory Default	Click this link to retrieve the factory settings.
Default Message	You can type the message manually for your necessity or click this button to get the default message which will be displayed on the field of Administration Message .

Eight profiles are provided here as Web content filters. Simply click the index number under Profile to open the following web page. The items listed in Categories will be changed according to the different service providers. If you have and activate another web content filter license, the items will be changed simultaneously. All of the configuration made for web content filter will be deleted automatically. Therefore, please backup your data before you change the web content filter license.

CSM >> Web Content Filter Profile

Profile Index: 1
Profile Name: Log: ▾

Black/White List

Enable

Action: ▾ URL keywords:

Action: ▾

Security

Basic Categories

Anonymizers Botnets Compromised
 Malware Network Errors Parked Domains
 Phishing & Fraud Spam Sites

Parental Control

Basic Categories

Alcohol & Tobacco Chat Child Abuse Images
 Criminal Activity Cults Hate & Intolerance
 Illegal Drugs Nudity Pornography/ Sexula Explicit
 School Cheating Sex Education Tasteless
 Violence Weapons

Productivity

Basic Categories

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Profile Name	Type a name for the CSM profile. The maximum length of the name you can set is 15 characters.
Log	Pass - Only the log about Pass will be recorded in Syslog. Block - Only the log about Block will be recorded in Syslog. All - All the actions (Pass and Block) will be recorded in Syslog.
Black/White List	Enable - Activate white/black list function for such profile. Group/Object Selections - Click Edit to choose the group or object profile as the content of white/black list. Pass - allow accessing into the corresponding webpage with the characters listed on Group/Object Selections. If the web pages do not match with the specified feature set here, they will be processed with the categories listed on the box below.

	<p>Block - restrict accessing into the corresponding webpage with the characters listed on Group/Object Selections. If the web pages do not match with the specified feature set here, they will be processed with the categories listed on the box below.</p>
Action	<p>Pass - allow accessing into the corresponding webpage with the categories listed on the box below.</p> <p>Block - restrict accessing into the corresponding webpage with the categories listed on the box below. If the web pages do not match with the specified feature set here, it will be processed with reverse action.</p>

After finishing all the settings, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

V-2-5 DNS Filter Profile

The DNS Filter monitors DNS queries on UDP port 53 and will pass the DNS query information to the WCF to help with categorizing HTTPS URL's.

DNS can be specified in LAN>>General Setup by using the server (e.g., 168.95.1.1) on router or external DNS server (e.g., 8.8.8.8). If the router server is used, DNS Filter General Setting will be applied to DNS query from clients on LAN. However, if the external DNS server is used, DNS Filter Profile will be applied to DNS query coming from clients on LAN.



Info

For DNS filter must use the WCF service profile to filter the packets, therefore WCF license must be activated first. Otherwise, DNS filter does not have any effect on packets.

CSM >> DNS Filter

DNS Filter Profile Table

[Set to Factory Default](#)

Profile	Name	Profile	Name
1.		5.	
2.		6.	
3.		7.	
4.		8.	

Note:

To make DNS Filter profile effective, please go to [Firewall >> Filter Setup](#) page to create a firewall rule and select the desired profile.

DNS Filter Local Setting

DNS Filter	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	
Web Content Filter	None	▼
URL Content Filter	None	▼
Syslog	None	▼
Black/White List	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	Blacklist ▼
Address Type		Any Address ▼
Start IP Address		0.0.0.0
End IP Address		0.0.0.0
Subnet Mask		0.0.0.0
IP Group		None ▼
or IP Group		None ▼
or IP Object		None ▼
or IP Object		None ▼

Administration Message (Max 255 characters)

[Default Message](#)

```
<body><center><br><br><br><p>The requested Web page <br> from %SIP% <br>to %URL% <br>that is categorized with %CL% <br>has been blocked by %RNAME% DNS Filter.<p>Please contact your system administrator for further information.</center></body>
```

Legend:

%SIP% - Source IP , %URL% - URL
%CL% - Category , %RNAME% - Router Name

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
DNS Filter Profile Table	<p>It displays a list of different DNS filter profiles (with specified WCF and UCF).</p> <p>Click the profile link to open the following page. Then, type the name of the profile and specify WCF/UCF based on your requirement.</p>
DNS Filter Local Setting	<p>DNS Filter Local Setting will be applied to DNS query from clients on LAN when router's DNS server is used.</p> <p>DNS Filter - Check Enable to enable such feature.</p> <p>Web Content Filter- Set the filtering conditions.</p> <p>URL Content Filter - Set the filtering conditions.</p> <p>Syslog - The filtering result can be recorded according to the setting selected for Syslog.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● None - There is no log file will be recorded for this profile. ● Pass - Only the log about Pass will be recorded in Syslog. ● Block - Only the log about Block will be recorded in Syslog. ● All - All the actions (Pass and Block) will be recorded in Syslog. <p>Black/White List - Check the box to specify IP address, subnet mask, IP object, or IP group as a black list or white list for DNS packets passing through or blocked by Vigor router.</p>
Administration Message	<p>When DNS packets are blocked by DNS filter, a web page containing the description listed on Administration Message will be shown on the screen.</p> <p>Enter the words or sentences which will be displayed when a web page is blocked by Vigor router. You can enter the message manually for your necessity or click Default Message button to get the default text displayed on the field of Administration Message.</p>

After finishing all the settings, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

Application Notes

A-1 How to Create an Account for MyVigor

The website of MyVigor (a server located on <http://myvigor.draytek.com>) provides several useful services (such as Anti-Spam, Web Content Filter, Anti-Intrusion, and etc.) to filtering the web pages for the sake of protecting your system.

To access into MyVigor for getting more information, please create an account for MyVigor.

Create an Account via Vigor Router

1. Click CSM>> Web Content Filter Profile. The following page will appear.

CSM >> Web Content Filter Profile ?

Web-Filter License **Activate**
[Status: **Inactivated**]

Setup Query Server	<input type="text" value="auto-selected"/>	Find more
Setup Test Server	<input type="text" value="auto-selected"/>	Find more

Web Content Filter Profile Table: Cache : | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Profile	Name	Profile	Name
1.	Default	5.	
2.		6.	
3.		7.	
4.		8.	

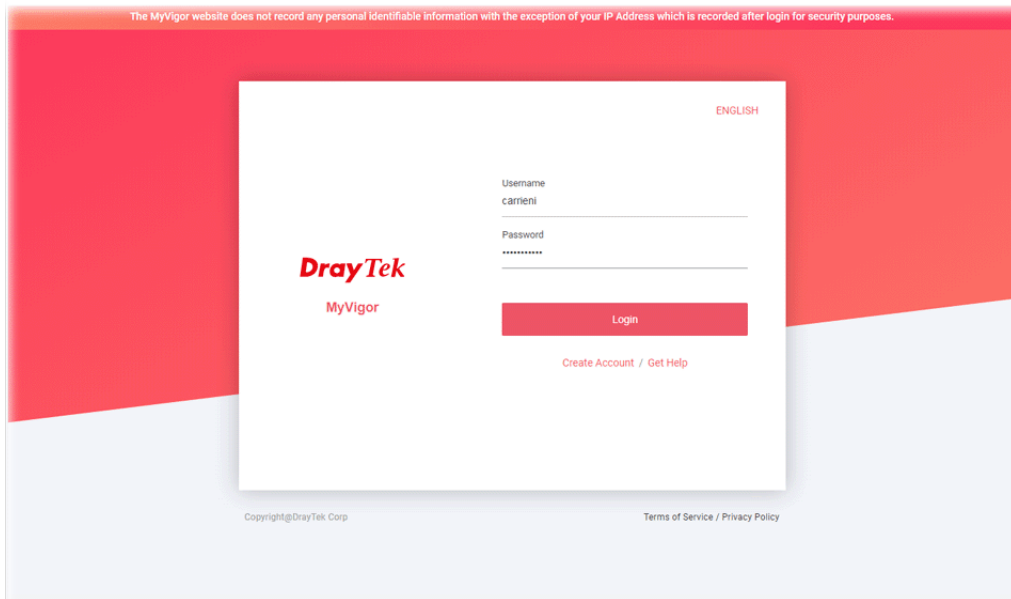
Note:
To make Web Content Filter profile effective, please go to [Firewall >> Filter Setup](#) page to create a firewall rule and select the desired profile.

Administration Message (Max 255 characters)

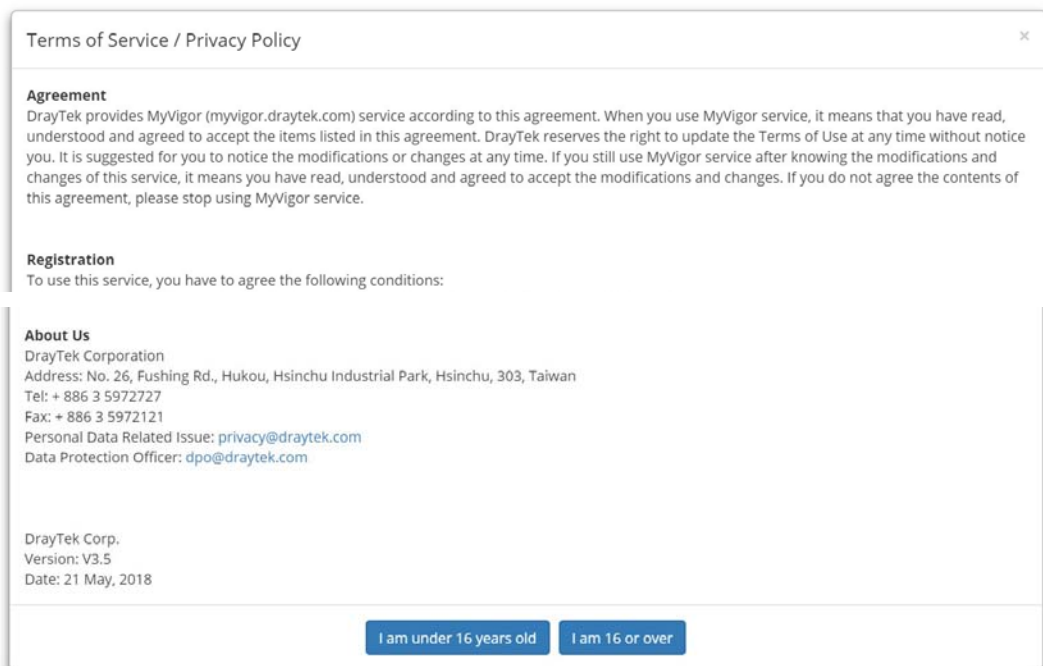
```
<body><center><br><br><br><p>The requested Web page <br> from %SIP% <br>to %URL% <br>that is categorized with %CL% <br>has been blocked by %RNAME% Web Content Filter.<p>Please contact your system administrator for further information.</center></body>
```

Legend:
%SIP% - Source IP , %DIP% - Destination IP , %URL% - URL
%CL% - Category , %RNAME% - Router Name

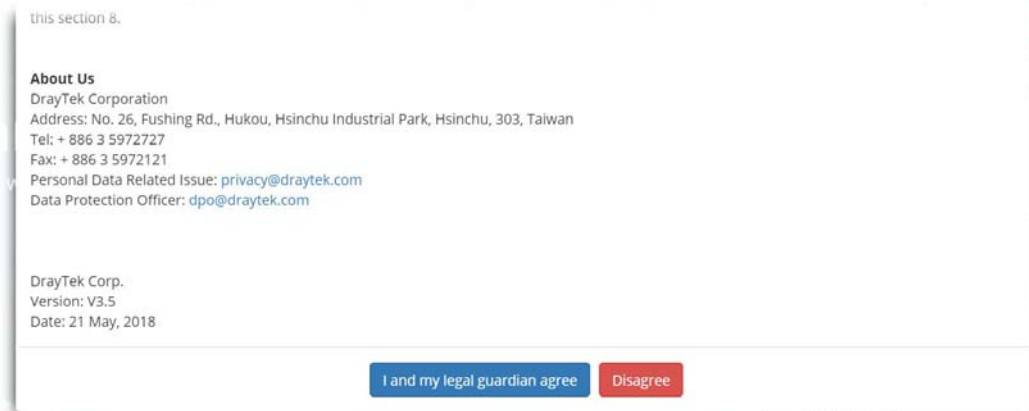
2. Click the Activate link. A login page for MyVigor web site will pop up automatically.



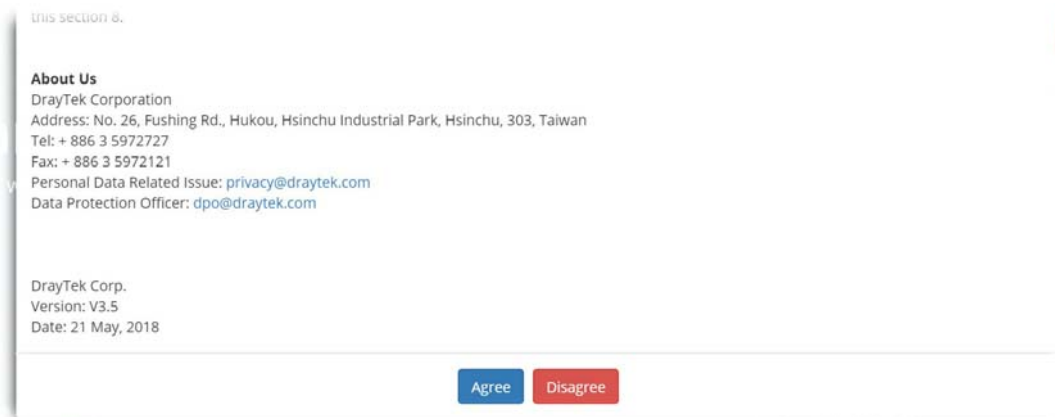
3. Click the link of **Create an account now**.
4. The system will ask if you are 16 years old or over.
 - If yes, click **I am 16 or over**.



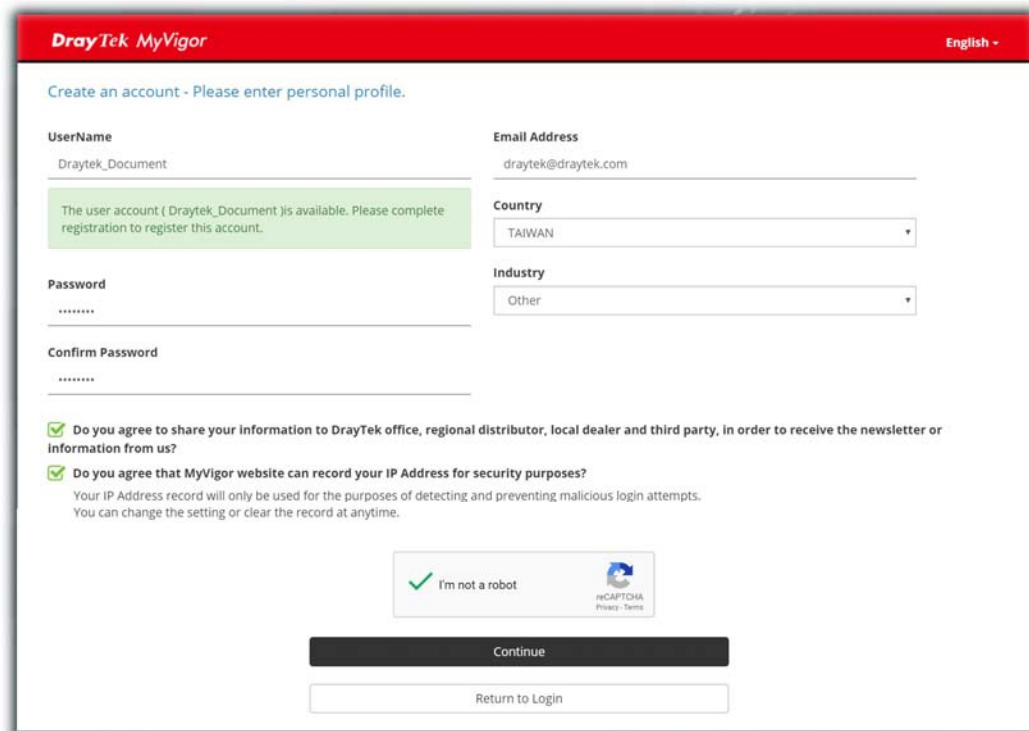
- If not, click I am under 16 years old to get the following page. Then, click I and my legal guardian agree.



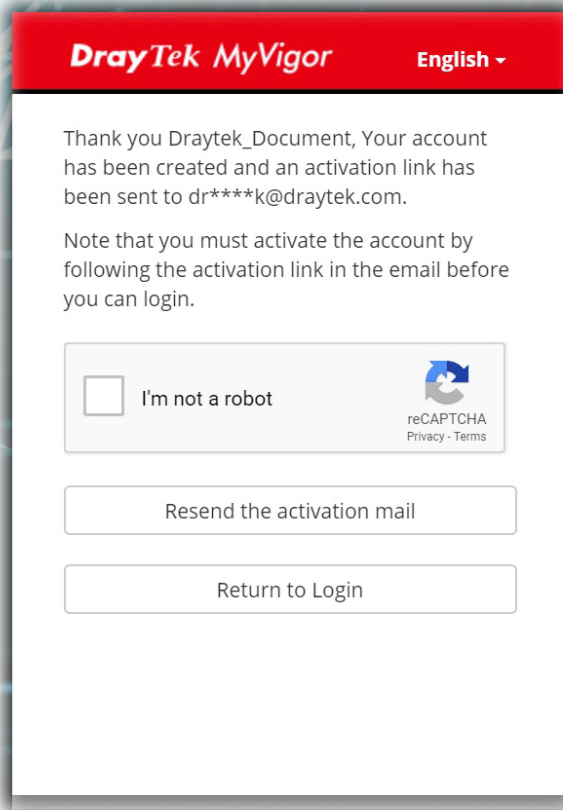
5. After reading the terms of service/privacy policy, click Agree.



6. In the following page, enter your personal information in this page and then click Continue.



7. Choose proper selection for your computer and click **Continue**.



8. Now you have created an account successfully.
9. Check to see the confirmation *email* with the title of **New Account Confirmation Letter from myvigor.draytek.com**.

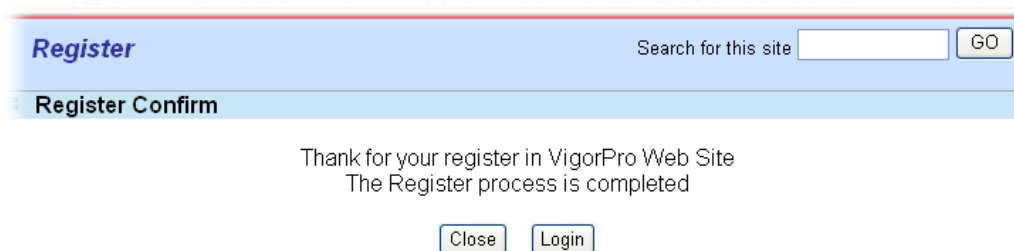
***** This is an automated message from myvigor.draytek.com.*****

Thank you (**Mary**) for creating an account.

Please click on the activation link below to activate your account

Link : [Activate my Account](#)

10. Click the **Activate my Account** link to enable the account that you created. The following screen will be shown to verify the register process is finished. Please click **Login**.



11. When you see the following page, please type in the account and password (that you just created) in the fields of **UserName** and **Password**.

The MyVigor website does not record any personal identifiable information with the exception of your IP Address which is recorded after login for security purposes.

ENGLISH

DrayTek
MyVigor

Username
carleni

Password

Login

[Create Account / Get Help](#)

Copyright©DrayTek Corp [Terms of Service / Privacy Policy](#)

12. Now, click **Login**. Your account has been activated. You can access into MyVigor server to activate the service (e.g., WCF) that you want.

A-2 How to Block Facebook Service Accessed by the Users via Web Content Filter / URL Content Filter

There are two ways to block the facebook service, Web Content Filter and URL Content Filter.

Web Content Filter,

Benefits: Easily and quickly implement the category/website that you want to block.

Note: License is required.


URL Content Filter,

Benefits: Free, flexible for customize webpage.

Note: Manual setting (e.g., one keyword for one website.)

I. Via Web Content Filter

1. Make sure the Web Content Filter (powered by Commtouch) license is valid.

CSM >> **Web Content Filter Profile** 

Web-Filter License [Activate](#)
 [Status: **Commtouch**] [Start Date: **2012-12-31** Expire Date: **2013-01-08**]

Setup Query Server	<input type="text" value="auto-selected"/>	Find more
Setup Test Server	<input type="text" value="auto-selected"/>	Find more

Web Content Filter Profile Table: [Set to Factory Default](#)

Profile	Name	Profile	Name
<u>1.</u>	Default	<u>5.</u>	
<u>2.</u>		<u>6.</u>	
<u>3.</u>		<u>7.</u>	
<u>4.</u>		<u>8.</u>	

Cache : ▼

Administration Message (Max 255 characters)

```
<body><center><br><br><br><p>The requested Web page <br> from %SIP% <br>to %URL%
<br>that is categorized with %CL% <br>has been blocked by %RNAME% Web Content Filter.
<p>Please contact your system administrator for further information.</center></body>
```

- Open CSM >> Web Content Filter Profile to create a WCF profile. Check Social Networking with Action, Block.

Action: Block

Security

Select All
Clear All

Basic Categories

Anonymizers
 Malware
 Phishing & Fraud

Botnets
 Network Errors
 Spam Sites

Compromised
 Parked Domains

Parental Control

Select All
Clear All

Basic Categories

Alcohol & Tobacco
 Criminal Activity
 Illegal Drugs
 School Cheating
 Violence

Chat
 Cults
 Nudity
 Sex Education
 Weapons

Child Abuse Images
 Hate & Intolerance
 Pornography/ Sexula Explicit
 Tasteless

Productivity

Select All
Clear All

Basic Categories

Advertisement & Pop-Ups
 Gambling
 Illegal Software
 Job Search
 Social Networking

Dating & Personals
 Games
 Image Sharing
 Peer-to-Peer
 Sports

Download Sites
 Hacking
 Instant Messaging
 Shopping
 Streaming Media & Downloads

- Enable this profile in Firewall>>General Setup>>Default Rule.

Firewall >> General Setup

General Setup

General Setup | Default Rule

Actions for default rule:

Application	Action/Profile	Syslog
Filter	Pass	<input type="checkbox"/>
Sessions Control	0 / 50000	<input type="checkbox"/>
Quality of Service	None	<input type="checkbox"/>
User Management	None	<input type="checkbox"/>
APP Enforcement	None	<input type="checkbox"/>
URL Content Filter	None	<input type="checkbox"/>
Web Content Filter	None	<input type="checkbox"/>
DNS Filter	None	<input type="checkbox"/>

Advance Setting

OK Cancel

Backup Firewall : Backup Restore Firewall: 選擇檔案 未選擇任何檔案 Restore

- Next time when someone accesses facebook via this router, the web page would be blocked and the following message would be displayed instead.

The requested Web page
 from 192.168.2.114
 to www.facebook.com/
 that is categorized with [Social Networking]
 has been blocked by Web Content Filter.

Please contact your system administrator for further information.

[Powered by DrayTek]

II. Via URL Content Filter

A. Block the web page containing the word of “Facebook”

- Open Object Settings>>Keyword Object. Click an index number to open the setting page.
- In the field of Contents, please type *facebook*. Configure the settings as the following figure.

Objects Setting >> Keyword Object Setup

Profile Index : 1

Name	Facebook
Contents	facebook

Limit of Contents: Max 3 Words and Characters.
 Each word should be separated by a single space.

You can replace a character with %HEX.
 Example:
 Contents: backdoo%72 virus keep%20out

Result:
 1. backdoor
 2. virus
 3. keep out

[Next >>](#)

OK Clear Cancel

- Open CSM>>URL Content Filter Profile. Click an index number to open the setting page.
- Configure the settings as the following figure.

Profile Index: 1

Profile Name:

Priority: Log:

1.URL Access Control

Enable URL Access Control Prevent web access from IP address

Action:

Exception List

2.Web Feature

Enable Web Feature Restriction

Action: **File Extension Profile:** Cookie Proxy Upload

5. When you finished the above steps, click **OK**. Then, open **Firewall>>General Setup**.
6. Click the **Default Rule** tab. Choose the profile just configured from the drop down list in the field of **URL Content Filter**. Now, users cannot open any web page with the word "facebook" inside.

General Setup

Actions for default rule:		
Application	Action/Profile	Syslog
Filter	<input type="text" value="Pass"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Sessions Control	0 / <input type="text" value="50000"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Quality of Service	<input type="text" value="None"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
User Management	<input type="text" value="None"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
APP Enforcement	<input type="text" value="None"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
URL Content Filter	<input type="text" value="1-Facebook"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Web Content Filter	<input type="text" value="None"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
DNS Filter	<input type="text" value="None"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Advance Setting

B. Disallow users to play games on Facebook

1. Open **Object Settings>>Keyword Object**. Click an index number to open the setting page.
2. In the field of **Contents**, please type *apps.facebook*. Configure the settings as the following figure.

Objects Setting >> Keyword Object Setup

Profile Index : 2

Name	facebook.apps
Contents	apps facebook

Limit of Contents: Max 3 Words and Characters.
Each word should be separated by a single space.

You can replace a character with %HEX.
Example:
Contents: backdoo%72 virus keep%20out

Result:
1. backdoor
2. virus
3. keep out

<< Previous Next >>

OK Clear Cancel

3. Open CSM>>URL Content Filter Profile. Click an index number to open the setting page.
4. Configure the settings as the following figure.

CSM >> URL Content Filter Profile

Profile Index: 2

Profile Name:	face.apps		
Priority:	Either : URL Access Control First	Log:	Block

1.URL Access Control

Enable URL Access Control Prevent web access from IP address

Action: Group/Object Selections

Pass Facebook Edit

Exception List Edit

2.Web Feature

Enable Web Feature Restriction

Action: Pass File Extension Profile: None Cookie Proxy Upload

OK Clear Cancel

5. When you finished the above steps, please open Firewall>>General Setup.
6. Click the **Default Rule** tab. Choose the profile just configured from the drop down list in the field of URL Content Filter. Now, users cannot open any web page with the word "facebook" inside.

General Setup

General Setup	Default Rule	
Actions for default rule:		
Application	Action/Profile	Syslog
Filter	Pass ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>
Sessions Control	0 / 50000	<input type="checkbox"/>
Quality of Service	None ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>
User Management	None ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>
APP Enforcement	None ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>
URL Content Filter	None ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>
Web Content Filter	None ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>
DNS Filter	[Create New] 1-Facebook 2-face.apps	<input type="checkbox"/>
Advance Setting	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>	

This page is left blank.

Part VI Management



System
Maintenance



Bandwidth
Management



User
Management

There are several items offered for the Vigor router system setup: System Status, TR-069, Administrator Password, User Password, Login Page Greeting, Configuration Backup, Syslog /Mail Alert, Time and Date, Management, Reboot System, Firmware Upgrade and Activation.

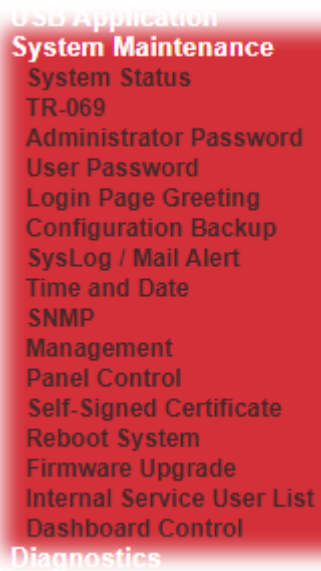
It is used to control the bandwidth of data transmission through configuration of Sessions Limit, Bandwidth Limit, and Quality of Service (QoS).

It is a security feature which disallows any IP traffic (except DHCP-related packets) from a particular host until that host has correctly supplied a valid username and password.

VI-1 System Maintenance

For the system setup, there are several items that you have to know the way of configuration: System Status, TR-069, Administrator Password, User Password, Login Page Greeting, Configuration Backup, Syslog /Mail Alert, Time and Date, Management, Reboot System, Firmware Upgrade, and Internal Service User List.

Below shows the menu items for System Maintenance.



USB Application
System Maintenance
System Status
TR-069
Administrator Password
User Password
Login Page Greeting
Configuration Backup
SysLog / Mail Alert
Time and Date
SNMP
Management
Panel Control
Self-Signed Certificate
Reboot System
Firmware Upgrade
Internal Service User List
Dashboard Control
Diagnostics

Web User Interface

VI-1-1 System Status

The **System Status** provides basic network settings of Vigor router. It includes LAN and WAN interface information. Also, you could get the current running firmware version or firmware related information from this presentation.

System Status

Model Name : Vigor2832n
Firmware Version : 3.9.6.3
Build Date/Time : Jan 11 2023 09:04:09

LAN					
	MAC Address	IP Address	Subnet Mask	DHCP Server	DNS
LAN1	00-1D-AA-54-A3-F8	192.168.1.80	255.255.255.0	OFF	8.8.8.8
LAN2	00-1D-AA-54-A3-F8	192.168.2.1	255.255.255.0	ON	8.8.8.8
LAN3	00-1D-AA-54-A3-F8	192.168.3.1	255.255.255.0	ON	8.8.8.8
LAN4	00-1D-AA-54-A3-F8	192.168.4.1	255.255.255.0	ON	8.8.8.8
IP Routed Subnet	00-1D-AA-54-A3-F8	192.168.0.1	255.255.255.0	ON	8.8.8.8

Wireless LAN			
MAC Address	Frequency Domain	Firmware Version	SSID
00-1D-AA-54-A3-F8	Europe	3.3	DrayTek

WAN					
	Link Status	MAC Address	Connection	IP Address	Default Gateway
WAN1	Disconnected	00-1D-AA-54-A3-F9	PPPoE	---	---
WAN2	Disconnected	00-1D-AA-54-A3-FA	DHCP Client	---	---
WAN3	Disconnected	00-1D-AA-54-A3-FB	---	---	---
WAN4	Disconnected	00-1D-AA-54-A3-FC	---	---	---

IPv6			
	Address	Scope	Internet Access Mode
LAN	FE80::21D:AAFF:FE54:A3F8/64	Link	---

User Mode is **OFF** now.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Model Name	Display the model name of the router.
Firmware Version	Display the firmware version of the router.
Build Date/Time	Display the date and time of the current firmware build.
LAN	MAC Address - Display the MAC address of the LAN Interface. IP Address - Display the IP address of the LAN interface. Subnet Mask - Display the subnet mask address of the LAN interface. DHCP Server - Display the current status of DHCP server of the LAN interface DNS - Display the assigned IP address of the primary DNS.

WAN	<p>Link Status - Display current connection status.</p> <p>MAC Address - Display the MAC address of the WAN Interface.</p> <p>Connection - Display the connection type.</p> <p>IP Address - Display the IP address of the WAN interface.</p> <p>Default Gateway - Display the assigned IP address of the default gateway.</p>
IPv6	<p>Address - Display the IPv6 address for LAN.</p> <p>Scope - Display the scope of IPv6 address. For example, IPv6 Link Local could only be used for direct IPv6 link. It can't be used for IPv6 internet.</p> <p>Internet Access Mode - Display the connection mode chosen for accessing into Internet.</p>

VI-1-2 TR-069

This device supports TR-069 standard. It is very convenient for an administrator to manage a TR-069 device through an Auto Configuration Server, e.g., VigorACS.

System Maintenance >> TR-069 Setting



ACS and CPE Settings
Reporting Configuration
Export Parameters

TR-069 Disable Enable

ACS Server On Wizard

Enable TR069 Server on [System Maintenance >> Management >> Internet Access Control](#)

ACS Server

URL Wizard

Acquire URL from DHCP option 43

Username

Password

Event Code

Last Inform Response Time: (NA) ●

CPE Client

Protocol HTTP HTTPS

URL

Port

Username

Password

Periodic Inform Settings

Enable Disable

Time Interval second(s)

STUN Settings

Enable Disable

Server Address

Server STUN Port

Minimum Keep Alive Period second(s)

Maximum Keep Alive Period second(s)

Apply Settings to APs

Enable Disable

AP Password

Specify STUN Settings for APs

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
TR-069	Click Enable to activate the settings on this page.
ACS Server On	Choose the interface for connecting the router to the Auto Configuration Server. Enable TR069 Server on.....- After enabling TR-069 feature

	<p>in this page, it is necessary to check this box for enabling the TR-069 server on System Maintenance >> Management >> Internet Access Control, in order to make Vigor router and VigorACS communicate each other.</p> <p>If the TR-069 Server not enabled, VigorACS can not manage the Vigor router remotely.</p>
ACS Server	<p>URL - Enter the URL for connecting to the ACS.</p> <p>Wizard - Click it to enter the IP address of VigorACS server, port number and the handler.</p> <p>Acquire URL form DHCP option 43 - Check the box to get the URL from DHCP option 43.</p> <p>Username/Password - Such data must be typed according to the ACS (Auto Configuration Server) you want to link.</p> <p>Test With Inform - Click it to send a message based on the event code selection to test if such CPE is able to communicate with VigorACS SI server.</p> <p>Event Code - Use the drop down menu to specify an event to perform the test.</p> <p>Last Inform Response Time - Display the time that VigorACS server made a response while receiving Inform message from CPE last time.</p>
CPE Client	<p>Such information is useful for Auto Configuration Server.</p> <p>Protocol - Select HTTP or HTTPS.</p> <p>Port - Sometimes, port conflict might be occurred. To solve such problem, you might change port number for CPE.</p> <p>Username and Password - Type the username and password that VigorACS can use to access into such CPE.</p>
Periodic Inform Settings	<p>Enable -The default setting is Enable, which means the CPE Client will periodically connect to the ACS Server to update its connection parameters at intervals specified in the Interval Time field.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Time Interval - Please set interval time or schedule time for the router to send notification to CPE. <p>Disable - Click it to close the mechanism of notification.</p>
STUN Settings	<p>Disable - The default is Disable.</p> <p>Enable - Please type the relational settings listed below:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Server Address - Type the IP address of the STUN server. ● Server Port - Type the port number of the STUN server. ● Minimum Keep Alive Period - If STUN is enabled, the CPE must send binding request to the server for the purpose of maintaining the binding in the Gateway. Please type a number as the minimum period. The default setting is "60 seconds". ● Maximum Keep Alive Period - If STUN is enabled, the CPE must send binding request to the server for the purpose of maintaining the binding in the Gateway. Please type a number as the maximum period. A value of "-1" indicates that no maximum period is specified.
Apply Settings to APs	<p>This feature is able to apply TR-069 settings (including STUN and ACS server settings) to all of APs managed by Vigor3220 at the same time.</p> <p>Disable - Related settings will not be applied to VigorAP.</p>

	<p>Enable - Above settings will be applied to VigorAP after clicking OK to save the configuration. If such feature is enabled, you have to type the password for accessing VigorAP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● AP Password - Type the password of the VigorAP that you want to apply Vigor2832's TR-069 settings. <p>Specify STUN Settings to APs - If you want to apply specific STUN settings (not the STUN Settings configured for Vigor3220) to VigorAPs to meet specific requirements, simply check this box. Then, enter the server IP address, server port, minimum keep alive period and maximum keep alive period respectively.</p>
--	---

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

VI-1-3 Administrator Password

This page allows you to set new password for administrator.

System Maintenance >> Administrator Password Setup

Administrator Password

Old Password	<input type="text" value="Max: 83 characters"/>
New Password	<input type="text" value="Max: 83 characters"/>
Confirm Password	<input type="text" value="Max: 83 characters"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable 'admin' account login to Web UI from the Internet	

Note:

Password can contain only a-z A-Z 0-9 , ; : . " < > * + = - \ | ? @ # ^ ! ()

Administrator Local User

<input type="checkbox"/> Enable Local User					
Local User List					
<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Index</th> <th>User Name</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td> </td> <td> </td> </tr> </tbody> </table>		Index	User Name		
Index	User Name				
Specific User					
User Name:	<input type="text" value="Max: 15 characters"/>				
Password:	<input type="text" value="Max: 15 characters"/>				
Confirm Password:	<input type="text"/>				
<input type="button" value="Add"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/>					

Administrator LDAP Setting

<input type="checkbox"/> Enable LDAP/AD login for admin users
LDAP Server Profiles Setup

Note:

If Local User is enabled, you will need to select 'admin' group when log into Web UI.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Administrator Password	<p>Old Password - Type in the old password. The factory default setting for password is "admin".</p> <p>New Password -Type in new password in this field. The length of the password is limited to 23 characters.</p> <p>Confirm Password -Type in the new password again.</p> <p>Enable 'admin' account login to Web UI from the Internet - It is configurable only when Administrator Local User is enabled. The default setting is enabled. It can ensure that any user is able to successfully accesses into web user interface of Vigor router through Internet by username/password of "admin/admin". However, if you want to prevent the admin account from password attacks by hackers, disable this function and let local user account access into the WUI instead.</p>
Administrator Local User	<p>The administrator can login web user interface of Vigor router to modify all of the settings to fit the requirements. This feature allows other user in LAN who can access into the web user interface with the same privilege of the administrator.</p> <p>Enable Local User - Check the box to enable the local user configuration.</p> <p>Local User List - It displays the username of the local user.</p> <p>User Name - Give a user name for the local user.</p> <p>Password - Type the password for the local user.</p> <p>Confirm Password - Type the password again for confirmation.</p> <p>Add - After typing the user name and password above, simply click it to create a new local user. The new one will be shown on the Local User List immediately.</p> <p>Edit - If the username listed on the box above is not satisfied, simply click the username and modify it on the field of User Name. Later, click Edit to update the information.</p> <p>Delete - If the local user listed on the box above is not satisfied, simply click the username and click Delete to remove it.</p>
Administrator LDAP Setting	<p>Enable LDAP/AD login for Admin users - If it is enabled, any user can access into the web user interface of Vigor router through the LDAP server authentication.</p> <p>LDAP Server Profiles - Available profiles will be displayed here under the link of LDAP Profile Setup. To create a new profile, simply click the link of LDAP Profile Setup.</p>

When you click OK, the login window will appear. Please use the new password to access into the web user interface again.

VI-1-4 User Password

This page allows you to set new password for user operation.

System Maintenance >> User Password

Enable User Mode for simple web configuration

User Password

| [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Password	<input type="text" value="Max: 23 characters"/>
Confirm Password	<input type="text" value="Max: 23 characters"/>
Password Strength:	<input type="button" value="Weak"/> <input type="button" value="Medium"/> <input type="button" value="Strong"/>
Strong password requirements:	
1. Have at least one upper-case letter and one lower-case letter.	
2. Including non-alphanumeric characters is a plus.	

Note:

1. Password can contain a-z A-Z 0-9 , ; : . " < > * + = | ? @ # ^ ! ()
2. Password can't be all asterisks(*). For example, '***' or '*****' is illegal, but '123**' or '**45' is OK.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable User Mode for simple web configuration	After checking this box, you can access into the web user interface with the password typed here for simple web configuration. The settings on simple web user interface will be different with full web user interface accessed by using the administrator password.
Password	Type in new password in this field. The length of the password is limited to 31 characters.
Confirm Password	Type in the new password again.
Password Strength	Display the security strength of the password specified above.
Set to Factory Default	Click to return to the factory default setting.

When you click OK, the login window will appear. Please use the new password to access into the web user interface again.

Below shows an example for accessing into User Operation with User Password.

1. Open System Maintenance>>User Password.
2. Check the box of **Enable User Mode for simple web configuration** to enable user mode operation. Type a new password in the field of New Password and click OK.

System Maintenance >> User Password

Enable User Mode for simple web configuration

User Password

[Set to Factory Default](#)

Password	<input type="password"/>
Confirm Password	<input type="password"/>
Password Strength:	<input type="button" value="Weak"/> <input checked="" type="button" value="Medium"/> <input type="button" value="Strong"/>
Strong password requirements:	
1. Have at least one upper-case letter and one lower-case letter.	
2. Including non-alphanumeric characters is a plus.	

Note:

1. Password can contain a-z A-Z 0-9 , ; : . " < > * + = | ? @ # ^ ! ()
2. Password can't be all asterisks(*). For example, '1*' or '*****' is illegal, but '123*' or '*45' is OK.

3. The following screen will appear. Simply click OK.

System Maintenance >> User Password

Active Configuration

Password	: *****
----------	---------

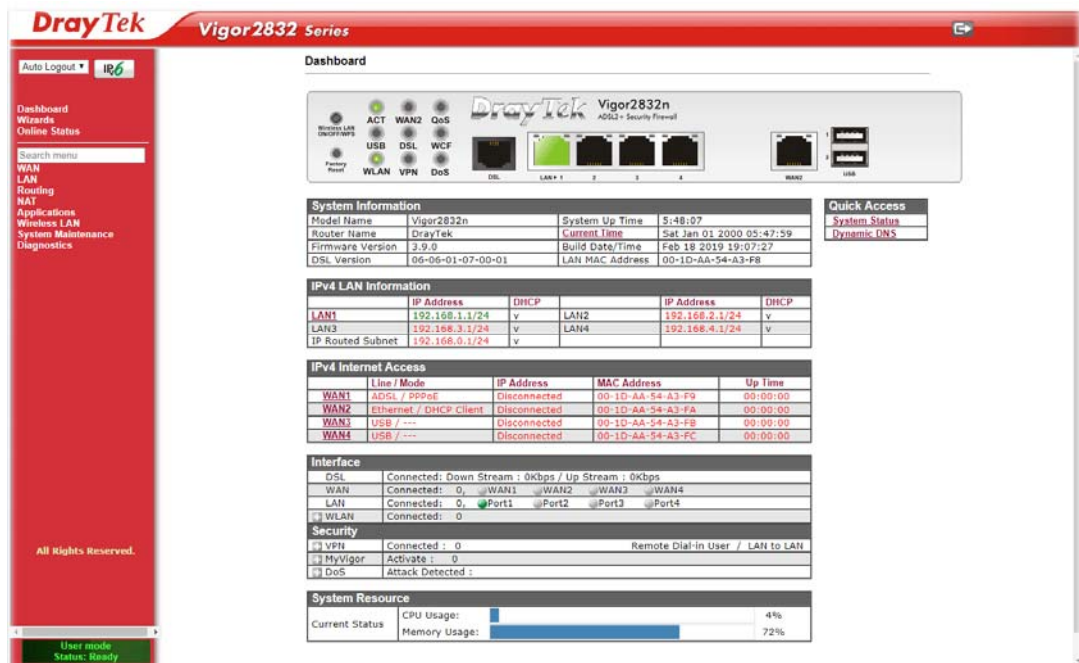
4. Log out Vigor router web user interface by clicking the Logout button.



5. The following window will be open to ask for username and password. Type the new user password in the field of Password and click Login.

The login screen for the DrayTek Vigor2832 Series. It features the DrayTek logo and "Vigor2832 Series" in a red banner. Below is a "Login" section with "Username" and "Password" fields. The password field contains six asterisks. A "Login" button is at the bottom right. At the bottom, it says "Copyright © 2015 DrayTek Corp. All Rights Reserved."

6. The main screen with User Mode will be shown as follows.



Settings to be configured in User Mode will be less than settings in Admin Mode. Only basic configuration settings will be available in User Mode.



Info

Setting in User Mode can be configured as same as in Admin Mode.

VI-1-5 Login Page Greeting

When you want to access into the web user interface of Vigor router, the system will ask you to offer username and password first. At that moment, the background of the web page is blank and no heading will be displayed on the Login window. This page allows you to specify login URL and the heading on the Login window if you have such requirement.

System Maintenance >> Login Page Greeting

Login Page Greeting

Enable

Login Page Title

Welcome Message and Bulletin (Max 511 characters) [Preview](#) | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

```
<h1><b><font color=red>Welcome Message</font></b></h1><p>This welcome message is
displayed in the Login page of the router. Replace this text with your own
message. </p><ol><li>The welcome message can be written in HTML so lists such as
this one can be created </li><li>Other markup tags such as p, font or img can be
used</li></ol>
```

Examples of Welcome Message and Bulletin:

```
<h1><b><font color=red>Welcome Message</font></b></h1>
<p>Message</p>
```

OK Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Check this box to enable the login customization function.
Login Page Title	Type a brief description (e.g., Welcome to DrayTek) which will be shown on the heading of the login dialog.
Welcome Message and Bulletin	Type words or sentences here. It will be displayed for bulletin message. In addition, it can be displayed on the login dialog at the bottom. Note that do not type URL redirect link here.
Preview	Click it to display the preview of the login window based on the settings on this web page.
Set to Factory Default	Click to return to the factory default setting.

Below shows an example of login customization with the information typed in Login Description and Bulletin.

Vigor Login Page - Windows Internet Explorer
http://192.168.1.1/weblogin.htm

Just for Carrie

Username
Password
Group

Login

Copyright©, DrayTek Corp. All Rights Reserved. **DrayTek**

Welcome Message

This welcome message is displayed in the Login page of the router. Replace this text with your own message.

1. The welcome message can be written in HTML so lists such as this one can be created
2. Other markup tags such as p, font or img can be used

VI-1-6 Configuration Backup

Such function can be used to apply the router settings configured by Vigor2820/ Vigor2830/ Vigor2850 to Vigor2832.

Backup the Configuration


Follow the steps below to backup your configuration.

1. Go to **System Maintenance >> Configuration Backup**. The following page will be popped-up, as shown below.

System Maintenance >> Configuration Backup

Configuration Backup / Restoration

Restore
Restore settings from a configuration file.

選擇檔案 未選擇任何檔案
 USB Storage 

Restore configuration except the login password.

Note:
This will work only if the selected configuration file was created from this device.


Backup
Back up the current settings into a configuration file.

Protect with password

Note:
The router's certificates are not part of the configuration file. Please use [Certificate Management >> Certificate Backup](#) for backup.

Auto Backup to USB storage

Enable

Backup folder 

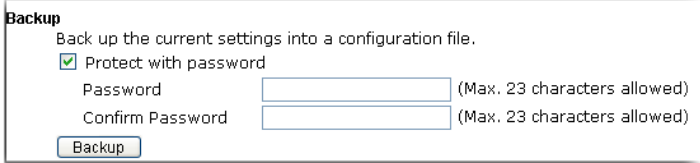
Periodic backup
 Cycle duration: days and hours
 Backup after change configuration

Note:

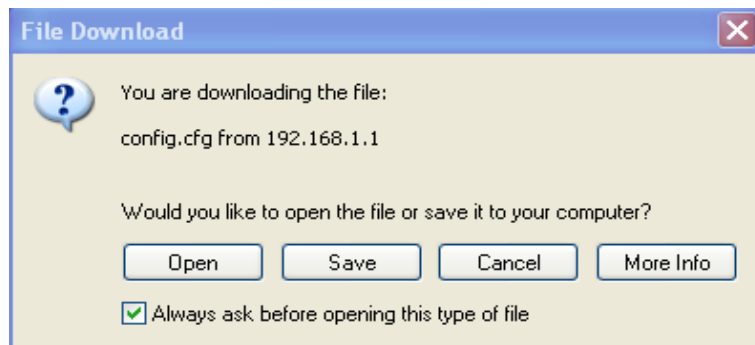
1. When loading a configuration file from a model in the Supported Model List please note that features and functionality can vary between models so please manually verify the settings after the restoration.
2. Auto backup to USB: if settings do not change, configuration doesn't backup.
3. Auto backup to USB: if configuration backup multiple times in one hour, the old file will be overwritten with the same filename.

Available settings are explained as follows:

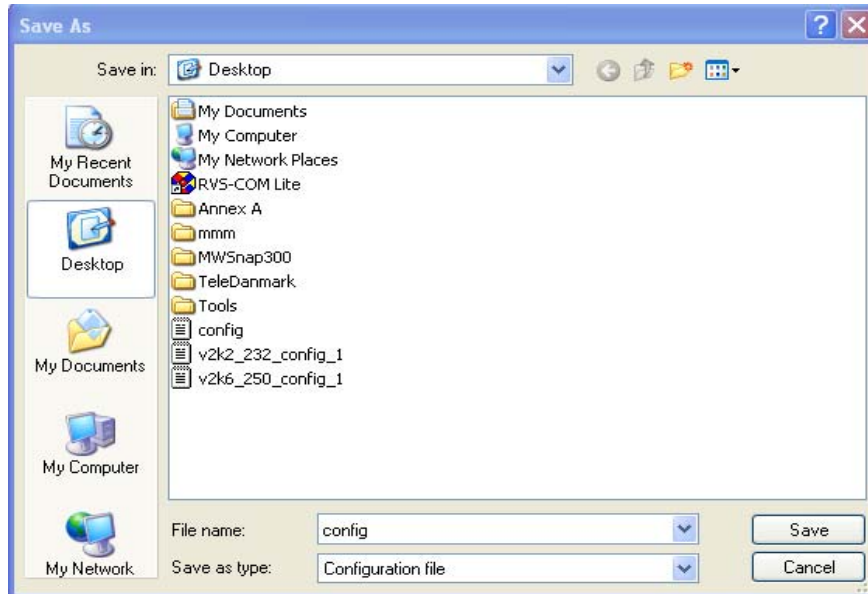
Item	Description
Restore	<p>Restore settings from a configuration file - Click the Select File button to specify a file to be restored or click USB Storage (if a USB storage disk connected) to choose the configuration file.</p> <p>Restore configuration except the login password - Check the box to restore the configuration file except the login password.</p> <p>Restore - Click Restore to restore the configuration. If the file is encrypted, the system will ask you to type the</p>

	password to decrypt the configuration file.
Backup	<p>Click it to perform the configuration backup of this router. Protect with password- For the sake of security, the configuration file for the router can be encrypted.</p>  <p>Note: When loading a configuration file from a model in the Supported Model List please</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Password - Type several characters as the password for encrypting the configuration file. ● Confirm Password - Type the password again for confirmation.
Auto Backup to USB storage	<p>The configuration can be stored to a USB connecting to Vigor router as a backup.</p> <p>Backup folder - Set the path for downloading.</p> <p>Periodic backup - Set the circle duration for backup.</p> <p>Backup after change configuration - Backup will be executed whenever the configuration is changed.</p>
Supported Model List	<p>Web configuration file from <i>other</i> Vigor router can be applied to Vigor2832 series. At present, the configuration file of Vigor2830 is accepted for Vigor2832.</p> <p>This field displays model name(s) and firmware which web configuration file saved can be used by such router.</p>

2. Click **Backup** button to get into the following dialog. Click **Save** button to open another dialog for saving configuration as a file.



3. In **Save As** dialog, the default filename is **config.cfg**. You could give it another name by yourself.



4. Click **Save** button, the configuration will download automatically to your computer as a file named **config.cfg**.

The above example is using **Windows** platform for demonstrating examples. The **Mac** or **Linux** platform will appear different windows, but the backup function is still available.



Info

Backup for Certification must be done independently. The Configuration Backup does not include information of Certificate.

Restore Configuration

1. Go to **System Maintenance >> Configuration Backup**. The following windows will be popped-up, as shown below.

System Maintenance >> Configuration Backup

Configuration Backup / Restoration

Restore

Restore settings from a configuration file.

選擇檔案 未選擇任何檔案

USB Storage

Restore configuration except the login password.

Note:
This will work only if the selected configuration file was created from this device.

Backup

Back up the current settings into a configuration file.

Protect with password

Note:
The router's certificates are not part of the configuration file. Please use [Certificate Management >> Certificate Backup](#) for backup.

Auto Backup to USB storage

Enable

Backup folder

Periodic backup
Cycle duration: days and hours

Backup after change configuration

2. Click **Choose File** button to choose the correct configuration file for uploading to the router.
3. Click **Restore** button and wait for few seconds, the following picture will tell you that the restoration procedure is successful.

VI-1-7 SysLog/Mail Alert

SysLog function is provided for users to monitor router.

System Maintenance >> SysLog / Mail Alert Setup

SysLog / Mail Alert Setup

<p>SysLog Access Setup</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable</p> <p>Syslog Save to:</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Syslog Server</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> USB Disk</p> <p>Maximum Syslog folder space: <input type="text" value="1"/> GB</p> <p>When Syslog folder is full: <input type="text" value="Overwrite oldest logs"/></p> <p>Router Name <input type="text" value="DrayTek"/></p> <p>Server IP/Hostname <input type="text"/></p> <p>Destination Port <input type="text" value="514"/></p> <p>Mail Syslog <input type="checkbox"/> Enable</p> <p>Enable syslog message:</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Firewall Log</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VPN Log</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> User Access Log</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WAN Log</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Router/DSL information</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WLAN Log</p>	<p>Mail Alert Setup</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="button" value="Send a test e-mail"/></p> <p>SMTP Server <input type="text"/></p> <p>SMTP Port <input type="text" value="25"/></p> <p>Mail To <input type="text"/></p> <p>Sender Address <input type="text"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Use SSL</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Authentication</p> <p>Username <input type="text"/></p> <p>Password <input type="text"/></p> <p>Enable E-Mail Alert:</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DoS Attack</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> APPE</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VPN LOG</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> APPE Signature</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Debug Log</p>
---	---

Note:

1. USB Syslog space is available from 256-1024 MB or 1-16 GB.
2. Mail Syslog cannot be activated unless USB Disk is ticked for "Syslog Save to".
3. Mail Syslog feature will send the Syslog when it is full.
4. We only support secured SMTP connection on port 465.

Available settings are explained as follows:

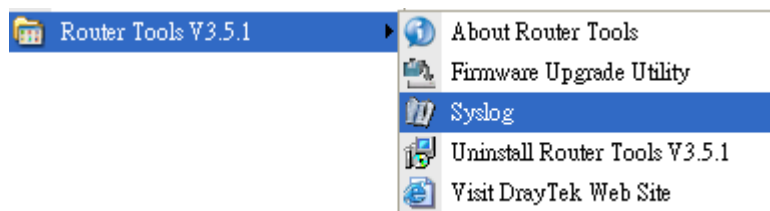
Item	Description
SysLog Access Setup	<p>Enable - Select to enable the Syslog function.</p> <p>Syslog Save to - Check Syslog Server and / or USB Disk.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Syslog Server - Events will be sent to a Syslog server. ● USB Disk - Events will be saved to a USB storage device connected to the router. ● Maximum Syslog folder space - Set a space (unit GB/MB) to store event logs. ● When Syslog folder is full - Specify the action (overwrite the oldest logs or stop logging) to be executed.
Router Name	<p>Shows the name of the router set in System Maintenance >> Management. This name will be used to identify the router in the Syslog entries.</p> <p>To set or modify the router name, click the hyperlink and you will be taken to System Maintenance >> Management where</p>

	you can enter the value.
Server IP /Hostname	The IP address or the host name of the Syslog server.
Destination Port	Assign a port for the Syslog protocol.
Mail Syslog	Check the box to recode the mail event on Syslog.
Enable syslog message	Check the box listed on this web page to send the corresponding message of firewall, VPN, User Access, Call, WAN, Router/DSL information to Syslog.
Mail Alert Setup	<p>Enable - Select to enable the Mail Alert.</p> <p>Send a test e-mail - Click to send a test email message using the settings below.</p> <p>SMTP Server - Enter the address of the SMTP server used to send email.</p> <p>SMTP Port - Enter the port of the SMTP server. Default setting is 25.</p> <p>Mail To - Enter the email address of the recipient.</p> <p>Sender Address - Assign a mail address for sending mails out.</p> <p>Use SSL - Select it to ensure the connection security. SSL means to use port 465 for SMTP server for some e-mail server uses https as the transmission method.</p> <p>Authentication - Select this checkbox and enter the username and password if the SMTP server requires authentication.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● User Name - Enter the user name for authentication. ● Password - Enter the password for authentication. <p>Enable E-mail Alert - Select the event types that will trigger email alerts.</p>

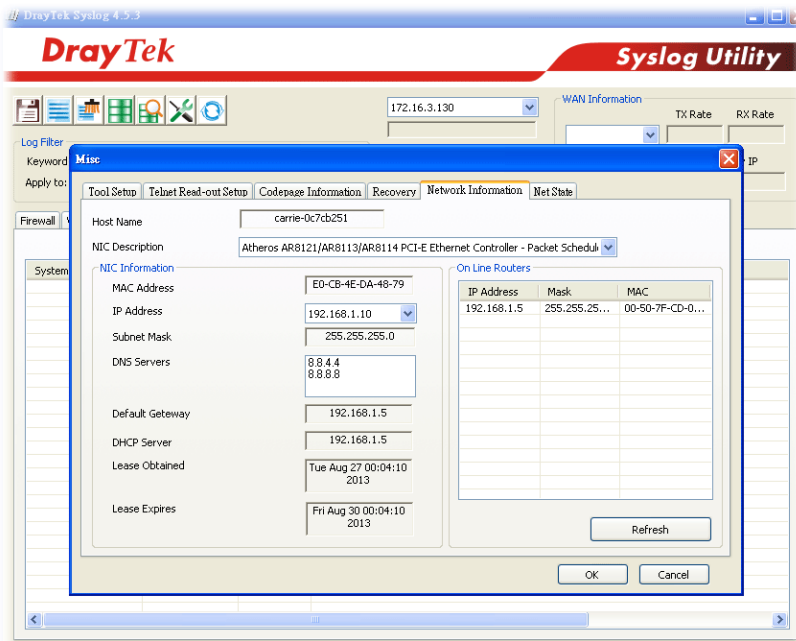
Click OK to save these settings.

For viewing the Syslog, please do the following:

1. Just set your monitor PC's IP address in the field of Server IP Address
2. Install the Router Tools in the **Utility** within provided CD. After installation, click on the **Router Tools>>Syslog** from program menu.



3. From the Syslog screen, select the router you want to monitor. Be reminded that in **Network Information**, select the network adapter used to connect to the router. Otherwise, you won't succeed in retrieving information from the router.



VI-1-8 Time and Date

It allows you to specify where the time of the router should be inquired from.

System Maintenance >> Time and Date

Time Information

Current System Time	2000 Jan 1 Sat 1 : 7 : 51	Inquire Time
---------------------	---------------------------	--------------

Time Setup

<input type="radio"/> Use Browser Time	
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Use Internet Time	
Time Server	pool.ntp.org
Priority	Auto
Time Zone	(GMT) Greenwich Mean Time : Dublin
Enable Daylight Saving	<input type="checkbox"/> Advanced
Automatically Update Interval	30 mins
Send NTP Request Through	Auto

OK Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Current System Time	Click Inquire Time to get the current time.
Use Browser Time	Select this option to use the browser time from the remote administrator PC host as router's system time.
Use Internet Time	Select to inquire time information from Time Server on the Internet using assigned protocol.
Time Server	Type the web site of the time server.
Priority	Choose Auto or IPv6 First as the priority.
Time Zone	Select the time zone where the router is located.
Enable Daylight Saving	<p>Check the box to enable the daylight saving. Such feature is available for certain area.</p> <p>Advanced - Click it to open a pop up dialog.</p> <div> <p>Daylight Saving Advanced</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Default Start: Last Sunday in March End: Last Sunday in October</p> <p><input type="radio"/> Customized: By Date Start: Month Day 00:00 End: Month Day 00:00</p> <p><input type="radio"/> Customized: By Weekday Start: January First Sunday 00:00 End: January First Sunday 00:00</p> <p>OK Close</p> </div>
Automatically Update	Select a time interval for updating from the NTP server.

Interval	
Send NTP Request Through	Specify a WAN interface to send NTP request for time synchronization.

Click OK to save these settings.

VI-1-9 SNMP

This page allows you to configure settings for SNMP and SNMPV3 services.

The SNMPv3 is more secure than SNMP through the encryption method (support AES and DES) and authentication method (support MD5 and SHA) for the management needs.

System Maintenance >> SNMP

SNMP Setup

<input type="checkbox"/> Enable SNMP Agent	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable SNMPV1 Agent	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable SNMPV2C Agent	
Get Community	public
Set Community	private
Manager Host IP(IPv4)	Index IP Subnet Mask
	1 [] []
	2 [] []
	3 [] []
Manager Host IP(IPv6)	Index IPv6 Address / Prefix Length
	1 [] / 0
	2 [] / 0
	3 [] / 0
Trap Community	public
Notification Host IP(IPv4)	Index IP
	1 []
	2 []
Notification Host IP(IPv6)	Index IPv6 Address
	1 []
	2 []
Trap Timeout	10
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable SNMPV3 Agent	
USM User	[]
Auth Algorithm	No Auth
Auth Password	[]
Privacy Algorithm	No Priv
Privacy Password	[]

Note:

SNMP service also shall be enabled for Internet access in [System Maintenance >> Management](#).

OK Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable SNMP Agent	Check it to enable this function. Then, enable SNMPV1 agent/SNMPV2C agent.
Enable SNMPv1 Agent	Check to enable SNMPv1 function.
Enable SNMPV2C Agent	Check to enable SNMPv2C function.
Get Community	Set the name for getting community by typing a proper character. The default setting is public. The maximum length of the text is limited to 23 characters.

Set Community	Set community by typing a proper name. The default setting is private . The maximum length of the text is limited to 23 characters.
Manager Host IP (IPv4)	Set one host as the manager to execute SNMP function. Please type in IPv4 address to specify certain host.
Manager Host IP (IPv6)	Set one host as the manager to execute SNMP function. Please type in IPv6 address to specify certain host.
Trap Community	Set trap community by typing a proper name. The default setting is public . The maximum length of the text is limited to 23 characters.
Notification Host IP (IPv4)	Set the IPv4 address of the host that will receive the trap community.
Notification Host IP (IPv6)	Set the IPv6 address of the host that will receive the trap community.
Trap Timeout	The default setting is 10 seconds.
Enable SNMPv3 Agent	Check to enable SNMPv3 function. USM User - USM means user-based security mode. Enter the username to be used for authentication. The maximum allowed length is 23 characters. Auth Algorithm - Choose one of the hashing methods to be used with the authentication algorithm. Auth Password - Enter a password for authentication. The maximum allowed length is 23 characters. Privacy Algorithm - Choose an encryption method as the privacy algorithm. Privacy Password - Enter a password for privacy. The maximum allowed length is 23 characters.

Click OK to save these settings.

VI-1-10 Management

This page allows you to manage the settings for Internet/LAN Access Control, Access List from Internet, Management Port Setup, TLS/SSL Encryption Setup, and Device Management.

The management pages for IPv4 and IPv6 protocols are different.


VI-1-10-1 IPv4 Management Setup


System Maintenance >> Management



IPv4 Management Setup	IPv6 Management Setup	LAN Access Setup																																	
Router Name <input type="text" value="DrayTek"/>																																			
<input type="checkbox"/> Default: Disable Auto-Logout <input type="checkbox"/> Enable Validation Code in Internet/LAN Access Note: IE8 and below version does NOT support DrayOS CAPTCHA auth code.	Management Port Setup <input checked="" type="radio"/> User Define Ports <input type="radio"/> Default Ports Telnet Port <input type="text" value="23"/> (Default: 23) HTTP Port <input type="text" value="80"/> (Default: 80) HTTPS Port <input type="text" value="443"/> (Default: 443) FTP Port <input type="text" value="21"/> (Default: 21) TR069 Port <input type="text" value="8069"/> (Default: 8069) SSH Port <input type="text" value="22"/> (Default: 22) Note: Ports 8001 and 8043 are used for Hotspot Web Portal.																																		
Internet Access Control <input type="checkbox"/> Allow management from the Internet Domain name allowed <input type="text"/> <input type="checkbox"/> FTP Server <input type="checkbox"/> HTTP Server <input type="checkbox"/> Enforce HTTPS Access <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> HTTPS Server <input type="checkbox"/> Telnet Server <input type="checkbox"/> TR069 Server <input type="checkbox"/> SSH Server <input type="checkbox"/> SNMP Server <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Disable PING from the Internet	Brute Force Protection <input type="checkbox"/> Enable brute force login protection <input type="checkbox"/> FTP Server <input type="checkbox"/> HTTP Server <input type="checkbox"/> HTTPS Server <input type="checkbox"/> Telnet Server <input type="checkbox"/> TR069 Server <input type="checkbox"/> SSH Server <input type="checkbox"/> VPN Server Maximum login failures <input type="text" value="0"/> times Penalty period <input type="text" value="0"/> seconds																																		
Access List from the Internet <input type="checkbox"/> Apply Access List to PING <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>List Type</th> <th>Index</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>1</td><td>IP Object</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td>IP Object</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td>3</td><td>IP Object</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td>4</td><td>IP Object</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td>5</td><td>IP Object</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td>6</td><td>IP Object</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td>7</td><td>IP Object</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td>8</td><td>IP Object</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td>9</td><td>IP Object</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td>10</td><td>IP Object</td><td>None</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	List Type	Index	Description	1	IP Object	None	2	IP Object	None	3	IP Object	None	4	IP Object	None	5	IP Object	None	6	IP Object	None	7	IP Object	None	8	IP Object	None	9	IP Object	None	10	IP Object	None	Blocked IP List <hr/> TLS/SSL Encryption Setup <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable TLS 1.2 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable TLS 1.1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable TLS 1.0 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Device Management <input type="checkbox"/> Respond to external device	
List Type	Index	Description																																	
1	IP Object	None																																	
2	IP Object	None																																	
3	IP Object	None																																	
4	IP Object	None																																	
5	IP Object	None																																	
6	IP Object	None																																	
7	IP Object	None																																	
8	IP Object	None																																	
9	IP Object	None																																	
10	IP Object	None																																	

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Router Name	Type in the router name provided by ISP.
Default: Disable Auto-Logout	If it is enabled, the function of auto-logout for web user interface will be disabled.  The web user interface will be open until you click the Logout icon manually.

	
Enable Validation Code in Internet/LAN Access	<p>If it is enabled, the mechanism of validation code will be offered by Vigor router. That is, the client must type validation code while accessing into Internet or web user interface of Vigor router.</p>
Internet Access Control	<p>Allow management from the Internet - Enable the checkbox to allow system administrators to login from the Internet, and then select the specific services that are allowed to be remotely administered.</p> <p>Domain name allowed - This setting is only available if DNS filtering is enabled, applying DNS filter profile in firewall rules, or enabling DNS Filter Local Setting. The router will only allow connections to the WebUI using domain addresses configured in either DDNS profiles or this section.</p> <p>If DNS filtering is disabled, this setting will be disabled, and any domain address that resolves to the router's WAN IP address can be used to connect to the WebUI.</p> <p>Disable PING from the Internet - Select to reject all PING packets from the Internet. For increased security, this setting is enabled by default.</p>
Access List from the Internet	<p>The ability of system administrators to log into the router can be restricted to up to 10 specific hosts or networks.</p> <p>Apply Access List to PING - When this option is checked and Disable PING from the Internet is unchecked, pings originating from the Internet will be accepted only if they are from one of the IP addresses and/or subnet masks specified below. This option has no effect if Disable PING from the Internet is checked, which blocks all pings from the Internet.</p> <p>Type - Select IP Object, Hostname or IP Group.</p> <p>Index - Select the index number of a configured IP object, keyword object or IP group object.</p> <p>Description - Shows a brief comment for the selected IP object (with subnet mask).</p>
Management Port Setup	<p>User Define Ports - Check to specify user-defined port numbers for the Telnet, HTTP, HTTPS, FTP, TR-069 and SSH servers.</p> <p>Default Ports - Check to use standard port numbers for the Telnet and HTTP servers.</p>
Brute Force Protection	<p>Any client trying to access into Internet via Vigor router will be asked for passing through user authentication. Such feature can prevent Vigor router from attacks when a hacker tries every possible combination of letters, numbers and symbols until find out the correct combination of password.</p> <p>Enable brute force login protection - Enable the protection mechanism.</p> <p>Maximum login failure - Specify the maximum number of wrong password that client can try for logging to Vigor router.</p>

	<p>Penalty period - Set a period of time to block the IP address which is used (by user or hacker) for passing through the user authentication again and again but failed always. When the time is up, Vigor system will unblock that IP and allow it to access into Vigor router again.</p> <p>Blocked IP List - Open another web page which displays current blocked IPs.</p>
TLS/SSL Encryption Setup	<p>Enable TLS 1.2/1.1/1.0 - Check the box to enable the function of TLS 1.0/1.1/1.2 if required.</p> <p>For improved security, the HTTPS VPN servers that are built into the router have been upgraded to TLS 1.x protocol. If you are using an old web browser (eg. IE 6.0) or an old version of the SmartVPN Client, you may need to enable SSL 3.0 to connect to the router. However, it is recommended that you instead upgrade your web browser or SmartVPN client to a version that supports TLS protocols that are far more secure than SSL.</p>
Device Management	<p>Check the box to enable the device management function for Vigor2832.</p> <p>Respond to external device - If it is enabled, Vigor2832 will be regarded as slave device. When the external device (master device) sends request packet to Vigor2832, Vigor2832 would send back information to respond the request coming from the external device which is able to manage Vigor2832.</p>

After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the configuration.

VI-1-10-2 IPv6 Management Setup

System Maintenance >> Management



IPv4 Management Setup	IPv6 Management Setup	LAN Access Setup
Management Access Control <input type="checkbox"/> Allow management from the Internet <input type="checkbox"/> Telnet Server (Port : 23) <input type="checkbox"/> HTTP Server (Port : 80) <input type="checkbox"/> Enforce HTTPS Access <input type="checkbox"/> HTTPS Server (Port : 443) <input type="checkbox"/> SSH Server (Port : 22) <input type="checkbox"/> SNMP Server (Port : 161) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Disable PING from the Internet		
Access List from the Internet <input type="checkbox"/> Apply Access List to PING		
List	Type	Index Description
1	IP Object ▼	None ▼ <input type="text"/>
2	IP Object ▼	None ▼ <input type="text"/>
3	IP Object ▼	None ▼ <input type="text"/>
4	IP Object ▼	None ▼ <input type="text"/>
5	IP Object ▼	None ▼ <input type="text"/>
6	IP Object ▼	None ▼ <input type="text"/>
7	IP Object ▼	None ▼ <input type="text"/>
8	IP Object ▼	None ▼ <input type="text"/>
9	IP Object ▼	None ▼ <input type="text"/>
10	IP Object ▼	None ▼ <input type="text"/>
Note: Telnet / Http server port is the same as IPv4.		
<input type="button" value="OK"/>		

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Management Access Control	<p>Allow management from the Internet - Check to enable the function. Select the servers that system administrators are allowed to manage from the Internet.</p> <p>Enable PING from the Internet - Check the checkbox to enable all PING packets from the Internet. For security issue, this function is disabled by default.</p>
Access List from the Internet	<p>You could specify that the system administrator can only login from a specific host or network defined in the list. A maximum of three IPs/subnet masks is allowed.</p> <p>Apply Access List to PING - When this option is checked and Disable PING from the Internet is unchecked, pings originating from the Internet will be accepted only if they are from one of the IP addresses and/or subnet masks specified below. This option has no effect if Disable PING from the Internet is checked, which blocks all pings from the Internet.</p> <p>Type - Select IP Object or Hostname.</p> <p>Index - Select the index number of a configured IPv6 object.</p>

After finished the above settings, click OK to save the configuration.

VI-1-10-3 LAN Access Control

System Maintenance >> Management



IPv4 Management Setup	IPv6 Management Setup	LAN Access Setup
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Allow management from LAN		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> FTP Server		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> HTTP Server <input type="checkbox"/> Enforce HTTPS Access		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> HTTPS Server		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Telnet Server		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> TR069 Server		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSH Server		
Apply To Subnet		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> LAN1	<input type="checkbox"/>	Index in <u>IP Object</u> <input type="text"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> LAN2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> LAN3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> LAN4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IP Routed Subnet	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>

Note:

If an IP Object is specified in a LAN Subnet, the setting will be applied to the selected IP only.

OK

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Allow management from LAN	Enable the checkbox to allow system administrators to login from LAN interface. There are several servers provided by the system which allow you to manage the router from LAN interface. Check the box(es) to specify.
Apply To Subnet	Check the LAN interface for the administrator to use for accessing into web user interface of Vigor router. Index in IP Object - Type the index number of the IP object profile. Related IP address will appear automatically.

After finished the above settings, click OK to save the configuration.

VI-1-11 Panel Control

The behavior of the LEDs, buttons, and USB ports on the front panel of the Vigor router can be customized as desired.

For Button

The **Factory Reset** and **Wireless ON/OFF/WPS** buttons on the front panel are enabled by default and can be enabled or disabled if required. Disabling the **Factory Reset** button will prevent tampering by unauthorized parties, or to avoid accidental triggering of a router reset when being used wake up LEDs. Disabling the wireless button will prevent changing the wireless setting when LED Sleep Mode is enabled, and the buttons are primarily used to turn the LEDs on and off.

Click the **Button** tab to get the following page.

System Maintenance >> Panel Control

Enable	Button
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Wireless
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Factory Reset

Refresh

OK

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Refresh	Click to refresh the page to display the latest information.
Wireless	The default value is Enabled . Deselect to disable the ability of the Wireless button to control WLAN and WPS functions. Disabling the wireless button only prevents it from being used to control WLAN functions. It can still be used to wake up the LEDs when LED sleep mode is enabled.
Factory Reset	The default value is Enabled . Deselect to disable the reset function of the factory reset button. Disabling the Factory Reset button only prevents it from being used to reboot Vigor router with default settings. It can still be used to wake up the LEDs when LED sleep mode is enabled.

After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the configuration.

For LAN Port

The 4 LAN ports can be individually enabled or disabled. When a LAN port is disabled, attached devices will not be recognized by the router.

Button	LAN Port	Refresh																					
	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Port</th> <th>Enable</th> <th>Status</th> <th>Speed</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td> <td>Link Down</td> <td>---</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td> <td>Link Up</td> <td>1000Mbps</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td> <td>Link Down</td> <td>---</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td> <td>Link Down</td> <td>---</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Port	Enable	Status	Speed	1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Link Down	---	2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Link Up	1000Mbps	3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Link Down	---	4	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Link Down	---		
Port	Enable	Status	Speed																				
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Link Down	---																				
2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Link Up	1000Mbps																				
3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Link Down	---																				
4	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Link Down	---																				

OK

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Refresh	Click to refresh the page to display the latest information.
Port	The number corresponds to the LAN port number shown on the front panel.
Enable	Deselect to disable the LAN port. The default value is enabled.
Status	Shows the status of the USB port. Link Up - An active Ethernet device is connected to the port. Link Down - No active Ethernet device is detected. --- - The LAN port is disabled.
Speed	Shows the negotiated speed of the LAN port. 1000Mbps - Negotiated speed of the LAN port is 1000 Mbps. 100Mbps - Negotiated speed of the LAN port is 100 Mbps. 10Mbps - Negotiated speed of the LAN port is 10 Mbps. --- - The LAN port is disabled or there is no active device connected.

After finished the above settings, click OK to save the configuration.

VI-1-12 Self-Signed Certificate

A self-signed certificate is a *unique* identification for the device (e.g., Vigor router) which generates the certificate by itself to ensure the router security. Such self-signed certificate is signed with its own private key.

The self-signed certificate will be applied in SSL VPN, HTTPS, and so on. In addition, it can be created for free by using a wide variety of tools.

System Maintenance >> Self-Signed Certificate

Self-Signed Certificate Information

Certificate Name :	self-signed
Issuer :	C=TW, ST=HsinChu, L=HuKou, O=DrayTek Corp., OU=DrayTek Support, CN=Vigor Router
Subject :	C=TW, ST=HsinChu, L=HuKou, O=DrayTek Corp., OU=DrayTek Support, CN=Vigor Router
Subject Alternative Name :	DNS:www.draytek.com
Valid From :	Jan 10 09:05:43 2023 GMT
Valid To :	Feb 9 09:05:43 2024 GMT
PEM Format Content :	<pre>-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE----- MIIDpjCCAo6gAwIBAgIJALSTLsv1GdiMMA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBCwUAMHgx CzA JBGNV BAYTA1RXMRAdGyVDVQIDAdIc2luQ2h1MQ4wDAYDVQHQDAVIDUvdTEWMBQGA1UE CgwNRHJheVR1ayBDb3JwLjEYMBYGA1UECwwPRHJheVR1ay8tdXBwb3J0MRUwEwYD VQDDAxwIwDvc iBSb3V0ZXIwHhcNMjMwMTUwMDk0NTQzWhcNMjMwMTUwMDk0NTQz WjB4MzswCQYDVQGEwJUVzEQMA4GA1UECAwHSHNpbkNodTEOMAwGA1UEBwwFSFVl b3UxZjAUBGNVBAoMDURyYX1UZWsgQ29ycC4xGDABGgNVBAAsMD0RyYX1UZWsgU3Vw cG9ydEVMBMGA1UEAwMwVmlnb3JgUm91dGVyMIIBIjANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQEFAAOc AQ8AMIIBCgKCAQEAsjQ3LkQdti90A/KjVbuSAiz1irCOxd2cAar7w8NTIXmZJ7k+ LXbWLGtPbsR015d3snRFn2Jh3uvDuddONS3FA973Kppy6F613XreuYfk8xmhjiy2 TwhzXCdAG07LbMiDoysWHC/er+A3TdIDkjp2qq6scv4B8eUAcwGdyRVEoA7CsF ZZxK1QbPdtD58hdVxLMA+Bat4Cy4wtD5Y2+rt1IZvMTwL9sKbqCpjeZc2cqJoIhq yYiHZMrz+RgRD4pvALMg1E4IUNs0AISVVNiLLVqrGhvFhIQpFBWFF1PM7EJ9Pbpe wpUBBHy32Wxw1Rvj+sFi54N0EtraqtMnUBpCQIDAQABozMwMTATBGNVHsUEDDAK BgggrBgEFBQcDATAaBgNVHREEEzARgg93d3cuZHJheXR1ay5jb20wDQYJKoZIhvcN AQELBQADggEBAKA4/YMdr3fon0K+akNUbTJHecA9Qe70Lh8EnKycjhV+5btQbw8g KmnAI4NM7PuF0Ivep4cwP9gL2Jp1VnLz8ts51g6H+TVmRTbytkLxUVdwnFqxg27u w0u163G8TgHtZLQI9M+6epymYeTg0fUBbb9CfongLMke05dvtqHRTGhjsCGjKpen OEz2ZEHTwHT8wX3T0JhHH/59QDF1DGuFGgZxHYyibYx4kyhrFZKE/De1S6zGndgX ZU51874GBhxd2MVQQ65+Tfhem4m1SVP1C6LjL2fjYlW01sdj5x+0N8ZacGMA08k1 mVRq8o9eV3phff17ht3vKm+qbkc8/ubtddM= -----END CERTIFICATE-----</pre>

Note:

1. Please setup the **System Maintenance >> Time and Date** correctly before you try to regenerate a self-signed certificate!!
2. The Time Zone MUST be setup correctly!!

Regenerate

Click Regeneration to open Regenerate Self-Signed Certificate window. Type in all the information that the window request such as certificate name (used for identifying different certificate), subject alternative name type and relational settings for subject name. Then click GENERATE.

Regenerate Self-Signed Certificate

Certificate Name	self-signed
Subject Alternative Name	
Type	IP Address ▾
IP	<input type="text"/>
Subject Name	
Country (C)	<input type="text"/>
State (ST)	<input type="text"/>
Location (L)	<input type="text"/>
Organization (O)	<input type="text"/>
Organization Unit (OU)	<input type="text"/>
Common Name (CN)	<input type="text"/>
Email (E)	<input type="text"/>
Key Type	RSA ▾
Key Size	2048 Bit ▾

Generate

VI-1-13 Reboot System

The Web user interface may be used to restart your router. Click **Reboot System** from **System Maintenance** to open the following page.

System Maintenance >> Reboot System

Reboot System

Do you want to reboot your router ?

Using current configuration
 Using factory default configuration

Auto Reboot Time Schedule

Schedule Profile : , , ,

Note:
Action and Duration Time settings will be ignored.

Schedule Profile - You can type in four sets of time schedule for performing system reboot. All the schedules can be set previously in **Applications >> Schedule** web page and you can use the number that you have set in that web page.

If you want to reboot the router using the current configuration, check **Using current configuration** and click **Reboot Now**. To reset the router settings to default values, check **Using factory default configuration** and click **Reboot Now**. The router will take 5 seconds to reboot the system.



Info

When the system pops up Reboot System web page after you configure web settings, please click Reboot Now to reboot your router for ensuring normal operation and preventing unexpected errors of the router in the future.

VI-1-14 Firmware Upgrade

Click System Maintenance>> Firmware Upgrade to launch the Firmware Upgrade Utility.

System Maintenance >> Firmware Upgrade



Firmware Version Status

Current Firmware Version: 3.9.6.3

Latest Firmware Version: 3.9.6.3

[Download Directly](#)

[Latest Firmware Detail](#)

Download Link: <https://www.draytek.com/support/latest-firmwares/>

Web Firmware Upgrade

Select a firmware file.

[選擇檔案](#) 未選擇任何檔案

Click Upgrade to upload the file.

[Upgrade](#)

[Preview](#)

Note:

Upgrade using the ALL file will retain existing router configuration, whereas using the RST file will reset the configuration to factory defaults.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Firmware Version Status	Check The Latest Firmware - Click to check for updated firmware. Any available new firmware files will be displayed and you can download any one of them by clicking Download . After the file has been downloaded, click Select followed by Upgrade to perform the firmware upgrade.
Web Firmware Upgrade	Click Browse... to select the firmware file, followed by Upgrade to start the upgrade process, or Preview to display detailed information about the selected firmware file:

VI-1-15 Internal Service User List

User profiles (clients) defined and enabled in **User Management >> User Profile** will be displayed in this page.

Such page allows you to turn on or turn off security authentication service (offered by internal RADIUS and/or Local 802.1X) for each user profile without accessing into the User Management configuration page.

System Maintenance >> Internal Service User List

User Name	<input type="checkbox"/> Radius	<input type="checkbox"/> Local 802.1X	User Name	<input type="checkbox"/> Radius	<input type="checkbox"/> Local 802.1X
No valid User Profile					

Note:

1. Only the user profiles which is enabled in **User Management >> User Profile** will be listed here.
2. If you enable RADIUS or Local 802.1X for a user profile here, it will use the default authentication methods; however, you may change its authentication methods via **User Management >> User Profile**.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
User Name	Display the name of the existed user profile. To modify the detailed settings, simply click the user name link to access into the web page for modification.
Radius	<p>Check the box to turn on the security authentication service offered by internal RADIUS server for the user profile.</p> <p>Uncheck the box to turn off security authentication service offered by internal RADIUS server for the user profile.</p> <p>If you check the box next to such item, all of the user profiles listed in this page will be enabled with RADIUS service enabled vice versa.</p>
Local 802.1X	<p>Check the box to turn on the security authentication service offered by Local 802.1X server for the user profile.</p> <p>Uncheck the box to turn off security authentication service offered by Local 802.1X server for the user profile.</p> <p>If you check the box next to such item, all of the user profiles listed in this page will be enabled with Local 802.1X service enabled; vice versa.</p>



Info

For the detailed setting (such as IP address, port number) configuration of internal RADIUS, refer to **Applications >> RADIUS/TACACS+**.

For the detailed setting (such as IP address, port number) configuration of Local 802.1X, refer to **LAN >> Wired 802.1X** and **Wireless LAN >> Security**.

VI-1-16 Dashboard Control

There are nine groups of setting information which can be displayed on Dashboard as a reference for administrator/user. Except for Front Panel and System Information, the settings information regarding to the groups listed on this page can be hidden if required.

System Maintenance >> Dashboard Control

<input type="checkbox"/>	Front Panel
<input type="checkbox"/>	System Information
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	IPv4 LAN Information
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	IPv4 Internet Access
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	IPv6 Internet Access
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Interface
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Security
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	System Resource
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Quick Access

OK

Cancel

VI-2 Bandwidth Management

Sessions Limit

A PC with private IP address can access to the Internet via NAT router. The router will generate the records of NAT sessions for such connection. The P2P (Peer to Peer) applications (e.g., BitTorrent) always need many sessions for procession and also they will occupy over resources which might result in important accesses impacted. To solve the problem, you can use limit session to limit the session procession for specified Hosts.

Bandwidth Limit

The downstream or upstream from FTP, HTTP or some P2P applications will occupy large of bandwidth and affect the applications for other programs. Please use Limit Bandwidth to make the bandwidth usage more efficient.

Quality of Service (QoS)

Deploying QoS (Quality of Service) management to guarantee that all applications receive the service levels required and sufficient bandwidth to meet performance expectations is indeed one important aspect of modern enterprise network.

One reason for QoS is that numerous TCP-based applications tend to continually increase their transmission rate and consume all available bandwidth, which is called TCP slow start. If other applications are not protected by QoS, it will detract much from their performance in the overcrowded network. This is especially essential to those are low tolerant of loss, delay or jitter (delay variation).

Another reason is due to congestions at network intersections where speeds of interconnected circuits mismatch or traffic aggregates, packets will queue up and traffic can be throttled back to a lower speed. If there's no defined priority to specify which packets should be discarded (or in another term "dropped") from an overflowing queue, packets of sensitive applications mentioned above might be the ones to drop off. How this will affect application performance?

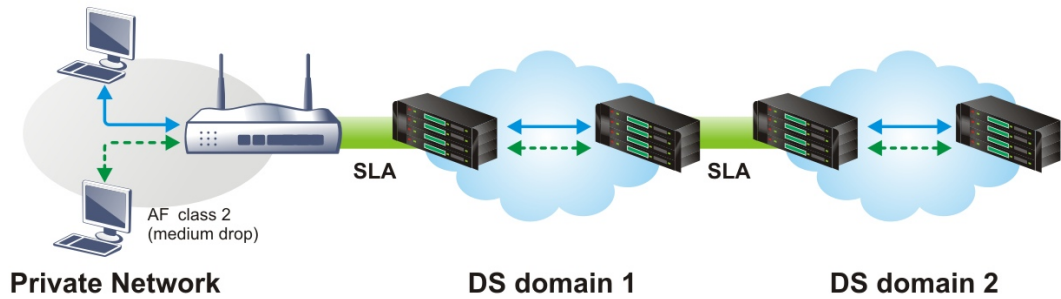
There are two components within Primary configuration of QoS deployment:

- Classification: Identifying low-latency or crucial applications and marking them for high-priority service level enforcement throughout the network.
- Scheduling: Based on classification of service level to assign packets to queues and associated service types

The basic QoS implementation in Vigor routers is to classify and schedule packets based on the service type information in the IP header. For instance, to ensure the connection with the headquarter, a teleworker may enforce an index of QoS Control to reserve bandwidth for HTTPS connection while using lots of application at the same time.

One more larger-scale implementation of QoS network is to apply DSCP (Differentiated Service Code Point) and IP Precedence disciplines at Layer 3. Compared with legacy IP Precedence that uses Type of Service (ToS) field in the IP header to define 8 service classes, DSCP is a successor creating 64 classes possible with backward IP Precedence compatibility. In a QoS-enabled network, or Differentiated Service (DiffServ or DS) framework, a DS domain owner should sign a Service License Agreement (SLA) with other DS domain owners to define the service level provided toward traffic from different domains. Then each DS node in these domains will perform the priority treatment. This is called per-hop-behavior (PHB). The definition of PHB includes Expedited Forwarding (EF), Assured Forwarding (AF), and Best Effort (BE). AF defines the four classes of delivery (or forwarding) classes and three levels of drop precedence in each class.

Vigor routers as edge routers of DS domain shall check the marked DSCP value in the IP header of bypassing traffic, to allocate certain amount of resource execute appropriate policing, classification or scheduling. The core routers in the backbone will do the same checking before executing treatments in order to ensure service-level consistency throughout the whole QoS-enabled network.



However, each node may take different attitude toward packets with high priority marking since it may bind with the business deal of SLA among different DS domain owners. It's not easy to achieve deterministic and consistent high-priority QoS traffic throughout the whole network with merely Vigor router's effort.

Web User Interface

Below shows the menu items for Bandwidth Management.



VI-2-1 Sessions Limit

In the Bandwidth Management menu, click Sessions Limit to open the web page.

Bandwidth Management >> Sessions Limit

IPv4
IPv6

Enable Disable

Default Max Sessions:

Limitation List

Index	Start IP	End IP	Max Sessions

Specific Limitation

Start IP: End IP:

Maximum Sessions:

Administration Message (Max 255 characters)

You have reached the maximum number of permitted Internet sessions.<p>Please close one or more applications to allow further Internet access.<p>Contact your system administrator for further information.

Time Schedule

Schedule Profile : , , ,

Note: Action and Idle Timeout settings will be ignored.

To activate the function of limit session, simply click **Enable** and set the default session limit. Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Session Limit	<p>Enable - Click this button to activate the function of limit session.</p> <p>Disable - Click this button to close the function of limit session.</p>

	Default Max Sessions - Defines the default session number used for each computer in LAN.
Limitation List	Displays a list of specific limitations that you set on this web page.
Specific Limitation	<p>Start IP- Defines the start IP address for limit session.</p> <p>End IP - Defines the end IP address for limit session.</p> <p>Maximum Sessions - Defines the available session number for each host in the specific range of IP addresses. If you do not set the session number in this field, the system will use the default session limit for the specific limitation you set for each index.</p> <p>Add - Adds the specific session limitation onto the list above.</p> <p>Edit - Allows you to edit the settings for the selected limitation.</p> <p>Delete - Remove the selected settings existing on the limitation list.</p>
Administration Message	<p>Type the words which will be displayed when reaches the maximum number of Internet sessions permitted.</p> <p>Default Message - Click this button to apply the default message offered by the router.</p>
Time Schedule	<p>Schedule Profile - You can type in four sets of time schedule for your request. All the schedules can be set previously in Application >> Schedule web page and you can use the number that you have set in that web page.</p>

After finishing all the settings, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

VI-2-2 Bandwidth Limit

In the Bandwidth Management menu, click **Bandwidth Limit** to open the web page.

Bandwidth Management >> Bandwidth Limit

Bandwidth Limit

Enable
 Disable
 IP Routed Subnet

Default Limit (Per User)

TX Limit: Kbps
 RX Limit: Kbps

Limitation List

Index	Start IP/Group	End IP/Object	TX limit	RX limit	Shared

Add Entry By: IP Range
 IP Object
 Start IP: End IP:

Each
 Shared
 TX Limit: Kbps
 RX Limit: Kbps

Smart Bandwidth Limit

Apply the below limit to users not in Limitation List and user more than sessions

TX Limit : Kbps
 RX Limit : Kbps

Time Schedule

Schedule Profile : , , ,

Note: Action and Idle Timeout settings will be ignored.

Note:

1. Use "0" for TX/RX Limit for unlimited bandwidth.
2. Available bandwidth is calculated according to the maximum bandwidth detected or the Line Speed defined in WAN >> **General Setup** when in "According to Line Speed" Load Balance mode.
3. The Action and Idle Timeout settings in the Schedule Profile will be ignored.
4. When Bandwidth Limit is enabled, Hardware Acceleration will not work.

To activate the function of limit bandwidth, simply click **Enable** and set the default upstream and downstream limit.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Bandwidth Limit	<p>Enable - Click this button to activate the function of limit bandwidth.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● IP Routed Subnet - Check this box to apply the bandwidth limit to the second subnet specified in LAN>>General Setup. <p>Disable - Click this button to close the function of limit bandwidth.</p>
Default Limit (Per User)	<p>TX Limit - Define the default speed of the upstream for each computer in LAN.</p>

	<p>RX Limit - Define the default speed of the downstream for each computer in LAN.</p>
Limitation List	<p>Display a list of specific limitations that you set on this web page.</p> <p>Add Entry By - Specify an entry with an IP address (IP address range) and limit for data transmission.</p> <p>IP Range - All the IPs within the range defined will be restricted by bandwidth limit defined by TX Limit and RX Limit below.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Start IP - Define the start IP address for limit bandwidth. ● End IP - Define the end IP address for limit bandwidth. <p>IP Object - All the IPs specified by the selected IP object or IP group will be restricted by bandwidth limit defined by TX Limit and RX Limit below.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● IP Group - Specify an IP group by using the drop down list. ● IP Object - Specify an IP object by using the drop down list. <p>Each / Shared - Select Each to make each IP within the range of Start IP and End IP having the same speed defined in TX limit and RX limit fields; select Shared to make all the IPs within the range of Start IP and End IP share the speed defined in TX limit and RX limit fields.</p> <p>TX limit - Define the limitation for the speed of the upstream. If you do not set the limit in this field, the system will use the default speed for the specific limitation you set for each index.</p> <p>RX limit - Define the limitation for the speed of the downstream. If you do not set the limit in this field, the system will use the default speed for the specific limitation you set for each index.</p> <p>Add - Add the specific speed limitation onto the list above.</p> <p>Update - Allow you to edit the settings for the selected limitation.</p> <p>Delete - Remove the selected settings existing on the limitation list.</p>
Smart Bandwidth Limit	<p>This option restricts the bandwidth of LAN clients that are not in the limitation list when the network sessions exceed a predefined threshold.</p> <p>Apply the below limit to ... - The number of sessions a LAN client is allowed to have before Smart Bandwidth Limit activates.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● TX limit - Upstream speed limit for each LAN client. Unit can be either Kbps or Mbps. Value must be between 0 (unlimited) and 30000. ● RX limit - Downstream speed limit for each LAN client. Unit can be either Kbps or Mbps. Value must be between 0 (unlimited) and 30000.
Time Schedule	<p>Schedule Profile - Specify up to 4 time schedule entries to enable or disable the WAN.</p>

VI-2-3 Quality of Service

In the **Bandwidth Management** menu, click **Quality of Service** to open the web page.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

General Setup | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Index	Enable	Direction	Inbound/ Outbound Bandwidth		Class 1	Class 2	Class 3	Others	Status
WAN1	<input type="checkbox"/>	BOTH	--Kbps/	--Kbps	25 %	25 %	25 %	25 %	Status
WAN2	<input type="checkbox"/>	BOTH	100 Mbps	100 Mbps	25 %	25 %	25 %	25 %	Status
WAN3	<input type="checkbox"/>	BOTH	100 Mbps	100 Mbps	25 %	25 %	25 %	25 %	Status
WAN4	<input type="checkbox"/>	BOTH	100 Mbps	100 Mbps	25 %	25 %	25 %	25 %	Status

Note:

QoS may not work properly if the bandwidth entered is not correct. Before enable QoS, you may run speed test (from e.g., <http://speedtest.net>) or contact your ISP for the accurate bandwidth.

Class Rule

Index	Enable	QoS Class	Local Address	Remote Address	DSCP	Service Type
Add						

Note:

- The packets that don't match any class rules above will be classified into 'Others'
- Go to [User Defined Service Type](#) to edit/delete user-defined service type profiles.
- Hardware Acceleration will not work on wired WAN interfaces with QoS enabled.

VoIP Prioritization

Enable the First Priority for VoIP SIP/RTP: 

SIP UDP Port: (Default: 5060)

Tag Outbound Traffic

Class 1	<input type="checkbox"/> Add DSCP or Precedence Value	Default
Class 2	<input type="checkbox"/> Add DSCP or Precedence Value	Default
Class 3	<input type="checkbox"/> Add DSCP or Precedence Value	Default

OK

Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
General Setup	<p>Index – Display the WAN interface number link that you can edit.</p> <p>Enable – Check the box to enable the QoS function for WAN interface. If it is enabled, you can configure general QoS setting for each WAN interface.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Direction – Define which traffic the QoS Control settings will apply to. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ IN- apply to incoming traffic only. ■ OUT- apply to outgoing traffic only. ■ BOTH- apply to both incoming and outgoing traffic. ● Inbound/Outbound Bandwidth – Set the connecting rate of data input/output for other WAN. For example, if your ADSL supports 1M of downstream and 256K upstream, please set 1000kbps for this box. The default value is 10000kbps. ● Class 1 ~ 3 / Others – Define the ratio of bandwidth to upstream speed and bandwidth to downstream speed. There are four queues allowed for QoS control. The first three (Class 1 to Class 3) class rules can be adjusted for your necessity. In which, the “Others” field is used for

Item	Description
	<p>the packets which are not suitable for the three class rules.</p> <p>Status - Display the online statistics of WAN interface.</p>
Class Rule	<p>Index - Display the index number of existed rule(s).</p> <p>Enable - Check / uncheck the box to enable / disable the rule.</p> <p>QoS Class - Display the number of QoS class selected for this rule.</p> <p>Local Address / Remote Address - Display the IP address for local address / remote address.</p> <p>DSCP - Display the level of the data for processing with QoS control.</p> <p>Service Type - Display the service type of the data for processing with QoS control.</p> <p>Add - Click it to create a class rule for QoS. Set detailed settings for the selected Class.</p>
VoIP Prioritization	<p>Enable the First Priority for VoIP SIP/RTP - When this feature is enabled, the VoIP SIP/UDP packets will be sent with highest priority.</p> <p>SIP UDP Port - Set a port number used for SIP.</p>
Tag Outbound Traffic	<p>Add DSCP or Precedence Value for Class 1 to Class 3 - Check the box and select a precedence value.</p>

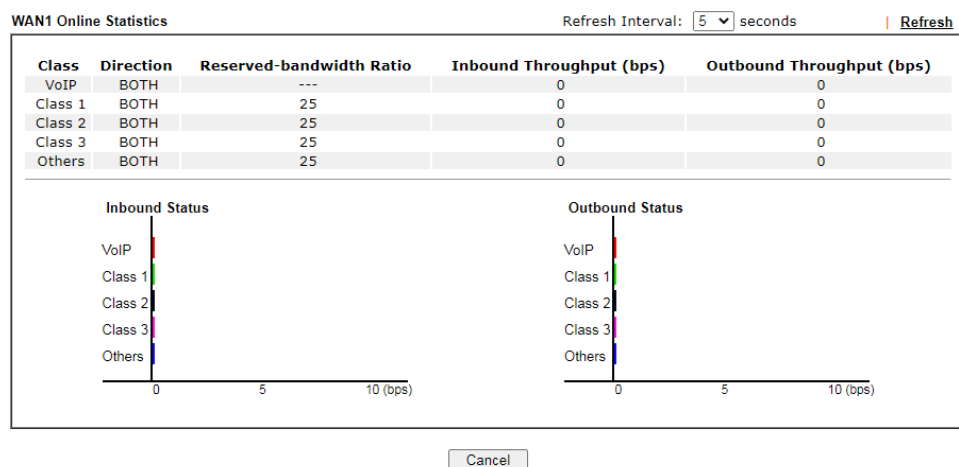
This page displays the QoS settings result of the WAN interface. Click the **Setup** link to access into next page for the general setup of WAN interface. As to class rule, simply click the **Edit** link to access into next for configuration.

You can configure general setup for the WAN interface, edit the Class Rule, and edit the Service Type for the Class Rule for your request.

Online Statistics

Display an online statistics for quality of service for your reference. This feature is available only when the Quality of Service for WAN interface is enabled.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service



General Setup for WAN Interface

Click WAN interface number link to configure the limited bandwidth ratio for QoS of the WAN interface.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service >> WAN1

Enable UDP Bandwidth Control
Limited_bandwidth Ratio %

Outbound TCP ACK Prioritize

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable UDP Bandwidth Control	Check this and set the limited bandwidth ratio on the right field. This is a protection of TCP application traffic since UDP application traffic such as streaming video will exhaust lots of bandwidth.
Outbound TCP ACK Prioritize	The difference in bandwidth between download and upload are great in ADSL2+ environment. For the download speed might be impacted by the uploading TCP ACK, you can check this box to push ACK of upload faster to speed the network traffic.



Info

The rate of outbound/inbound must be smaller than the real bandwidth to ensure correct calculation of QoS. It is suggested to set the bandwidth value for inbound/outbound as 80% - 85% of physical network speed provided by ISP to maximize the QoS performance.

Edit the Class Rule for QoS

- The first three (Class 1 to Class 3) class rules can be adjusted for your necessity. To add, edit or delete the class rule, please click the **Add** button to create a new one or click the **Edit** button of a class rule.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

General Setup										Set to Factory Default
Index	Enable	Direction	Inbound/ Outbound Bandwidth		Class 1	Class 2	Class 3	Others	Status	
WAN1	<input type="checkbox"/>	BOTH	--Kbps/	--Kbps	25 %	25 %	25 %	25 %	Status	
WAN2	<input type="checkbox"/>	BOTH	100 Mbps	/ 100 Mbps	25 %	25 %	25 %	25 %	Status	
WAN3	<input type="checkbox"/>	BOTH	100 Mbps	/ 100 Mbps	25 %	25 %	25 %	25 %	Status	
WAN4	<input type="checkbox"/>	BOTH	100 Mbps	/ 100 Mbps	25 %	25 %	25 %	25 %	Status	

Note:

QoS may not work properly if the bandwidth entered is not correct. Before enable QoS, you may run speed test (from e.g., <http://speedtest.net>) or contact your ISP for the accurate bandwidth.

Class Rule

Index	Enable	QoS Class	Local Address	Remote Address	DSCP	Service Type
<input type="button" value="Add"/>						

Note:

- The packets that don't match any class rules above will be classified into 'Others'
- Go to [User Defined Service Type](#) to edit/delete user-defined service type profiles.
- Hardware Acceleration will not work on wired WAN interfaces with QoS enabled.

VoIP Prioritization

Enable the First Priority for VoIP SIP/RTP: 

SIP UDP Port: (Default: 5060)

Tag Outbound Traffic

Class 1	<input type="checkbox"/> Add DSCP or Precedence Value	Default
Class 2	<input type="checkbox"/> Add DSCP or Precedence Value	Default
Class 3	<input type="checkbox"/> Add DSCP or Precedence Value	Default

- For adding a new rule, click **Add** to open the following page.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

Rule 1

<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	
IP Version	<input checked="" type="radio"/> IPv4 <input type="radio"/> IPv6
Local IP Address	<input type="text" value="Any"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/>
Remote IP Address	<input type="text" value="Any"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/>
DiffServ CodePoint	ANY
Service Type	---Predefined---
QoS Class	Class 1

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Check this box to invoke these settings.
IP Version	Please specify which protocol (IPv4 or IPv6) will be used for this rule.
Local IP Address	Click the Edit button to set the local IP address (on LAN) for the rule.

Remote IP Address	<p>Click the Edit button to set the remote IP address (on LAN/WAN) for the rule.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Ethernet Type: IPv4</p> <table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 60%;">Address Type</td> <td>Any Address ▾</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Start IP Address</td> <td>0.0.0.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>End IP Address</td> <td>0.0.0.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Subnet Mask</td> <td>▾</td> </tr> </table> <p style="text-align: center;"> <input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Close"/> </p> </div> <p>Address Type - Determine the address type for the source address.</p> <p>For Single Address, you have to fill in Start IP address.</p> <p>For Range Address, you have to fill in Start IP address and End IP address.</p> <p>For Subnet Address, you have to fill in Start IP address and Subnet Mask.</p>	Address Type	Any Address ▾	Start IP Address	0.0.0.0	End IP Address	0.0.0.0	Subnet Mask	▾
Address Type	Any Address ▾								
Start IP Address	0.0.0.0								
End IP Address	0.0.0.0								
Subnet Mask	▾								
DiffServ CodePoint	<p>All the packets of data will be divided with different levels and will be processed according to the level type by the system. Please assign one of the levels of the data for processing with QoS control.</p>								
Service Type	<p>It determines the service type of the data for processing with QoS control. It can also be edited. You can choose the predefined service type from the Service Type drop down list. Those types are predefined in factory. Simply choose the one that you want for using by current QoS.</p>								
QoS Class	<p>Specify the QoS class (1, 2 or 3) for this rule.</p>								

3. After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

By the way, you can set up to 20 rules for one Class. If you want to edit an existed rule, please select the radio button of that one and click **Edit** to open the rule edit page for modification.

VI-2-4 APP QoS

The QoS function is used to do bandwidth management for the services with certain IP or port number. However, there is no effect of bandwidth management on the service such as VNC or PPTV without fixed IP or port number.

APP QoS employs the function of APP Enforcement to detect the types of software in application layer. By combining the function of QoS (adjustment on Inbound/Outbound bandwidth and bandwidth ratio), Vigor router can perform the bandwidth management for the protocols, streaming, remote control, web HD and so on.

Click **Bandwidth Management >> APP QoS** to open the following page.

Bandwidth Management >> APP QoS

APP QoS

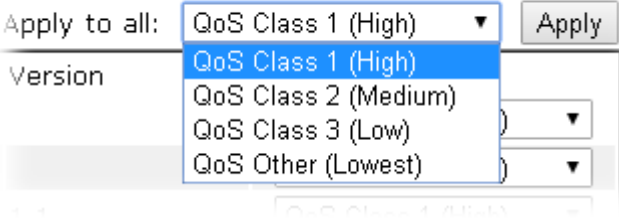
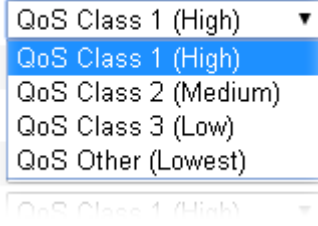
Enable Disable

 Apply to all:

Enable	Instant Message	Version	Action
<input type="checkbox"/>	Facebook/Instagram		<input type="text" value="QoS Class 1 (High)"/> ▼
<input type="checkbox"/>	LINE	5.23.0.2134	<input type="text" value="QoS Class 1 (High)"/> ▼
<input type="checkbox"/>	LinkedIn		<input type="text" value="QoS Class 1 (High)"/> ▼
<input type="checkbox"/>	Signal	1.26.2	<input type="text" value="QoS Class 1 (High)"/> ▼
<input type="checkbox"/>	Slack	4.0.0	<input type="text" value="QoS Class 1 (High)"/> ▼
<input type="checkbox"/>	Snapchat	10.79.5.0	<input type="text" value="QoS Class 1 (High)"/> ▼
<input type="checkbox"/>	Telegram	1.7.10	<input type="text" value="QoS Class 1 (High)"/> ▼
<input type="checkbox"/>	WhatsApp	0.3.2848	<input type="text" value="QoS Class 1 (High)"/> ▼

Available settings are explained as follows:

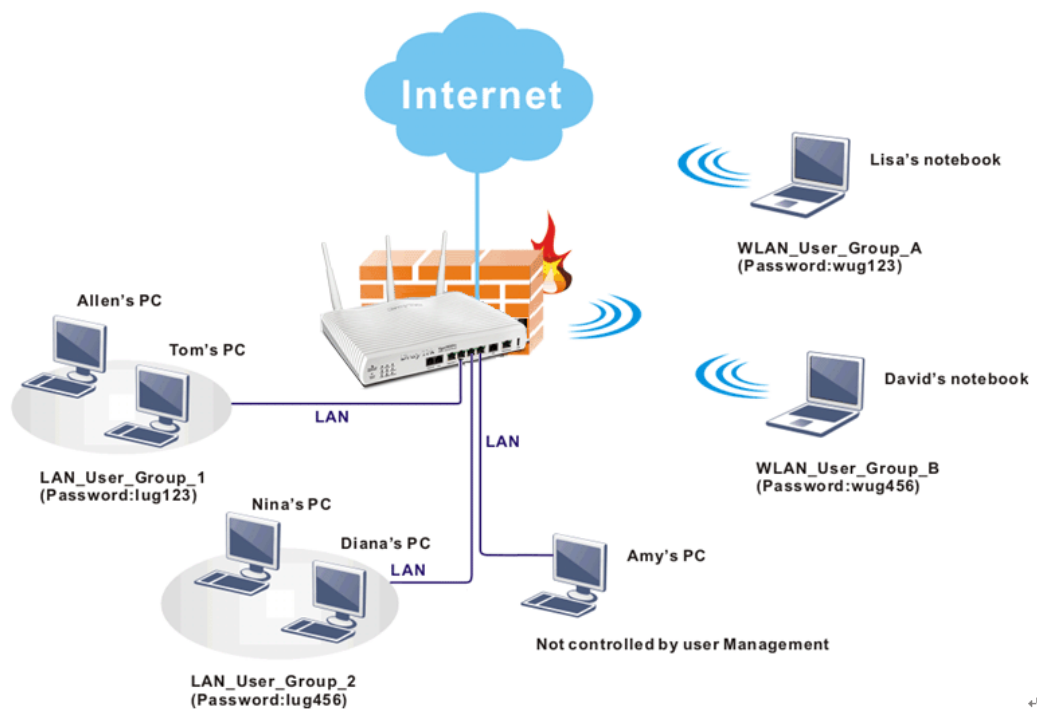
Item	Description
Enable/Disable	Click Enable to activate APP QoS function. Click Disable to deactivate APP QoS function.
Traceable	The protocol listed below is traceable by Vigor router. Each tab offers different types of protocols to fit your request.
Untraceable	The protocol listed below is not easy to be traced by Vigor router. Each tab offers different types of protocols to fit your request.
Select All	Click it to select all of the protocols.
Clear All	Click it to de-select all of the protocols.
Apply to all	Choose one of the actions from the drop down list. It is prepared for applying to all protocols.

	 <p>Apply - Click it to make the selected action be applied all of the selected protocols immediately.</p>
<p>Action</p>	<p>There are many protocols which can be specified with different QoS Class.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Action</p> 

After finishing all the settings, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

VI-3 User Management

User Management is a security feature which disallows any IP traffic (except DHCP-related packets) from a particular host until that host has correctly supplied a valid username and password. Instead of managing with IP address/MAC address, User Management function manages hosts with user account. Network administrator can give different firewall policies or rules for different hosts with different User Management accounts. This is more flexible and convenient for network management. Not only offering the basic checking for Internet access, User Management also provides additional firewall rules, e.g. CSM checking for protecting hosts.



Info

Filter rules configured under Firewall usually are applied to the host (the one that the router installed) only. With user management, the rules can be applied to every user connected to the router with customized profiles.

Web User Interface



VI-3-1 General Setup

General Setup can determine the standard (rule-based or user-based) for the users controlled by User Management. The mode (standard) selected here will influence the contents of the filter rule(s) applied to every user.

User Management >> General Setup

General Setup

Mode Selection:

Rule-Based is a management method based on IP address. Administrator may set different firewall rules to different IP address.

User-Based is a management method based on user profiles. Administrator may set different firewall rules to different user profiles.

Authentication page:

Web Authentication: HTTPS HTTP

Display IP address on the dialog box pops up after successful login.

Landing page:

(Max 255 characters) [Preview](#) | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

```
<body stats=1><script language='javascript'>
window.location='http://www.draytek.com'</script></body>
```

OK Clear Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Mode	There are two modes offered here for you to choose. Each mode will bring different filtering effect to the users involved. User-Based - If you choose such mode, the router will apply the filter rules configured in User Management>>User Profile to the users. Rule-Based -If you choose such mode, the router will apply the filter rules configured in Firewall>>General Setup and Filter Rule to the users.
Authentication page	Web Authentication - Choose the protocol for web

	authentication. Display IP Address on the dialog box... - Check the box to display the IP address of the client on the tracking window.
Landing Page	Type the information to be displayed on the first web page when the LAN user accessing into Internet via such router.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

VI-3-2 User Profile

This page allows you to set customized profiles (up to 200) which will be applied for users controlled under **User Management**. Simply open **User Management>>User Profile**.

User Management >> User Profile

User Profile Table | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Select All

Profile	Enable	Name	Profile	Enable	Name
1.	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	admin	17.	<input type="checkbox"/>	
2.	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Dial-In User	18.	<input type="checkbox"/>	
3.	<input type="checkbox"/>		19.	<input type="checkbox"/>	
4.	<input type="checkbox"/>		20.	<input type="checkbox"/>	
5.	<input type="checkbox"/>		21.	<input type="checkbox"/>	
6.	<input type="checkbox"/>		22.	<input type="checkbox"/>	
7.	<input type="checkbox"/>		23.	<input type="checkbox"/>	
8.	<input type="checkbox"/>		24.	<input type="checkbox"/>	
9.	<input type="checkbox"/>		25.	<input type="checkbox"/>	
10.	<input type="checkbox"/>		26.	<input type="checkbox"/>	
11.	<input type="checkbox"/>		27.	<input type="checkbox"/>	
12.	<input type="checkbox"/>		28.	<input type="checkbox"/>	
13.	<input type="checkbox"/>		29.	<input type="checkbox"/>	
14.	<input type="checkbox"/>		30.	<input type="checkbox"/>	
15.	<input type="checkbox"/>		31.	<input type="checkbox"/>	
16.	<input type="checkbox"/>		32.	<input type="checkbox"/>	

<< [1-32](#) | [33-64](#) | [65-96](#) | [97-128](#) | [129-160](#) | [161-192](#) | [193-200](#) >> [Next](#) >>

Note:

1. admin: To change the administrator password, please go to System Maintenance >> Administrator Password.
2. Dial-In User Profile: Dial-In User Profile is reserved for VPN authentication.
3. During authentication, Router will check all the local user profiles first, and then the profiles in external servers.

To set the user profile, please click any index number link to open the following page. Notice that profile 1 (**admin**) and profile 2 (**Dial-In User**) are factory default settings. Profile 2 is reserved for future use.

Profile Index 3

Common Settings

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable this account	
Username	<input type="text" value="Max: 24 characters"/> (Only support A-Z a-z 0-9 - . @)
Password	<input type="text" value="Max: 24 characters"/>
Confirm Password	<input type="text"/>
External Server Authentication	None ▾

Login Settings

Allow Authentication via	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Web <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Alert Tool <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Telnet
Show <u>Landing Page</u> After Login	<input type="checkbox"/>
Idle Timeout	<input type="text" value="10"/> min. (0: Unlimited)
Auto Logout After	<input type="text" value="0"/> min. (0: Off)
Pop up Time-Tracking Window	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Login Permission <u>Schedule</u>	None ▾, None ▾, None ▾, None ▾

Policy

Max. Login Devices	<input type="text" value="0"/> (0: Unlimited)
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable Time Quota	0 min. <input type="text" value="0"/> <input type="text" value="0"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable Data Quota	0 MB ▾ <input type="text" value="0"/> <input type="text" value="0"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Reset Quota Automatically To	Time Limit <input type="text" value="0"/> min. Data Limit <input type="text" value="0"/> MB
When	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Login Permission Schedule Ends <input type="radio"/> <u>Schedule</u> None ▾ Starts

Other Services

Allow this profile to be used by	<input type="checkbox"/> Internal RADIUS <input type="checkbox"/> Local 802.1X
Log	None ▾

OK Refresh Clear Cancel

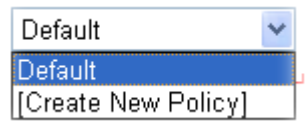
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Common Settings	<p>Enable this account - Check this box to enable such user profile.</p> <p>Username - Type a name for such user profile (e.g., <i>LAN_User_Group_1</i>, <i>WLAN_User_Group_A</i>, <i>WLAN_User_Group_B</i>, etc). When a user tries to access Internet through this router, an authentication step must be performed first. The user has to type the User Name specified here to pass the authentication. When the user passes the authentication, he/she can access Internet via this router. However the accessing operation will be restricted with the conditions configured in this user profile. The maximum length of the name you can set is 24 characters.</p> <p>Password - Type a password for such profile (e.g., <i>lug123</i>, <i>wug123</i>, <i>wug456</i>, etc). When a user tries to access Internet through this router, an authentication step must be performed first. The user has to type the password specified here to pass the authentication. When the user passes the authentication, he/she can access Internet via this router</p>

	<p>with the limitation configured in this user profile.</p> <p>The maximum length of the password you can set is 24 characters.</p> <p>Confirm Password - Type the password again for confirmation.</p> <p>External Service Authentication - router will authenticate the dial-in user by itself or by external service such as LDAP server or Radius server or TACACS+ server. If LDAP, Radius or TACACS+ is selected here, it is not necessary to configure the password setting above.</p>
<p>Login Settings</p>	<p>Allow Authentication via- Any user (from LAN side or WLAN side) tries to connect to Internet via Vigor router must be authenticated by the router first. There are three ways offered by the router for the user to choose for authentication.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Web - If it is selected, the user can type the URL of the router from any browser. Then, a login window will be popped up and ask the user to type the user name and password for authentication. If succeed, a Welcome Message (configured in User Management >> General Setup) will be displayed. After authentication, the destination URL (if requested by the user) will be guided automatically by the router. ● Alert Tool - If it is selected, the user can open Alert Tool and type the user name and password for authentication. A window with remaining time of connection for such user will be displayed. Next, the user can access Internet through any browser on Windows. Note that Alert Tool can be downloaded from DrayTek web site. ● Telnet - If it is selected, the user can use Telnet command to perform the authentication job. <p>Show Landing Page After Login - When a user tries to access into the web user interface of Vigor router series with the user name and password specified in this profile, he/she will be lead into the web page configured in Landing Page field in User Management>>General Setup. Check this box to enable such function.</p> <p>Idle Timeout - If the user is idle over the limitation of the timer, the network connection will be stopped for such user. By default, the Idle Timeout is set to 10 minutes.</p> <p>Auto Logout After - Such account will be forced to logout after a certain time set here.</p> <p>Pop up Time-Tracking Window - If such function is enabled, a pop up window will be displayed on the screen with time remaining for connection if Idle Timeout is set. However, the system will update the time periodically to keep the connection always on. Thus, Idle Timeout will not interrupt the network connection.</p> <p>Login Permission Schedule - You can type in four sets of time schedule for your request. All the schedules can be set previously in Application >> Schedule web page and you can use the number that you have set in that web page.</p>
<p>Policy</p>	<p>Max Login Devices - Such profile can be used by many users. You can set the limitation for the number of users accessing Internet with the conditions of such profile. The default</p>

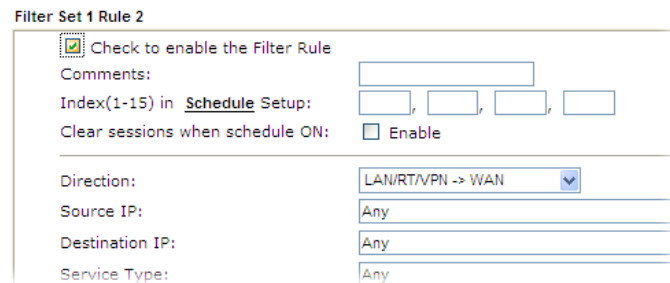
setting is 0 which means no limitation in the number of users.

Firewall Policy - It is available only when User-Based mode selected in **User Management>>General Setup**.




- **Default** - If you choose such item, the filter rules pre-configured in **Firewall** can be adopted for such user profile.
- **Create New Policy** - If you choose such item, the following page will be popped up for you to define another filter rule as a new policy.


Firewall >> Edit Filter Set >> Edit Filter Rule



For the detailed configuration, simply refer to **Firewall>>Filter Rule**. The firewall filter rules that are not selected in **Firewall>>General>>Default rule** can be available for use in **User Management>>User Profile**.

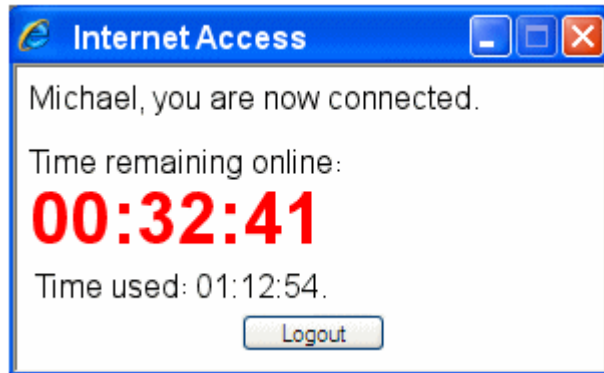
Enable Time Quota - Time quota means the total connection time allowed by the router for the user with such profile. Check the box to enable the function of time quota. The first box displays the remaining time of the network connection. The second box allows to type the number of time (unit is minute) which is available for the user (using such profile) to access Internet.

 - Click this box to set and increase the time quota for such profile.

 - Click this box to decrease the time quota for such profile.

Note: A dialog will be popped up to notify how many time remained when a user accesses into Internet through Vigor router successfully.

When the time is up, all the connection jobs including network, IM, social media, facebook, and etc. will be terminated.



Enable Data Quota - Data Quota means the total amount for data transmission allowed for the user. The unit is MB/GB.



- Click this box to set and increase the data quota for such profile.



- Click this box to decrease the data quota for such profile.

Reset Quota Automatically To - Set default time quota and data quota for such profile. When the scheduling time is up, the router will use the default quota settings automatically.

- **Enable** - Check it to use the default setting for time quota and data quota.
- **Time Limit** - Type the value for the time manually.
- **Data Limit** - Type the value for the data manually.

Login Permission Schedule - When the scheduling time is up, the router will reset the quota with user-defined time/data values automatically.

Schedule - The router will reset the quota with user-defined time/data values at the starting time configured in the selected schedule profile.

Other Services

Allow this profile to be used by Internal RADIUS - Check the box to enable security authenticated via RADIUS server.

Allow this profile to be used by Local 802.1X - Check the box to enable security authenticated via RADIUS server.

Log - Time of login/log out, block/unblock for the user(s) can be sent to and displayed in Syslog. Please choose any one of the log items to take down relational records for the user(s).

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

VI-3-3 User Group

This page allows you to bind several user profiles into one group. These groups will be used in Firewall>>General Setup as part of filter rules.

User Management >> User Group

User Group Table: | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Index	Name	Index	Name
1.		17.	
2.		18.	
3.		19.	
4.		20.	
5.		21.	
6.		22.	
7.		23.	
8.		24.	
9.		25.	
10.		26.	
11.		27.	
12.		28.	
13.		29.	
14.		30.	
15.		31.	
16.		32.	

Please click any index number link to open the following page.

User Management >> User Group

Group Index : 1

Name:

Available User Objects

- 1-admin
- 2-Dial-In User

Selected User Objects(Max 32 Objects)

Default object -
1 and 2

User defined
object - others

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Name	Type a name for this user group.
Available User Objects	You can gather user profiles (objects) from User Profile page within one user group. All the available user objects that you have created will be shown in this box. Notice that user object, Admin and Dial-In User are factory settings. User defined profiles will be numbered with 3, 4, 5 and so on.

Selected Keyword Objects	Click  button to add the selected user objects in this box.
--------------------------	--

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

VI-3-4 User Online Status

This page displays the user(s) connected to the router and refreshes the connection status in an interval of several seconds.

User Management >> User Online Status

Current Time : 01-01 03:15:23 Refresh Seconds: Page: | [All Users](#) | | [Online Users](#) | | [Refresh](#) |

Index	User	IP Address	Profile	Last Login Time	Expired Time	Data Quota	Idle Time	Action
1	admin	192.168.1.10	admin	01-01 00:53:06	Unlimited	Unlimited	Unlimited	Block Logout Delete

- Note:**
1. Please click "IP Address" to view all online users.
 2. Dial-in User profiles are linked to VPN clients and therefore cannot be logged-out or deleted while connecting.
 3. Information about 802.1X authentication can be found at [Authentication User List](#).

Total Number : 1

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Refresh Seconds	Use the drop down list to choose the time interval of refreshing data flow that will be done by the system automatically.
Refresh	Click this link to refresh this page manually.
All User	Display all the users connecting or disconnecting to Vigor router.
Online Users	Display the online users which connect to Vigor router currently. You can click the link under the username to open the user profile setting page for that user.
Index	Display the number of the data flow.
User	Display the name of the user profile.
IP Address	Display the IP address of the device.
Profile	Display the authority of the account.
Last Login Time	Display the login time that such user connects to the router last time.
Expired Time	Display the expired time of the network connection for the user.

Data Quota	Display the quota for data transmission.
Idle Time	Display the idle timeout setting for such profile.
Action	Block - can avoid specified user accessing into Internet. Unblock - allow the user to access into Internet. Logout - the user will be logged out forcefully.

Application Notes

A-1 How to authenticate clients via User Management

Before using the function of User Management, please make sure **User-Based** has been selected as the **Mode** in the **User Management>>General Setup** page.

User Management >> General Setup

General Setup

Mode Selection:

- Rule-Based** is a management method based on IP address. Administrator may set different firewall rules to different IP address.
 - User-Based** is a management method based on user profiles. Administrator may set different firewall rules to different user profiles.
- Notice for User-Based mode:**
- In User-Based mode, **Active Rules** in Firewall will be applied to all LAN clients, packets that matches the Active Rules will be blocked or pass immediately, no user authentication is required.
 - Only **Inactive Rules** in Firewall can be set for individual user profile. In User-Based mode, packets that do not match Active Rules will need authentication, and the Inactive Rule applied to the specific user profile will then take effect.

With User Management authentication function, before a valid username and password have been correctly supplied, a particular client will not be allowed to access Internet through the router. There are three ways for authentication: **Web**, **Telnet** and **Alert Tool**.

User Management >>User Profile

Profile Index 3

Common Settings

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable this account	
Username	LAN_User_Group_1 (Only support A-Z a-z 0-9 - . @)
Password
Confirm Password
External Server Authentication	None

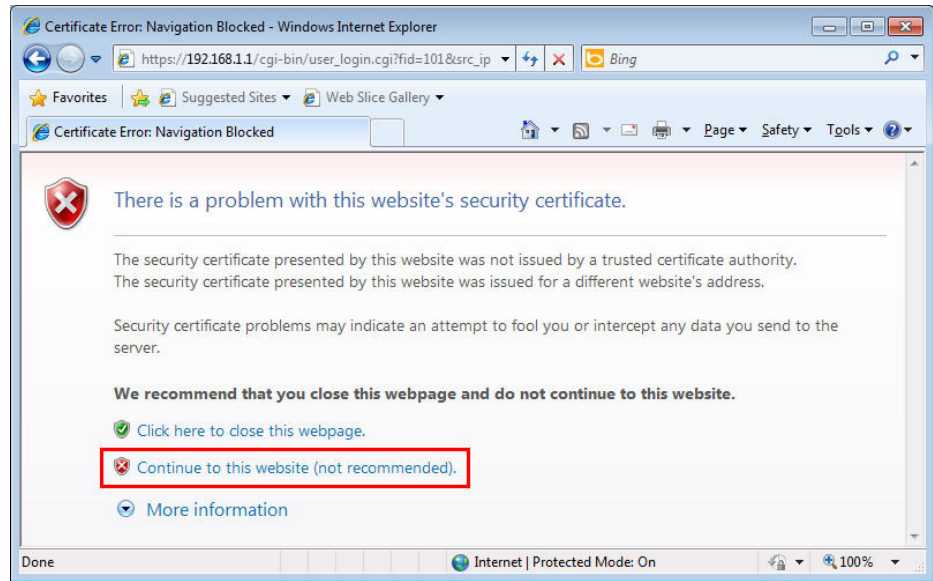
Login Settings

Allow Authentication via	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Web	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Alert Tool	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Telnet
Show <u>Landing Page</u> After Login	<input type="checkbox"/>		
Idle Timeout	10	min. (0: Unlimited)	
Auto Logout After	0	min. (0: Off)	
Pop up Time-Tracking Window	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
Login Permission <u>Schedule</u>	None	None	None

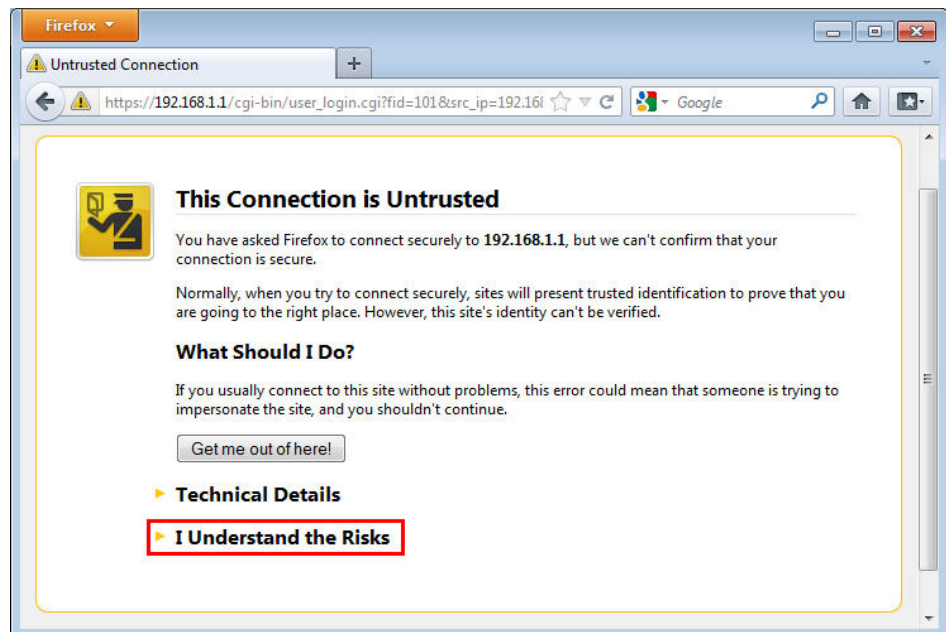
Authentication via Web

- If a LAN client who hasn't passed the authentication opens an external web site in his browser, he will be redirected to the router's Web authentication interface first. Then, the client is trying to access <http://www.draytek.com> and but brought to the Vigor router. Since this is an SSL connection, some web browsers will display warning messages.

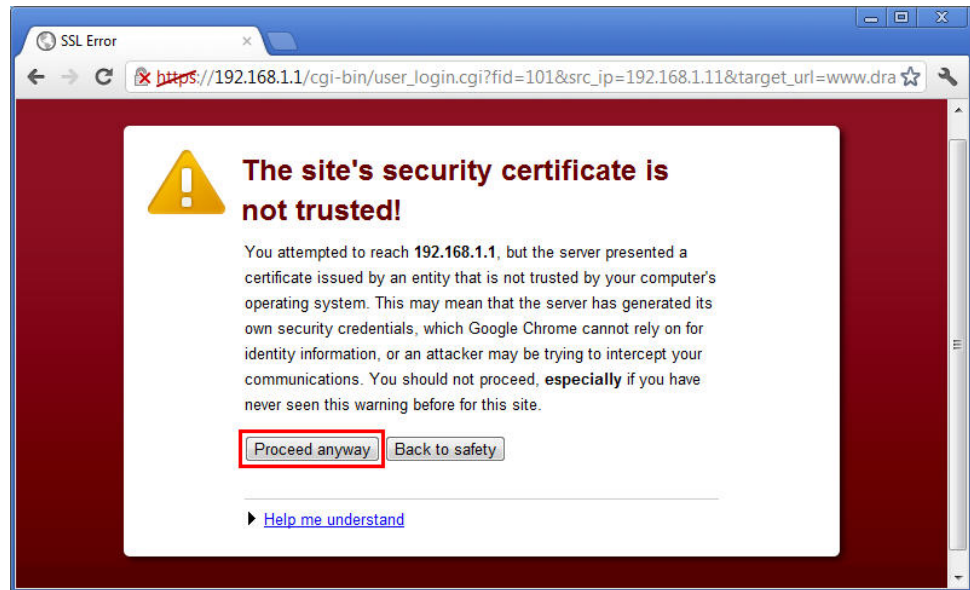
- With Microsoft Internet Explorer, you may get the following warning message. Please press **Continue to this website (not recommended)**.



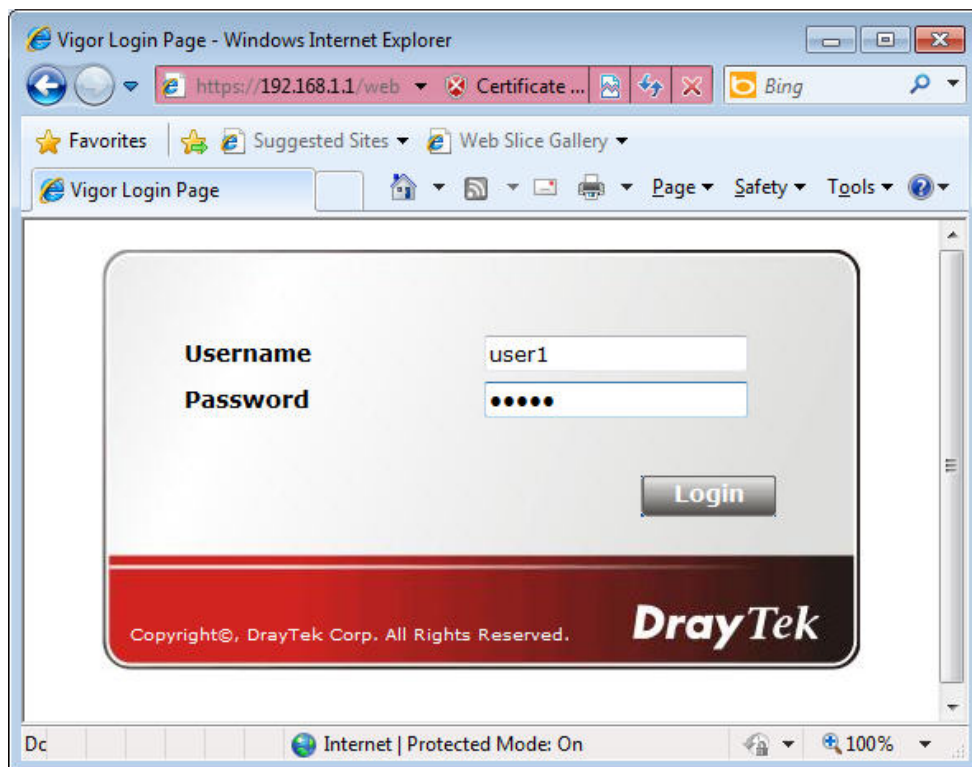
- With Mozilla Firefox, you may get the following warning message. Select **I Understand the Risks**.



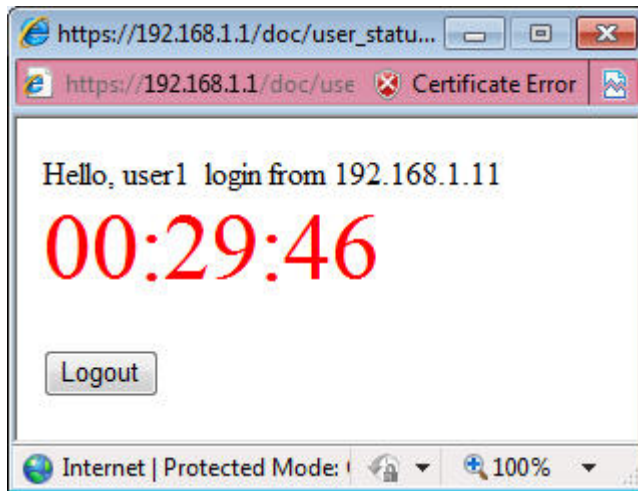
- With Chrome browser, you may get the following warning. Click Proceed anyway.



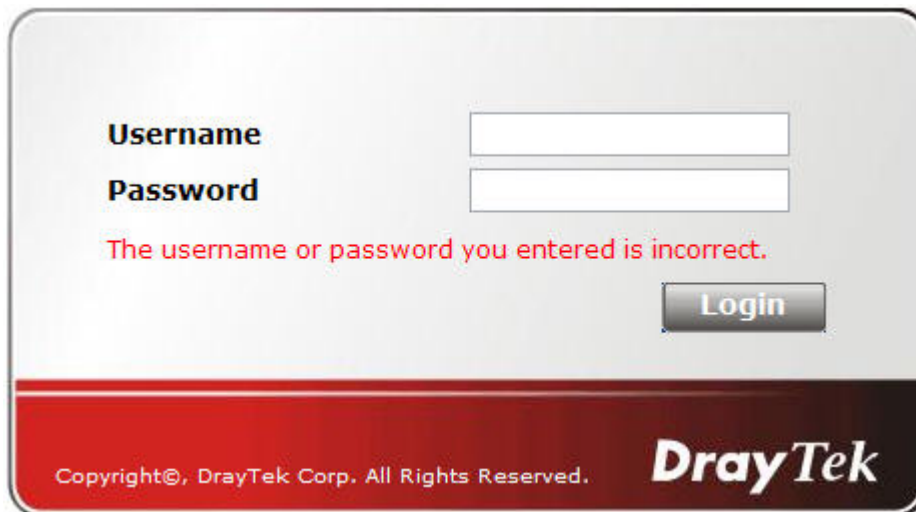
After that, the web authentication window will appear. Input the user name and the password for your account (defined in User Management) and click Login.



If the authentication is successful, the client will be redirected to the original web site that he tried to access. In this example, it is <http://www.draytek.com>. Furthermore, you will get a popped up window as the following. Then you can access the Internet.



Note, if you block the web browser to pop up any window, you will not see such window. If the authentication is failed, you will get the error message, **The username or password you entered is incorrect. Please login again.**



- In above description, you access an external web site to trigger the authentication. You may also directly access the router's Web UI for authentication. Both HTTP and HTTPS are supported, for example <http://192.168.1.1> or <https://192.168.1.1>. Replace 192.168.1.1 with your router's real IP address, and add the port number if the default management port has been modified.

If the authentication is successful, you will get the **Welcome Message** that is set in the **User Management >> General Setup** page.

General Setup

Mode Selection:

Rule-Based is a management method based on IP address. Administrator may set different firewall rules to different IP address.

User-Based is a management method based on user profiles. Administrator may set different firewall rules to different user profiles.

Notice for User-Based mode:

- In User-Based mode, **Active Rules** in Firewall will be applied to all LAN clients, packets that matches the Active Rules will be blocked or pass immediately, no user authentication is required.
- Only **Inactive Rules** can be set for individual user profile. In User-Based mode, packets that do not match Active Rules will need authentication, and the Inactive Rule applied to the specific user profile will then take effect.

Authentication page:

Web Authentication: HTTPS HTTP

Display IP address on the dialog box pops up after successful login.

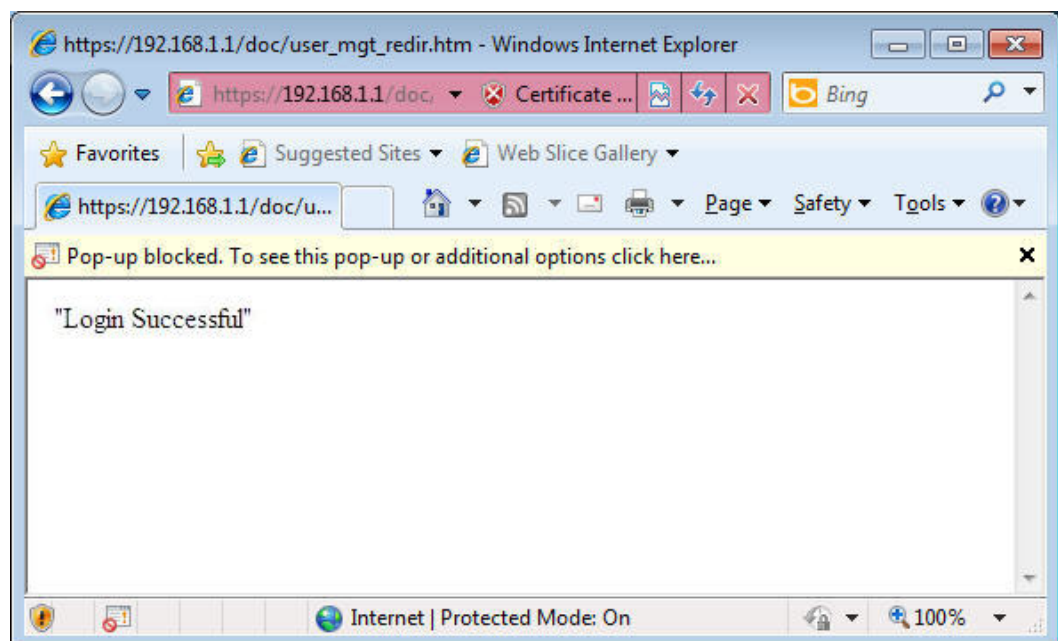
Landing page:

(Max 255 characters) [Preview](#) | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

```
<body stats=1><script language='javascript'>
window.location='http://www.draytek.com'</script></body>
```

OK Clear Cancel

With the default setup `<body stats=1><script language='javascript'>window.location='http://www.draytek.com'</script></body>`, you will be redirected to `http://www.draytek.com`. You may change it if you want. For example, you will get the following welcome message if you enter **Login Successful** in the **Welcome Message** table.



Also you will get a Tracking Window if you don't block the pop-up window.

- Don't setup a user profile in **User Management** and a **VPN Remote Dial-in** user profile with the same Username. Otherwise, you may get unexpected result. It is because the

VPN Remote Dial-in User profiles can be extended to the User profiles in User Management for authentication.

There are two different behaviors when a User Management account and a VPN profile share the same Username:

- If **SSL Tunnel** or **SSL Web Proxy** is enabled in the VPN profile, the user profile in User Management will always be invalid for Web authentication. For example, if you create a user profile in User Management with **chaochen/test** as username/password, while a VPN Remote Dial-in user profile with the same username "chaochen" but a different password "1234", you will always get error message **The username or password you entered is incorrect** when you use **chaochen/test** via Web to do authentication.

VPN and Remote Access >> Remote Dial-in User

Index No. 1

<p>User account and Authentication</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable this account</p> <p>Idle Timeout <input type="text" value="300"/> second(s)</p> <p>Allowed Dial-In Type</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> PPTP</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IPsec Tunnel</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IKEv1/IKEv2 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IKEv2 EAP <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IPsec XAuth</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> L2TP with IPsec Policy (None)</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSL Tunnel</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> OpenVPN Tunnel</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Specify Remote Node</p> <p>Remote Client IP <input type="text"/></p> <p>or Peer ID <input type="text"/></p> <p>Netbios Naming Packet <input checked="" type="radio"/> Pass <input type="radio"/> Block</p> <p>Multicast via VPN <input type="radio"/> Pass <input checked="" type="radio"/> Block (for some IGMP,IP-Camera,DHCP Relay..etc.)</p> <p>Subnet</p> <p>LAN 1</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Assign Static IP Address</p> <p><input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/></p>	<p>Username <input type="text" value="chaochen"/></p> <p>Password <input type="password" value="*****"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Enable Mobile One-Time Passwords(mOTP)</p> <p>PIN Code <input type="text"/></p> <p>Secret <input type="text"/></p> <p>IKE Authentication Method</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pre-Shared Key</p> <p><input type="text" value="IKE Pre-Shared Key"/> <input type="text" value="Max: 64 characters"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Digital Signature(X.509)</p> <p>None</p> <p>IPsec Security Method</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Medium(AH)</p> <p>High(ESP) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES</p> <p>Local ID (optional) <input type="text"/></p>
--	---

Note:

1. Username can not contain characters ' \' and \\. .
2. OpenVPN tunnel does not support mOTP.

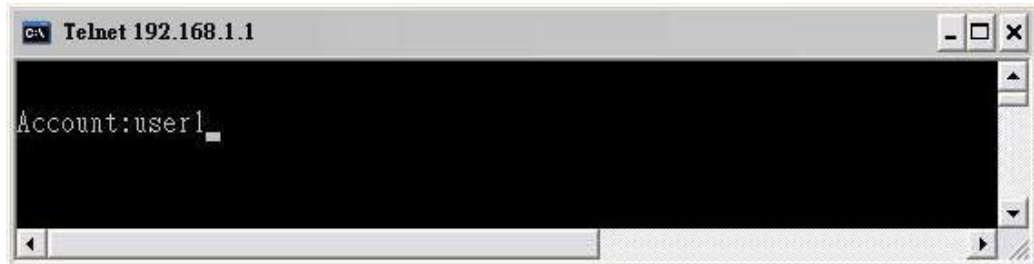
OK Clear Cancel

- If **SSL Tunnel** or **SSL Web Proxy** is disabled in the VPN profile, a User Management account and a remote dial-in VPN profile can use the same Username, even with different passwords. However, we recommend you to use different usernames for different user profiles in User Management and VPN profiles.

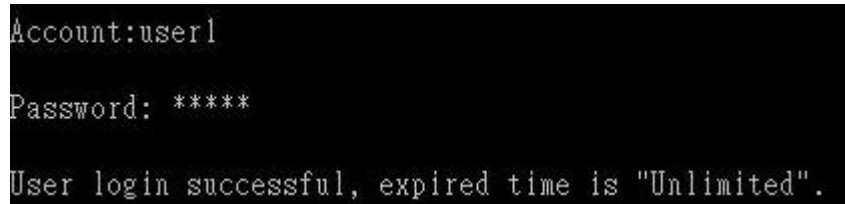
Authentication via Telnet

The LAN clients can also authenticate their accounts via telnet.

1. Telnet to the router's LAN IP address and input the account name for the authentication:



2. Type the password for authentication and press Enter. The message **User login successful** will be displayed with the expired time (if configured).



Info

Here expired time is "Unlimited" means the Time Quota function is not enabled for this account. After login, this account will not be expired until it is logout.

3. In the Web interface of router, the configuration page of **Time Quota** is shown as below.

User Management >> User Profile

Profile Index 3
Common Settings

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable this account	
Username	<input type="text" value="user1"/> (Only support A-Z a-z 0-9 - . @)
Password	<input type="password" value="*****"/>
Confirm Password	<input type="password"/>
External Server Authentication	<input type="text" value="None"/>

Login Settings

Allow Authentication via	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Web	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Alert Tool	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Telnet
Show <u>Landing Page</u> After Login	<input type="checkbox"/>		
Idle Timeout	<input type="text" value="10"/> min. (0: Unlimited)		
Auto Logout After	<input type="text" value="5"/> min. (0: Off)		

- If the Time Quota is set with "0" minute, you will get the following message which means this account has no time quota.

```
Account:user1
Password: *****
User's time is up, or it has not enough time quota.
```

If the Time Quota is enabled and time is not 0 minute,

User Management >>User Profile

Profile Index 3
Common Settings

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable this account			
Username	user1	(Only support A-Z a-z 0-9 - . @)	
Password	*****		
Confirm Password	*****		
External Server Authentication	None	▼	

Login Settings

Allow Authentication via	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Web	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Alert Tool	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Telnet
Show <u>Landing Page</u> After Login	<input type="checkbox"/>		
Idle Timeout	10	min. (0: Unlimited)	
Auto Logout After	5	min. (0: Off)	
Pop up Time-Tracking Window	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
Login Permission <u>Schedule</u>	None	None	None

Policy

Max. Login Devices	0	(0: Unlimited)	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Time Quota	0	min.	- 120 +
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable Data Quota	0	MB	- 0 +

You will get the following message. The expired time is shown after you login.

```
Account:user1
Password: *****
User login successful, expired time is "12-23 10:21:33".
```

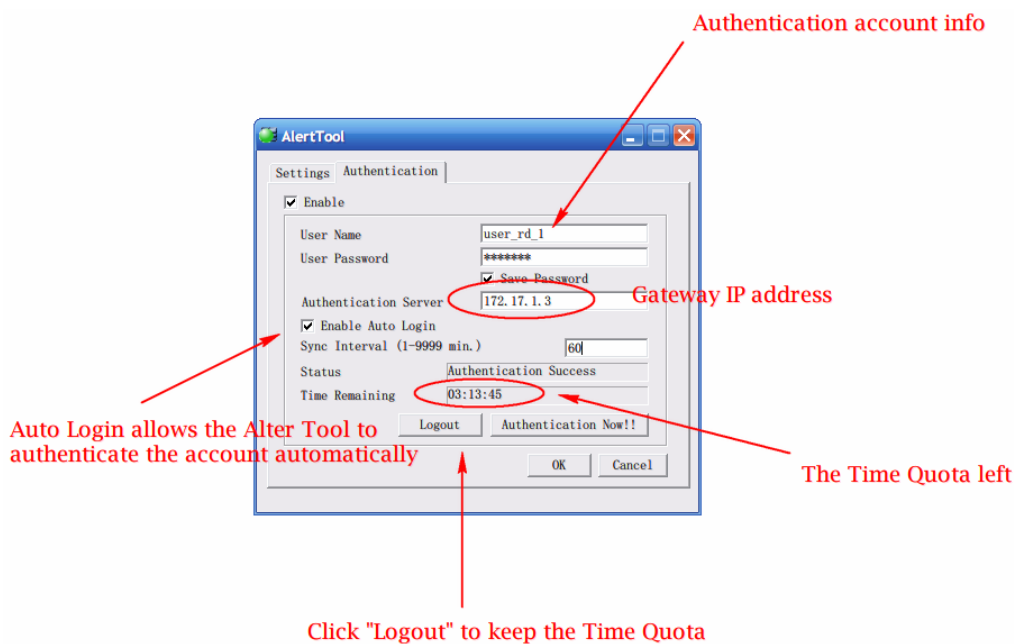
After you run out the available time, you can't use this account any more until the administrator manually adds additional time for you.

Authentication via VigorPro Alert Notice Tool

Authentication via Web or Telnet is convenient for users; however, it has some limitations. The most advantage with VigorPro Alert Notice Tool to operate the authentication is the ability to do **auto login**. If the timeout value set on the router for the user account has been reached, the router will stop the client computer from accessing the Internet until it does an authentication again. Authentication via VigorPro Alert Notice Tool allows user to setup the re-authentication interval so that the utility will send authentication requests periodically. This will keep the client hosts from having to manually authenticate again and again.

The configuration of the VigorPro Alert Notice Tool is as follows:

1. Click **Authenticate Now!!** to start the authentication immediately.



2. You may get the VigorPro Alert Notice Tool from the following link:
<http://www.draytek.com/user/SupportDLUtility.php>



Info 1

Any modification to the Firewall policy will break down the connections of all current users. They all have to authenticate again for Internet access.

Info 2

The administrator may check the current users from **User Online Status** page.

A-2 How to use Landing Page Feature

Landing Page is a special feature configured under **User Management**. It can specify the message, content to be seen or specify which website to be accessed into when users try to access into the Internet by passing the authentication. Here, we take Vigor2832 Series router as an example.

Example 1 : Users can see the message for landing page after logging into Internet successfully

1. Open the web user interface of Vigor2832.
2. Open **User Management -> General Setup** to get the following page. In the field of **Landing Page**, please type the words of "Login Success". Please note that the maximum number of characters to be typed here is 255.

User Management >> General Setup

General Setup

Mode Selection:

Rule-Based is a management method based on IP address. Administrator may set different firewall rules to different IP address.

User-Based is a management method based on user profiles. Administrator may set different firewall rules to different user profiles.

Notice for User-Based mode:

- In User-Based mode, **Active Rules** in Firewall will be applied to all LAN clients, packets that matches the Active Rules will be blocked or pass immediately, no user authentication is required.
- Only **Inactive Rules** in Firewall can be set for individual user profile. In User-Based mode, packets that do not match Active Rules will need authentication, and the Inactive Rule applied to the specific user profile will then take effect.

Authentication page:

Web Authentication: HTTPS HTTP

Display IP address on the dialog box pops up after successful login.

Landing page:

(Max 255 characters) [Preview](#) | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

login success

OK Clear Cancel

3. Now you can enable the **Landing Page** function. Open **User Management -> User Profile** and click one of the index number (e.g., index number 3) links.

User Management >> User Profile

User Profile Table

Profile	Enable	Name
1.	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	admin
2.	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Dial-In User
3.	<input type="checkbox"/>	
4.	<input type="checkbox"/>	

4. In the following page, check the box of **Landing page** and click **OK** to save the settings.

User Management >> User Profile

Profile Index 3

Common Settings

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable this account	
Username	<input type="text" value="Caca"/> (Only support A-Z a-z 0-9 - . @)
Password	<input type="password" value="*****"/>
Confirm Password	<input type="password" value="*****"/>
External Server Authentication	<input type="text" value="None"/>

Login Settings

Allow Authentication via	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Web	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Alert Tool	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Telnet
Show Landing Page After Login	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
Idle Timeout	<input type="text" value="10"/> min. (0: Unlimited)		
Auto Logout After	<input type="text" value="5"/> min. (0: Off)		
Pop up Time-Tracking Window	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
Login Permission Schedule	<input type="text" value="None"/>	<input type="text" value="None"/>	<input type="text" value="None"/>

Policy

Max. Login Devices	<input type="text" value="0"/> (0: Unlimited)
Firewall Policy	<input type="text" value="Default"/>
The available options are the rules created in Firewall >> Filter Setup but NOT enabled.	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Time Quota	<input type="text" value="0"/> min. <input type="text" value="120"/>

5. Open any browser (e.g., FireFox, Internet Explorer). The logging page will appear and asks for username and password. Please type the correct username and password.



6. Click **Login**. If the logging is successful, you will see the message of Login Success from the browser you use.



Example 2 : The system will connect to <http://www.draytek.com> automatically after logging into Internet successfully

1. In the field of Landing Page, please type the words as below:

```
" <body stats=1><script language='javascript'>
window.location='http://www.draytek.com'</script></body>"
```

User Management >> General Setup

General Setup

Mode Selection:

Rule-Based is a management method based on IP address. Administrator may set different firewall rules to different IP address.

User-Based is a management method based on user profiles. Administrator may set different firewall rules to different user profiles.

Notice for User-Based mode:

- In User-Based mode, **Active Rules** in Firewall will be applied to all LAN clients, packets that matches the Active Rules will be blocked or pass immediately, no user authentication is required.
- Only **Inactive Rules** in Firewall can be set for individual user profile. In User-Based mode, packets that do not match Active Rules will need authentication, and the Inactive Rule applied to the specific user profile will then take effect.

Authentication page:

Web Authentication: HTTPS HTTP

Display IP address on the dialog box pops up after successful login.

Landing page:

(Max 255 characters) [Preview](#) | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

```
<body stats=1><script language='javascript'>
window.location='http://www.draytek.com'</script></body>
```

OK Clear Cancel

2. Next, enable the Landing Page function. Open User Management -> User Profile and click one of the index number (e.g., index number 3) links.

User Management >> User Profile

User Profile Table

Profile	Enable	Name
1.	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	admin
2.	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Dial-In User
3.	<input type="checkbox"/>	
4.	<input type="checkbox"/>	

- In the following page, check the box of **Landing page** and click **OK** to save the settings.

User Management >>User Profile

Profile Index 3
Common Settings

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable this account	
Username	Caca (Only support A-Z a-z 0-9 - . @)
Password	*****
Confirm Password	*****
External Server Authentication	None

Login Settings User Online Status : **Block/ Unblock**

Allow Authentication via	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Web	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Alert Tool	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Telnet
Show Landing Page After Login	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
Idle Timeout	10 min. (0: Unlimited)		
Auto Logout After	5 min. (0: Off)		
Pop up Time-Tracking Window	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
Login Permission Schedule	None	None	None

Policy

Max. Login Devices	0 (0: Unlimited)
Firewall Policy	Default
The available options are the rules created in Firewall >> Filter Setup but NOT enabled.	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Time Quota	0 min. - 120 +

- Open any browser (e.g., FireFox, Internet Explorer). The logging page will appear and asks for username and password. Please type the correct username and password.

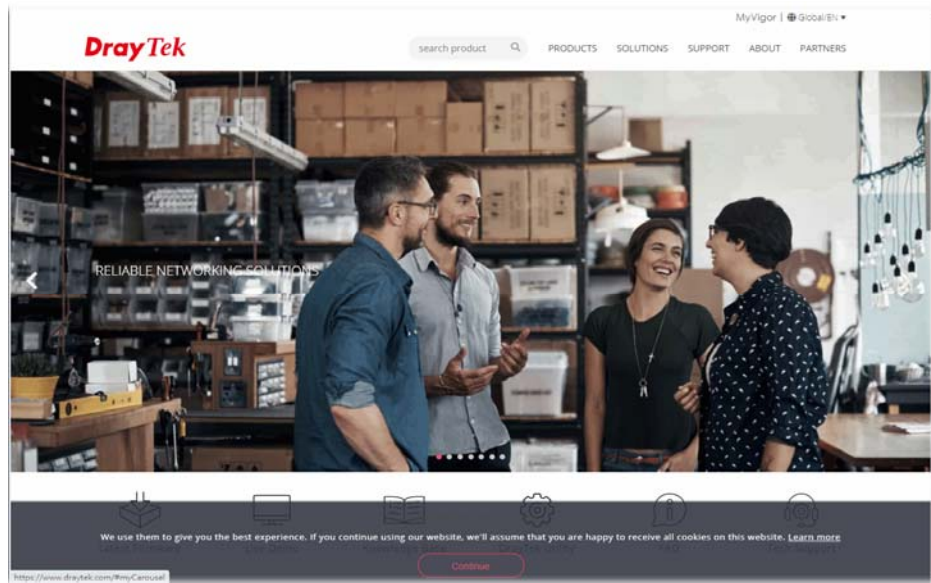
Username: CaCa

Password: ****

Login

Copyright©, DrayTek Corp. All Rights Reserved. **DrayTek**

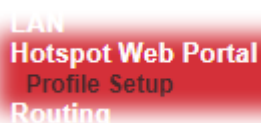
5. Click **Login**. If the logging is successful, you will be directed into the website of www.draytek.com.



VI-4 Hotspot Web Portal

Hotspot web portal allows you to configure a profile with specified URL for accessing into or display a message when a wireless/LAN user connects to Internet through this router. No matter what the purpose of the wireless/LAN client is, he/she will be forced into the URL configured here while trying to access into the Internet or the desired web page through this router. That is, a company which wants to have an advertisement for its products to users can specify the URL in this page to reach its goal.

Web User Interface



LAN
Hotspot Web Portal
Profile Setup
Routing

VI-4-1 Profile Setup

This page lists web portal profiles for you to modify to meet different requirements.

Hotspot Web Portal >> Profile Setup



Hotspot Web Portal Profile:

Index	Enable	Comments	Login Mode	Applied Interface	
1.	<input type="checkbox"/>		Click-through	None	<input type="button" value="Preview"/>
2.	<input type="checkbox"/>		Click-through	None	<input type="button" value="Preview"/>
3.	<input type="checkbox"/>		Click-through	None	<input type="button" value="Preview"/>
4.	<input type="checkbox"/>		Click-through	None	<input type="button" value="Preview"/>

Preview hotspot from WAN and VPN

Note:

1. The router must connect to the Internet before webpage redirection will work.
2. If the LAN clients are using another DNS server on LAN, please make sure the DNS query for domain name "portal.draytek.com" will be resolved by the router.
3. If you want to enable Preview hotspot from WAN and VPN, please set up [Internet Access Control](#).

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Index	Click the index number link for viewing the settings summary of the access point.
Enable	Check the box to enable the selected profile.
Comment	Display the brief description of the profile.
Login Mode	Display the login mode used by the profile.
Applied Interface	Display the applied interfaces of the profile.

Preview	Click such button to have a preview of the web portal.
---------	--

VI-4-1-1 Login Method

There are several login methods to choose from for authenticating network clients. Each login mode will present a different web page to users when they connect to the network.

(A) Skip Login, landing page only

This mode does not perform any authentication. The user will be redirected to the landing page. The user can then leave the landing page to visit other websites.

(B) Click-through

The following page will be shown to the users when they first attempt to access the Internet through the router. After clicking **Accept** on the page, users will be directed to the landing page (defined in Captive Portal URL) and be granted access to the Internet.

(C) Various Hotspot Login

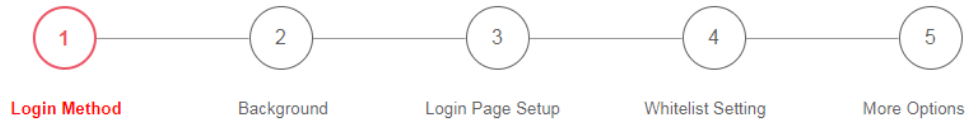
An authentication page will appear when users attempt to access the Internet for the first time via the router. After authenticating themselves using a Facebook account, Google account, PIN code, password for RADIUS sever, they will be directed to the landing page and be granted access to the Internet.

VI-4-1-2 Steps for Configuring a Web Portal Profile

1

Login Method

Click the index link (e.g., #1) of the selected profile to display the following page.



Enable this profile

Comments:

Portal Server

Portal Method
 Skip Login, landing page only
 Click through
 Various Hotspot Login

Captive Portal URL

Login Methods

Choose Login Method
 Login with Facebook
Note : When Login with Facebook is selected, the protocol of the Captive Portal URL will be changed to HTTPS.
 Login with Google
 Receive PIN via SMS
 Receive PIN via Mail

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable this profile	Check to enable this profile.
Comments	Enter a brief description to identify this profile.
Portal Server	
Portal Method	There are four methods to be selected as for portal server. <input type="radio"/> Skip Login, landing page only <input type="radio"/> Click through <input checked="" type="radio"/> Various Hotspot Login
Captive Portal URL	Enter the captive portal URL.
Login Methods	
Choose Login Method	This setting is available when Various Hotspot Login is selected as the portal method. Select one or more desired login methods: <input type="checkbox"/> Login with Facebook <small>Note : When Login with Facebook is selected, the protocol of the Captive Portal URL will be changed to HTTPS.</small> <input type="checkbox"/> Login with Google <input type="checkbox"/> Receive PIN via SMS <input type="checkbox"/> Receive PIN via Mail
Facebook	This setting is available when Login with Facebook is selected as

(Login with Facebook)	<p>the login method. Select one or more desired login methods:</p> <p>Facebook APP ID - Enter a valid Facebook developer app ID. If you do not already have an app ID, refer to section A-1 <i>How to create a Facebook App ID for Web Portal Authentication</i> for instructions on obtaining an APP ID.</p> <p>Facebook APP Secret - Enter the secret configured for the APP ID entered above.</p> <p>Refer to section A-1 <i>How to create a Facebook App ID for Web Portal Authentication</i> for details.</p>
Google (Login with Google)	<p>This setting is available when Login with Google is selected as the login method. Select one or more desired login methods:</p> <p>Google App ID - Enter a valid Google app ID. If you do not already have an app ID, refer to section A-2 <i>How to create a Google App ID for Web Portal Authentication</i> for instructions on obtaining an APP ID.</p> <p>Google App Secret - Enter the secret configured for the APP ID entered above.</p> <p>Refer to section A-2 <i>How to create a Google APP ID for Web Portal Authentication</i> for details.</p>
SMS Provider (Receive PIN via SMS)	<p>This setting is available when Receive PIN via SMS is selected as the login method.</p> <p>Receiving PIN via SMS Provider - Select the SMS Provider used to send PIN notifications SMS providers are configured in Objects Setting >> SMS / Mail Service Object.</p>
Mail Server (Receive PIN via Mail)	<p>This setting is available when Receive PIN via Mail is selected as the login method.</p> <p>Receiving PIN via Mail Server - Select the mail server to send PIN notifications. The mail servers are configured in Objects Setting >> SMS / Mail Service Object.</p>
Save and Next	Click to save the configuration on this page and proceed to the next page.
Cancel	Click to save the configuration on this page and proceed to the next page.

If you have chosen **Skip Login, landing page only** as the portal method, skip to step 4 *Whitelisting* below.

Otherwise, proceed to configure the login page by following steps 2 and 3.

2 Background

If you have selected a Login Mode that requires authentication, select a background for the login page.

Hotspot Web Portal >> ProfileSetup



Choose Login Background

Color Background

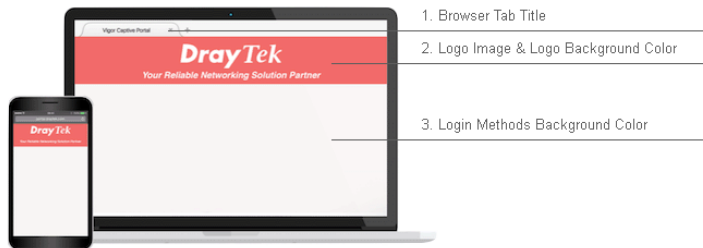
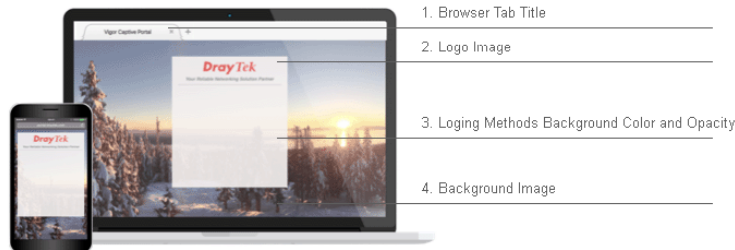


Image Background



Browser Tab Title

Logo Image

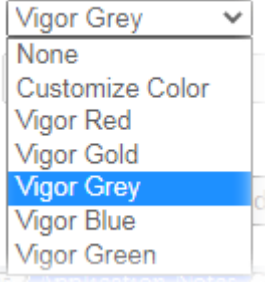


Logo Background Color (format : FFFFFFFF)

Login Method Background Color (format : FFFFFFFF)

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Choose Login Background	Select either Color Background or Image Background as the login page background scheme.
Browser Tab Title	Enter the text to be shown as the webpage title in the browser.

Logo Image	The DrayTek Logo will be displayed by default. However, you can enter HTML text or upload an image to replace the default logo.
Login Method Background Color	Select the background color of the login panel from the predefined color list, or select Customize Color and enter the RGB value. Click Preview to preview the selected color. 
Opacity (10 ~ 100)	Available when Image Background is selected. Set the opacity of the background image.
Background Image	Available when Image Background is selected. Click Browse... to select an image file (.JPG or .PNG format), then click Upload to upload it to the router.
Save and Next	Click to save the configuration on this page and proceed to the next page.
Cancel	Click to abort the configuration process and return to the profile summary page.

If you have selected **Skip Login, landing page only** as the portal method, proceed to Step 4 *Whitelist Setting*; otherwise, continue to Step 3 *Login Page Setup*.

3 Login Page Setup

In this step you can configure settings for the login page.

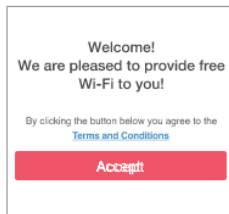
Click Through

This section describes the Login Page setup if you have selected **Click Through** as the Login Method.

Hotspot Web Portal >> Profile Setup



Configure Login Method and Details



- Welcome Message
- Terms and Conditions Description and Content
- Accept Button Description and Color

Welcome Message

Welcome!
Please log in to enjoy Wi-Fi.

(Max 1360 characters) Default

Terms and Conditions Description

By clicking the button below you agree to the Terms and Conditions.

(Max 170 characters) Default

Terms and Conditions Content

(Max 1360 characters)

Accept Button Description

Submit

(Max 170 characters) Default

Accept Button Color

Customize Color Default

A2A2A2 (format : FFFFFFFF) Preview

Save and Next Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Welcome Message	Enter the text to be displayed as the welcome message.
Terms and	Enter the text to be displayed as the Terms and Conditions

Conditions Description	hyperlink text.
Terms and Conditions Content	Enter the text to be displayed in the Terms and Conditions pop-up window.
Accept Button Description	Enter the text to be displayed on the accept button
Accept Button Color	Select the color of the accept button from the predefined color list, or select Customize Color and enter the RGB value. Click Preview to preview the selected color.
Save and Next	Click to save the configuration on this page and proceed to the next page.
Cancel	Click to abort the configuration process and return to the profile summary page.

Various Hotspot Login

This section describes the Login Page setup step if you have selected Various Hotspot Login the login method. You will see only settings that are relevant to the selected login method(s).

Hotspot Web Portal >> Profile Setup



Configure Login Method and Details

<p>Welcome! Please log in to enjoy Wi-Fi. By clicking the button below you agree to the Terms and Conditions</p> <p> Log in with Facebook</p> <p> Log in with Google</p> <p>Or log in with PIN code.</p> <p>Receive PIN via SMS</p> <p>Enter Existing PIN <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Submit"/></p>	<p>Welcome Message</p> <hr/> <p>Terms and Conditions Description and Content</p> <p>Facebook Login</p> <hr/> <p>Google Login</p> <hr/> <p>Hint Message for PIN</p> <hr/> <p>Receive PIN via SMS Description</p> <hr/> <p>Enter PIN and Submit Button</p> <hr/>
--	--

Welcome Message

Welcome!
We are pleased to provide free Wi-Fi to you!

(Max 1360 characters)

Terms and Conditions Description

By clicking the button below you agree to the Terms and Conditions.

(Max 170 characters)

Terms and Conditions Content

(Max 1360 characters)

Settings common to Facebook and Google authentication are listed as follows.

Item	Description
Welcome Message	Enter the text to be displayed as the welcome message.
Terms and Conditions Description	Enter the text to be displayed as the Terms and Conditions hyperlink text.
Terms and Conditions Content	Enter the text to be displayed in the Terms and Conditions pop-up window.

If you have selected Facebook login, the setting will appear:

Facebook Login Description

(Max 170 characters)

Item	Description
Facebook Login Description	Enter the text to be displayed on the Facebook login button.

If you have selected Google login, the setting will appear:

Google Login Description

(Max 170 characters)

Item	Description
Google Login Description	Enter the text to be displayed on the Google login button.

If you have selected PIN login, these settings will appear:

Hint Message for PIN

(Max 170 characters)

Receiving PIN via SMS Description

(Max 170 characters)

Receiving PIN via SMS Content

(Max 150 characters)

Enter PIN Description

(Max 170 characters)

Submit Button Description

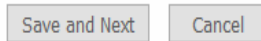
(Max 170 characters)

Submit Button Color

(format : FFFFFFFF)

Item	Description
Hint Message for PIN	Enter the text used to suggest users to choose SMS authentication.
Receiving PIN via SMS Description	Enter the text to be displayed on the button that the user clicks to receive an SMS PIN.
Receiving PIN via SMS Content	Enter the message to be sent by SMS to inform the user of the PIN. The PIN variable is specified by <PIN> within the message.
Enter PIN Description	Enter message to be displayed in the PIN textbox to prompt the user to enter the PIN.
Submit Button Description	Enter the text to be displayed on the submit PIN button
Submit Button Color	Select the color of the submit button from the predefined color list, or select Customize Color and enter the RGB value. Click Preview to preview the selected color.

And finally, the save and cancel buttons are always displayed.



Item	Description
Save and Next	Click to save the configuration on this page and proceed to the next page.
Cancel	Click to abort the configuration process and return to the profile summary page.

2nd-stage Page for PIN Login

If you have selected PIN Login as the login method, you will also need to configure the page that is displayed to users when they request a PIN.

Hotspot Web Portal >> Profile Setup



Configure 2nd-stage Page for SMS Login

	<p>Back Button</p> <p>PIN Code Message</p> <p>Default Country, Enter Mobile Number Description</p> <p>Send Button Description and Color</p> <p>Send Succeeded Message</p> <p>Enter PIN and Submit Button</p>
<p>Back Button Description</p> <p>Back</p> <p>(Max 170 characters) Default</p>	<p>PIN Code Message</p> <p>PIN code will be sent over via SMS.</p> <p>(Max 170 characters) Default</p>
<p>Default Country Code</p> <p>+ 93 Afghanistan</p> <p>Enter Mobile Number Description</p> <p>enter your mobile number</p> <p>(Max 170 characters) Default</p>	<p>Send Button Description</p> <p>Send PIN</p> <p>(Max 170 characters) Default</p> <p>Send Button Color</p> <p>Customize Color</p> <p>A2A2A2 (format : FFFFFFFF) Preview Default</p>
<p>Send Succeeded Message</p> <p>PIN Code has been sent.Click Send PIN again if not receiving PIN in 3 minutes.</p> <p>(Max 170 characters) Default</p>	<p style="text-align: center;"> Save and Next Cancel </p>

Available settings are explained as follows:

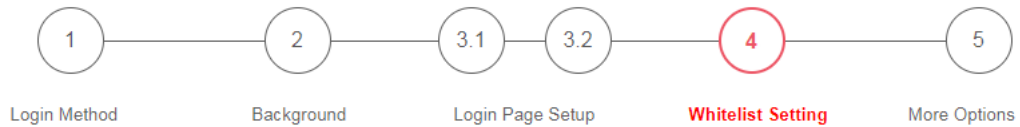
Item	Description
Back Button Description	Enter text for the label of the hyperlink to return to the previous page.
PIN Code Message	Enter text to be displayed as the body text on the page.
Default Country	Select the default country code to be displayed using the dropdown

Code	menu.
Enter Mobile Number Description	Enter message to be displayed in the mobile number textbox to prompt the user to enter the mobile number.
Send Button Description	Enter the label text of the send button.
Send Button Color	Select the color of the send button from the predefined color list, or select Customize Color and enter the RGB value. Click Preview to preview the selected color.
Send Succeeded Message	Enter text to be displayed to notify the user after the PIN has been sent.
Save and Next	Click to save the configuration on this page and proceed to the next page.
Cancel	Click to abort the configuration process and return to the profile summary page.

4 Whitelist Setting

In this step you can configure the whitelist settings. Users are allowed to send and receive traffic that satisfies whitelist settings.

Hotspot Web Portal >> Profile Setup



NAT Rules	Dest Domain	Dest IP	Dest Port	Source IP
Always allow outbound connections from hosts in		<input type="checkbox"/> NAT >> Port Redirection <input type="checkbox"/> NAT >> Open Ports <input type="checkbox"/> NAT >> DMZ		

Save and Next Cancel

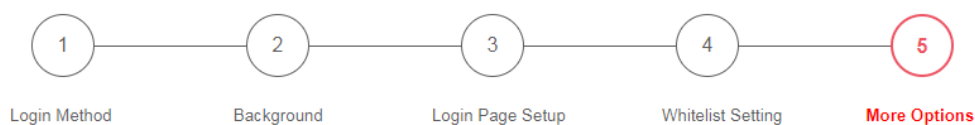
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
NAT Rules	To prevent web portal settings from conflicting with NAT rules resulting in unexpected behavior, select the NAT rules that are allowed to bypass the web portal. Hosts listed in selected NAT rules can always access the Internet without being intercepted by the web portal.
Dest Domain	Enter up to 30 destination domains that are allowed to be accessed.
Dest IP	Enter up to 30 destination IP addresses that are allowed to be accessed.
Dest Port	Enter up to 30 destination protocols and ports that are allowed through the router.
Source IP	Enter up to 30 source IP addresses that are allowed through the router.
Save and Next	Click to save the configuration on this page and proceed to the next page.
Cancel	Click to abort the configuration process and return to the profile summary page.

5 More Options

In this step you can configure advanced options for the Hotspot Web Portal.

Hotspot Web Portal >> Profile Setup



Web Portal Options

Expired Time After Activation days hours min

HTTPS Redirection

Enable

When an unauthenticated client opening a HTTPS page, redirect will work but certificate errors may be shown. Disable this function to redirect only HTTP pages. HTTPS browsing will timeout without redirection and also no certificate errors.

Captive Portal Detection

Enable

Trigger the unauthenticated client to automatically pop-up the Web Portal page when connects to Wi-Fi. This function is not available when using **Social Login** because the page may not be shown correctly due to the limitation of the OS built-in Captive Portal Detection.

Landing Page After Authentication

Fixed URL

User Requested URL

Bulletin Message

(Max 511 characters)

Default Message

Note:

Landing Page may not be shown correctly when using OS built-in Captive Portal Detection.

Applied Interfaces

Subnet LAN1 LAN2 LAN3 LAN4
 WLAN 2.4G SSID1 (DrayTek)
 SSID2 (DrayTek_Guest)
 SSID3
 SSID4

Finish

Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Expired Time After Activation	Enter the time duration that users are allowed to have Internet access after logging in.
Web Portal Options	
HTTPS Redirection	If this option is selected, unauthenticated clients accessing HTTPS websites will be redirected to the login page, but the browser may alert the user of certificate errors. If this option is not selected,

	attempts to access to HTTPS website will time out without redirection.
Captive Portal Detection	If this option is selected, the web portal page is triggered automatically when an unauthenticated client tries to access the Internet. This function is not available when the Login Mode is Social Login , as the web portal page may not be shown correctly due to the limitations of the operating system's built-in Captive Portal Detection.
Landing Page After Authentication	
Fixed URL	Specifies the webpage that will be displayed after the user has successfully authenticated. The user will be redirected to the specified URL. This could be used for displaying advertisements to users, such as guests requesting wireless Internet access in a hotel.
User Requested URL	The user will be redirected to the URL they initially requested.
Bulletin Message	The message configured here will be briefly shown for a few seconds to the user. Default Message - This button is enabled when Bulletin Message is selected. Click to load the default text into the bulletin message textbox.
Applied Interfaces	
Subnet	The current Hotspot Web Portal profile will be in effect for the selected subnets.
WLAN	The current Hotspot Web Portal profile will be in effect for the selected WLAN SSIDs.
Finish	Click to complete the configuration.
Cancel	Click to abort the configuration process and return to the profile summary page.

Application Notes

A-1 How to allow users login to Vigor’s Hotspot with their social media accounts (e.g., Facebook & Google)

Vigor Router supports Hotspot Web Portal function. The network administrator can set Vigor Router as a Hotspot provider with web authentication and allow users to log in with their social media accounts, such as Facebook and Google. We demonstrate how to set up the hotspot web portal with Facebook login in the following paragraphs.

Vigor Router Setup

1. Make sure the router is connected to the Internet.

Online Status

Physical Connection System Uptime: 0day 0:11:28

IPv4		IPv6			
LAN Status		Primary DNS: 168.95.1.1			
Secondary DNS: 168.95.192.1					
IP Address	TX Packets	RX Packets			
192.168.60.1	5,950	6,130			
WAN 1 Status >> Drop PPPoE					
Enable	Line	Name	Mode	Up Time	
Yes	Ethernet		PPPoE	0:11:23	
IP	GW IP	TX Packets	TX Rate(Bps)	RX Packets	RX Rate(Bps)
192.168.1.254	192.168.1.1	5,041	215	5,689	393

2. Go to Hotspot Web Portal >> Profile Setup, click on an available index.

Hotspot Web Portal >> Profile Setup ?

Hotspot Web Portal Profile:

Index	Enable	Comments	Login Mode	Applied Interface	
1.	<input type="checkbox"/>		Click-through	None	Preview
2.	<input type="checkbox"/>		Click-through	None	Preview
3.	<input type="checkbox"/>		Click-through	None	Preview
4.	<input type="checkbox"/>		Click-through	None	Preview

Note:

1. The router must connect to the Internet before webpage redirection will work.
2. If the LAN clients are using another DNS server on LAN, please make sure the DNS query for domain name "portal.draytek.com" will be resolved by the router.

OK

3. Enter the values as the following figure.

Enable this profile **a**

Comments: **b**

Portal Server

Portal Method

- Skip Login, landing page only
- Click through
- Various Hotspot Login **c**

Captive Portal URL

Login Methods

Choose Login Method

- Login with Facebook **d**
- Login with Google
- Receive PIN via SMS

Facebook

Facebook APP ID **e**

Facebook APP Secret

Google

Google App ID

Google App Secret

f

- (a) Click **Enable this profile**.
- (b) Enter the comments.
- (c) Select **Various Hotspot Login** for Portal Method.
- (d) Choose **Login with Facebook** or **Login with Google** as Login Method.

If **Login with Facebook** is selected, the protocol of the **Captive Portal URL** need to be changed to **HTTPS** instead of **HTTP** because Facebook force to use **HTTPS** URL in their policy.

- (e) Enter the **APP ID** and secret.
- (f) Click **Save and Next**.

- Choose the **Color Background**, customize the information a logo color, and click **Save and Next**.


Hotspot Web Portal >> ProfileSetup

1 — 2 — 3 — 4 — 5

Login Method
Background
Login Page Setup
Whitelist Setting
More Options

Choose Login Background

Color Background

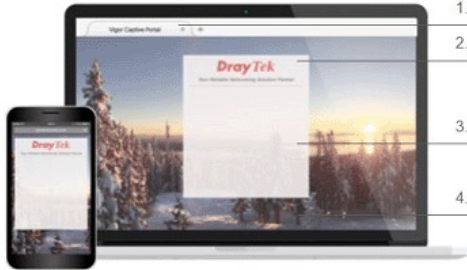


1. Browser Tab Title _____

2. Logo Image & Logo Background Color _____

3. Login Methods Background Color _____

Image Background



1. Browser Tab Title _____

2. Logo Image _____

3. Login Methods Background Color and Opacity _____

4. Background Image _____

Login Page URL

Browser Table Title

Logo Image

DrayTek

Logo Background Color

(format : FFFFFFFF)

Login Method Background Color

(format : FFFFFFFF)

You can click the Step Icon on the top of the page to go to the step you want. The router will save your setting automatically.

Or choose the **Image Background**, customize the information and background image, and click **Save and Next**.

Hotspot Web Portal >> Profile Setup



Choose Login Background

Color Background



Image Background



Login Page URL	<input type="text" value="portal.draytek.com"/>
Browser Table Title	<input type="text" value="Draytek Hotspot"/>

Logo Image	<input type="text" value="Default Draytek Logo Red"/>

Login Method Background Color	<input type="text" value="Vigor Gold"/>
	<input type="text" value="F4E1D0"/> (format : FFFFFFFF) <input type="button" value="Preview"/>
Opacity(10 ~ 100)	<input type="text" value="80"/> %

Background Image	<input type="button" value="Choose File"/> No file chosen (max size: 1MB) <input type="button" value="Upload"/>
------------------	---

5. Customize the descriptions on the login page, then click **Save and Next**.

Configure Login Method and Details

Welcome!
Please log in to enjoy Wi-Fi.

By clicking the button below you agree to the [Terms and Conditions](#)

Log in with Facebook

Log in with Google

Welcome Message _____

Terms and Conditions Description and Content _____

Facebook Login _____

Google Login _____

Welcome Message

Welcome to Draytek Video!
Please log in to enjoy Wi-Fi.

(Max 1360 characters)

Default

Terms and Conditions Description

By clicking the button below you agree to the Terms and Conditions.

(Max 170 characters)

Default

Terms and Conditions Content

(Max 1360 characters)

Facebook Login Description

Log in with Facebook

(Max 170 characters)

Default

Google Login Description

Log in with Google

(Max 170 characters)

Default

Save and Next
Cancel

6. You can set the **Whitelist** for the profile here to allow specific clients to access the internet or certain websites can be visited without login.

Hotspot Web Portal >> Profile Setup

1
2
3
4
5

Login Method
Background
Login Page Setup
Whitelist Setting
More Options

NAT Rules	Dest Domain	Dest IP	Dest Port	Source IP
Always allow outbound connections from hosts in		<input type="checkbox"/> NAT >> Port Redirection <input type="checkbox"/> NAT >> Open Ports <input type="checkbox"/> NAT >> DMZ		

Save and Next
Cancel

- Set up the **Expired Time After Activation** and **Landing Page After Activation** that Hotspot clients will see after they login successfully. Finally, select the interfaces to which you would like this hotspot profile apply to, then click **Finish** to save the setting.

Hotspot Web Portal >> Profile Setup

1
Login Method

2
Background

3
Login Page Setup

4
Whitelist Setting

5
More Options

Web Portal Options

Expired Time After Activation: 0 days 5 hours 0 min

HTTPS Redirection Enable
When an unauthenticated client opening a HTTPS page, redirect will work but certificate errors may be shown. Disable this function to redirect only HTTP pages. HTTPS browsing will timeout without redirection and also no certificate errors.

Captive Portal Detection Enable
Trigger the unauthenticated client to automatically pop-up the Web Portal page when connects to Wi-Fi. This function is not available when using **Social Login** because the page may not be shown correctly due to the limitation of the OS built-in Captive Portal Detection.

Landing Page After Authentication

Fixed URL:
 User Requested URL
 Bulletin Message:

(Max 511 characters) Default Message

Note:
Landing Page may not be shown correctly when using OS built-in Captive Portal Detection.

Applied Interfaces

Subnet		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> LAN1 <input type="checkbox"/> LAN2 <input type="checkbox"/> LAN3 <input type="checkbox"/> LAN4 <input type="checkbox"/> LAN5
WLAN	2.4G	<input type="checkbox"/> SSID1 (FAE_Victor_2925_VLC_test) <input type="checkbox"/> SSID2 (DrayTek_Guest) <input type="checkbox"/> SSID3 <input type="checkbox"/> SSID4
	5G	<input type="checkbox"/> SSID1 (DrayTek_5G) <input type="checkbox"/> SSID2 (DrayTek_5G_Guest) <input type="checkbox"/> SSID3 <input type="checkbox"/> SSID4

- Then the Hotspot setup is finished. You may click **Preview** to check the login page.

Hotspot Web Portal >> Profile Setup ?

Hotspot Web Portal Profile:

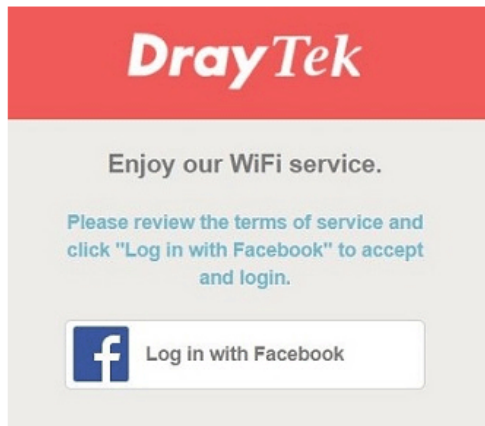
Index	Enable	Comments	Login Mode	Applied Interface	
1.	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	DrayTek	Social Login	LAN(1)	<input type="button" value="Preview"/>
2.	<input type="checkbox"/>		Click-through	None	<input type="button" value="Preview"/>
3.	<input type="checkbox"/>		Click-through	None	<input type="button" value="Preview"/>
4.	<input type="checkbox"/>		Click-through	None	<input type="button" value="Preview"/>

Note:

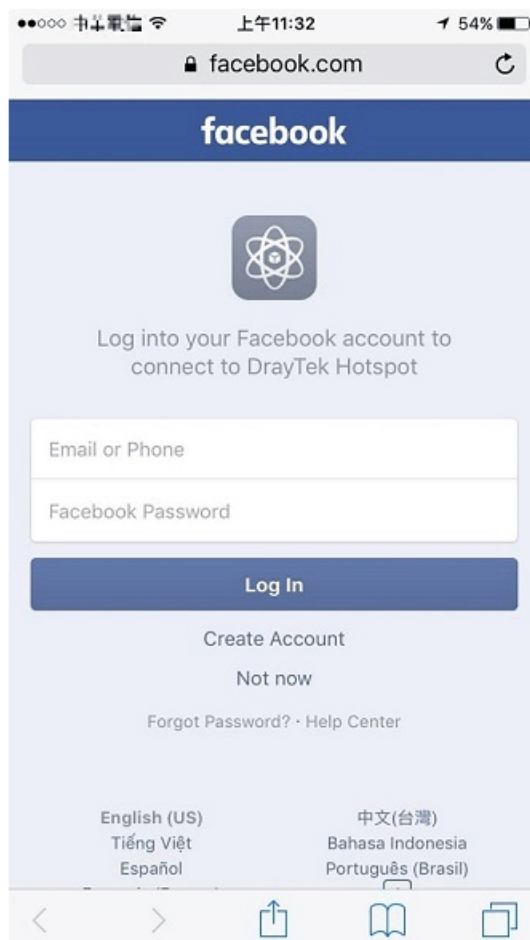
- The router must connect to the Internet before webpage redirection will work.
- If the LAN clients are using another DNS server on LAN, please make sure the DNS query for domain name "portal.draytek.com" will be resolved by the router.

Hotspot Clients Login

- Now, when clients connect to the selected router interface, and try to access internet, they will be redirected to "portal.draytek.com".



- Due to security concerns, the browser might warn that it cannot verify server identity, the clients would need to tap "Continue" before they can proceed to portal.draytek.com.
 - The client might not be able to access "portal.draytek.com" if this domain name is resolved by a DNS server on LAN. If so, set up LAN DNS to make sure the domain name will be resolved to the router's LAN IP.
- Tap on a login method, and it will open the social media login page. Enter the social media accounts and password to log in.

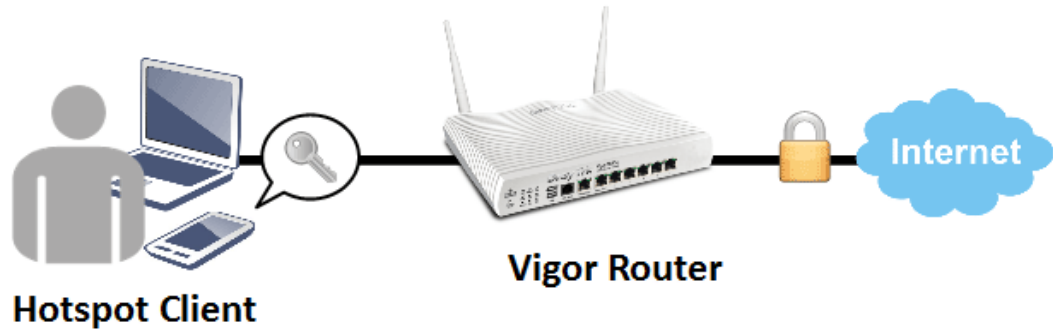


11. If the credentials are correct, the client will be redirected to the landing page and be able to access the Internet afterward.



A-2 How to allow hotspot clients to get login PIN code via SMS?

Vigor Router can act as a hotspot gateway and provide internet access only to the authenticated clients. Network Administrator may set up the router to allow hotspot client to get the login PIN code from an SMS message. This note is going to demonstrate how to set up Vigor Router as a hotspot gateway and be able to send the PIN code to clients by SMS messages.



Vigor Router Setup

1. Make sure the router is connected to the Internet.

Online Status

Physical Connection			System Uptime: 0day 0:11:28		
IPv4		IPv6			
LAN Status	Primary DNS: 168.95.1.1		Secondary DNS: 168.95.192.1		
IP Address	TX Packets	RX Packets			
192.168.60.1	5,950	6,130			
WAN 1 Status					>> Drop PPPoE
Enable	Line	Name	Mode	Up Time	
Yes	Ethernet		PPPoE	0:11:23	
IP	GW IP	TX Packets	TX Rate(Bps)	RX Packets	RX Rate(Bps)
192.168.1.1	168.95.1.1	5,041	215	5,689	393

2. Create an SMS Object to send SMS messages. Go to **Objects Setting >> SMS Service Object**, and click on an available profile.

Objects Setting >> SMS / Mail Service Object

SMS Provider	Mail Server	
Set to Factory Default		
Index	Profile Name	SMS Provider
1.		kotsms.com.tw (TW)
2.		kotsms.com.tw (TW)
3.		kotsms.com.tw (TW)
4.		kotsms.com.tw (TW)
5.		kotsms.com.tw (TW)
6.		kotsms.com.tw (TW)
7.		kotsms.com.tw (TW)
8.		kotsms.com.tw (TW)
9.	Custom 1	
10.	Custom 2	

- Enter the Service Provider details, and click OK to apply.

Objects Setting >> SMS / Mail Service Object

Profile Index: 1

Profile Name	hotspot
Service Provider	kotsms.com.tw (TW) ▼
Username	m
Password
Quota	10
Sending Interval	3 (seconds)

- Go to Hotspot Web Portal >> Profile Setup, click on an available profile.

Hotspot Web Portal >> Profile Setup



Hotspot Web Portal Profile:

Index	Enable	Comments	Login Mode	Applied Interface	
1.	<input type="checkbox"/>		Skip Login	None	Preview
2.	<input type="checkbox"/>		Skip Login	None	Preview
3.	<input type="checkbox"/>		Skip Login	None	Preview
4.	<input type="checkbox"/>		Skip Login	None	Preview

- Enable the profile, give a comment, and choose "PIN Code Login". Then click Next.

Hotspot Web Portal >> Hotspot Web Portal Setup

Profile 1

Enable

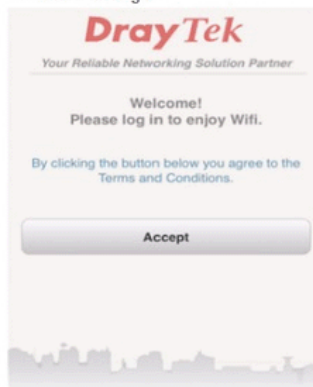
Comments: SMS authenticate

Choose How Users Receive Internet Access

Skip Login

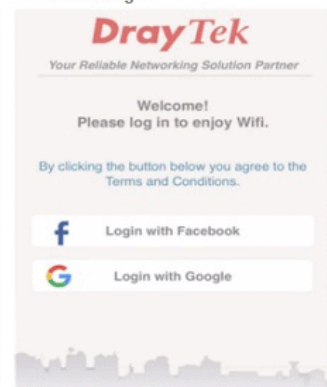
skip login phase and redirect to landing page immediately

Click-through



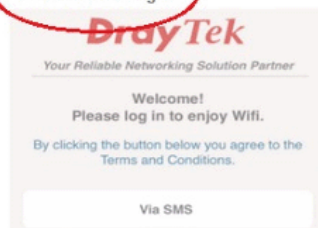
A space for you to display the terms and conditions. Users have to click Accept button (wording configurable) to get WiFi access.

Social Login

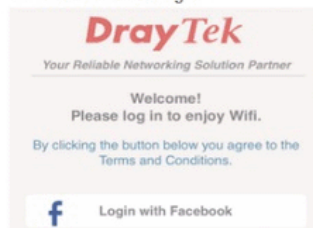


Login with Facebook or Google account.

PIN Code Login



Social or PIN Login



- Choose a login page design, customize the details, and click **Next**.

Hotspot Web Portal >> Hotspot Web Portal Setup

Profile 1

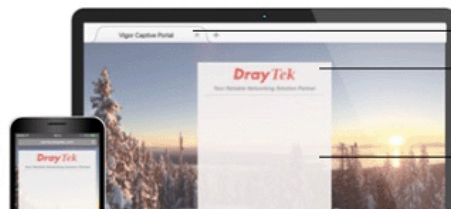
Design Login Page Appearance

Color Background



1. Browser Tab Title
2. Logo Image & Logo Background Color
3. Login Methods Background Color

Image Background



1. Browser Tab Title
2. Logo Image
3. Login Methods Background Color and Opacity

- Edit the message on the login page, and click **Next**.

Receiving PIN via SMS Description	<input type="text" value="Get password via SMS"/> (Max 170 characters) Default
Receiving PIN via SMS Content	<input type="text" value="Welcome to DrayTek Hotspot!Your password is <PIN>.This PIN will be valid for 10 min."/> (Max 150 characters) Default
Receiving PIN via SMS Provider	<input type="text" value="1 - hotspot"/> Set SMS Provider in Objects Setting >> SMS / Mail Service Object
Enter PIN Description	<input type="text" value="Enter password"/> (Max 170 characters) Default
Submit Button Description	<input type="text" value="Login</font'>"/> (Max 170 characters) Default
Submit Button Color	<input type="text" value="A2A2A2"/> (format : FFFFFFF) Default

- Edit the details for SMS settings, then click **Next**.

Back Button Description

(Max 170 characters) Default

PIN Code Message

Password will be sent over via SMS.

(Max 170 characters) Default

Default Country Code + 886 Taiwan

Enter Mobile Number Description

enter your mobile number

(Max 170 characters) Default

Send Button Description

Get password

(Max 170 characters) Default

Send Button Color A2A2A2 (format : FFFFFFFF) Default

Send Succeeded Message

Password has been sent. Click Get password again if not receiving password in 3 minutes.

(Max 170 characters) Default

9. Edit the landing page, choose the interfaces to which the SMS login should apply, and then click **Finish**.

Web Portal Options

Expired Time After Activation days hours min

HTTPS Redirection Enable
 When an unauthenticated client opening a HTTPS page, redirect will work but certificate errors may be shown. Disable this function to redirect only HTTP pages. HTTPS browsing will timeout without redirection and also no certificate errors.

Captive Portal Detection Enable
 Trigger the unauthenticated client to automatically pop-up the Web Portal page when connects to Wi-Fi. This function is not available when using **Social Login** because the page may not be shown correctly due to the limitation of the OS built-in Captive Portal Detection.

Landing Page After Authentication

Fixed URL

User Requested URL

Bulletin Message

(Max 511 characters) Default Message

Note:
Landing Page may not be shown correctly when using OS built-in Captive Portal Detection.

Applied Interfaces

Subnet LAN1 LAN2 LAN3 LAN4

WLAN 2.4G SSID1 (DrayTek)
 SSID2 (DrayTek_Guest)
 SSID3
 SSID4

- Now, the hotspot settings are applied to the selected interfaces. You may click Preview to check how the login page looks.

Hotspot Web Portal >> Profile Setup ?

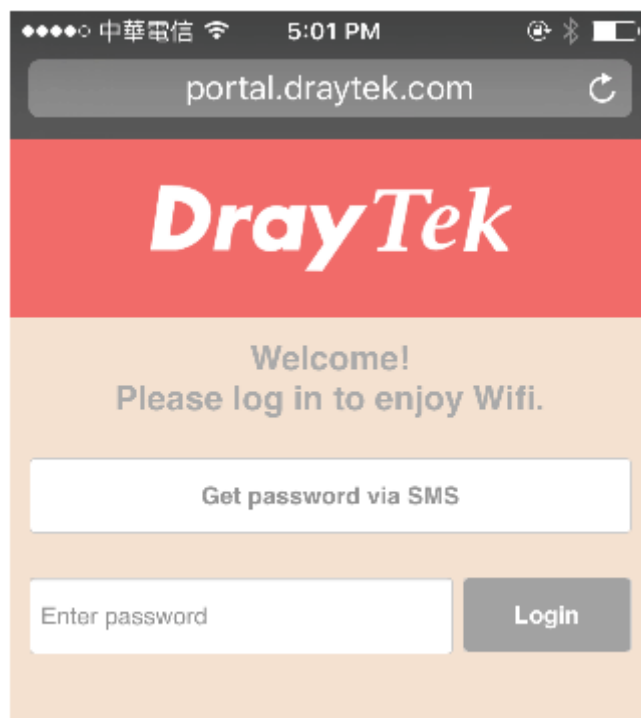
Hotspot Web Portal Profile:

Index	Enable	Comments	Login Mode	Applied Interface	
1.	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SMS authenticate	PIN Code Login	WLAN2.4G(2)	Preview
2.	<input type="checkbox"/>		Skin Login	None	Preview
3.	<input type="checkbox"/>				Preview
4.	<input type="checkbox"/>				Preview

Note:
The router mu

Hotspot Client Login

- If the client connected to the selected interface of the router and try to open a webpage, they will be redirected to hotspot login page. If they do not have a password yet, they can click on the button to get a password.





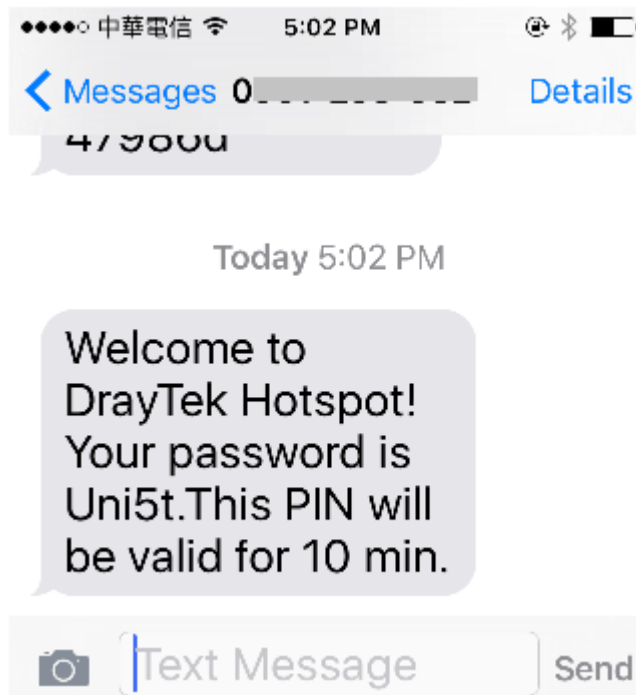
Info

- Due to security concerns, the browser might warn that it cannot verify server identity, the clients would need to tap "continue" before they can proceed to portal.draytek.com.
- The client might not be able to access "portal.draytek.com" if this domain name is resolved by a DNS server on LAN. If so, set up LAN DNS to make sure the domain name will be resolved to the router's LAN IP.

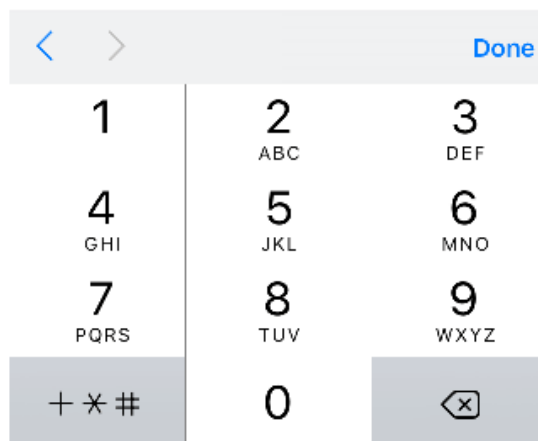
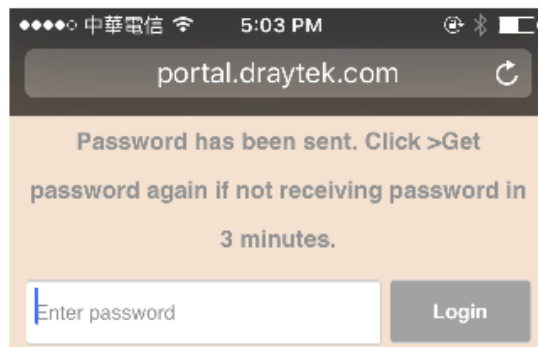
12. Enter the mobile phone number to receive the SMS message.

The screenshot shows a mobile browser interface for the DrayTek portal. At the top, the status bar displays '中華電信' (Chunghwa Telecom), signal strength, Wi-Fi, and the time '5:02 PM'. The address bar shows 'portal.draytek.com'. Below the address bar is a red header with the 'DrayTek' logo. The main content area has a light beige background and contains the following elements: a back arrow icon, the text 'Password will be sent over via SMS.', a phone number input field with a dropdown menu showing '+ 886' and a text box containing '918', a grey 'Get password' button, a horizontal separator line, a password input field with the placeholder text 'Enter password', and a grey 'Login' button.

13. The number will get a message about the password.



14. Enter the password on the login page, and click Login.



15. If the password is correct, the client will be redirected to the landing page, and after that, they will be able to surf the Internet.



VI-5 External Devices

Vigor router can be used to connect with many types of external devices. In order to control or manage the external devices conveniently, open External Devices to make detailed configuration.

Central Management >> External Device

- External Device Syslog
- External Device Auto Discovery

External Devices Connected

| Refresh |

Below shows available devices that connected externally:

For security reason:

If you have changed the administrator password on External Device, please click the **Account** button to retype new username and password. Otherwise, the router will be unable to monitor the External Device device properly. Click the **Clear** button to Clear the off-line information and account information.

OK

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
External Device Auto Discovery	Check this box to detect the external device automatically and display on this page.

From this web page, check the box of External Device Auto Discovery. Later, all the available devices will be displayed in this page with icons and corresponding information. You can change the device name if required or remove the information for off-line device whenever you want.

Central Management >> External Device

- External Device Syslog
- External Device Auto Discovery

External Devices Connected

| Refresh |

Below shows available devices that connected externally:

On Line VigorAP900, VigorAP900, Connection Uptime: 18:15:27

IP Address: 10.28.60.12

Account

Clear

On Line P2261, Connection Uptime: 18:15:17

IP Address: 192.168.1.226

Account

Clear

For security reason:

If you have changed the administrator password on External Device, please click the **Account** button to retype new username and password. Otherwise, the router will be unable to monitor the External Device device properly. Click the **Clear** button to Clear the off-line information and account information.

OK

When you finished the configuration, click OK to save it.



Info

Only DrayTek products can be detected by this function.

Part VII Others



Objects Settings

Define objects such as IP address, service type, keyword, file extension and others. These pre-defined objects can be applied in CSM.



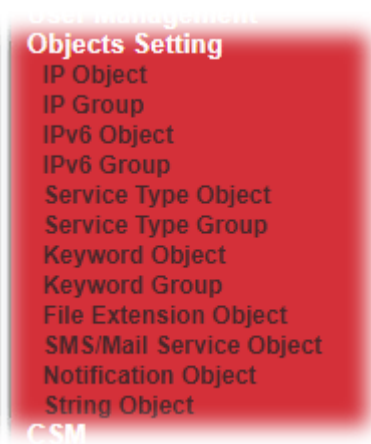
USB

USB device connected on Vigor router can be regarded as a server or WAN interface. By way of Vigor router, clients on LAN can access, write and read data stored in USB storage disk with different applications.

VII-1 Objects Settings

For IPs in a range and service ports in a limited range usually will be applied in configuring router's settings, therefore we can define them with *objects* and bind them with *groups* for using conveniently. Later, we can select that object/group that can apply it. For example, all the IPs in the same department can be defined with an IP object (a range of IP address).

Web User Interface



VII-1-1 IP Object

You can set up to 192 sets of IP Objects with different conditions.

Objects Setting >> IP Object

[Create from ARP Table](#)

[Create from Routing Table](#)

IP Object Profiles:

[Set to Factory Default](#)

View:

Index	Name	Address	Index	Name	Address
1.			17.		
2.			18.		
3.			19.		
4.			20.		
5.			21.		
6.			22.		
7.			23.		
8.			24.		
9.			25.		
10.			26.		
11.			27.		
12.			28.		
13.			29.		
14.			30.		
15.			31.		
16.			32.		

<< [1-32](#) | [33-64](#) | [65-96](#) | [97-128](#) | [129-160](#) | [161-192](#) >>

[Next](#) >>

<p>Export IP Object</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Backup the current IP Objects with a CSV file</p> <p><input type="radio"/> Download the default CSV template to edit</p> <p><input type="button" value="Download"/></p>	<p>Restore IP Object</p> <p><input type="button" value="選擇檔案"/> 未選擇任何檔案</p> <p><input type="button" value="Restore"/></p>
--	--

Note:

For better compatibility, it's suggested to edit IP Objects with the provided default CSV template.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
View	Use the drop down list to choose a type (Single Address, Range Address, Subnet Address, Mac Address or all) that IP object with the selected type will be shown on this page.
Set to Factory Default	Clear all profiles.
Search	Type a string of the IP object that you want to search.
Index	Display the profile number that you can configure.
Name	Display the name of the object profile.
Address	Display the IP address configured for the object profile.
Export IP Object	<p>Usually, the IP objects can be created one by one through the web page of Objects>>IP Object. However, to a user who wants to save more time in bulk creating IP objects, a quick method is offered by Vigor router to modify the IP objects with a single file, a CSV file.</p> <p>All of the IP objects (or the template) can be exported as a file by clicking Download. Then the user can open the CSV file through Microsoft Excel and modify all the IP objects at the same time.</p> <p>Backup the current IP Objects with a CSV file - Click it to backup current IP objects as a CSV file. Such file can be restored for future use.</p> <p>Download the default CSV template to edit - After clicking it, press Download to store the default CSM template (a table without any input data) to your hard disk.</p> <p>Download - Download the CSV file from Vigor router and store in your hard disk.</p>
Restore IP Object	<p>Select - Click it to specify a predefined CSV file.</p> <p>Restore - Import the selected CSV file onto Vigor router.</p>

To set a new profile, please do the steps listed below:

1. Click the number (e.g., #1) under Index column for configuration in details.
2. The configuration page will be shown as follows:

Objects Setting >> IP Object

Profile Index : 1

Name:	<input type="text" value="RD Department"/>
Interface:	<input type="text" value="Any"/>
Address Type:	<input type="text" value="Range Address"/>
Mac Address:	<input type="text" value="00 :00 :00 :00 :00 :00"/>
Start IP Address:	<input type="text" value="192.168.1.19"/> <input type="button" value="Select"/>
End IP Address:	<input type="text" value="192.168.1.19"/> <input type="button" value="Select"/>
Subnet Mask:	<input type="text" value="255.255.255.254 / 31"/>
Invert Selection:	<input type="checkbox"/>

[Next >>](#)

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Name	Type a name for this profile. Maximum 15 characters are

	allowed.
Interface	The network interface on which the IP address or addresses are to be found. Any - All network interfaces. LAN/DMZ/RT/VPN - All network interfaces except WAN. WAN - Only WAN interfaces.
Address Type	Type of Addresses. Any Address - Object covers all IP addresses. Single Address - Object covers one IP address. Range Address - Object covers a range of IP addresses. Subnet Address - Object covers a range of IP addresses specified in subnet notation. Mac Address - Object contains a MAC address.
MAC Address	Enter MAC address of the network device, if Address Type is Mac Address.
Start IP Address	Enter beginning IP address, if Address Type is one of Single Address, Range Address and Subnet Address.
End IP Address	Enter ending IP address, if Address type is one of Single Address, Range Address and Subnet Address.
Subnet Mask	Enter subnet mask, if Address type is Subnet Mask.
Invert Selection	If it is checked, all the IP addresses except the ones listed above will be applied later while it is chosen.

4. After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration. Below is an example of IP objects settings.

Objects Setting >> IP Object

[Create from ARP Table](#)
[Create from Routing Table](#)

IP Object Profiles:

View:

Index	Name	Address	Index	Name
<u>1.</u>	RD Department	192.168.1.9 ~ 192.168.1.9	<u>17.</u>	
<u>2.</u>			<u>18.</u>	
<u>3.</u>			<u>19.</u>	
<u>4.</u>			<u>20.</u>	

VII-1-2 IP Group

This page allows you to bind several IP objects into one IP group.

Objects Setting >> IP Group

IP Group Table: | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Index	Name	Index	Name
1.		17.	
2.		18.	
3.		19.	
4.		20.	
5.		21.	
6.		22.	
7.		23.	
8.		24.	
9.		25.	
10.		26.	
11.		27.	
12.		28.	
13.		29.	
14.		30.	
15.		31.	
16.		32.	

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Clear all profiles.
Index	Display the profile number that you can configure.
Name	Display the name of the group profile.

To set a new profile, please do the steps listed below:

1. Click the number (e.g., #1) under Index column for configuration in details.
2. The configuration page will be shown as follows:

Objects Setting >> IP Group

Profile Index : 1

Name:

Interface:

Available IP Objects

1-RD Department

>>

<<

Selected IP Objects (Up to 12)

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Name	Type a name for this profile. Maximum 15 characters are allowed.
Interface	Choose WAN, LAN or Any to display all the available IP objects with the specified interface.
Available IP Objects	All the available IP objects with the specified interface chosen above will be shown in this box.
Selected IP Objects	Click >> button to add the selected IP objects in this box.

- After finishing all the settings here, please click OK to save the configuration.

VII-1-3 IPv6 Object

You can set up to 64 sets of IPv6 Objects with different conditions.

Objects Setting >> IPv6 Object

IPv6 Object Profiles: | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Index	Name	Index	Name
1.		17.	
2.		18.	
3.		19.	
4.		20.	
5.		21.	
6.		22.	
7.		23.	
8.		24.	
9.		25.	
10.		26.	
11.		27.	
12.		28.	
13.		29.	
14.		30.	
15.		31.	
16.		32.	

<< [1-32](#) | [33-64](#) >> [Next](#) >>

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Clear all profiles.
Index	Display the profile number that you can configure.
Name	Display the name of the object profile.

To set a new profile, please do the steps listed below:

1. Click the number (e.g., #1) under Index column for configuration in details.
2. The configuration page will be shown as follows:

Objects Setting >> IPv6 Object

Profile Index : 1

Name:	<input type="text"/>
Address Type:	Range Address ▾
Match Type:	<input checked="" type="radio"/> 128 Bits <input type="radio"/> Suffix 64 Bits(Interface ID)
Mac Address:	<input type="text" value="00:00:00:00:00:00"/>
Start IP Address:	<input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Select"/>
End IP Address:	<input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Select"/>
Prefix Length:	<input type="text"/>
Invert Selection:	<input type="checkbox"/>

[Next >>](#)

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Name	Type a name for this profile. Maximum 15 characters are allowed.
Address Type	Determine the address type for the IPv6 address. Select Single Address if this object contains one IPv6 address only. Select Range Address if this object contains several IPv6s within a range. Select Subnet Address if this object contains one subnet for IPv6 address. Select Any Address if this object contains any IPv6 address. Select Mac Address if this object contains Mac address.
Match Type	Specify which type (128 Bits or 64 Bits) of address format for IPv6 protocol will be used for comparison. The length of IPv6 address is composed by prefix and suffix (interface ID). 128 Bits - When it is selected, Vigor router will make the completed comparison for IPv6 protocol based on prefix and suffix. Suffix 64 Bits (Interface ID) - When it is selected, Vigor router will make the simplified comparison for IPv6 protocol based on suffix only.
Mac Address	Type the MAC address of the network card which will be controlled.
Start IP Address	Type the start IP address for Single Address type.
End IP Address	Type the end IP address if the Range Address type is selected.
Prefix Length	Type the number (e.g., 64) for the prefix length of IPv6 address.

Invert Selection	If it is checked, all the IPv6 addresses except the ones listed above will be applied later while it is chosen.
------------------	---

- After finishing all the settings, please click OK to save the configuration.

VII-1-4 IPv6 Group

This page allows you to bind several IPv6 objects into one IPv6 group.

Objects Setting >> IPv6 Group

IPv6 Group Table:

[Set to Factory Default](#)

Index	Name	Index	Name
<u>1.</u>		<u>17.</u>	
<u>2.</u>		<u>18.</u>	
<u>3.</u>		<u>19.</u>	
<u>4.</u>		<u>20.</u>	
<u>5.</u>		<u>21.</u>	
<u>6.</u>		<u>22.</u>	
<u>7.</u>		<u>23.</u>	
<u>8.</u>		<u>24.</u>	
<u>9.</u>		<u>25.</u>	
<u>10.</u>		<u>26.</u>	
<u>11.</u>		<u>27.</u>	
<u>12.</u>		<u>28.</u>	
<u>13.</u>		<u>29.</u>	
<u>14.</u>		<u>30.</u>	
<u>15.</u>		<u>31.</u>	
<u>16.</u>		<u>32.</u>	

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Clear all profiles.
Index	Display the profile number that you can configure.
Name	Display the name of the group profile.

To set a new profile, please do the steps listed below:

- Click the number (e.g., #1) under Index column for configuration in details.
- The configuration page will be shown as follows:

Profile Index : 1

Name:

Available IPv6 Objects

>>

<<

Selected IPv6 Objects (Up to 8)

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Name	Type a name for this profile. Maximum 15 characters are allowed.
Available IPv6 Objects	All the available IPv6 objects with the specified interface chosen above will be shown in this box.
Selected IPv6 Objects	Click >> button to add the selected IPv6 objects in this box.

- After finishing all the settings, please click OK to save the configuration.

VII-1-5 Service Type Object

You can set up to 96 sets of Service Type Objects with different conditions.

Objects Setting >> Service Type Object

Service Type Object Profiles:		Set to Factory Default	
Index	Name	Index	Name
1.		17.	
2.		18.	
3.		19.	
4.		20.	
5.		21.	
6.		22.	
7.		23.	
8.		24.	
9.		25.	
10.		26.	
11.		27.	
12.		28.	
13.		29.	
14.		30.	
15.		31.	
16.		32.	

<< [1-32](#) | [33-64](#) | [65-96](#) >>
[Next](#) >>

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Clear all profiles.
Index	Display the profile number that you can configure.
Name	Display the name of the object profile.

To set a new profile, please do the steps listed below:

1. Click the number (e.g., #1) under Index column for configuration in details.
2. The configuration page will be shown as follows:

Objects Setting >> Service Type Object Setup

Profile Index : 1

Name	<input type="text"/>
Protocol	Any <input type="text"/>
Source Port	= <input type="text" value="1"/> ~ <input type="text" value="65535"/>
Destination Port	= <input type="text" value="1"/> ~ <input type="text" value="65535"/>

[Next >>](#)

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Name	Type a name for this profile. Maximum 15 characters are allowed.
Protocol	Specify the protocol(s) which this profile will apply to.
Source/Destination Port	<p>Source Port and the Destination Port columns are available for TCP/UDP protocol. It can be ignored for other protocols. The filter rule will filter out any port number.</p> <p>(=) - when the first and last value are the same, it indicates one port; when the first and last values are different, it indicates a range for the port and available for this profile.</p> <p>(!=) - when the first and last value are the same, it indicates all the ports except the port defined here; when the first and last values are different, it indicates that all the ports except the range defined here are available for this service type.</p> <p>(>) - the port number greater than this value is available.</p> <p>(<) - the port number less than this value is available for this profile.</p>

- After finishing all the settings, please click OK to save the configuration.

Objects Setting >> Service Type Object

Service Type Object Profiles:

Index	Name
<u>1.</u>	www
<u>2.</u>	SIP
<u>3.</u>	

VII-1-6 Service Type Group

This page allows you to bind several service types into one group.

Objects Setting >> Service Type Group

Service Type Group Table:

[Set to Factory Default](#)

Group	Name	Group	Name
<u>1.</u>		<u>17.</u>	
<u>2.</u>		<u>18.</u>	
<u>3.</u>		<u>19.</u>	
<u>4.</u>		<u>20.</u>	
<u>5.</u>		<u>21.</u>	
<u>6.</u>		<u>22.</u>	
<u>7.</u>		<u>23.</u>	
<u>8.</u>		<u>24.</u>	
<u>9.</u>		<u>25.</u>	
<u>10.</u>		<u>26.</u>	
<u>11.</u>		<u>27.</u>	
<u>12.</u>		<u>28.</u>	
<u>13.</u>		<u>29.</u>	
<u>14.</u>		<u>30.</u>	
<u>15.</u>		<u>31.</u>	
<u>16.</u>		<u>32.</u>	

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Clear all profiles.
Index	Display the profile number that you can configure.
Name	Display the name of the group profile.

To set a new profile, please do the steps listed below:

1. Click the number (e.g., #1) under Group column for configuration in details.
2. The configuration page will be shown as follows:

Objects Setting >> Service Type Group Setup

Profile Index : 1

Name:

Available Service Type Objects		Selected Service Type Objects
<div style="border: 1px solid gray; min-height: 100px;"> 1-www 2-SIP </div>	<input type="button" value="»"/> <input type="button" value="«"/>	<div style="border: 1px solid gray; min-height: 100px;"></div>

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Name	Type a name for this profile. Maximum 15 characters are allowed.
Available Service Type Objects	All the available service objects that you have added on Objects Setting>>Service Type Object will be shown in this box.
Selected Service Type Objects	Click >> button to add the selected IP objects in this box.

3. After finishing all the settings, please click OK to save the configuration.

VII-1-7 Keyword Object

You can set 200 keyword object profiles for choosing as black /white list in CSM >>URL Web Content Filter Profile.

Objects Setting >> Keyword Object

Keyword Object Profiles:		Set to Factory Default	
Index	Name	Index	Name
1.	Facebook	17.	
2.	facebook.apps	18.	
3.		19.	
4.		20.	
5.		21.	
6.		22.	
7.		23.	
8.		24.	
9.		25.	
10.		26.	
11.		27.	
12.		28.	
13.		29.	
14.		30.	
15.		31.	
16.		32.	

<< [1-32](#) | [33-64](#) | [65-96](#) | [97-128](#) | [129-160](#) | [161-192](#) | [193-200](#) >> [Next](#) >>

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Clear all profiles.
Index	Display the profile number that you can configure.
Name	Display the name of the object profile.

To set a new profile, please do the steps listed below:

1. Click the number (e.g., #1) under Index column for configuration in details.
2. The configuration page will be shown as follows:

Objects Setting >> Keyword Object Setup

Profile Index : 1

Name	<input type="text" value="Facebook"/>
Contents	<input type="text" value="facebook"/>
Limit of Contents: Max 3 Words and Characters. Each word should be separated by a single space.	
You can replace a character with %HEX. Example: Contents: backdoo%72 virus keep%20out	
Result: 1. backdoor 2. virus 3. keep out	

[Next >>](#)

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Name	Type a name for this profile, e.g., game. Maximum 15 characters are allowed.
Contents	Type the content for such profile. For example, type <i>gambling</i> as Contents. When you browse the webpage, the page with gambling information will be watched out and be passed/blocked based on the configuration on Firewall settings.

3. After finishing all the settings, please click OK to save the configuration.

VII-1-8 Keyword Group

This page allows you to bind several keyword objects into one group. The keyword groups set here will be chosen as black /white list in CSM >>URL /Web Content Filter Profile.

Objects Setting >> Keyword Group

Keyword Group Table: [Set to Factory Default](#)

Index	Name	Objects	Index	Name	Objects
1.			17.		
2.			18.		
3.			19.		
4.			20.		
5.			21.		
6.			22.		
7.			23.		
8.			24.		
9.			25.		
10.			26.		
11.			27.		
12.			28.		
13.			29.		
14.			30.		
15.			31.		
16.			32.		

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Clear all profiles.
Index	Display the profile number that you can configure.
Name	Display the name of the group profile.

To set a new profile, please do the steps listed below:

1. Click the number (e.g., #1) under Index column for configuration in details.
2. The configuration page will be shown as follows:

Objects Setting >> Keyword Group Setup

Profile Index : 1

Name:

Available Keyword Objects

1-Facebook
2-facebook.apps

>>

<<

Selected Keyword Objects(Max 16 Objects)

(Empty)

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Name	Type a name for this group. Maximum 15 characters are allowed.

Available Keyword Objects	You can gather keyword objects from Keyword Object page within one keyword group. All the available Keyword objects that you have created will be shown in this box.
Selected Keyword Objects	Click <input type="button" value=" >> "/> button to add the selected Keyword objects in this box.

- After finishing all the settings, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

VII-1-9 File Extension Object

This page allows you to set eight profiles which will be applied in **CSM>>URL Content Filter**. All the files with the extension names specified in these profiles will be processed according to the chosen action.

Objects Setting >> File Extension Object

File Extension Object Profiles: | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Profile	Name	Profile	Name
<u>1.</u>		<u>5.</u>	
<u>2.</u>		<u>6.</u>	
<u>3.</u>		<u>7.</u>	
<u>4.</u>		<u>8.</u>	

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Clear all profiles.
Index	Display the profile number that you can configure.
Name	Display the name of the object profile.

To set a new profile, please do the steps listed below:

1. Click the number (e.g., #1) under Profile column for configuration in details.
2. The configuration page will be shown as follows:

Objects Setting >> File Extension Object Setup

Profile Index: 1 Profile Name:

Categories	File Extensions
Image <input type="button" value="Select All"/> <input type="button" value="Clear All"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> .bmp <input type="checkbox"/> .dib <input type="checkbox"/> .gif <input type="checkbox"/> .jpeg <input type="checkbox"/> .jpg <input type="checkbox"/> .jpg2 <input type="checkbox"/> .jp2 <input type="checkbox"/> .pct <input type="checkbox"/> .pcx <input type="checkbox"/> .pic <input type="checkbox"/> .pict <input type="checkbox"/> .png <input type="checkbox"/> .tif <input type="checkbox"/> .tiff
Video <input type="button" value="Select All"/> <input type="button" value="Clear All"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> .asf <input type="checkbox"/> .avi <input type="checkbox"/> .mov <input type="checkbox"/> .mpe <input type="checkbox"/> .mpeg <input type="checkbox"/> .mpg <input type="checkbox"/> .mp4 <input type="checkbox"/> .qt <input type="checkbox"/> .rm <input type="checkbox"/> .wmv <input type="checkbox"/> .3gp <input type="checkbox"/> .3gpp <input type="checkbox"/> .3gpp2 <input type="checkbox"/> .3g2 <input type="checkbox"/> .flv <input type="checkbox"/> .swf
Audio <input type="button" value="Select All"/> <input type="button" value="Clear All"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> .aac <input type="checkbox"/> .aiff <input type="checkbox"/> .au <input type="checkbox"/> .mp3 <input type="checkbox"/> .m4a <input type="checkbox"/> .m4p <input type="checkbox"/> .ogg <input type="checkbox"/> .ra <input type="checkbox"/> .ram <input type="checkbox"/> .vox <input type="checkbox"/> .wav <input type="checkbox"/> .wma
Java <input type="button" value="Select All"/> <input type="button" value="Clear All"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> .class <input type="checkbox"/> .jad <input type="checkbox"/> .jar <input type="checkbox"/> .jav <input type="checkbox"/> .java <input type="checkbox"/> .jcm <input type="checkbox"/> .js <input type="checkbox"/> .jse <input type="checkbox"/> .jsp <input type="checkbox"/> .jtk

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Profile Name	Type a name for this profile. The maximum length of the name you can set is 7 characters.

3. Type a name for such profile and check all the items of file extension that will be processed in the router. Finally, click **OK** to save this profile.

VII-1-10 SMS/Mail Service Object

SMS Service Object

This page allows you to set ten profiles which will be applied in **Application>>SMS/Mail Alert Service**.

Objects Setting >> SMS / Mail Service Object

SMS Provider		Mail Server	Set to Factory Default
Index	Profile Name	SMS Provider	
1.			
2.			
3.			
4.			
5.			
6.			
7.			
8.			
9.	Custom 1		
10.	Custom 2		

Each item is explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Clear all of the settings and return to factory default settings.
Index	Display the profile number that you can configure.
Profile	Display the name for such SMS profile.
SMS Provider	Display the service provider which offers SMS service.

To set a new profile, please do the steps listed below:

1. Click the **SMS Provider** tab, and click the number (e.g., #1) under Index column for configuration in details.
2. The configuration page will be shown as follows:

Objects Setting >> SMS / Mail Service Object

Profile Index: 1

Profile Name	<input type="text" value="Line_down"/>
Service Provider	<input type="text" value="kotsms.com.tw (TW)"/>
Username	<input type="text" value="line1"/>
Password	<input type="password" value="....."/>
Quota	<input type="text" value="10"/>
Sending Interval	<input type="text" value="3"/> (seconds)

Note:

1. Only one message can be sent during the "Sending Interval" time.
2. If the "Sending Interval" was set to 0, there will be no limitation.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Profile Name	Type a name for such SMS profile. The maximum length of the name you can set is 31 characters.
Service Provider	Use the drop down list to specify the service provider which offers SMS service.
Username	Type a user name that the sender can use to register to selected SMS provider. The maximum length of the name you can set is 31 characters.
Password	Type a password that the sender can use to register to selected SMS provider. The maximum length of the password you can set is 31 characters.
Quota	Type the number of the credit that you purchase from the service provider chosen above. Note that one credit equals to one SMS text message on the standard route.
Sending Interval	To avoid quota being exhausted soon, type time interval for sending the SMS.

- After finishing all the settings here, please click OK to save the configuration.

Objects Setting >> SMS / Mail Service Object

SMS Provider		Mail Server	Set to Factory Default
Index	Profile Name	SMS Provider	
1.	Line_down	kotsms.com.tw (TW)	
2.			
3.			
4.			
5.			
6.			
7.			
8.			
9.	Custom 1		
10.	Custom 2		

Customized SMS Service

Vigor router offers several SMS service provider to offer the SMS service. However, if your service provider cannot be found from the service provider list, simply use Index 9 and Index 10 to make customized SMS service. The profile name for Index 9 and Index 10 are fixed.

Objects Setting >> SMS / Mail Service Object

SMS Provider	Mail Server	Set to Factory Default	
Index	Profile Name	SMS Provider	
1.			
2.			
3.			
4.			
5.			
6.			
7.			
8.			
9.	Custom 1		
10.	Custom 2		

You can click the number (e.g., #9) under Index column for configuration in details.

Objects Setting >> SMS / Mail Service Object

Profile Index: 9

Profile Name	<input type="text" value="Custom 1"/>
Service Provider	<input type="text"/>
<div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px; min-height: 40px;"> Max: 255 characters </div>	
Please contact with your SMS provide to get the exact URL String eg:bulksms.vsms.net:5567/eapi/submission/send_sms/2/2.0?username=###txtUser###&password=###txtPwd###&msisdn=###txtDest###&message=###txtMsg###	
Username	<input type="text" value="Max: 31 characters"/>
Password	<input type="text" value="Max: 31 characters"/>
Quota	<input type="text" value="10"/>
Sending Interval	<input type="text" value="3"/> (seconds)

Note:

1. Only one message can be sent during the "Sending Interval" time.
2. If the "Sending Interval" was set to 0, there will be no limitation.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Profile Name	Display the name of this profile. It cannot be modified.
Service Provider	Type the website of the service provider. Type the URL string in the box under the filed of Service Provider. You have to contact your SMS provider to obtain the exact URL string.

Username	Type a user name that the sender can use to register to selected SMS provider. The maximum length of the name you can set is 31 characters.
Password	Type a password that the sender can use to register to selected SMS provider. The maximum length of the password you can set is 31 characters.
Quota	Type the total number of the messages that the router will send out.
Sending Interval	Type the shortest time interval for the system to send SMS.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

Mail Service Object

This page allows you to set ten profiles which will be applied in **Application>>SMS/Mail Alert Service**.

Objects Setting >> SMS / Mail Service Object

SMS Provider	Mail Server	Set to Factory Default
Index	Profile Name	
<u>1.</u>		
<u>2.</u>		
<u>3.</u>		
<u>4.</u>		
<u>5.</u>		
<u>6.</u>		
<u>7.</u>		
<u>8.</u>		
<u>9.</u>		
<u>10.</u>		

Each item is explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Clear all of the settings and return to factory default settings.
Index	Display the profile number that you can configure.
Profile	Display the name for such mail server profile.

To set a new profile, please do the steps listed below:

1. Click the **Mail Server** tab, and click the number (e.g., #1) under Index column for configuration in details.
2. The configuration page will be shown as follows:

Objects Setting >> SMS / Mail Service Object

Profile Index: 1

Profile Name	<input type="text" value="Mail_Notify"/>
SMTP Server	<input type="text" value="192.168.1.98"/>
SMTP Port	<input type="text" value="25"/>
Sender Address	<input type="text" value="carrie@draytek.com"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Use SSL	
	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Accept using plain text if StartTLS connection failed. <input type="radio"/> Force StartTLS. Stop if StartTLS connection failed.
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Authentication	
Username	<input type="text" value="john"/>
Password	<input type="password" value="*****"/>
Sending Interval	<input type="text" value="0"/> (seconds)

Note:

1. Only one mail can be sent during the "Sending Interval" time.
2. If the "Sending Interval" was set to 0, there will be no limitation.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Profile Name	Type a name for such mail service profile. The maximum length of the name you can set is 31 characters.
SMTP Server	Type the IP address of the mail server.
SMTP Port	Type the port number for SMTP server.
Sender Address	Type the e-mail address of the sender.
Use SSL	Check this box to use port 465 for SMTP server for some e-mail server uses https as the transmission method.
Authentication	<p>The mail server must be authenticated with the correct username and password to have the right of sending message out. Check the box to enable the function.</p> <p>Username - Type a name for authentication. The maximum length of the name you can set is 31 characters.</p> <p>Password - Type a password for authentication. The maximum length of the password you can set is 31 characters.</p>
Sending Interval	Define the interval for the system to send the SMS out.

3. After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

VII-1-11 Notification Object

This page allows you to set ten profiles which will be applied in **Application>>SMS/Mail Alert Service**.

You can set an object with different monitoring situation.

Objects Setting >> Notification Object

Set to Factory Default		
Index	Profile Name	Settings
1.		
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		
6.		
7.		
8.		

To set a new profile, please do the steps listed below:

1. Open **Object Setting>>Notification Object**, and click the number (e.g., #1) under Index column for configuration in details.
2. The configuration page will be shown as follows:

Objects Setting >> Notification Object

Profile Index: 1

Profile Name	<input type="text" value="Notify_attack"/>	
Category	Status	
WAN	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Disconnected	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Reconnected
VPN Tunnel	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Disconnected	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Reconnected
Temperature Alert	<input type="checkbox"/> Out of Range	
WAN Budget	<input type="checkbox"/> Limit Reached	

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Profile Name	Type a name for such notification profile. The maximum length of the name you can set is 15 characters.
Category	Display the types that will be monitored.
Status	Display the status for the category. You can check the box you want to be monitored.

3. After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

VII-1-12 String Object

This page allows you to set several profiles of string object.

Objects Setting >> String Object

10 ▼ strings per page | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Index	String	Clear
1		<input type="checkbox"/>
2	portal.draytek.com	<input type="checkbox"/>

Add

Click Add to open the following dialog.

String

Game of gambling is not allowed.

OK Cancel

Type the string you want and click OK. A new profile (e.g., index #1) with the defined string will be shown on the web page.

Objects Setting >> String Object

10 ▼ strings per page | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Index	String	Clear
1		<input type="checkbox"/>
2	portal.draytek.com	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	Game of gambling is not allowed.	<input type="checkbox"/>

Add

In general, there is no limit in the number of string profiles created. Each page can display 10, 20, 30, 40 or 50 profiles.

Application Notes

A-1 How to Send a Notification to Specified Phone Number via SMS Service in WAN Disconnection

Follow the steps listed below:

1. Log into the web user interface of Vigor router.
2. Configure relational objects first. Open **Object Settings>>SMS/Mail Server Object** to get the following page.

Objects Setting >> SMS / Mail Service Object

SMS Provider	Mail Server	Set to Factory Default
Index	Profile Name	SMS Provider
1.		
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		
6.		
7.		
8.		
9.	Custom 1	
10.	Custom 2	

Index 1 to Index 8 allows you to choose the built-in SMS service provider. If the SMS service provider is not on the list, you can configure Index 9 and Index 10 to add the new service provider to Vigor router.

3. Choose any index number (e.g., Index 1 in this case) to configure the SMS Provider setting. In the following page, type the username and password and set the quota that the router can send the message out.

Objects Setting >> SMS / Mail Service Object

Profile Index: 1

Profile Name	<input type="text" value="Local number"/>
Service Provider	<input type="text" value="kotsms.com.tw (TW)"/>
Username	<input type="text" value="abc5026"/>
Password	<input type="password" value="....."/>
Quota	<input type="text" value="10"/>
Sending Interval	<input type="text" value="3"/> (seconds)

Note:

1. Only one message can be sent during the "Sending Interval" time.
2. If the "Sending Interval" was set to 0, there will be no limitation.

- After finished the settings, click OK to return to previous page. Now you have finished the configuration of the SMS Provider profile setting.

Objects Setting >> SMS / Mail Service Object

SMS Provider		Mail Server	Set to Factory Default
Index	Profile Name	SMS Provider	
1.	Local number	kotsms.com.tw (TW)	
2.			
3.			
4.			
5.			
6.			
7.			
8.			
9.	Custom 1		
10.	Custom 2		

- Open Object Settings>>Notification Object to configure the event conditions of the notification.

Objects Setting >> SMS / Mail Service Object

Objects Setting >> Notification Object

		Set to Factory Default
Index	Profile Name	Settings
1.		
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		
6.		
7.		
8.		

- Choose any index number (e.g., Index 1 in this case) to configure conditions for sending the SMS. In the following page, type the name of the profile and check the Disconnected and Reconnected boxes for WAN to work in concert with the topic of this paper.

Objects Setting >> Notification Object

Profile Index: 1

Profile Name		WAN_Notify	
Category	Status		
WAN	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Disconnected	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Reconnected	
VPN Tunnel	<input type="checkbox"/> Disconnected	<input type="checkbox"/> Reconnected	
Temperature Alert	<input type="checkbox"/> Out of Range		
WAN Budget	<input type="checkbox"/> Limit Reached		

- After finished the settings, click **OK** to return to previous page. You have finished the configuration of the notification object profile setting.

Objects Setting >> Notification Object

| [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Index	Profile Name	Settings
1.	WAN_Notify	WAN
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		
6.		
7.		
8.		

- Now, open **Application >> SMS / Mail Alert Service**. Use the drop down list to choose SMS Provider and the Notify Profile (specify the time of sending SMS). Then, type the phone number in the field of Recipient (the one who will receive the SMS).

Applications >> SMS / Mail Alert Service

| [Set to Factory Default](#) |

SMS Alert		Mail Alert				
Index	Enable	SMS Provider	Recipient Number	Notify Profile	Schedule(1-15)	
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1 - Local number ▾	0912345678	1 - WAN_Notify ▾	None ▾	None ▾
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 - Local number ▾		1 - WAN_Notify ▾	None ▾	None ▾
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 - Local number ▾		1 - WAN_Notify ▾	None ▾	None ▾

- Click **OK** to save the settings. Later, if one of the WAN connections fails in your router, the system will send out SMS to the phone number specified. If the router has only one WAN interface, the system will send out SMS to the phone number while reconnecting the WAN interface successfully.

Remark: How the customize the SMS Provider

Choose one of the Index numbers (9 or 10) allowing you to customize the SMS Provider. In the web page, type the URL string of the SMS provider and type the username and password. After clicking OK, the new added SMS provider will be added and will be available for you to specify for sending SMS out.

Objects Setting >> SMS / Mail Service Object

Profile Index: 9

Profile Name	<input type="text" value="Custom 1"/>
Service Provider	<input type="text" value="clickatell"/>
Max: 255 characters	
<div style="border: 1px solid black; height: 40px;"></div>	
Please contact with your SMS provide to get the exact URL String eg: bulksms.vsms.net:5567/eapi/submission/send_sms/2/2.0?username=###txtUser###&password=###txtPwd###&msisdn=###txtDest###&message=###txtMsg###	
Username	<input type="text" value="ilan123"/>
Password	<input type="password" value="*****"/>
Quota	<input type="text" value="6"/>
Sending Interval	<input type="text" value="3"/> (seconds)

Note:

1. Only one message can be sent during the "Sending Interval" time.
2. If the "Sending Interval" was set to 0, there will be no limitation.

VII-2 USB Application

USB device connected on Vigor router can be regarded as a server or WAN interface. By way of Vigor router, clients on LAN can access, write and read data stored in USB storage disk with different applications. After setting the configuration in **USB Application**, you can type the IP address of the Vigor router and username/password created in **USB Application>>USB User Management** on the client software. Then, the client can use the FTP site (USB storage disk) or share the SMB service through Vigor router.



Info

USB ports on Vigor router are allowed to connect to USB modem. Models of the modems supported by Vigor router can be seen from **USB Application>>Modem Support List**. For network connection via USB modem, refer to **WAN>>Internet Access** and **WAN>>General Setup** for detailed information.

Web User Interface



VII-2-1 USB General Settings

This page will determine the number of concurrent FTP connection, default charset for FTP server and enable SMB service. At present, the Vigor router can support USB storage disk with formats of FAT16 and FAT32 only. Therefore, before connecting the USB storage disk into the Vigor router, please make sure the memory format for the USB storage disk is FAT16 or FAT32. It is recommended for you to use FAT32 for viewing the filename completely (FAT16 cannot support long filename).

USB Application >> USB General Settings

USB General Settings

General Settings	
Simultaneous FTP Connections	<input type="text" value="5"/> (Maximum 6)
Default Charset	<input type="text" value="English"/>
SMB File Sharing Service (Network Neighborhood)	
<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable	
Access Mode	
<input checked="" type="radio"/> LAN Only <input type="radio"/> LAN And WAN	
NetBios Name Service	
Workgroup Name	<input type="text" value="WORKGROUP"/>
Host Name	<input type="text" value="Vigor"/>
Printer Server	
<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable	

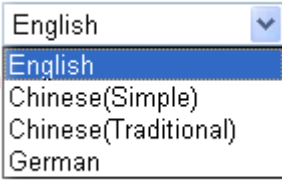
Note:

1. If character set is set to "English", only English long file name is supported.
2. Multi-session FTP download will be banned by Router FTP server. If your FTP client has a multi-connection mechanism, such as FileZilla, you should limit client connections to 1 to improve performance.
3. A workgroup name must be different from the host name. The workgroup name can have up to 15 characters and the host name can have up to 15 characters. Names cannot contain any of the following: . ; : " < > * + = / | ?.

OK

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
General Settings	Simultaneous FTP Connections - This field is used to specify the quantity of the FTP sessions. The router allows up to 6 FTP sessions connecting to USB storage disk at one time. Default Charset - At present, Vigor router supports four types of character sets. Default Charset is for English based file name.

	
SMB File Sharing Service	Click Enable to invoke SMB file sharing service via the router.
Access Mode	<p>LAN Only - Users coming from internet cannot connect to the SMB server of the router.</p> <p>LAN And WAN - Both LAN and WAN users can access SMB server of the router.</p>
NetBios Name Service	<p>For the NetBios service of USB storage disk, you have to specify a workgroup name and a host name. A workgroup name must not be the same as the host name. The workgroup name can have as many as 15 characters and the host name can have as many as 23 characters. Both them cannot contain any of the following-- ; : " < > * + = \ ?.</p> <p>Workgroup Name - Type a name for the workgroup.</p> <p>Host Name - Type the host name for the router.</p>
Printer Server	Enable - Click it to make Vigor router act as a printer server (with USB printer attached).

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

VII-2-2 USB User Management


This page allows you to set profiles for FTP/SMB users. Any user who wants to access into the USB storage disk must type the same username and password configured in this page. Before adding or modifying settings in this page, please insert a USB storage disk first. Otherwise, an error message will appear to warn you.

[USB Application >> USB User Management](#)

USB User Management			Set to Factory Default		
Index	Username	Home Folder	Index	Username	Home Folder
1.			9.		
2.			10.		
3.			11.		
4.			12.		
5.			13.		
6.			14.		
7.			15.		
8.			16.		

Click index number to access into configuration page.


Profile Index: 1

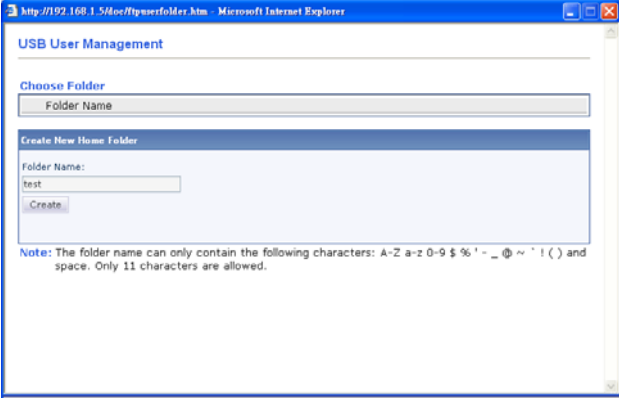
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	
Username	<input type="text" value="Max: 11 characters"/>
Password	<input type="text" value="Max: 11 characters"/>
Confirm Password	<input type="text"/>
Home Folder	<input type="text"/> 
Access Rule	
File	<input type="checkbox"/> Read <input type="checkbox"/> Write <input type="checkbox"/> Delete
Directory	<input type="checkbox"/> List <input type="checkbox"/> Create <input type="checkbox"/> Remove

Note:

The folder name can only contain the following characters: A-Z a-z 0-9 \$ % ' - _ @ ~ ` ! () and space.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Check it to activate this profile (account) for FTP service or SMB file sharing service. Later, the user can use the username specified in this page to login into FTP server.
Username	Type the username for FTP/SMB users for accessing into FTP server (USB storage disk). Be aware that users cannot access into USB storage disk in anonymity. Later, you can open FTP client software and type the username specified here for accessing into USB storage disk. The length of the name is limited to 11 characters. Note: "Admin" could not be typed here as username, for the word is specified for accessing into web pages of Vigor router only. Also, it is reserved for FTP firmware upgrade usage. Note: FTP Passive mode is not supported by Vigor Router. Please disable the mode on the FTP client.
Password	Type the password for FTP/SMB users for accessing FTP server. Later, you can open FTP client software and type the password specified here for accessing into USB storage disk. The length of the password is limited to 11 characters.
Confirm Password	Type the password again to make confirmation.
Home Folder	It determines the folder for the client to access into. The user can enter a directory name in this field. Then, after clicking OK, the router will create the specific/new folder in the USB storage disk. In addition, if the user types "/" here, he/she can access into all of the disk folders and files in USB storage disk. Note: When write protect status for the USB storage disk is ON, you cannot type any new folder name in this field. Only "/" can be used in such case. You can click  to open the following dialog to add any new folder which can be specified as the Home Folder.

	
Access Rule	<p>It determines the authority for such profile. Any user, who uses such profile for accessing into USB storage disk, must follow the rule specified here.</p> <p>File - Check the items (Read, Write and Delete) for such profile.</p> <p>Directory -Check the items (List, Create and Remove) for such profile.</p>

Before you click OK, you have to insert a USB storage disk into the USB interface of the Vigor router. Otherwise, you cannot save the configuration.

VII-2-3 File Explorer

File Explorer offers an easy way for users to view and manage the content of USB storage disk connected on Vigor router.

USB Application >> File Explorer

[Refresh](#)




↶ ↷ 📁 | Current Path: /

Name	Size	Delete	Rename
<div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 5px;"> 📁 Upload File </div> Select a file: <input type="button" value="選擇檔案"/> 未選擇任何檔案 <input type="button" value="Upload"/>			

Note:

1. File Explorer cannot be used, if USB disk is disconnected.
2. Only folders with up to 1 level of nested folders can be deleted.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
 Refresh	Click this icon to refresh files list.
 Back	Click this icon to return to the upper directory.
 Create	Click this icon to add a new folder.

Current Path	Display current folder.
Upload	Click this button to upload the selected file to the USB storage disk. The uploaded file in the USB diskette can be shared for other user through FTP.

VII-2-4 USB Device Status

This page is to monitor the status for USB device connecting to Vigor router. In addition, the status of the USB modem or USB printer or USB sensor connecting to Vigor router can be checked from such page. If you want to remove the storage disk from USB port in router, please click **Disconnect USB Disk** first. And then, remove the USB device later.

USB Application >> USB Device Status

Disk	Modem	Printer	Sensor	Refresh
USB Mass Storage Device Status				
Connection Status: No Disk Connected				<input type="button" value="Disconnect USB Disk"/>
Disk Capacity: 0 MB				
Free Capacity: 0 MB Refresh				
USB Disk Users Connected				
Index	Service	IP Address(Port)	Username	

Note:

1. Only support FAT16 and FAT32 format, FAT32 is recommended.
2. Only support to mount single partition, maximum capacity is 500GB. If there are more than one partition, only one of them will be mounted.
3. Single file size can be up to 4GB, which is the limitation of FAT32 format.
4. If the write protect switch of USB disk is turned on, the USB disk is in **READ-ONLY** mode. No data can be written to it.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Connection Status	If there is no USB device connected to Vigor router, "No Disk Connected" will be shown here.
Disk Capacity	It displays the total capacity of the USB storage disk.
Free Capacity	It displays the free space of the USB storage disk. Click Refresh at any time to get new status for free capacity.
Index	It displays the number of the client which connects to FTP server.
IP Address	It displays the IP address of the user's host which connects to the FTP server.
Username	It displays the username that user uses to login to the FTP server.

When you insert USB device into the Vigor router, the system will start to find out such device within several seconds.

VII-2-5 Temperature Sensor

A USB Thermometer is now available. It complements your installed DrayTek router installations which will help you monitor the server or data communications room environment and notify you if the server room or data communications room is overheating.



During summer in particular, it is important to ensure that your server or data communications equipment are not overheating due to cooling system failures.

The inclusion of a USB thermometer in compatible Vigor routers will continuously monitor the temperature of its environment. When a pre-determined threshold is reached you will be alerted by either an email or SMS so you can undertake appropriate action.

For a list of supported USB thermometers, visit our website at <https://www.draytek.com/en/products/usb-thermometer/> or contact your local DrayTek partner.

Temperature Sensor Settings

USB Application >> Temperature Sensor Setting

Temperature Chart	Temperature Sensor Settings
Display Settings	
Temperature Calibration	<input type="text" value="0.00"/>
Temperature Unit	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Celsius <input type="radio"/> Fahrenheit
Alarm Settings	
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable Syslog Alarm	
Upper temperature limit	<input type="text" value="30.00"/>
Lower temperature limit	<input type="text" value="18.00"/>

Available settings are explained as follows:

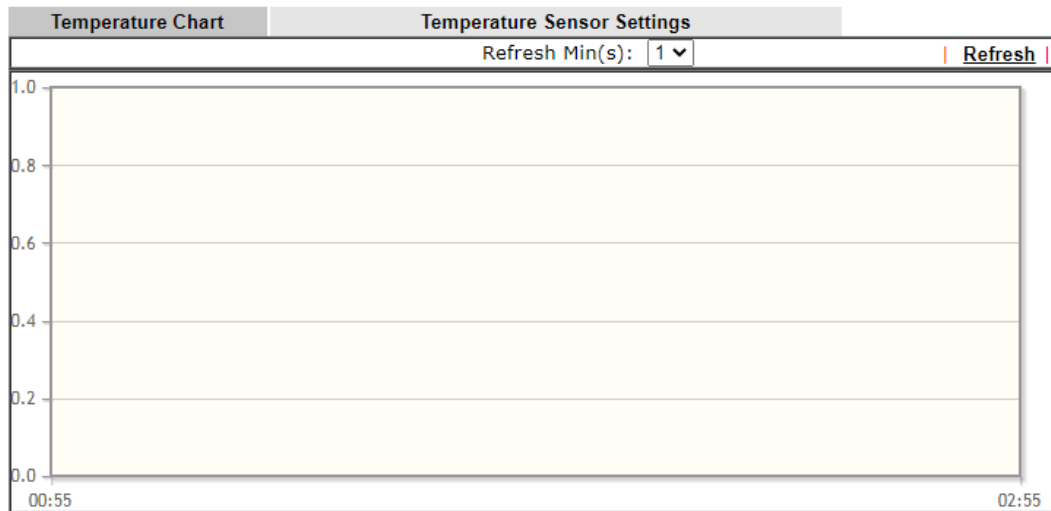
Item	Description
Display Settings	Temperature Calibration - Type a value used for correcting the temperature error. Temperature Unit - Choose the display unit of the temperature. There are two types for you to choose.
Alarm Settings	Enable Syslog Alarm - The temperature log will be recorded on Syslog if it is enabled. Upper temperature limit/Lower temperature limit - Type

	the upper limit and lower limit for the system to send out temperature alert.
--	---

Temperature Chart

Below shows an example of temperature graph:

USB Application >> Temperature Sensor Graph



Manufacturer:
Product:
Current Temperature:
Average Temperature:
Maximum Temperature:
Minimum Temperature:

VII-2-6 Modem Support List

Such page provides the information about the brand name and model name of the USB modems which are supported by Vigor router.

USB Application >> Modem Support List

The following compatibility test lists 3.5G/LTE modems **supported by Vigor router under certain environment or countries**. If the LTE modem you have is on the list but cannot work properly, please write an e-mail to support@draytek.com or consult your dealer for further information.

Brand	Model	LTE	Access Mode	Status
Aiko	Aiko 83D		PPP	Y
Alcatel	Alcatel L100V	✔	DHCP	Y
	Alcatel L100V	✔	PPP	Y
	Alcatel L800	✔	DHCP	Y
	Alcatel W100	✔	DHCP	Y
	Alcatel W100	✔	PPP	Y
	Alcatel W800	✔	DHCP	M
	Alcatel Y855	✔	DHCP	Y
BandRich	Bandlux C170		PPP	Y
	Bandlux C270		PPP	Y
	Bandlux C321		PPP	Y
	Bandlux C330		PPP	Y
	Bandlux C331		PPP	Y
	Bandlux C502		PPP	Y

VII-2-7 SMB Client Support List

SMB Client Support List provides the test status information for applications with file sharing operated under different platforms.

[USB Application >> SMB Client Support List](#)



The following compatibility test lists suggested SMB clients supported by Vigor router.

Platform	Application	Status
Microsoft® Windows® XP	Built in	I
Microsoft® Windows Vista™	Built in	Y
Microsoft® Windows® 7	Built in	Y
Microsoft® Windows® 8	Built in	M
Microsoft® Windows® 10	Built in	Y
OS X® 10.7.5	Built in	Y
OS X® 10.10	Built in	Y
Ubuntu 14.04	Built in	Y
Android™	AndSMB	Y
Android™	ES File Explorer	Y
Android™	File Expert	Y
Android™	File Manager	Y
Android™	Solid Explorer	Y
Android™	SharesFinder	Y
iOS	eXPlayer	Y
iOS	nPlayer	Y

Y: Tested and is supported.

I: Supported but has some issue.

M: Has not been tested but might be supported.

Application Notes

A-1 How can I get the files from USB storage device connecting to Vigor router?

Files on USB storage device can be reviewed by opening **USB Application**>>**File Explorer**. If it is necessary for you to delete, copy files on the device or write, paste files to the device, it must be done through SMB server or FTP server.

SMB service is based on the original USB FTP service. You will need to setup USB FTP first. We would like to give brief instructions on USB FTP setup here.

1. Plug the USB device to the USB port on the router. Open **USB Application**>>**USB Device Status**. Make sure **Disk Connected** appears on the **Connection Status** as the figure shown below:

USB Application >> USB Device Status

Disk	Modem	Printer	Refresh
USB Mass Storage Device Status			
Connection Status:	Disk Connected	Disconnect USB Disk	
Write Protect Status:	No		
Disk Capacity:	2009 MB		
Free Capacity:	925 MB	Refresh	
USB Disk Users Connected			
Index	Service	IP Address(Port)	Username

Note: If the write protect switch of USB disk is turned on, the USB disk is in **READ-ONLY** mode. No data can be written to it.

2. Then, please open **USB Application** >> **USB General Settings** to enable SMB service.

USB Application >> USB General Settings

USB General Settings	
General Settings	
Simultaneous FTP Connections	5 (Maximum 6)
Default Charset	English
SMB File Sharing Service (Network Neighborhood)	
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable	<input type="radio"/> Disable
Access Mode	
<input checked="" type="radio"/> LAN Only	<input type="radio"/> LAN And WAN
NetBios Name Service	
Workgroup Name	WORKGROUP
Host Name	Vigor
Printer Server	
<input type="radio"/> Enable	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable

Note:

1. If character set is set to "English", only English long file name is supported.
2. Multi-session FTP download will be banned by Router FTP server. If your FTP client has a multi-connection mechanism, such as FileZilla, you should limit client connections to 1 to improve performance.
3. A workgroup name must be different from the host name. The workgroup name can have up to 15 characters and the host name can have up to 15 characters. Names cannot contain any of the following: . ; : " < > * + = / | ?.

OK

3. Setup a user account for the FTP service by using **USB Application >>USB User Management**. Click index #1 link, and click **Enable**. Here we add a new account "user1" and assign authorities "Read", "Write" and "List" to it.

USB Application >> USB User Management

Profile Index: 1

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	
Username	<input type="text" value="user1"/>
Password	<input type="password" value="....."/>
Confirm Password	<input type="password" value="....."/>
Home Folder	<input type="text"/>
Access Rule	
File	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Read <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Write <input type="checkbox"/> Delete
Directory	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> List <input type="checkbox"/> Create <input type="checkbox"/> Remove

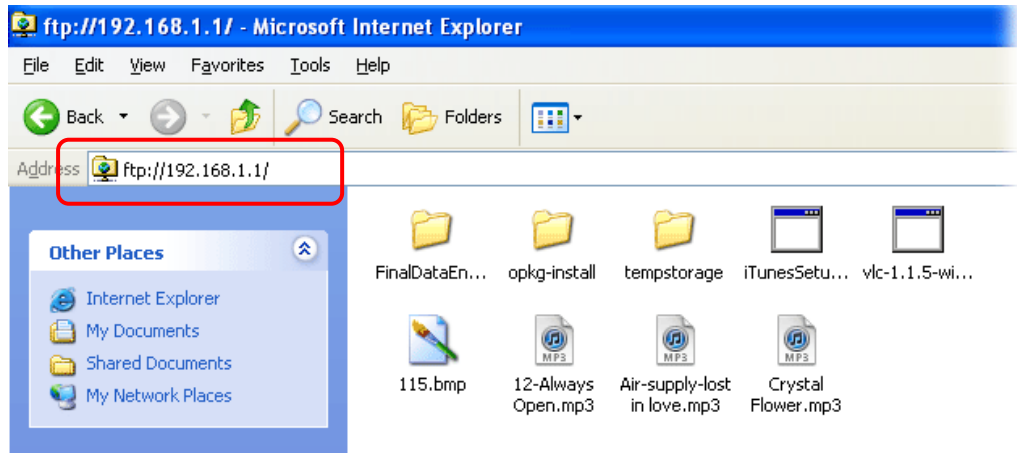
Note:

The folder name can only contain the following characters: A-Z a-z 0-9 \$ % ' - _ @ ~ ` ! () and space.

4. Click OK to save the configuration.
5. Make sure the FTP service is running properly. Please open a browser and type *ftp://192.168.1.1*. Use the account "user1" to login.

The 'Log On As' dialog box shows the FTP server address as 192.168.1.1. The 'User name' dropdown menu is set to 'user1'. The 'Password' field is empty. The 'Log on anonymously' checkbox is unchecked, and the 'Save password' checkbox is checked. The 'Log On' button is highlighted with a red box.

6. When the following screen appears, it means the FTP service is running properly.



7. Return to **USB Application >> USB Disk Status**. The information for FTP server will be shown as below.

USB Application >> USB Device Status

Disk	Modem	Printer	Sensor
Refresh			
USB Mass Storage Device Status			
Connection Status: Disk Connected			<input type="button" value="Disconnect USB Disk"/>
Write Protect Status: No			
Disk Capacity: 2009 MB			
USB Disk Users Connected			
Index	Service	IP Address(Port)	Username
1.	FTP	192.168.1.1(1963)	user1 <input type="button" value="Drop"/>

Now, users in LAN of Vigor2832 can access into the USB storage device by typing ftp://192.168.1.1 on any browser. They can add or remove files / directories, depending on the Access Rule for FTP account settings in USB Application >>USB User Management.

Part VIII Troubleshooting



Troubleshooting

This part will guide you to solve abnormal situations if you cannot access into the Internet after installing the router and finishing the web configuration

VIII-1 Diagnostics

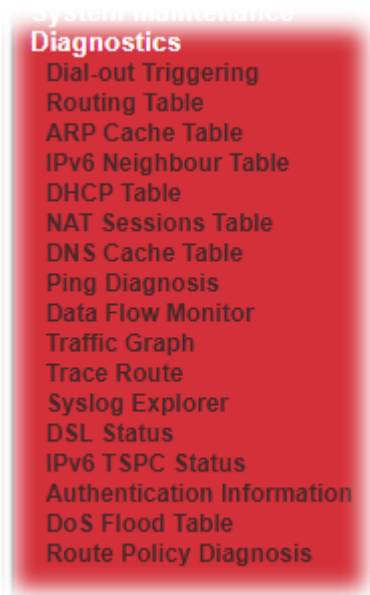
This section will guide you to solve abnormal situations if you cannot access into the Internet after installing the router and finishing the web configuration. Please follow sections below to check your basic installation status stage by stage.

- Checking if the hardware status is OK or not.
- Checking if the network connection settings on your computer are OK or not.
- Pinging the router from your computer.
- Checking if the ISP settings are OK or not.
- Backing to factory default setting if necessary.

If all above stages are done and the router still cannot run normally, it is the time for you to contact your dealer or DrayTek technical support for advanced help.

Web User Interface

First, take a look at the menu items under Diagnostics. Diagnostic Tools provide a useful way to view or diagnose the status of your Vigor router.



VIII-1-1 Dial-out Triggering

Click Diagnostics and click Dial-out Triggering to open the web page. The internet connection (e.g., PPPoE) is triggered by a package sending from the source IP address.

Diagnostics >> Dial-out Triggering

[Refresh](#)

Dial-out Triggered Packet Header

HEX Format:
00 00 00 00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00 00 00-00 00

00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00

Decoded Format:
0.0.0.0 -> 0.0.0.0
Pr 0 len 0 (0)

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Decoded Format	It shows the source IP address (local), destination IP (remote) address, the protocol and length of the package.
Refresh	Click it to reload the page.

VIII-1-2 Routing Table

Click **Diagnostics** and click **Routing Table** to open the web page.

Diagnostics >> View Routing Table

IPv4

| [Refresh](#) |

Key	Destination	Gateway	Interface
C~	192.168.1.0/ 255.255.255.0	directly connected	LAN1

Key

C: Connected S: Static R: RIP *: default ~: private

Note:

WAN5, WAN6, WAN7 are router-borne WANs.

IPv6

| [Refresh](#) |

Destination	Interface	Flags	Metric	Next Hop
FE80::/64	LAN1	U	256	::
FF00::/8	LAN1	U	256	::

Show Detail

Flag

U: Route UP F: Default Route G: Use Next Hop S: Static Route R: RIPng

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Refresh	Click it to reload the page.

VIII-1-3 ARP Cache Table

Click **Diagnostics** and click **ARP Cache Table** to view the content of the ARP (Address Resolution Protocol) cache held in the router. The table shows a mapping between an Ethernet hardware address (MAC Address) and an IP address.

Diagnostics >> View ARP Cache Table

LAN**WAN**

Show: ALL LANs and ALL VLANs

Ethernet ARP Cache Table | [Clear](#) | [Refresh](#) |

IP Address	MAC Address	HOST ID	Interface	VLAN	Port
192.168.1.10	60-A4-4C-E6-5A-4F		LAN1	---	P2

Show Comment

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Refresh	Click it to reload the page.

VIII-1-4 IPv6 Neighbour Table

The table shows a mapping between an Ethernet hardware address (MAC Address) and an IPv6 address. This information is helpful in diagnosing network problems, such as IP address conflicts, etc.

Click **Diagnostics** and click **IPv6 Neighbour Table** to open the web page.

Diagnostics >> View IPv6 Neighbour Table

IPv6 Neighbour Table			Refresh
IPv6 Address	Mac Address	Interface	State
FE80::4231:D426:7821:6126	00-1d-aa-15-b0-c8	LAN1	STALE

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Refresh	Click it to reload the page.

VIII-1-5 DHCP Table

The facility provides information on IP address assignments. This information is helpful in diagnosing network problems, such as IP address conflicts, etc.

Click **Diagnostics** and click **DHCP Table** to open the web page.

[Diagnostics >> View DHCP Assigned IP Addresses](#)

IPv4 Address Assignment Table

Show :

DHCP IP Assignment Table		Other IP Assignment Table		<input type="checkbox"/> Show Comment	Refresh
Index	IP Address	MAC Address	Leased Time	HOST ID	

[LAN1	: DHCP Server Off				

IPv6 Address Assignment Table

[Refresh](#)

Index	IPv6 Address	IAID	Link-layer Address	Leased Time	

and

Diagnostics >> View DHCP Assigned IP Addresses

IPv4 Address Assignment Table

Show : ▾

DHCP IP Assignment Table

Other IP Assignment Table

Show Comment | [Refresh](#) |

Index	IP Address	MAC Address	Type
[LAN1	: 192.168.1.80/255.255.255.0]		

IPv6 Address Assignment Table

| [Refresh](#) |

Index	IPv6 Address	IAID	Link-layer Address	Leased Time
-------	--------------	------	--------------------	-------------

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Index	It displays the connection item number.
IP Address	It displays the IP address assigned by this router for specified PC.
MAC Address	It displays the MAC address for the specified PC that DHCP assigned IP address for it.
Leased Time	It displays the leased time of the specified PC.
HOST ID	It displays the host ID name of the specified PC.
Refresh	Click it to reload the page.

VIII-1-6 NAT Sessions Table

Click **Diagnostics** and click **NAT Sessions Table** to open the list page.

Diagnostics >> NAT Sessions Table

NAT Active Sessions Table (Limit: 128 entries) | [Refresh](#) |

Private IP :Port	#Pseudo Port	Peer IP :Port	Interface
------------------	--------------	---------------	-----------

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Private IP:Port	It indicates the source IP address and port of local PC.
#Pseudo Port	It indicates the temporary port of the router used for NAT.
Peer IP:Port	It indicates the destination IP address and port of remote host.
Interface	It displays the representing number for different interface.
Refresh	Click it to reload the page.

VIII-1-7 DNS Cache Table

Click **Diagnostics** and click **DNS Cache Table** to open the web page.

The record of domain Name and the mapping IP address for answering the DNS query from LAN will be stored on Vigor router's Cache temporarily and displayed on **Diagnostics >> DNS Cache Table**.

Diagnostics >> DNS Cache Table

IPv4 DNS Cache Table

| [Clear](#) | [Refresh](#) |

Domain Name	IP Address	TTL(s)
-------------	------------	--------

IPv6 DNS Cache Table

| [Clear](#) | [Refresh](#) |

Domain Name	IP Address	TTL(s)
-------------	------------	--------

Note:

The LAN DNS entry's TTL is static.

When an entry's TTL is larger than s, this entry will be deleted from the table.

OK

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Clear	Click this link to remove the result on the window.
Refresh	Click it to reload the page.
When an entry's TTL is larger than....	Check the box the type the value of TTL (time to live) for each entry. Click OK to enable such function. It means when the TTL value of each DNS query reaches the threshold of the value specified here, the corresponding

record will be deleted from router's Cache automatically.

VIII-1-8 Ping Diagnosis

Click Diagnostics and click Ping Diagnosis to open the web page.

Diagnostics >> Ping Diagnosis

Ping Diagnosis

IPV4 IPV6

Ping through: Source IP:

Ping to: IP Address:

Result | [Clear](#) |

Note:

1. If you want to ping a LAN PC or you don't want to specify which WAN to ping through, please select "Auto" in Ping Through.
2. If you select "Auto" in Source IP, we will fill Source IP according to the interface you ping through.

or

Diagnostics >> Ping Diagnosis

Ping Diagnosis

IPV4 IPV6

Ping through:

Ping IPv6 Address:

Result | [Clear](#) |

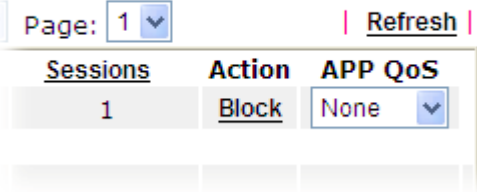

Note:

1. If you want to ping a LAN PC or you don't want to specify which WAN to ping through, please select "Auto" in Ping Through.
2. If you select "Auto" in Source IP, we will fill Source IP according to the interface you ping through.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
IPV4 /IPV6	Choose the interface for such function.
Ping through	Use the drop down list to choose the WAN interface that you want to ping through or choose Unspecified to be determined by the router automatically.

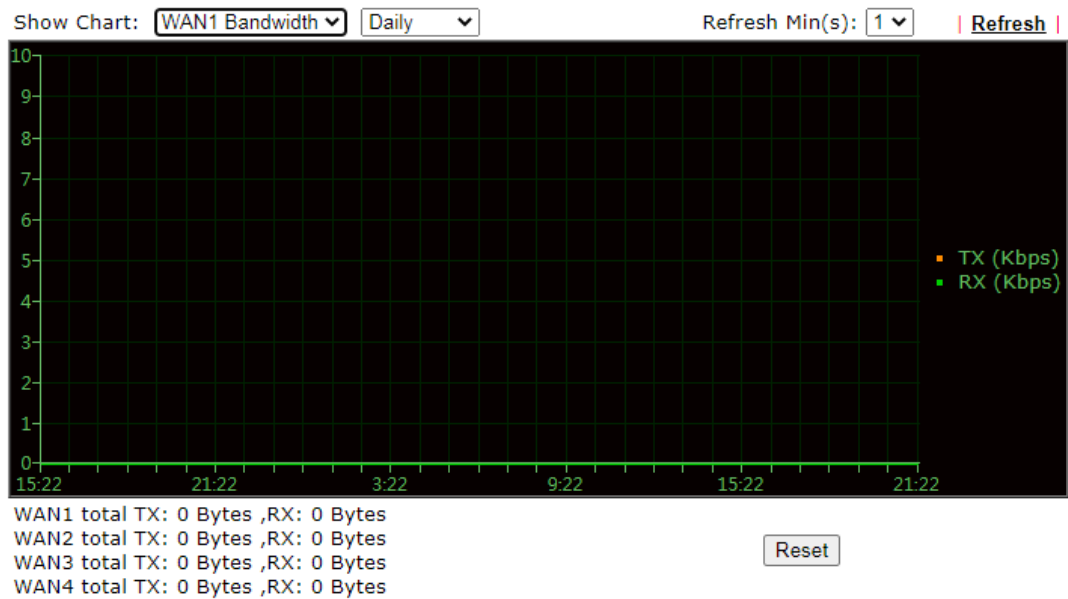
Ping to	Use the drop down list to choose the destination that you want to ping.
IP Address	Type the IP address of the Host/IP that you want to ping.
Ping IPv6 Address	Type the IPv6 address that you want to ping.
Run	Click this button to start the ping work. The result will be displayed on the screen.
Clear	Click this link to remove the result on the window.

	automatically.
Refresh	Click this link to refresh this page manually.
Index	Display the number of the data flow.
IP Address	Display the IP address of the monitored device.
TX rate (kbps)	Display the transmission speed of the monitored device.
RX rate (kbps)	Display the receiving speed of the monitored device.
Sessions	Display the session number that you specified in Limit Session web page.
Action	<p>Block - can prevent specified PC accessing into Internet within 5 minutes.</p>  <p>Unblock -The device with the IP address will be blocked for five minutes. The remaining time will be shown on the session column. Click it to cancel the IP address blocking.</p> 
Current /Peak/Speed	<p>Current means current transmission rate and receiving rate for WAN interface.</p> <p>Peak means the highest peak value detected by the router in data transmission.</p> <p>Speed means line speed specified in WAN>>General Setup. If you do not specify any rate at that page, here will display Auto for instead.</p>

VIII-1-10 Traffic Graph

Click **Diagnostics** and click **Traffic Graph** to open the web page. Choose WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4 Bandwidth, Sessions, daily or weekly for viewing different traffic graph. Click **Reset** to zero the accumulated RX/TX (received and transmitted) data of WAN. Click **Refresh** to renew the graph at any time.

Diagnostics >> Traffic Graph



The horizontal axis represents time. Yet the vertical axis has different meanings. For WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4 Bandwidth chart, the numbers displayed on vertical axis represent the numbers of the transmitted and received packets in the past.

For Sessions chart, the numbers displayed on vertical axis represent the numbers of the NAT sessions during the past.

VIII-1-11 Trace Route

Click **Diagnostics** and click **Trace Route** to open the web page. This page allows you to trace the routes from router to the host. Simply type the IP address of the host in the box and click **Run**. The result of route trace will be shown on the screen.

Diagnostics >> Trace Route

Trace Route

IPV4 IPV6

Trace through: ▾

Protocol: ▾

Host / IP Address:

Result | [Clear](#) |

or

Diagnostics >> Trace Route

Trace Route

IPV4 IPV6

Trace Host / IP Address:

Result | [Clear](#) |

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
IPv4 / IPv6	Click one of them to display corresponding information for it.
Trace through	Use the drop down list to choose the interface that you want to ping through.
Protocol	Use the drop down list to choose the protocol that you want

	to ping through.
Host/IP Address	It indicates the IP address of the host.
Trace Host/IP Address	It indicates the IPv6 address of the host.
Run	Click this button to start route tracing work.
Clear	Click this link to remove the result on the window.

VIII-1-12 Syslog Explorer

Such page provides real-time syslog and displays the information on the screen.

For Web Syslog

This page displays the time and message for User/Firewall/call/WAN/VPN settings. You can check **Enable Web Syslog**, specify the type of Syslog and choose the display mode you want. Later, the event of Syslog with specified type will be shown for your reference.

Diagnostics >> Syslog Explorer

Web Syslog	USB Syslog
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable Web Syslog Export Refresh Clear 	
Syslog Type All ▼ Display Mode Stop record when fulls ▼	
Time	Message

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable Web Syslog	Check this box to enable the function of Web Syslog.
Syslog Type	Use the drop down list to specify a type of Syslog to be displayed.
Export	Click this link to save the data as a file.
Refresh	Click this link to refresh this page manually.
Clear	Click this link to clear information on this page.
Display Mode	There are two modes for you to choose. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; margin: 5px 0;"> Stop record when fulls ▼ Stop record when fulls Always record the new event </div> <p>Stop record when fulls - when the capacity of syslog is full, the system will stop recording.</p> <p>Always record the new event - only the newest events will be recorded by the system.</p>
Time	Display the time of the event occurred.
Message	Display the information for each event.

For USB Syslog

This page displays the syslog recorded on the USB storage disk.

Diagnostics >> Syslog Explorer

Web Syslog	USB Syslog	
Note:		
The syslog will show while the saved syslog file is full.		
File: n/a	Page: n/a	Log Type: n/a
Time	Log Type	Message

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Time	Display the time of the event occurred.
Log Type	Display the type of the record.
Message	Display the information for each event.

VIII-1-13 DSL Status

Such page is useful for RD debug or web technician.

Diagnostics >> DSL Status

General	Tone Information		Refresh	
ATU-R Information				
Type:	ADSL2/2+			
Hardware:	Annex A			
Firmware:	06-06-01-07-00-01			
Power Mngt Mode:	DSL_G997_PMS_NA			
Line State:	TRAINING			
Running Mode:				
Vendor ID:	fe004452 41590000			
ATU-C Information				
Vendor ID:	00000000 00000000 [-----]			
Line Statistics				
	Downstream		Upstream	
Actual Rate	0	Kbps	0	Kbps
Attainable Rate	0	Kbps	0	Kbps
Path Mode	Fast		Fast	
Interleave Depth	0		0	
Actual PSD	0.0	dB	0.0	dB

VIII-1-14 IPv6 TSPC Status

IPv6 TSPC status web page could help you to diagnose the connection status of TSPC.

If TSPC has configured properly, the router will display the following page when the user connects to tunnel broker successfully.

Diagnostics >> IPv6 TSPC Status

WAN1	WAN2	WAN3	WAN4	Refresh
TSPC Enabled				
TSPC Connection Status				
Local Endpoint v4 Address :		114.44.54.220		
Local Endpoint v6 Address :		2001:05c0:1400:000b:0000:0000:0000:10b9		
Router DNS name :		888866666.broker.freenet6.net		
Remote Endpoint v4 Address :		81.171.72.11		
Remote Endpoint v6 Address :		2001:05c0:1400:000b:0000:0000:0000:10b8		
Tspc Prefix :		2001:05c0:1502:0d00:0000:0000:0000:0000		
Tspc Prefixlen :		56		
Tunnel Broker :		amsterdam.freenet6.net		
Tunnel Status :		Connected		

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Refresh	Click this link to refresh this page manually.

VIII-1-15 Authentication Information

Authentication User List

Such page displays authentication jobs made by Internal RADIUS or Local 802.1X.

When the mouse cursor moves to the name link under User Name, the connection message (including authentication failed information) about internal RADIUS or local 802.1X service will be shown by a popped up dialog box.

Diagnostics >> Authentication Information

Authentication User List		Authentication Information Log	
User Name	Authentication Failure Times	User Name	Authentication Failure Times
Caca	0		

Note:

- 1.This is the authentication list for router's **Internal RADIUS** or Local 802.1X
- 2.For those clients are authenticated by external RADIUS server, please find the information from the server.

Authentication Information Log

This page will display the complete authentication log information.

Diagnostics >> Authentication Information

Authentication User List		Authentication Information Log	
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	Syslog Type <input type="text" value="Radius"/>	Display Mode	<input type="text" value="always record the new event"/>
Time		Message	

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Check the box to enable such function.
Refresh	Click it to update current page.
Clear	Click it to remove all of the records.
Syslog Type	Specify RADIUS, 802.1X or All to display related authentication information log.
Display Mode	Choose the mode you want to display the related information on the following table. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Stop record when fulls - when the capacity of CVM log is full, the system will stop recording. ● Always record the new event - only the newest events will be recorded by the system.
Time	Display the time the user authenticated by Vigor2832 series.
Message	Display authentication information done by Vigor2832 series.

VIII-1-16 DoS Flood Table

This page can display content of IP connection detected by DoS Flooding Defense mechanism. It is useful and convenient for network engineers (e.g., MIS engineer) to inspect the network environment to find out if there is any abnormal connection.

Information of IP traced and destination port used for SYN Flood, UDP Flood and ICMP Flood attacks will be detected and shown respectively on different pages.

Moreover, IP address detected and suspected to attack the network system can be blocked shortly by clicking the **Block** button shown on pages of SYN Flood, UDP Flood and ICMP Flood.

Diagnostics >> DoS Flood Table

IPv4

SYN Flood	UDP Flood	ICMP Flood	Refresh
Tracing IP		Destination Port	
.....			

IPv6

SYN Flood	UDP Flood	ICMP Flood	Refresh
Tracing IP		Destination Port	
.....			

Note:

You need to enable SYN/UDP/ICMP flood defense in [Firewall >> Defense Setup](#) to make this table effective.



Info

The icon - (⊗) - means there is something wrong (e.g., attacking the system) with that IP address.

VIII-1-17 Route Policy Diagnosis

With the analysis done by such page, possible path (static route, routing table or policy route) of the packets sent out of the router can be traced.

Diagnostics >> Route Policy Diagnosis

Test how the packets will be routed

- Mode Analyze a single packet
 Analyze multiple packets by uploading an input file

Packet Information

Protocol

Src IP

Dst IP

Dst Port

Analyze

or

Diagnostics >> Route Policy Diagnosis

Test how the packets will be routed

- Mode Analyze a single packet
 Analyze multiple packets by uploading an input file

Input File

未選擇任何檔案

([download](#) an example input file)

Analyze

Available settings are explained as follows:

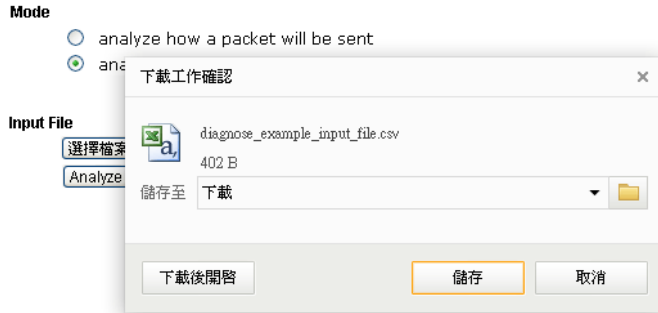
Item	Description
Mode	<p>Analyze a single packet - Choose such mode to make Vigor router analyze how a single packet will be sent by a route policy.</p> <p>Analyze multiple packets... - Choose such mode to make Vigor router analyze how multiple packets in a specified file will be sent by a route policy.</p>
Packet Information	<p>Specify the nature of the packets to be analyzed by Vigor router.</p> <p>ICMP/UDP/TCP/ANY- Specify a protocol for diagnosis.</p> <p>Src IP - Type an IP address as the source IP.</p> <p>Dst IP - Type an IP address as the destination IP.</p> <p>Dst Port - Use the drop down list to specify the destination port.</p> <p>Analyze - Click it to perform the job of analyzing. The</p>

analyzed result will be shown on the page..

Input File

It is available when Analyze multiple packets.. is selected as Mode.

Select - Click the download link to get a blank example file. Then, click such button to select that blank “.csv” file for saving the result of analysis.



Analyze - Click it to perform the job of analyzing. The analyzed result will be shown on the page. If required, click export analysis to export the result as a file.

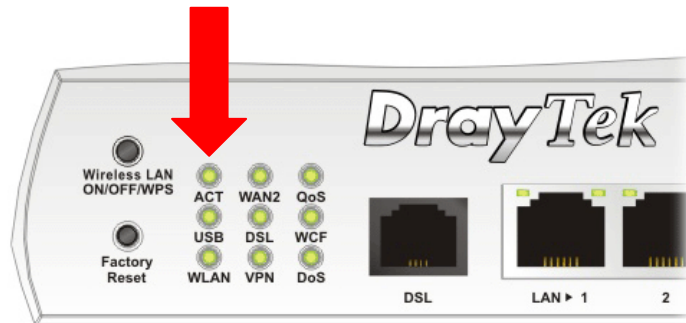


Note that the analysis was based on the current "load-balance/route policy" settings, we do not guarantee it will be 100% the same as the real case.

VIII-2 Checking If the Hardware Status Is OK or Not

Follow the steps below to verify the hardware status.

1. Check the power line and WLAN/LAN cable connections.
Refer to “I-2 Hardware Installation” for details.
2. Turn on the router. Make sure the ACT LED blink once per second and the correspondent LAN LED is bright.



3. If not, it means that there is something wrong with the hardware status. Simply back to “I-2 Hardware Installation” to execute the hardware installation again. And then, try again.

VIII-3 Checking If the Network Connection Settings on Your Computer Is OK or Not

Sometimes the link failure occurs due to the wrong network connection settings. After trying the above section, if the link is still failed, please do the steps listed below to make sure the network connection settings is OK.

For Windows



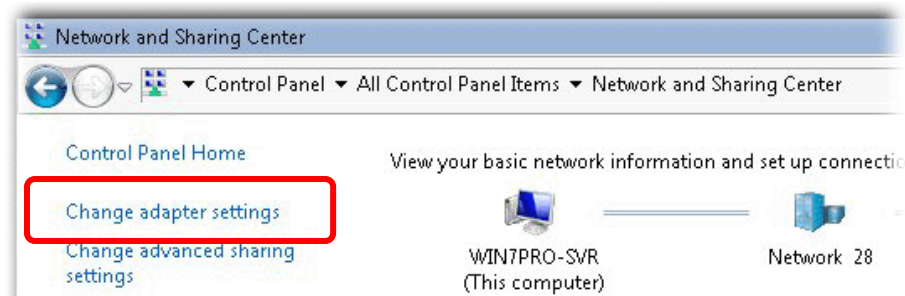
Info

The example is based on Windows 7. As to the examples for other operation systems, please refer to the similar steps or find support notes in www.DrayTek.com.

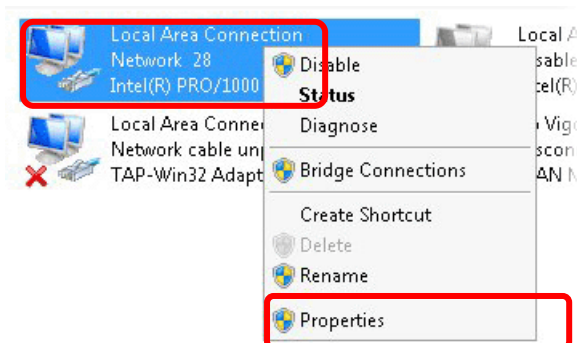
1. Open All Programs>>Getting Started>>Control Panel. Click Network and Sharing Center.



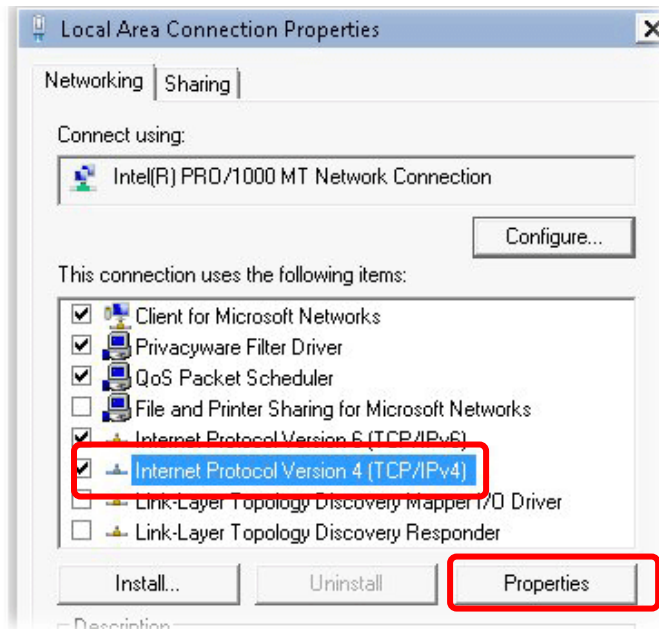
2. In the following window, click Change adapter settings.



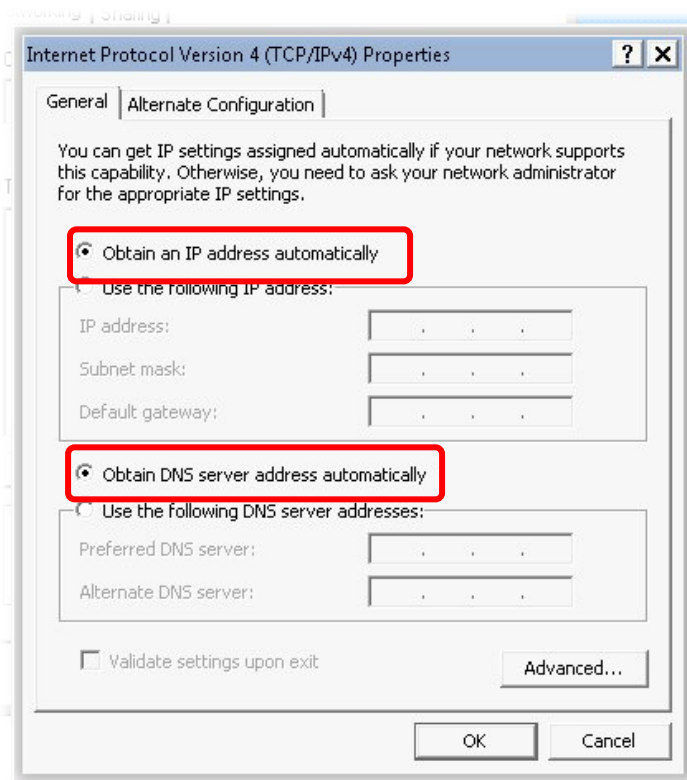
3. Icons of network connection will be shown on the window. Right-click on Local Area Connection and click on Properties.



4. Select **Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IP)** and then click **Properties**.

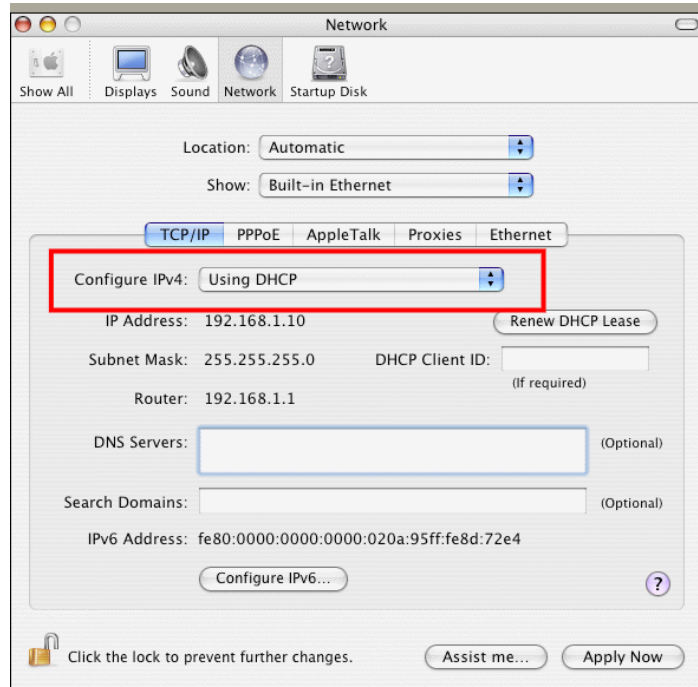


5. Select **Obtain an IP address automatically** and **Obtain DNS server address automatically**. Finally, click **OK**.



For Mac OS

1. Double click on the current used Mac OS on the desktop.
2. Open the **Application** folder and get into **Network**.
3. On the **Network** screen, select **Using DHCP** from the drop down list of Configure IPv4.



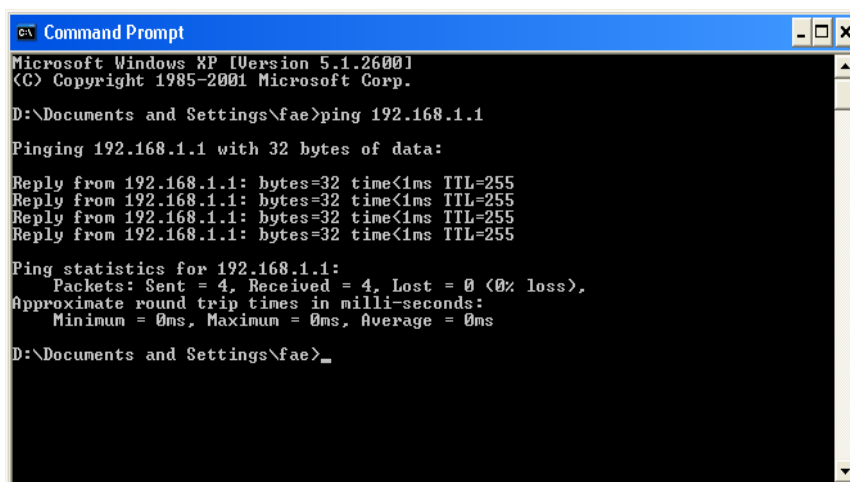
VIII-4 Pinging the Router from Your Computer

The default gateway IP address of the router is 192.168.1.1. For some reason, you might need to use “ping” command to check the link status of the router. **The most important thing is that the computer will receive a reply from 192.168.1.1.** If not, please check the IP address of your computer. We suggest you setting the network connection as get IP automatically. (Please refer to the section VIII-3).

Please follow the steps below to ping the router correctly.

For Windows

1. Open the Command Prompt window (from Start menu> Run).
2. Type **command** (for Windows 95/98/ME) or **cmd** (for Windows NT/ 2000/XP/Vista/7/8). The DOS command dialog will appear.



```
Microsoft Windows XP [Version 5.1.2600]
(C) Copyright 1985-2001 Microsoft Corp.

D:\Documents and Settings\fae>ping 192.168.1.1

Pinging 192.168.1.1 with 32 bytes of data:

Reply from 192.168.1.1: bytes=32 time<1ms TTL=255
Reply from 192.168.1.1: bytes=32 time<1ms TTL=255
Reply from 192.168.1.1: bytes=32 time<1ms TTL=255
Reply from 192.168.1.1: bytes=32 time<1ms TTL=255

Ping statistics for 192.168.1.1:
    Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 4, Lost = 0 (0% loss),
    Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds:
        Minimum = 0ms, Maximum = 0ms, Average = 0ms

D:\Documents and Settings\fae>_
```

3. Type **ping 192.168.1.1** and press [Enter]. If the link is OK, the line of “Reply from 192.168.1.1:bytes=32 time<1ms TTL=255” will appear.
4. If the line does not appear, please check the IP address setting of your computer.

For Mac OS (Terminal)

1. Double click on the current used MacOs on the desktop.
2. Open the **Application** folder and get into **Utilities**.
3. Double click **Terminal**. The Terminal window will appear.
4. Type **ping 192.168.1.1** and press [Enter]. If the link is OK, the line of “64 bytes from 192.168.1.1: icmp_seq=0 ttl=255 time=xxx ms” will appear.

```
Terminal — bash — 80x24
Last login: Sat Jan  3 02:24:18 on ttty1
Welcome to Darwin!
Vigor10:~ draytek$ ping 192.168.1.1
PING 192.168.1.1 (192.168.1.1): 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 192.168.1.1: icmp_seq=0 ttl=255 time=0.755 ms
64 bytes from 192.168.1.1: icmp_seq=1 ttl=255 time=0.697 ms
64 bytes from 192.168.1.1: icmp_seq=2 ttl=255 time=0.716 ms
64 bytes from 192.168.1.1: icmp_seq=3 ttl=255 time=0.731 ms
64 bytes from 192.168.1.1: icmp_seq=4 ttl=255 time=0.72 ms
^C
--- 192.168.1.1 ping statistics ---
5 packets transmitted, 5 packets received, 0% packet loss
round-trip min/avg/max = 0.697/0.723/0.755 ms
Vigor10:~ draytek$
```

VIII-5 Checking If the ISP Settings are OK or Not

If WAN connection cannot be up, check if the LEDs (according to the LED explanations listed on section I-1) are correct or not. If the LEDs are off, please:

- Change the **Physical Type** from **Auto negotiation** to other values (e.g., 100M full duplex).
- Next, change the physical type of modem (e.g., DSL/FTTX(GPON)/Cable modem) offered by ISP with the same value configured in Vigor router. Check if the LEDs on Vigor router are on or not.
- If not, please install an additional switch for connecting both Vigor router and the modem offered by ISP. Then, check if the LEDs on Vigor router are on or not.
- If the problem of LEDs cannot be solved by the above measures, please contact with the nearest reseller, or send an e-mail to DrayTek FAE for technical support.
- Check if the settings offered by ISP are configured well or not.

When the LEDs are on and correct, yet the WAN connection still cannot be up, please:

- Open **WAN >> Internet Access** page and then check whether the ISP settings are set correctly. Click **Details Page** of WAN1~WAN4 to review the settings that you configured previously.

WAN >> Internet Access

Internet Access			Access Mode	
Index	Display Name	Physical Mode		
WAN1		ADSL	PPPoE / PPPoA	Details Page IPv6
WAN2		Ethernet	Static or Dynamic IP	Details Page IPv6
WAN3		USB	None	Details Page IPv6
WAN4		USB	None	Details Page IPv6

Note:

1. Device on USB port 1 applies WAN3 configuration.
2. Device on USB port 2 applies WAN4 configuration.

DHCP Client Option

VIII-6 Problems for 3G/4G Network Connection

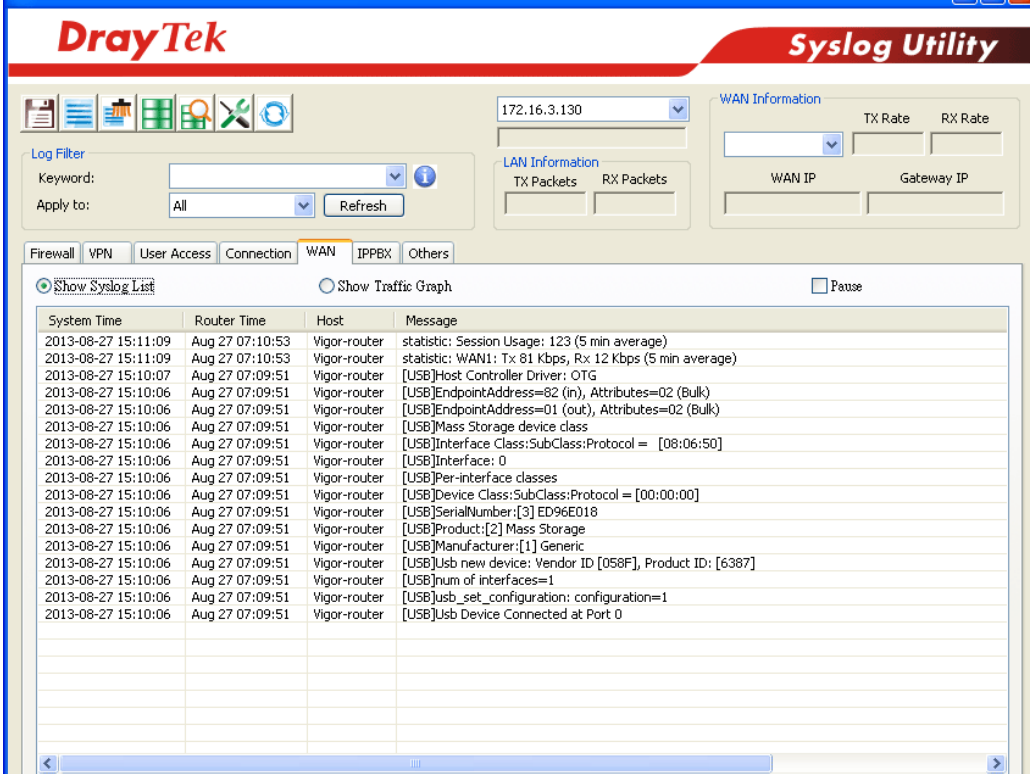
When you have trouble in using 3G/4G network transmission, please check the following:

Check if USB LED lights on or off

You have to wait about 15 seconds after inserting 3G/4G USB Modem into your Vigor2832. Later, the USB LED will light on which means the installation of USB Modem is successful. If the USB LED does not light on, please remove and reinsert the modem again. If it still fails, restart Vigor2832.

USB LED lights on but the network connection does not work

Check the PIN Code of SIM card is disabled or not. Please use the utility of 3G/4G USB Modem to disable PIN code and try again. If it still fails, it might be the compliance problem of system. Please open DrayTek Syslog Tool to capture the connection information (WAN Log) and send the page (similar to the following graphic) to the service center of DrayTek.



The screenshot displays the DrayTek Syslog Utility web interface. At the top, the DrayTek logo is on the left and 'Syslog Utility' is on the right. Below the logo is a navigation bar with icons for various system functions. The main area is divided into several sections:

- Log Filter:** Includes a 'Keyword:' input field, an 'Apply to:' dropdown menu set to 'All', and a 'Refresh' button.
- WAN Information:** Shows the WAN IP address as 172.16.3.130. It also has fields for TX Rate, RX Rate, WAN IP, and Gateway IP.
- LAN Information:** Includes fields for TX Packets and RX Packets.
- Navigation Tabs:** 'Firewall', 'VPN', 'User Access', 'Connection', 'WAN' (selected), 'IPPEX', and 'Others'.
- Log Display:** A table with columns for System Time, Router Time, Host, and Message. The 'Show Syslog List' radio button is selected. The table contains 16 rows of log entries, all from 'Vigor-router' on '2013-08-27 15:10:06'. The messages include session statistics, WAN1 usage, and detailed USB device information such as endpoint addresses, mass storage class, interface class, and manufacturer details.

Transmission Rate is not fast enough

Please connect your Notebook with 3G/4G USB Modem to test the connection speed to verify if the problem is caused by Vigor2832. In addition, please refer to the manual of 3G/4G USB Modem for LED Status to make sure if the modem connects to Internet via HSDPA mode. If you want to use the modem indoors, please put it on the place near the window to obtain better signal receiving.

VIII-7 Backing to Factory Default Setting If Necessary

Sometimes, a wrong connection can be improved by returning to the default settings. Try to reset the router by software or hardware. Such function is available in **Admin Mode** only.



Info

After pressing factory default setting, you will lose all settings you did before. Make sure you have recorded all useful settings before you pressing. The password of factory default is null.

Software Reset

You can reset the router to factory default via Web page. Such function is available in **Admin Mode** only.

Go to **System Maintenance** and choose **Reboot System** on the web page. The following screen will appear. Choose **Using factory default configuration** and click **Reboot Now**. After few seconds, the router will return all the settings to the factory settings.

System Maintenance >> Reboot System

Reboot System

Do you want to reboot your router ?

- Using current configuration
 Using factory default configuration

Reboot Now

Auto Reboot Time Schedule

Schedule Profile : , , ,

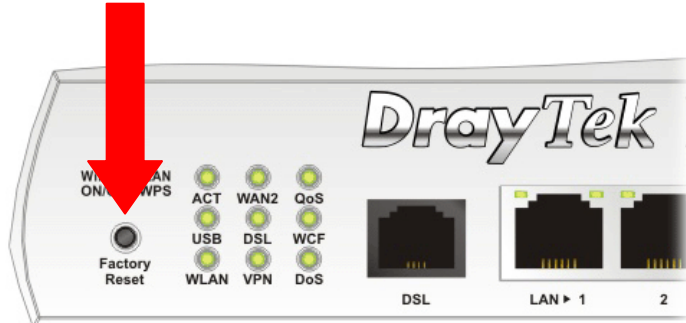
Note:
Action and Duration Time settings will be ignored.

OK

Cancel

Hardware Reset

While the router is running (ACT LED blinking), press the Factory Reset button and hold for more than 5 seconds. When you see the ACT LED blinks rapidly, please release the button. Then, the router will restart with the default configuration.



After restore the factory default setting, you can configure the settings for the router again to fit your personal request.

VIII-8 Contacting DrayTek

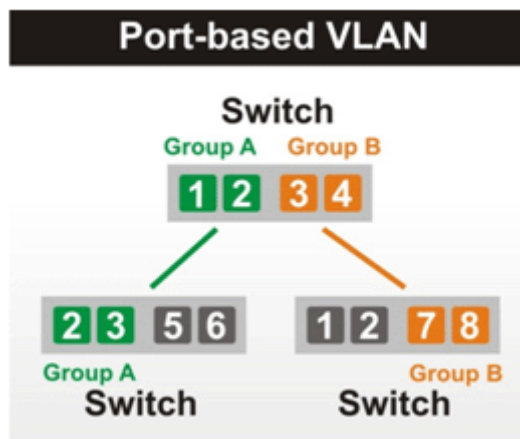
If the router still cannot work correctly after trying many efforts, please contact your dealer for further help right away. For any questions, please feel free to send e-mail to support@DrayTek.com.

Appendix I: VLAN Applications on Vigor Router

Virtual Local Area Network is so-called VLAN. It offers the logical grouping technique to separate the physical ports of Ethernet switches, thus we can manage our local network easier, more flexible and secure. For instance, you're a networking administrator in your company and you're planning to isolate the visitors' traffics from your private network for security considerations because you cannot ensure that visitors' computer is clean. Or you want to separate your private network into several parts by divisions because there are too many computers in the same network segment and it results in the local traffics heavily. VLAN helps you to solve these situations, and DrayTek's products support bellow two popular types:

Port-based

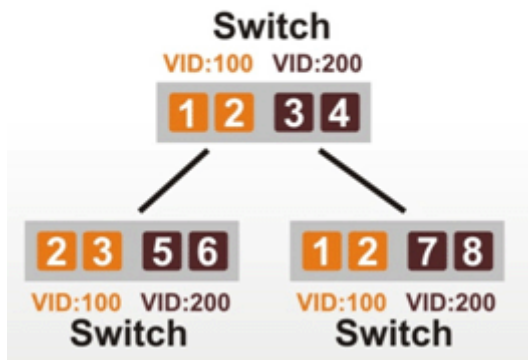
It uses a matrix table of the physical ports to define the traffics how to exchange between each port, and the traffics will be isolated from the ports are not being ticked in the same line. It is the easiest way to setup an isolate network, but not a flexible way to maintain a growing network. Because the idea of port-based VLAN is grouping by physical ports, but the difficulty is how to handle the traffics between two or more Ethernet switches. Thus, VLAN is suitable for some circumstances, for example, the rental apartment, SOHO office...and so on. These clients may need two or three isolated networks only and setup a network in a simple way.



Tag-based

The idea of tag-based VLAN is to identify a virtual LAN with a specific ID, therefore, VLAN ID introduced by tag-based VLAN. Through VLAN ID, ports with different VID (VLAN ID) will be identified as in different LANs, so the traffics also will be isolated from each of VLANs. Many administrators who manage an enterprise network or even the internet service providers (ISP) adopt Tag-based VLAN popularly because it is convenient to maintain and manage a distributed network. Setting a large-scale network is easy by giving each of them with different VID and isolating the traffics at the same time. Besides the VLAN ID, there is another feature, **Trunk**, introduced. While the role of a port on an Ethernet switch is setup as a Trunk port, it means the VLAN ID will be kept while forwarding the packets between switches. By this feature, VLANs are able to distribute over two or more Ethernet switches easily, moreover design a large and secured network is possible through Trunk port. When VLAN is being enabled on Vigor routers, the LAN ports are being turned into Trunk mode automatically. Therefore, a VLAN supported switch, like VigorSwitch G2260/P2261, or VigorSwitch G1240, is needed.

Tag-based VLAN



Vigor routers ^[Note] support Tag-based feature both on LAN and WAN interfaces. The next we'll demonstrate our web design and how to configure the settings by introducing the functionalities of Vigor router.

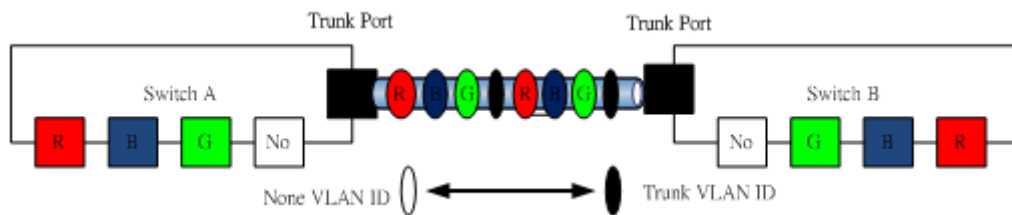
[Note]

Broadband router: Vigor2920/Vigor3200/Vigor2925/Vigo2960/Vigor3900

Modem router: Vigor2850/Vigor2832

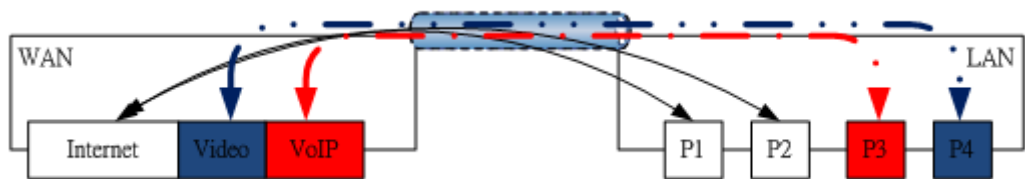
VLAN Packets on Vigor routers

Trunk mode of LAN



Trunk Port can carry the packets with VID but replace the Non-VID packet as the VID of Trunk port while forwarding the packets to another switch.

Bridge mode of WAN



P1 and P2 are doing NAT flow to access to the internet, but P3 and P4 will forward the packets between WAN and LAN ports directly.

Web User Interface

So far, there are two kinds of open system on Vigor router. One is DrayOS, which is DrayTek owned, and another is Linux-like which customized by DrayTek from OpenWRT. Here DrayOS system is going to be introduced to you because it is the most stable and superfast booting system in DrayTek products. If the UI style of yours is different from the following. It may not DrayOS system with new web style or maybe the Linux-like model.

WAN

Multi-VLAN

General				
Channel	Enable	WAN Type	VLAN Tag	Port-based Bridge
1	Yes	Ethernet(WAN1)	None	
2	Yes	Ethernet(WAN2)	None	
3	No	Ethernet(WAN1)	None	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4 <input type="checkbox"/> P5
4	No	Ethernet(WAN1)	None	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4 <input type="checkbox"/> P5
5_WAN5	No	Ethernet(WAN1)	None	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4 <input type="checkbox"/> P5
6_WAN6	No	Ethernet(WAN1)	None	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4 <input type="checkbox"/> P5
7_WAN7	No	Ethernet(WAN1)	None	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4 <input type="checkbox"/> P5
8	No	Ethernet(WAN1)	None	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4 <input type="checkbox"/> P5

Detail settings of channel profile

VLAN Settings

VLAN Members

Service Binding & WAN Setup

Multi-VLAN Channel 5: Enable Disable
 WAN Type :

General Settings
 VLAN Header
 VLAN Tag:
 Priority:
 Note:1.Tag value must be set between 1~4095 and unique for each channel.
 2.Only one channel can be untagged (equal to 0) at a time.

Open Port-based Bridge Connection for this Channel
 Physical Members
 P1 P2 P3 P4 P5
 Note:3.P1 is reserved for NAT use,and cannot be configured for bridge mode.

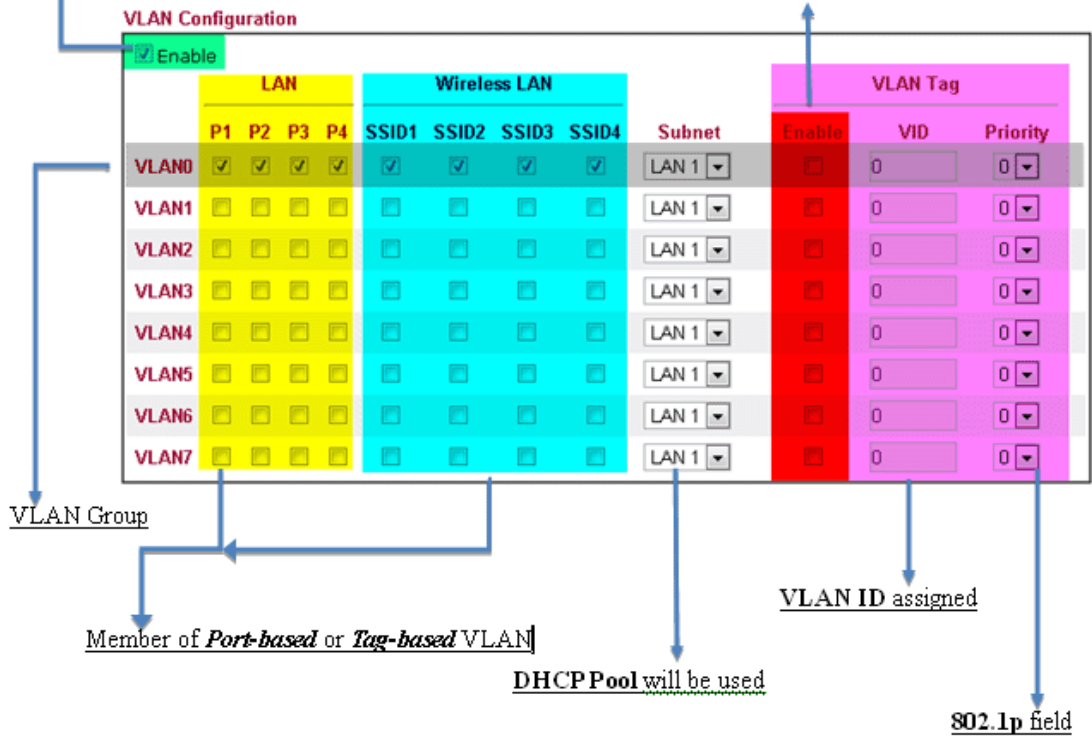
Open WAN Interface for this Channel
 WAN for Router-borne Application:
 WAN Setup:

<p>ISP Access Setup</p> <p>ISP Name <input type="text"/></p> <p>Username <input type="text"/></p> <p>Password <input type="text"/></p> <p>PPP Authentication <input type="text" value="PAP or CHAP"/></p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Always On</p> <p>Idle Timeout <input type="text" value="-1"/> second(s)</p> <p>IP Address From ISP</p> <p>Fixed IP <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No (Dynamic IP)</p> <p>Fixed IP Address <input type="text"/></p>	<p>WAN IP Network Settings</p> <p><input type="radio"/> Obtain an IP address automatically</p> <p>Router Name <input type="text" value="Vigor"/> *</p> <p>Domain Name <input type="text"/> *</p> <p>*: Required for some ISPs</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Specify an IP address</p> <p>IP Address <input type="text"/></p> <p>Subnet Mask <input type="text"/></p> <p>Gateway IP Address <input type="text"/></p> <p>DNS Server IP Address</p> <p>Primary IP Address <input type="text" value="8.8.8.8"/></p> <p>Secondary IP Address <input type="text" value="8.8.4.4"/></p>
---	--

LAN

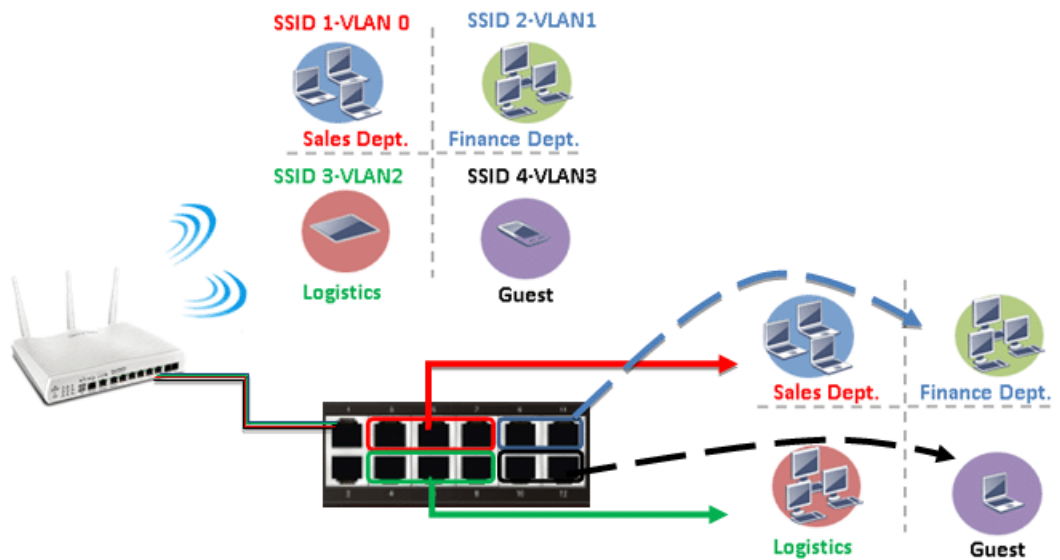
Enable *Port-based VLAN* by checking the option

The option of *Tag-based VLAN*



VLAN applications on Vigor router

- Multi Subnet (VLAN of LAN)



Port-based mode

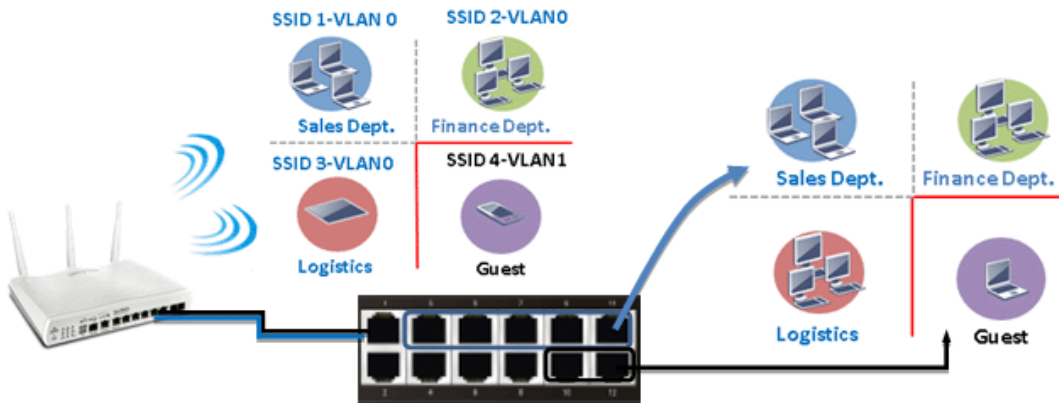
	LAN				Wireless LAN				VLAN Tag			
	P1	P2	P3	P4	SSID1	SSID2	SSID3	SSID4	Subnet	Enable	VID	Priority
VLAN0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 2	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 3	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	LAN 4	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0

Tag-based mode

	LAN				Wireless LAN				VLAN Tag			
	P1	P2	P3	P4	SSID1	SSID2	SSID3	SSID4	Subnet	Enable	VID	Priority
VLAN0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	10	0
VLAN1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	20	0
VLAN2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	30	0
VLAN3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	LAN 4	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	40	0
VLAN4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0

By above settings, there are four private networks will be created and computers attached with each of LAN ports or SSIDs which are able to obtain a private IP address from each DHCP server (LAN1/LAN2/LAN3/LAN4). However, the traffics of the LAN port or SSID that are NOT being grouped in the same VLAN are unable to forward to each other. The benefit of Port-based is able to extend the wired ports by installing a cheaper dumb switch as many as you need, but Tag-based offers you a flexible and well-managed network. The networks are isolated, secured and reduce the broadcasting storm effectively in each of networks with VLAN.

- Guest Network



Port-based mode

VLAN Configuration

Enable

	LAN				Wireless LAN				Subnet	VLAN Tag		
	P1	P2	P3	P4	SSID1	SSID2	SSID3	SSID4		Enable	VID	Priority
VLAN0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	LAN 2	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0

Tag-based mode

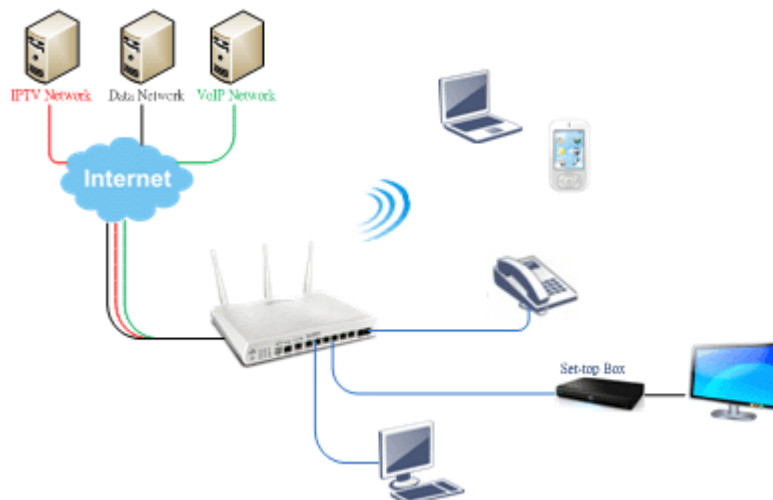
Enable

	LAN				Wireless LAN				Subnet	VLAN Tag		
	P1	P2	P3	P4	SSID1	SSID2	SSID3	SSID4		Enable	VID	Priority
VLAN0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	LAN 2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	10	0
VLAN2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0

To deploy a guest network, which serves your guests the internet accessibility, but the traffics have to be isolated from your private network due to the security considerations, it can be done by above settings. However, a switch support VLAN function is need if VLAN Tag enabled.

- Triple Play (Multi-WAN)

NAT mode with VLAN



Following settings, the set-top box (STB) is able to attach with any LAN port. Video streaming which your ISP provided will be played on your monitor.

WAN 1

Enable: Yes No

Display Name:

Physical Mode: Ethernet

Physical Type: Auto negotiation

Line Speed(Kbps):

DownLink:

UpLink:

VLAN Tag insertion: Enable Disable (Please configure Internet Access setting first)

Tag value: (0~4095)

Priority: (0~7)

Active Mode: Always On Load Balance:

1. Setup the VLAN ID on WAN1 profiles if WAN is the primary interface of IPTV service.

2. Open the profile of WAN5 by clicking the ID.

Channel	Enable	WAN Type	VLAN Tag	Port-based Bridge
1	Yes	Ethernet(WAN1)	None	
2	Yes	Ethernet(WAN2)	None	
3	No	Ethernet(WAN1)	None	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4
4	No	Ethernet(WAN1)	None	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4
5. WAN5	No	Ethernet(WAN1)	None	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4
6. WAN6	No	Ethernet(WAN1)	None	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4
7. WAN7	No	Ethernet(WAN1)	None	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4
8	No	Ethernet(WAN1)	None	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4

Multi-VLAN Channel 5: Enable Disable

WAN Type: Ethernet(WAN1)

General Settings

VLAN Header

VLAN Tag:

Priority:

Note: 1. Tag value must be set between 1~4095 and unique for each channel.
2. Only one channel can be untagged (equal to 0):

P1 P2 P3 P4 P5

Note: 3. P1 is reserved for NAT use, and cannot be configured for bridge mode.

Open Port-based Bridge Connection for this Channel

Physical Members

P1 P2 P3 P4 P5

Note: 3. P1 is reserved for NAT use, and cannot be configured for bridge mode.

3. Setup connection of WAN 5 and bind the service onto it.

NO need to enable Port-based Bridge.

P1 P2 P3 P4 P5

Note: 3. P1 is reserved for NAT use, and cannot be configured for bridge mode.

Open WAN interface for this Channel

WAN for Router-borne Application: IPTV

WAN Setup: Static or Dynamic IP

ISP Access Setup

ISP Name:

Username:

Password:

PPP Authentication: PAP or CHAP

Always On

Idle Timeout: second(s)

IP Address From ISP

Fixed IP (Dynamic IP): Yes No

Fixed IP Address:

WAN IP Network Settings

Obtain an IP address automatically

Router Name: Vigor

Domain Name:

*: Required for some ISPs

Specify an IP address

IP Address:

Subnet:

Mask:

Gateway IP Address:

DNS Server IP Address

Primary IP Address: 8.8.8.8

Secondary IP Address: 8.8.4.4

4. Go to Application >> IGMP to bind it on PVC WAN.

IGMP

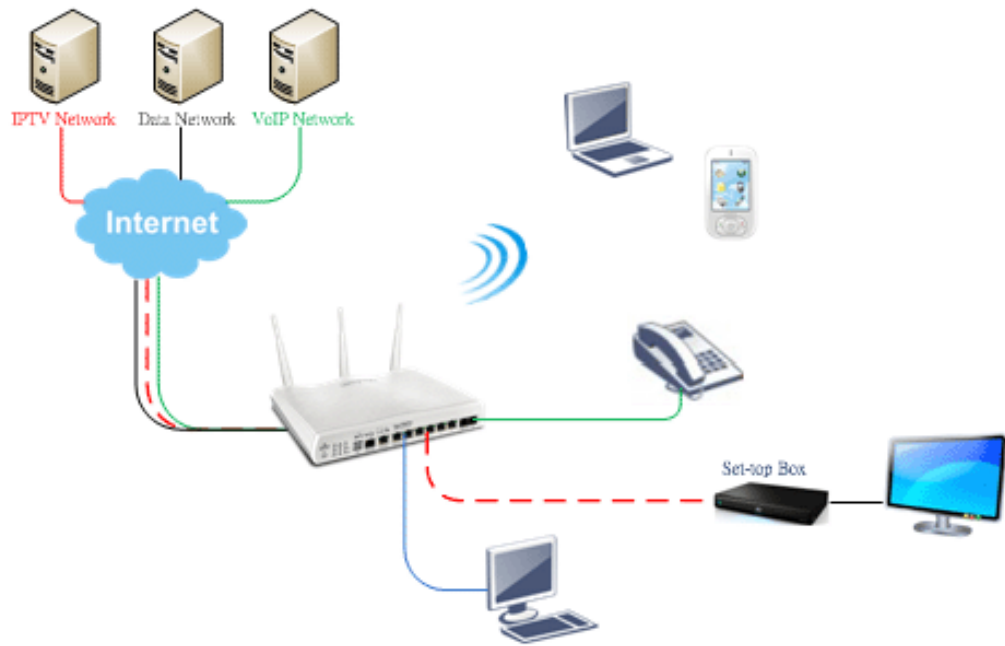
Enable IGMP Proxy PVC

IGMP Proxy is to act as a multicast proxy for will access any multicast group. But this function take no effect when bridge mode is enable.

Enable IGMP Snooping

Enable IGMP Snooping, multicast traffic is only forwarded to ports that have members of that group. Disable IGMP snooping, multicast traffic is treated in the same manner as broadcast traffic.

Bridge mode with VLAN



Multi-VLAN

General				
Channel	Enable	WAN Type	VLAN Tag	Port-based Bridge
1	Yes	Ethernet(WAN1)	None	
2	Yes	Ethernet(WAN2)	None	
3	No	Ethernet(WAN1)	None	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4 <input type="checkbox"/> P5
4	No	Ethernet(WAN1)	None	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4 <input type="checkbox"/> P5
5	WAN5	No		
6	WAN6	No		
7	WAN7	No		
8	WAN8	No		

Multi-VLAN Channel 3: Enable Disable

WAN Type :

General Settings

VLAN Header

VLAN Tag:

Priority:

Note:1.Tag value must be set between 1~4095 and unique for each channel.
2.Only one channel can be untagged (equal to 0) at a time.

Bridge mode

Enable

Physical Members

P1 P2 P3 P4 P5

Note:3.P1 is reserved for NAT use,and cannot be configured for bridge mode.

Set-top box (STB) or the other kinds of media devices are able to attach with Port4 or Port5 of LAN. Those devices that attached with Port4 or Port5 are able to access the services network directly which your ISP provided.

This page is left blank.

Part IX Telnet Commands

Accessing Telnet of Vigor2832

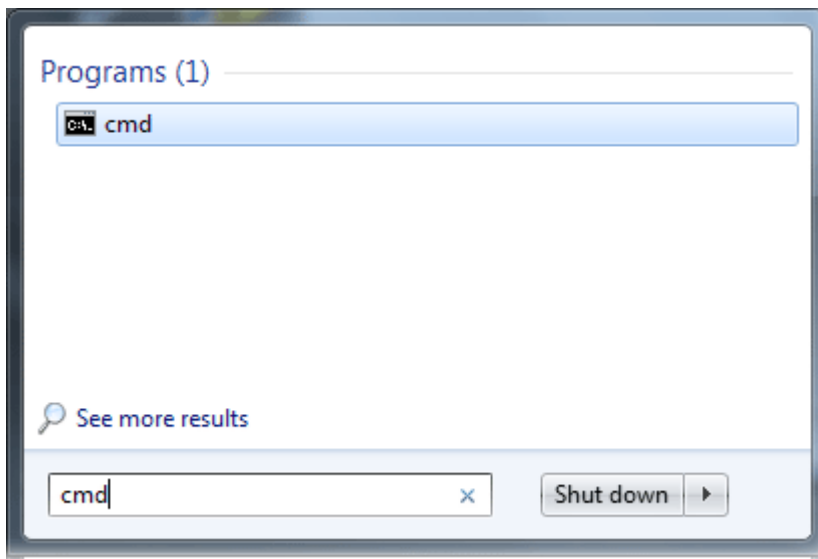
This chapter also gives you a general description for accessing telnet and describes the firmware versions for the routers explained in this manual.



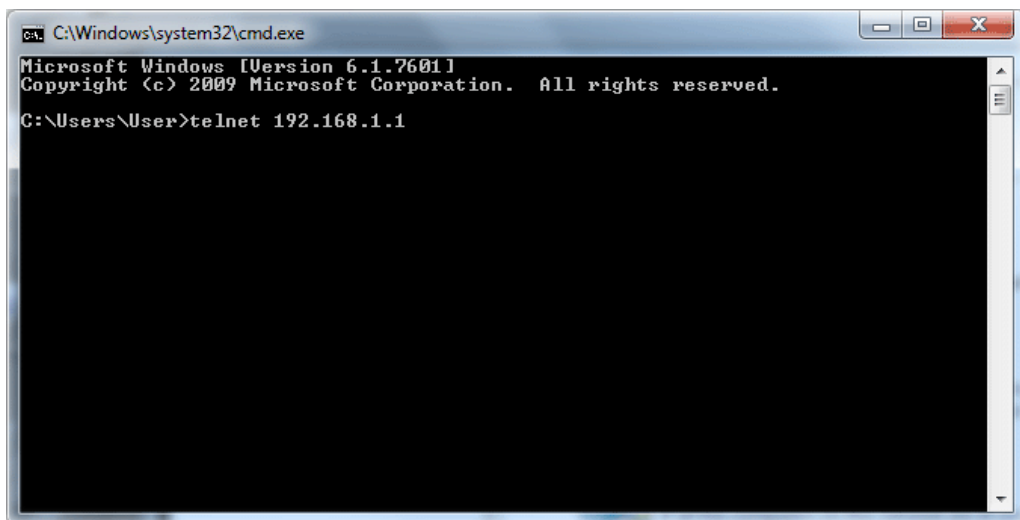
Info

For Windows 7 user, please make sure the Windows Features of Telnet Client has been turned on under Control Panel>>Programs.

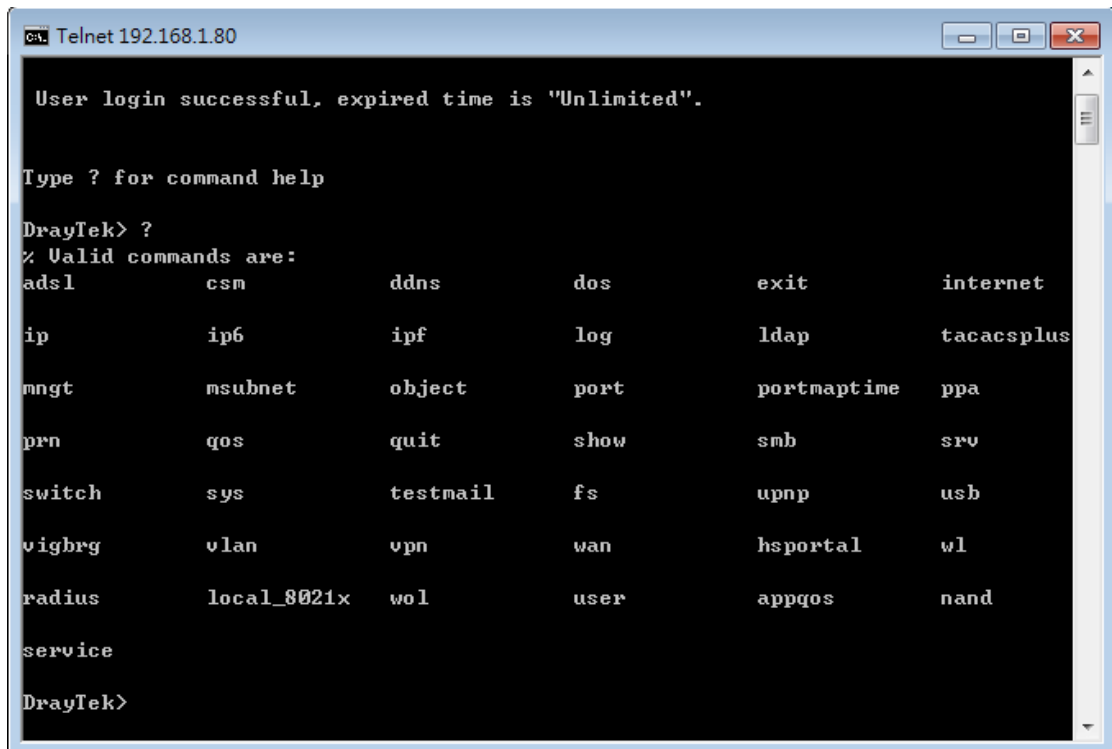
Type cmd and press Enter. The Telnet terminal will be open later.



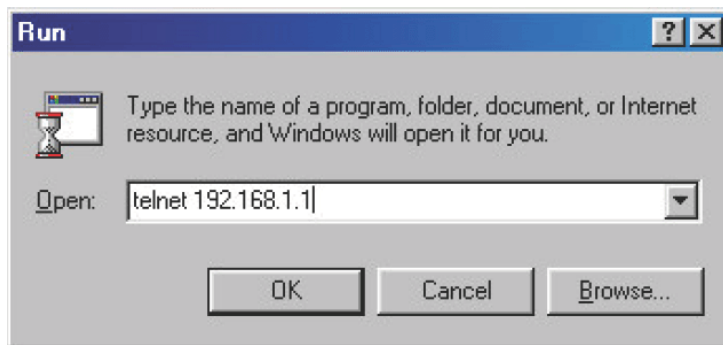
In the following window, type Telnet 192.168.1.1 as below and press Enter. Note that the IP address in the example is the default address of the router. If you have changed the default, enter the current IP address of the router.



Next, type admin/admin for Account/Password. Then, type ?. You will see a list of valid/common commands depending on the router that your use.



For users using previous Windows system (e.g., 2000/XP), simply click Start >> Run and type **Telnet 192.168.1.1** in the Open box as below. Next, type admin/admin for Account/Password. And, type ? to get a list of valid/common commands.



Telnet Command: adsl txpct /adsl rxpct

This command allows the user to adjust the percentage of data transmission (receiving/transmitting) for QoS application.

Syntax

adsl txpct [auto:percent]

adsl rxpct [auto:percent]

Syntax	Description
auto	It means auto detection of ADSL transmission packet.
percent	It means to specify the percentage of ADSL transmission packet. Available range is 10-100.

Example

```
> adsl txpct auto
% tx percentage : 80
> adsl txpct 75
% tx percentage : 75
```

Telnet Command: adsl status

This command is used to display current status of ADSL setting.

Syntax

adsl status

adsl status more

Example

```
> adsl status
----- ATU-R Info (hw: annex A, f/w: annex A) -----
Running Mode      :          State          : TRAINING
DS Actual Rate    :          0 bps    US Actual Rate      :          0 bps
DS Attainable Rate :          0 bps    US Attainable Rate  :          0 bps
DS Path Mode      :          Fast    US Path Mode        :          Fast
DS Interleave Depth :          0    US Interleave Depth :          0
NE Current Attenuation :          0 dB    Cur SNR Margin      :          0 dB
DS actual PSD     :          0.0 dB    US actual PSD       :          0.0 dB
NE Rcvd Cells     :          0    NE Xmitted Cells    :          0
NE CRC Count      :          0    FE CRC Count        :          0
NE ES Count       :          0    FE ES Count         :          0
Xdsl Reset Times  :          0    Xdsl Link Times     :          0
ITU Version[0]    : b5004946    ITU Version[1]      : 544e0000
ADSL Firmware Version : 06-06-01-07-00-01
Power Management Mode : DSL_G997_PMS_NA
Test Mode         : DISABLE
----- ATU-C Info -----
Far Current Attenuation :          0 dB    Far SNR Margin      :          0 dB
CO ITU Version[0]      : 00000000    CO ITU Version[1]   : 00000000
DSLAM CHIPSET VENDOR  : < ----- >
>
```

Telnet Command: adsl ppp

This command can set the Internet Access mode for the router.

Syntax

`adsl ppp [? | pvc_no vci vpi Encap Proto modu acqIP idle [Username Password]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
?	Display the command syntax of "adsl ppp".
pvc_no	It means the PVC number and the adjustable range is from 0 (Channel-1) to 7(Channel-8).
Encap	Different numbers represent different modes. 0 : VC_MUX, 1: LLC/SNAP, 2: LLC_Bridge, 3: LLC_Route, 4: VCMUX_Bridge 5: VCMUX_Route, 6: IPoE.
Proto	It means the protocol used to connect Internet. Different numbers represent different protocols. 0: PPPoA, 1: PPPoE, 2: MPoA.
Modu	0: T1.413, 2: G.dmt, 4: Multi, 5: ADSL2, 7:ADSL2_AnnexM 8:ADSL2+ 14:ADSL2+_AnnexM.
acqIP	It means the way to acquire IP address. Type the number to determine the IP address by specifying or assigned dynamically by DHCP server. 0 : fix_ip, 1: dhcp_client/PPPoE/PPPoA.(acquire IP method)
idle	Type number to determine the network connection will be kept for always or idle after a certain time. -1: always on, else idle timeout secs. Only for PPPoE/PPPoA.
Username	This parameter is used only for PPPoE/PPPoA.
Password	This parameter is used only for PPPoE/PPPoA.

You have to reboot the system when you set it on Route mode.

Example

```

> adsl ppp o 35 8 1 1 4 1 -1 draytek draytek
pvc no.=0
vci=35
vpi=8
encap=LLC(1)
proto=PPPoE(1)
modu=MULTI(4)
AcquireIP: Dhcp_client(1)
Idle timeout:-1
Username=draytek
Password=draytek

```

Telnet Command: adsl bridge

This command can specify a LAN port (LAN1 to LAN4) for mapping to certain PVC, and the mapping port/PVC will be operated in bridge mode.

adsl bridge [*pvc_no/status/save/enable/disable*] [*on/off/clear/tag tag_no*] [*service type*] [*px ...*]

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>pvc_no</i>	It means <i>pvc</i> number and must be between 0(Channel 1) to 7(Channel 8).
<i>status</i>	It means to shown the whole bridge status.
<i>save</i>	It means to save the configuration to flash.
<i>enable</i>	It means to enable the Multi-VLAN function.
<i>disable</i>	It means to disable the Multi-VLAN function.
<i>on/off</i>	It means to turn on/off bridge mode for the specific channel.
<i>clear</i>	It means to turn off and clear all the PVC settings.
<i>tag tag_no</i>	No tag: -1 Available number for tag: 0-4095
<i>pri pri_no</i>	The number 0 to 7 can be set to indicate the priority. "7" is the highest.
<i>service type</i>	Two number can be set: 0: for Normal (all the applications will be processed with the same PVC). 1: for the IGMP with different PVC which is used for special ISP.
<i>px...</i>	It means the number of LAN port (x=2-4). Port 1 is locked for NAT.

Example

```

> adsl bridge 4 on p2 p3
PVC Bridge p1 p2 p3 p4 Service Type Tag Pri

```



```

-----
 4   ON       0   0   1   0       Normal   -1(OFF)  0
PVC 0 & 1 can't set for bridge mode.
Please use 'save' to save config.

```

Telnet Command: adsl idle

This command can make the router accessing into the idle status. If you want to invoke the router again, you have to reboot the router by using "reboot" command.

Syntax

`adsl idle [on | tcpmessage | tcpmessage_off]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>on</i>	DSL is under test mode. DSL debug tool mode is off.
<i>tcpmessage</i>	DSL debug tool mode is on.
<i>tcpmessage_off</i>	DSL debug tool mode is off.

Example

```

> adsl idle on
% DSL is under [IDLE/QUIET] test mode.
% DSL debug tool mode is off.
> adsl idle tcpmessage
% Set DSL debug tool mode on. Please reboot system to take effect.
> adsl idle tcpmessage_off
% Set DSL debug tool mode off. Please reboot system to take effect.

```

Telnet Command: adsl drivermode

This command is useful for laboratory to measure largest power of data transmission. Please follow the steps below to set adsl drivermode.

1. Please connect dsl line to the DSLAM.
2. Waiting for dsl SHOWTIME.
3. Drop the dsl line.
4. Now, it is on continuous sending mode, and adsl2/2+ led is always ON.
5. Use 'adsl reboot' to restart dsl to normal mode.

Telnet Command: adsl reboot

This command can wake up the idle router.

Example

```

> adsl reboot
% Adsl is Rebooting...

```

Telnet Command: adsl oamlb

This command is used to test if the connection between CPE and CO is OK or not.

`adsl oamlb [n][type]`

`adsl oamlb chklink [on/off]`

`adsl oamlb [log_on/log_off]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>n</i>	It means the total number of transmitted packets.
<i>type</i>	It means the protocol that you can use. 1 - for F4 Seg-to-Seg (VP level) 2 - for F4 End-to-End (VP level) 4 - for F5 Seg-to-Seg (VC level) 5 - for F5 End-to-End (VC level)
<i>chklink</i>	Check the DSL connection.
<i>Log_on/log_off</i>	Enable or disable the OAM log for debug.

Example

```
> adsl oamlb chklink on
OAM checking dsl link is ON.
> adsl oamlb F5 4
Tx cnt=0
Rx Cnt=0
>
```

Telnet Command: adsl vcilimit

This command can cancel the limit for vci value.

Some ISP might set the vci value under 32. In such case, we can cancel such limit manually by using this command. Do not set the number greater than 254.

`adsl vcilimit [n]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>n</i>	The number shall be between 1 - 254.

Example

```
> adsl vcilimit 33
change VCI limitation from 32 to 33.
```

Telnet Command: adsl annex

This command can display the annex interface of this router.

Example

```
> adsl annex
% hardware is annex B.
% modem code is annex B; built at 01/15,07:34.
```

Telnet Command: adsl automode

This command is used to add or remove ADSL modes (such as ANNEXL, ANNEXM and ANNEXJ) supported by Multimode.

adsl automode [*add/remove/set/default/show*] [*adsl_mode*]

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>add</i>	Add ADSL mode.
<i>remove</i>	Remove ADSL mode.
<i>set</i>	Use default settings plus the new added ADSL mode.
<i>default</i>	Use default settings.
<i>show</i>	Display current setting.
<i>adsl_mode</i>	There are three modes to be choose, ANNEXL, ANNEXM and ANNEXJ.

Example

```
>Vigor> adsl automode set ANNEXJ
Automode supported : T1.413, G.DMT, ADSL2, ADSL2+, ANNEXJ,

Vigor> adsl automode default
Automode supported : T1.413, G.DMT, ADSL2, ADSL2+,
```

Telnet Command: adsl showbins

This command can display the allocation for each Bin (Tone) SNR, Gain, and Bits.

adsl showbins [*startbin endbin [up]*]

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>startbin</i>	The number is between 0 ~ 4092.
<i>endbin</i>	The number is between 4 ~ 4095.
<i>up</i>	Show upstream information.

Example

```
> adsl showbins 2 30
DOWNSTREAM :
-----
Bin  SNR  Gain Bi - Bin  SNR  Gain Bi - Bin  SNR  Gain Bi - Bin  SNR  Gain Bi
```

```

dB .1dB ts      dB .1dB ts      dB .1dB ts      dB .1dB ts
-----
-----
Bin SNR Gain Bi - Bin SNR Gain Bi - Bin SNR Gain Bi - Bin SNR Gain Bi
dB .1dB ts      dB .1dB ts      dB .1dB ts      dB .1dB ts
>

```

Telnet Command: adsl optn

This command allows you to configure DSL line feature. This feature is depended on modem firmware. For G.Vector feature, modem firmware needs to support VDSL2 G.Vector.

adsl optn FUNC [*us/ds/bi* [*value/on/off*]]

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>FUNC</i>	Available functions include: 'trellis', 'bitswap', 'sra', 'retx', 'aelem', 'status', 'g.vector', 'default'. default: Set all features back to default settings.
<i>us/ds/bi</i>	us: means "upstream" ds: means "downstream" bi: means "bidirection"
<i>value</i>	The values for different functions change slightly. bitswap=0-2, sra=0,2,3,4.
<i>on/off</i>	Type "on" for enabling such function. Type "off" for disabling such function. Functions of 'aelem' and 'g.vector' are only on/off.

Example

```

> adsl optn status
trellis      [US] =    ON, [DS] =    ON.
bitswap     [US] =    0, [DS] =    0.
             [0: default(ON), 1: ON, 2: OFF]
sra         [US] =    0, [DS] =    0.
             [0: default(=3), 2: OFF, 3: ON , 4: DYNAMIC_SOS]
retx       [US] =    ON, [DS] =    ON.
aelem      ON
G.Vector    ON

```

Telnet Command: adsl savecfg

This command can save the configuration into FLASH with a file format of cfg.

Example

```

> adsl savecfg
% Xdsl Cfg Save OK!

```

Telnet Command: adsl vendorid

This command allows you to configure user-defined CPE vendor ID.

adsl vendorid [*status/on/off/ set vid0 vid1*]

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>status</i>	Display current status of user-defined vendor ID.
<i>on</i>	Enable the user-defined function.
<i>off</i>	Disable the user-defined function.
<i>set vid0 vid1</i>	It means to set user-defined vendor ID with vid0 and vid1. The vendor ID shall be set with HEX format, ex: 00fe7244: 79612f21.

Example

```
> adsl vendorid status
% User define CPE Vendor ID is OFF
% vid0:vid1 = 0x00fe7244:79612f21
> adsl vendorid on set vid0 vid1
% User define CPE Vendor ID is ON
```

Telnet Command: adsl atm

This command can set QoS parameter for ATM.

adsl atm pcr [pvc_no][PCR][max][status]

adsl atm scr [pvc_no][SCR][status]

adsl atm mbs [pvc_no][MBS][status]

adsl atm status

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>pvc_no</i>	It means <i>pvc</i> number and must be between 0(Channel 1) to 7(Channel 8).
<i>PCR</i>	It means Peak Cell Rate for upstream. The range for the number is "1" to "2539".
<i>max</i>	Get the highest speed for the upstream.
<i>SCR</i>	Mean Sustainable Cell Rate. The range for the number is "1" to "2539".
<i>MBS</i>	Maximum Burst Size. The range for the number is "1" to "2539".
<i>status</i>	Display PCR/SCR/MBS setting.

Example

```
> adsl atm pcr 1 200 max
% PCR is 0 for pvc 1.
> adsl atm pcr status
pvc  channel      PCR
-----
0     1             0
1     2             0
2     3             0
3     4             0
4     5             0
5     6             0
```

6	7	0
7	8	0
8	9	0
9	10	0

Telnet Command: adsl pvcbinding

This command can configure PVC to PVC binding. Such command is available only for PPPoE and MPoA 1483 Bridge mode.

`adsl pvcbinding [pvc_x pvc_y | status | -1]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>pvc_x</i>	The PVC number for the source.
<i>pvc_y</i>	The PVC number that the source PVC will be bound to.
<i>status</i>	Display a table for PVC binding group.
<i>-1</i>	It means to clear specific PVC binding.

Example

```
> adsl pvcbinding 3 5
set done. bind pvc3 to pvc5.
```

The above example means PVC3 has been bound to PVC5.

```
> adsl pvcbinding 3 -1
clear pvc-1 binding
```

The above example means the PVC3 binding group has been removed.

Telnet Command: adsl inventory

This command is used to display information about CO or CPE.

Syntax

`adsl inventory [co/cpe]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>co</i>	It means DSLAM (Digital Subscriber Line Access Multiplexer) or CO (Central Office).
<i>cpe</i>	It means CPE (Customer Premise Equipment).

Example

```
> adsl inventory co
xDSL inventory info only available in showtime.
> adsl inventory cpe
G.994 vendor ID           : 0XB5004946544E5444
  G.994.1 country code    : 0XB500
  G.994.1 provider code   : IFTN
  G.994.1 vendor info     : 0X5444
```

```

System vendor ID      : 0XB5004946544E0000
  System country code : 0XB500
  System provider code : IFTN
  System vendor info   : 0X000
Version number       : 3.8.2_RC4a_STD
Version number(16 octets) : 0X332E382E325F524334615F5354440000
Self-test result     : PASS
Transmission mode capability : 0X40004004C010400
>

```

Telnet Command: csm appe prof

Commands under CSM allow you to set CSM profile to define policy profiles for different policy of IM (Instant Messenger)/P2P (Peer to Peer) application.

“csm appe prof “ is used to configure the APP Enforcement Profile name. Such profile will be applied in Default Rule of Firewall>>General Setup for filtering.

Syntax

```
csm appe prof -i INDEX [-v | -n NAME|setdefault]
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>INDEX</i>	Specify the index number of CSM profile, from 1 to 32.
-v	View the configuration of the CSM profile.
-n	Set a name for the CSM profile.
<i>NAME</i>	Specify a name for the CSM profile, less than 15 characters.
<i>setdefault</i>	Reset to default settings.

Example

```

> csm appe prof -i 1 -n games
The name of APPE Profile 1 was setted.

```

Telnet Command: csm appe set

It is used to configure group settings for IM/P2P/Protocol and Others in APP Enforcement Profile.

Syntax

```
csm appe set -i INDEX [-v GROUP| -e AP_IDX | -d AP_IDX| -a AP_IDX [ACTION]]
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>INDEX</i>	Specify the index number of CSM profile, from 1 to 32.
-v	View the IM/P2P/Protocol and Others configuration of the CSM profile.
-e	Enable to block specific application.
-d	Disable to block specific application.
-a	Set the action of specific application
<i>GROUP</i>	Specify the category of the application. Available options are: IM, P2P, Protocol and Others.

<i>AP_IDX</i>	Each application has independent index number for identification in CLI command. Specify the index number of the application here. If you have no idea of the index number, do the following (Take IM as an example): Type "csm appe set -i 1 -v IM", the system will list all of the index numbers of the applications categorized under IM.
<i>ACTION</i>	Specify the action of the application, 0 or 1. 0: Block. All of the applications meet the CSM rule will be blocked. 1: Pass. All of the applications meet the CSM rule will be passed.

Example

```
>csm appe set -i 1 -a 1 1
Profile 1 - : <NULL> action set to Pass.
>
```

Telnet Command: csm appe show

It is used to display group (IM/P2P/Protocol and Others) information APP Enforcement Profile.

Syntax

csm appe show [-a/-i/-p/-t/-m]

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>-a</i>	View the configuration status for All groups.
<i>-i</i>	View the configuration status of IM group.
<i>-p</i>	View the configuration status of P2P group.
<i>-t</i>	View the configuration status of protocol group.
<i>-m</i>	View the configuration status of Others group.

Example

```
>csm appe show -t

      Type      Index      Name      Version  Advance
Advanced Option: (M)essage, (F)ile Transfer, (G)ame, (C)onference, and (O)ther
Activities
-----
      PROTOCOL      52      DB2
      PROTOCOL      53      DNS
      PROTOCOL      54      FTP
      PROTOCOL      55      HTTP      1.1
      PROTOCOL      56      IMAP      4.1
      PROTOCOL      57      IMAP STARTTLS      4.1
      PROTOCOL      58      IRC      2.4.0      .....
```

Telnet Command: csm appe config

It is used to display the configuration status (enabled or disabled) for IM/P2P/Protocol/Other applications.

Syntax

`csm appe config -v INDEX [-i/-p/-t/-m]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>INDEX</i>	Specify the index number of CSM profile, from 1 to 32.
<i>-i</i>	View the configuration status of IM group.
<i>-p</i>	View the configuration status of P2P group.
<i>-t</i>	View the configuration status of protocol group.
<i>-m</i>	View the configuration status of Others group.

Example

```
> csm appe config -v 1 -m
Group      Type      Index      Name      Enable      A
vance Enable
Advance abbreviation: Message, File Transfer, Game, Conference, and Other
Advance abbreviation: : M, F, G, C, and O
-----
OTHERS     TUNNEL    75         DNSCrypt   Disable
OTHERS     TUNNEL    76         DynaPass   Disable
OTHERS     TUNNEL    77         FreeU      Disable
OTHERS     TUNNEL    78         HTTP Proxy Disable
OTHERS     TUNNEL    79         HTTP Tunnel Disable
OTHERS     TUNNEL    80         Hamachi    Disable
OTHERS     TUNNEL    81         Hotspot Shield Disable
OTHERS     TUNNEL    82         MS Teredo  Disable
OTHERS     TUNNEL    83         PGPNet     Disable
OTHERS     TUNNEL    84         Ping Tunnel Disable
.
.
.
-----
Total 66 APPs
>
```

Telnet Command: csm appe interface

It is used to configure APPE signature download interface.

Syntax

`csm appe interface [AUTO/WAN#]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>AUTO</i>	Vigor router specifies WAN interface automatically.
<i>WAN</i>	Specify the WAN interface for signature downloading.

Example

```
> csm appe interface wan1
Download interface is set as "WAN1" now.
> csm appe interface auto
Download interface is set as "auto-selected" now.
```

Telnet Command: csm appe email

It is used to set notification e-mail for APPE signature based on the settings configured in System Maintenance>>SysLog/Mail Alert Setup (in which, the box of APPE Signature is checked under Enable E-Mail Alert).

Syntax

csm appe email [-e/-d/-s]

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-e	Enable notification e-mail mechanism.
-d	Disable notification e-mail mechanism.
-s	Send an example e-mail.

Example

```
> csm appe email -e
Enable APPE email.
```

Telnet Command: csm ucf

It is used to configure settings for URL control filter profile.

csm ucf show

csm ucf setdefault

csm ucf msg *MSG*

csm ucf obj *INDEX* [-n *PROFILE_NAME* | -I [*P|B|A|N*] | *uac* | *wf*]

csm ucf obj *INDEX* -n *PROFILE_NAME*

csm ucf obj *INDEX* -p *VALUE*

csm ucf obj *INDEX* -I *P|B|A|N*

csm ucf obj *INDEX* *uac*

csm ucf obj *INDEX* *wf*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>show</i>	Display all of the profiles.
<i>setdefault</i>	Return to default settings for all of the profile.
<i>msg</i> <i>MSG</i>	Set the administration message. MSG means the content (less than 255 characters) of the message itself.
<i>obj</i>	Specify the object for the profile.
<i>INDEX</i>	Specify the index number of CSM profile, from 1 to 8.
-n	Set the profile name.
<i>PROFILE_NAME</i>	Specify the name of the profile (less than 16 characters)
-p	Set the priority (defined by the number specified in VALUE) for the profile.
<i>VALUE</i>	Number 0 to 3 represent different conditions.

	0: It means Bundle: Pass. 1: It means Bundle: Block. 2: It means Either: URL Access Control First. 3: It means Either: Web Feature First.
<i>-l</i>	It means the log type of the profile. They are: P: Pass, B: Block, A: All, N: None
<i>MSG</i>	Specify the Administration Message, less then 255 characters
<i>uac</i>	Set URL Access Control part.
<i>wf</i>	Set Web Feature part.

Example

```
> csm ucf obj 1 -n game -l B
Profile Index: 1
Profile Name:[game]
Log:[none]
Priority Select : [Bundle : Pass]

[ ]Enable URL Access Control
Action:[pass]
[ ]Prevent web access from IP address.
No  Obj NO.   Object Name
-----
No  Grp NO.   Group Name
-----
```

Telnet Command: csm ucf obj INDEX uac

It means to configure the settings regarding to URL Access Control (uac).

csm ucf obj *INDEX* uac -v

csm ucf obj *INDEX* uac -e

csm ucf obj *INDEX* uac -d

csm ucf obj *INDEX* uac -a P|B

csm ucf obj *INDEX* uac -i E|D

csm ucf obj *INDEX* uac -o *KEY_WORD_Object_Index*

csm ucf obj *INDEX* uac -g *KEY_WORD_Group_Index*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>INDEX</i>	Specify the index number of CSM profile, from 1 to 8.
-v	View the protocol configuration of the CSM profile.
-e	Enable the function of URL Access Control.
-d	Disable the function of URL Access Control.

<i>-a</i>	Set the action of specific application, P or B. B: Block. The web access meets the URL Access Control will be blocked. P: Pass. The web access meets the URL Access Control will be passed.
<i>-i</i>	Prevent the web access from any IP address. E: Enable the function. The Internet access from any IP address will be blocked. D: Disable the function.
<i>-o</i>	Set the keyword object.
<i>KEY_WORD_Object_Index</i>	Specify the index number of the object profile.
<i>-g</i>	Set the keyword group.
<i>KEY_WORD_Group_Index</i>	Specify the index number of the group profile.

Example

```

> csm ucf obj 1 uac -i E
Profile Index: 1
Profile Name:[game]
Log:[none]
Priority Select : [Bundle : Pass]

[ ]Enable URL Access Control
Action:[pass]
[v]Prevent web access from IP address.
  No  Obj NO.   Object Name
-----
  No  Grp NO.   Group Name
-----

> csm ucf obj 1 uac -a B
Profile Index: 1
Profile Name:[game]
Log:[none]
Priority Select : [Bundle : Pass]

[ ]Enable URL Access Control
Action:[block]
[v]Prevent web access from IP address.
  No  Obj NO.   Object Name
-----
  No  Grp NO.   Group Name
-----

```

Telnet Command: csm ucf obj INDEX wf

It means to configure the settings regarding to Web Feature (wf).

csm ucf obj *INDEX wf -v*

csm ucf obj *INDEX wf -e*

csm ucf obj *INDEX wf -d*

csm ucf obj *INDEX wf -a P/B*

csm ucf obj *INDEX wf -s WEB_FEATURE*

csm ucf obj *INDEX wf -u WEB_FEATURE*

csm ucf obj *INDEX wf -f File_Extension_Object_index*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>INDEX</i>	Specify the index number of CSM profile, from 1 to 8.
<i>-v</i>	View the protocol configuration of the CSM profile.
<i>-e</i>	Enable the restriction of web feature.
<i>-d</i>	Disable the restriction of web feature.
<i>-a</i>	Set the action of web feature, P or B. B: Block. The web access meets the web feature will be blocked. P: Pass. The web access meets the web feature will be passed.
<i>-s</i>	Enable the the Web Feature configuration. Features available for configuration are: c: Cookie p: Proxy u: Upload
<i>-u</i>	Cancel the web feature configuration.
<i>-f</i>	Set the file extension object index number.
<i>File_Extension_Object_index</i>	Type the index number (1 to 8) for the file extension object.

Example

```
> csm ucf obj 1 wf -s c
Profile Index: 1
Profile Name:[game]
Log:[none]
Priority Select : [Bundle : Pass]

[ ]Enable URL Access Control
Action:[block]
[v] Prevent web access from IP address.
No Obj NO.    Object Name
-----

No Grp NO.    Group Name
-----

[ ]Enable Restrict Web Feature
Action:[pass]
```

File Extension Object Index : [0]	Profile Name : []
[V] Cookie [] Proxy [] Upload	

Telnet Command: csm wcf

It means to configure the settings regarding to web control filter (wcf).

csm wcf show

csm wcf look

csm wcf cache

csm wcf server WCF_SERVER

csm wcf msg MSG

csm wcf setdefault

csm wcf obj INDEX -v

csm wcf obj INDEX -a P/B

csm wcf obj INDEX -n PROFILE_NAME

csm wcf obj INDEX -I N/P/B/A

csm wcf obj INDEX -o KEY_WORD Object Index

csm wcf obj INDEX -g KEY_WORD Group Index

csm wcf obj INDEX -w E/D/P/B

csm wcf obj INDEX -s CATEGORY/WEB_GROUP

csm wcf obj INDEX -u CATEGORY/WEB_GROUP

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>show</i>	Display the web content filter profiles.
<i>Look</i>	Display the license information of WCF.
<i>Cache</i>	Set the cache level for the profile.
<i>Server WCF_SERVER</i>	Set web content filter server.
<i>Msg MSG</i>	Set the administration message. MSG means the content (less than 255 characters) of the message itself.
<i>setdefault</i>	Return to default settings for all of the profile.
<i>obj</i>	Specify the object profile.
<i>INDEX</i>	Specify the index number of web content filter profile, from 1 to 8.
<i>- v</i>	View the web content filter profile.
<i>-a</i>	Set the action of web content filter profile, P or B. B: Block. The web access meets the web feature will be blocked. P: Pass. The web access meets the web feature will be passed.
<i>-n</i>	Set the profile name.
<i>PROFILE_NAME</i>	Specify the name of the profile (less than 16 characters)
<i>-I</i>	It means the log type of the profile. They are: P: Pass, B: Block, A: All, N: None
<i>-o</i>	Set the keyword object.

<i>KEY_WORD_Object_Index</i>	Specify the index number of the object profile.
<i>-g</i>	Set the keyword group.
<i>KEY_WORD_Group_Index</i>	Specify the index number of the group profile.
<i>-w</i>	Set the action for the black and white list. E:Enable, D:Disable, P:Pass, B:Block
<i>-s</i>	It means to choose the items under CATEGORY or WEB_GROUP.
<i>-u</i>	It means to discard items under CATEGORY or WEB_GROUP.
WEB_GROUP	Child_Protection, Leisure, Business, Chating, Computer Internet, Other
CATEGORY	Includes: "Advertisement & Pop-Ups", "Alcohol & Tobacco", "Anonymizers", "Arts", "Business", "Transportation", "Chat", "Forums & Newsgroups", "Compromised", "Computers & Technology", "Criminal & Activity", "Dating & Personals", "Down sites", "Education", "Entertainment", "Finance", "Gambling", "Games", "Government", "Hate & Intolerance", "Health & Medicine", "Illegal Drug", "Job Search", "Streaming Media & Downloads", "News", "Non-profits & NGOs", "Nudity", "Persional Sites", "Phishing & Fraud", "Politics", "Pornography & Sexually explicit", "Real Estate", "Religion", "Restaurants & Dining", "Search engines & Portals", "Shopping", "Social Networking", "Spam sites", "Sports", "Malware", "Translators", "Travel", "Violence", "Weapons", "Web-Based Email", "General", "Leisure & Recreation", "Botnets", "Cults", "Fashion & Beauty", "Greeting Cards", "Hacking", "Illegal Softwares", "Image Sharing", "Information Security", "Instant Messaging", "Network Errors", "Parked Domains", "Peer-to-Peer", "Private IP Address", "School Cheating", "Sex Education", "Tasteless", "Child Abuse Images", "Uncategorised Sites"

Example

```
> csm wcf obj 1 -n test_wcf
Profile Index: 1
Profile Name:[test_wcf]
[ ]White/Black list
Action:[block]
  No  Obj NO.   Object Name
  ---
  No  Grp NO.   Group Name
  ---
Action:[block]
Log:[block]
-----
child Protection Group:
  [v]Alcohol & Tobacco      [v]Criminal & Activity   [v]Gambling
  [v]Hate & Intolerance     [v]Illegal Drug         [v]Nudity
  [v]Pornography & Sexually explicit [v]Violence
  [v]Weapons

  [v]School Cheating       [v]Sex Education        [v]Tasteless
  [v]Child Abuse Images

-----
leisure Group:
  [ ]Entertainment          [ ]Games                 [ ]Sports
  [ ]Travel                 [ ]Leisure & Recreation [ ]Fashion & Beauty
.
.
>
```

Telnet Command: csm dnsf

It means to configure the settings regarding to DNS filter.

Syntax

```
csm dnsf enable ON/OFF
csm dnsf syslog N/P/B/A
csm dnsf wcf <INDEX>
csm dnsf ucf <INDEX>
csm dnsf time CACHE_TIME
csm dnsf blockpage show/on/off
csm dnsf profile_show
csm dnsf profile_edit INDEX
csm dnsf profile_edit INDEX -n PROFILE_NAME
csm dnsf profile_edit INDEX -I P/B/A
csm dnsf profile_edit INDEX -w WCF_PROFILE
```


`csm dnsf profile_edit INDEX -u UCF_PROFILE`

`csm dnsf profile_edit INDEX -c CACHE_TIME`

`csm dnsf profile_setdefault`

`csm dnsf local_bw <e/d/p/b/a/g/o/s/c>`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>enable</i>	Enable or disable DNS Filter. ON: enable. OFF: disable.
<i>syslog</i>	Determine the content of records transmitting to Syslog. P: Pass. Records for the packets passing through DNS filter will be sent to Syslog. B: Block. Records for the packets blocked by DNS filter will be sent to Syslog. A: All. Records for the packets passing through or blocked by DNS filter will be sent to Syslog. N: None. No record will be sent to Syslog.
<i>wcf</i> <INDEX>	Specify a WCF profile (1 to 8) as the base of DNS filtering. Type a number to indicate the index number of WCF profile (1 is first profile, 2 is second profile, and so on ...).
<i>ucf</i> <INDEX>	Specify a UCF profile (1 to 8) as the base of DNS filtering. Type a number to indicate the index number of UCF profile (1 is first profile, 2 is second profile, and so on ...).
<i>cachetime</i> <CACHE_TIME>	CACHE_TIME: It means to set the time for cache to live (available values are 1 to 24; 1 is one hour, 2 is two hours, and so on ...) for DNS filter. OFF is no cache ; AUTO is using TTL from pkt.
<i>blockpage</i>	DNS sends block page for redirect port. When a web page is blocked by DNS filter, the router system will send a message page to describe that the page is not allowed to be visited. ON: Enable the function of displaying message page. OFF: Disable the function of displaying message page. SHOW: Display the function of displaying message page is ON or OFF.
<i>profile_show</i>	Display the table of the DNS filter profile.
<i>profile_edit</i>	Modify the content of the DNS filter profile.
<i>-n</i> PROFILE_NAME	PROFILE_NAME: Type the name of the DNS filter profile that you want to modify.
<i>-l</i> N P B A	Specify the log type of the profile. P: Pass. B: Block. A: All. N: None.
<i>-w</i> WCF_PROFILE	WCF_PROFILE: Type the index number of the WCF profile.
<i>-u</i> UCF_PROFILE	UCF_PROFILE: Type the index number of the UCF profile.
<i>-c</i> CACHE_TIME	-c means to set the cache time for DNS filter. CACHE_TIME: It means to set the time for cache to live (available values are 1 to 24; 1 is one hour, 2 is two hours, and so on ...) for DNS filter.
<i>profile_setdefault</i>	Reset to factory default setting.
<i>local_bw</i> e/d/p/b/s/c	Set the Black/White List of DNS Filter Local Setting. e: Enable the function of black/white list. d: Disable the function of black/white list. p: Set the action as "Pass". b: Set the action as "Block".

	s: Show the config setting. c: Clear the config setting and reset to factory default settings.
<i>local_bw a</i> <type index> <START_IP><END/MASK_IP>	Set the address type for Black/White List of DNS Filter. type index: Enter 0/1/2/3/4. In which, 0=mask, 1=single, 2=any, 3=range, 4=group and objects <START_IP>: Enter an IP address as a starting point. <END/MASK_IP>: Enter an IP address as an ending point.
<i>local_bw g</i> <item number><group index>	Select the group index for Black/White List of DNS Filter. item_number: 1 or 2 (group 1 or group 2) group_index: 1 to 192
<i>local_bw o</i> <item number><group index>	Select the object index for Black/White List of DNS Filter. item_number: 1 or 2 (object 1 or object 2) object_index: 1 to 32

Example

```

> csm dnsf local_bw e 1
Enable the Block and White List.
> csm dnsf enable on
DNS Filter enable!
> csm dnsf wcf 1
dns service set up!!!
> csm dnsf cachetime auto
use TTL from pkt!!!
> csm dnsf local_bw a 0 192.168.1.20 255.255.255.0
Address Type: 0:mask, 1:single, 2:any, 3:range, 4:object and group
Set the [MASK] Address type
> csm dnsf profile_edit 1 -n testformarket
Profile Index: 1
Profile Name:[testformarket]

Log:[block]

WCF Profile Index: 0

UCF Profile Index: 0

```

Telnet Command: ddns enable

Enable/disable the DDNS service.

Syntax

ddns enable <0/1>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>enable</i> <0/1>	Enable or disable DDNS service. 1: enable. 0: disable.

Example

```

>ddns enable 1
Enable Dynamic DNS Setup

```

```
>
```

Telnet Command: ddns set

This command allows users to set Dynamic DNS account.

Syntax

ddns set *option* <value>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-i <value>	It means index number of Dynamic DNS Account. <value>=1~6
-E <value>	It means to enable /disable Dynamic DNS Account. <value>=0~1 0: Disable 1: Enable
-W <value>	It means to specify WAN Interface. <value>=1~4 1: WAN1 First 2: WAN1 Only 3: WAN2 First 4: WAN2 Only 5: WAN3 First 6: WAN3 Only example: To set WAN Interface: WAN1 First
-L <value>	It means to type Login Name. [value]: limit up to 64 characters
-P <value>	It means to type Password. [value]: limit up to 24 characters
-C <value>	It means to enable /disable Wildcards. <value>=0~1 0: Disable 1: Enable
-B <value>	It means to enable / disable Backup MX. <value>=0~1 0: Disable 1: Enable
-M <value>	It means to type Mail Extender. [value]: limit up to 60 characters
-R <value>	It means to type Determine Real WAN IP. <value>=0~1 0: WAN IP, 1: Internet IP
-S <value>	It means to specify Service Provider. If user want to set User-Defined page, value must select 1. <value>= 1~19 1: User-Defined 2: 3322 DDNS (www.3322.org) 3: ChangeIP.com (www.changeip.com) 4: ddns.com.cn (www.ddns.com.cn) 5: DtDNS (www.dtdns.com) 6: dyn.com (www.dyn.com) 7: DynAccess (www.dynaccess.com) 8: dynami.co.za (www.dynami.co.za) 9: freedns.afraid.org (freedns.afraid.org) 10: NO-IP.COM Free (www.no-ip.com) 11:.opendns.com (www.opendns.com) 12: OVH (www.ovh.com)

	13: Strato (www.strato.eu) 14: TwoDNS (www.twodns.de) 15: TZO (www.tzo.com) 16: ubddns.org (ubddns.org) 17: Viettel DDNS (vddns.vn) 18: vigorddns.com (www.vigorddns.com) 19: ZoneEdit DDNS (dynamic.zoneedit.com)
<i>T <value></i>	It means to type Service Type. <value>= 1~3 1: Dynamic 2: Custom 3: Static
<i>-D <Host Name> <sub Domain Name></i>	It means to type Domain Name. i.e: Account index 1 setting Domain Name for Dynamic Service Type >> ddns set -i 1 -T 1 -D "host ddns.com.cn" i.e: Account index 2 setting Domain Name for Custom Service Type >> ddns set -i 2 -T 2 -D "domain name" i.e: Account index 3 setting Domain Name for Static Service Type >> ddns set -i 3 -T 3 -D "domain name"
<i>-H <value></i>	It means to type User-Defined Provider Host. <value>= limit up to 64 characters
<i>-A <value></i>	It means to type User-Defined Service API. <value>= limit up to 256 characters
<i>-a <value></i>	It means to type User-Defined Auth Type. <value>=0-1 0: basic 1: URL
<i>-N <value></i>	It means to type User-Defined Connection Type. <value>=0-1 0: Http 1: Https
<i>-O <value></i>	It means to type User-Defined Server Response. <value>: limit up to 32 characters

Example

```
> ddns set -i 1 -S 6 -T 1 -D "hostname dnsalias.net" -L user1 -P pwd1
> Save OK
```

Telnet Command: ddns log

Displays the DDNS log.

Example

```
> ddns log
>
```

Telnet Command: ddns time

Sets and displays the DDNS time.

Syntax

ddns time <update in minutes>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>Update in minutes</i>	Type the value as DDNS time. The range is from 1 to 14400.

Example

```
> ddns time
ddns time <update in minutes>
Valid: 1 ~ 14400
%Now: 14400
> ddns time 1000
ddns time <update in minutes>
Valid: 1 ~ 14400
%Now: 1000
```

Telnet Command: ddns forceupdate

This command will update DDNS automatically.

Example

```
> ddns forceupdate
Now updating DDNS ...
Please check result by using command "ddns log"
>
```

Telnet Command: ddns setdefault

This command will return DDS with factory default settings.

Example

```
> ddns setdefault
> Set to Factory Default
```

Telnet Command: ddns show

This command allows users to check the content of selected DDNS account.

Syntax

ddns show -i <value>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>-i <value></i>	Display the content of selected DDNS account by entering the index number of the account. <value>=1-6

Example

```
> ddns show -i 1
-----
Index: 1
[ ] Enable Dynamic DNS Account
WAN Interface: WAN1 First
Service Provider: dyn.com (www.dyn.com)
Service Type: Dynamic
```

```

Domain Name: [].[.]
Login Name:
[ ] Wildcards
[ ] Backup MX
Mail Extender:
Determine Real WAN IP: WAN IP
>

```

Telnet Command: dos

This command allows users to configure the settings for DoS defense system.

dos [-V | D | A]

dos [-s ATTACK_F [THRESHOLD][TIMEOUT]]

dos [-a | e [ATTACK_F][ATTACK_0] | d [ATTACK_F][ATTACK_0]]

dos -o <LOG_TYPE> | p <LOG_TYPE> | I <LOG_TYPE>

dos -P <add4/remove4> <type> <value> | <add6/remove6> <type> <value> | <show> |
remove4 all | remove6 all>

dos -B <add4/remove4> <type> <value> | <add6/remove6> <type> <value> | <show> |
remove4 all | remove6 all>

dos -o <0/1>

dos -p <0/1>

dos -I <1/2/3>

dos -f <0/1/show>

dos -i <1/2/3/4/show>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-V	View the configuration of DoS defense system.
-D	Deactivate the DoS defense system.
-A	Activate the DoS defense system.
-s	Enable the defense function for a specific attack and set its parameter(s).
ATTACK_F	Specify the name of flooding attack(s) or portscan, e.g., synflood, udpflood, icmpflood, or postscan.
THRESHOLD	It means the packet rate (packet/second) that a flooding attack will be detected. Set a value larger than 20.
TIMEOUT	It means the time (seconds) that a flooding attack will be blocked. Set a value larger than 5.
-a	Enable the defense function for all attacks listed in ATTACK_0.
-e	Enable defense function for a specific attack(s).
ATTACK_0	Specify a name of the following attacks: ip_option, tcp_flag, land, teardrop, smurf, pingofdeath, traceroute, icmp_frag, syn_frag, unknow_proto, fraggle.
-d	Disable the defense function for a specific attack(s).
-P <add4/remove4> <type> <value> <add6/remove6> <type> <value> <show> remove4 all remove6 all>	Add or remove the IPv4/IPv6 address in the white passing IP list. add4/remove4: Add /remove an IPv4/IPv6 address to/from the whitelist. add6/remove6: Add/remove an IPv6 address to/from the whitelist. Type: Two types, -i and -c. In which, "-i" means the IPv4 address and "-c" means the country object. Value: Enter the IP address for -i; enter the index number of the

	country object profile. Show: Display the whitelist.
<i>-B <add4/remove4> <type> <value> <add6/remove6> <type> <value> <show> remove4 all remove6 all</i>	Add or remove the IPv4/IPv6 address in the black blocking IP list. add4/remove4: Add /remove an IPv4/IPv6 address to/from the blacklist. add6/remove6: Add/remove an IPv6 address to/from the blacklist. Type: Two types, -i and -c. In which, "-i" means the IPv4 address and "-c" means the country object. Value: Enter the IP address for -i; enter the index number of the country object profile. Show: Display the blacklist.
<i>dos -o <LOG_TYPE></i>	Enable/Disable dos defense log. <LOG_TYPE>: Enter 0 or 1. 0: Disable 1: Enable
<i>dos -p <LOG_TYPE></i>	Enable/Disable spoofing defense log. <LOG_TYPE>: Enter 0 or 1. 0: Disable 1: Enable
<i>dos -l <LOG_TYPE></i>	Enable/Disable dos defense black/white list log. <LOG_TYPE>: Enter 0 to 3. 0: None 1: White list 2: Black List 3: All
<i>dos -f <0/1/show></i>	Set priority of Whitelist/Blacklist. <0/1/show>: 0:WhiteList 1:BlackList
<i>dos -i <1/2/3/4/show></i>	Set Whitelist/Blacklist log sending time interval. <1/2/3/4/show> 1:30 2:60 3:180 4:300 seconds

Example

```
>dos -A
The Dos Defense system is Activated
>dos -s synflood 50 10
Synflood is enabled! Threshold=50 <pke/sec> timeout=10 <pke/sec>
```

Telnet Command: exit

Type this command will leave telnet window.

Telnet Command: Internet

This command allows you to configure detailed settings for WAN connection.

Syntax

internet *-W n -M n [-<command> <parameter> | ...]*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>-W n</i>	W means to set WAN interface. 1=WAN1, 2=WAN2,.... Default is WAN1.
<i>-M n</i>	M means to set Internet Access Mode (Mandatory) and n means different modes (represented by 0 - 3) n=0: Offline n=1: PPPoE n=2: Dynamic IP

	<p>n=3: Static IP n=4: PPTP with Dynamic IP, n=5: PPTP with Static IP, n=6: L2TP with Dynamic IP n=7: L2TP with Static IP n=A: 3G/4G USB Modem(PPP mode), n=B: 3G/4G USB Modem(DHCP mode)</p>
<code><command><parameter>[...]</code>	The available commands with parameters are listed below. <code>[...]</code> means that you can type in several commands in one line.
<code>-S <isp name></code>	Set ISP Name (max. 23 characters).
<code>-P <on/off></code>	Enable PPPoE Service.
<code>-u <username></code>	Set username (max. 49 characters) for Internet accessing.
<code>-p <password></code>	Set password (max. 49 characters) for Internet accessing.
<code>-a n</code>	It means to set PPP Authentication Type and n means different types (represented by 0-1). n=0: PAP/CHAP (this is default setting) n=1: PAP Only
<code>-r <0/1></code>	It means to enable / disable the function of PPPoE pass-through. 0: disable 1: enable
<code>-t n</code>	Set connection duration and n means different conditions. n=-1: Always-on n=1 ~ 999: Idle time for offline (default 180 seconds)
<code>-i <ip address></code>	It means that <i>PPPoE server</i> will assign an IP address specified here for CPE (PPPoE client). If you type 0.0.0.0 as the <code><ip address></code> , ISP will assign suitable IP address for you. However, if you type an IP address here, the router will use that one as a fixed IP.
<code>-w <ip address></code>	It means to assign WAN IP address for such connection. Please type an IP address here for WAN port.
<code>-n <netmask></code>	It means to assign netmask for WAN connection. You have to type 255.255.255.xxx (x is changeable) as the netmask for WAN port.
<code>-g <gateway></code>	Assign gateway IP for such WAN connection.
<code>-V</code>	View Internet Access profile.
<code>-C <sim pin code></code>	Set (PPP mode) SIM PIN code (max. 15 characters).
<code>-O <init string></code>	Set (PPP mode) Modem Initial String (max. 47 characters).
<code>-T <init string2></code>	Set (PPP mode) Modem Initial String2 (max. 47 characters)
<code>-D <dial string></code>	Set (PPP mode) Modem Dial String (max. 31 characters).
<code>-v <service name></code>	Set (PPP mode) Service Name (max. 23 characters).
<code>-m <ppp username></code>	Set (PPP mode) PPP Username (max. 63 characters).
<code>-o <ppp password></code>	Set (PPP mode) PPP Password (max. 62 characters).
<code>-e n</code>	Set (PPP mode) PPP Authentication Type. n= 0: PAP/CHAP (default), 1: PAP Only
<code>-q n</code>	(PPP mode) Index(1-15) in Schedule Setup-One
<code>-x n</code>	(PPP mode) Index(1-15) in Schedule Setup-Two
<code>-y n</code>	(PPP mode) Index(1-15) in Schedule Setup-Three
<code>-z n</code>	(PPP mode) Index(1-15) in Schedule Setup-Four

<code>-Q <mode></code>	Set (PPP mode or DHCP mode) WAN Connection Detection Mode. <mode> 0: ARP Detect; 1: Ping Detect
<code>-I <ping ip></code>	Set (PPP mode or DHCP mode) WAN Connection Detection Ping IP. <ping ip>= ppp.qqq.rrr.sss: WAN Connection Detection Ping IP
<code>-L n</code>	Set (PPP mode) WAN Connection Detection TTL (1-255) value.
<code>-R n</code>	Set (PPP mode) WAN Connection Detection Echo Interval secondes. n= 3 to 60.
<code>-E <sim pin code></code>	Set (DHCP mode) SIM PIN code (max. 19 characters).
<code>-G <mode></code>	Set (DHCP mode) Network Mode. <mode> 0: 4G/3G/2G; 1: 4G Only; 2: 3G Only; 3: 2G Only
<code>-N <apn name></code>	Set (DHCP mode) APN Name (max. 47 characters)
<code>-U n</code>	(DHCP mode) MTU(1000-1440)

Example

```
>internet -M 1 -S tcom -u username -p password -a 0 -t -1 -i 0.0.0.0
WAN1 Internet Mode set to PPPoE/PPPoA
WAN1 ISP Name set to tcom
WAN1 Username set to username
WAN1 Password set successful
WAN1 PPP Authentication Type set to PAP/CHAP
WAN1 Idle timeout set to always-on
WAN1 Gateway IP set to 0.0.0.0
> internet -V
WAN1 Internet Mode:PPPoE
ISP Name: tcom
Username: username
Authentication: PAP/CHAP
Idle Timeout: -1
WAN IP: Dynamic IP
> internet -W 1 -M 1 -u link1 -p link1 -a 0
You are going to watching and setting in WAN 1
WAN1 Internet Mode set to PPPoE/PPPoA
WAN1 Username set to link1
WAN1 Password set successful
WAN1 PPP Authentication Type set to PAP/CHAP
>
```

Telnet Command: ip pubsubnet

This command allows users to enable or disable the IP routing subnet for your router.

Syntax

`ip pubsubnet <Enable/Disable>`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>Enable</i>	Enable the function.
<i>Disable</i>	Disable the function.

Example

```
> ip 2ndsubnet enable
public subnet enabled!
```

Telnet Command: ip pubaddr

This command allows to set the IP routed subnet for the router.

Syntax

ip pubaddr ?

ip pubaddr <public subnet IP address>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
?	Display an IP address which allows users set as the public subnet IP address.
<i>public subnet IP address</i>	Specify an IP address. The system will set the one that you specified as the public subnet IP address.

Example

```
> ip pubaddr ?
% ip addr <public subnet IP address>
% Now: 192.168.0.1

> ip pubaddr 192.168.2.5
% Set public subnet IP address done !!!
```

Telnet Command: ip pubmask

This command allows users to set the mask for IP routed subnet of your router.

Syntax

ip pubmask ?

ip pubmask <public subnet mask>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
?	Display an IP address which allows users set as the public subnet mask.
<i>public subnet IP address</i>	Specify a subnet mask. The system will set the one that you specified as the public subnet mask.

Example

```
> ip pubmask ?
```

```

% ip pubmask <public subnet mask>
% Now: 255.255.255.0

> ip pubmask 255.255.0.0
% Set public subnet mask done !!!

```

Telnet Command: ip aux

This command is used for configuring WAN IP Alias.

Syntax

```
ip aux add [IP] [Join to NAT Pool][wanX]
```

```
ip aux remove [index]
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>add</i>	Create a new WAN IP address.
<i>remove</i>	Delete an existed WAN IP address.
<i>IP</i>	It means the auxiliary WAN IP address.
<i>Join to NAT Pool</i>	0 (disable) or 1 (enable).
<i>wanX</i>	Add or remove an address for WAN interface.
<i>index</i>	Type the index number of the table displayed on your screen.

Example

```

> ip aux add 192.168.1.65 1
% 192.168.1.65 has added in index 3.

```

Telnet Command: ip addr

This command allows users to set/add a specified LAN IP your router.

Syntax

```
ip addr [IP address]
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>IP address</i>	The LAN IP address.

Example

```

>ip addr 192.168.50.1
% Set IP address OK !!!

```



Info

When the LAN IP address is changed, the start IP address of DHCP server are still the same. To make the IP assignment of the DHCP server being consistent with this new IP address (they should be in the same network segment), the IP address of the PC must be fixed with the same LAN IP

address (network segment) set by this command for accessing into the web user interface of the router. Later, modify the start addresses for the DHCP server.

Telnet Command: ip nmask

This command allows users to set/add a specified netmask for your router.

Syntax

`ip nmask [IP netmask]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>IP netmask</i>	The netmask of LAN IP.

Example

```
> ip nmask 255.255.0.0
% Set IP netmask OK !!!
```

Telnet Command: ip arp

ARP displays the matching condition for IP and MAC address.

Syntax

`ip arp add [IP address] [MAC address] [LAN or WAN]`

`ip arp del [IP address] [LAN or WAN]`

`ip arp flush`

`ip arp status`

`ip arp accept [0/1/2/3/4/5status]`

`ip arp setCacheLife [time]`

In which, **arp add** allows users to add a new IP address into the ARP table; **arp del** allows users to remove an IP address; **arp flush** allows users to clear arp cache; **arp status** allows users to review current status for the arp table; **arp accept** allows to accept or reject the source /destination MAC address; **arp setCacheLife** allows users to configure the duration in which ARP caches can be stored on the system. If **ip arp setCacheLife** is set with "60", it means you have an ARP cache at 0 second. Sixty seconds later without any ARP messages received, the system will think such ARP cache is expired. The system will issue a few ARP request to see if this cache is still valid.

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>IP address</i>	It means the LAN IP address.
<i>MAC address</i>	It means the MAC address of your router.
<i>LAN or WAN</i>	It indicates the direction for the arp function.
<i>0/1/2/3/4/5</i>	0: disable to accept illegal source mac address 1: enable to accept illegal source mac address 2: disable to accept illegal dest mac address 3: enable to accept illegal dest mac address 4: Decline VRRP mac into arp table 5: Accept VRRP mac into arp table

	status: display the setting status.
<i>Time</i>	Available settings will be 10, 20, 30,....2550 seconds.

Example

```

> ip arp accept status
Accept illegal source mac arp: disable

Accept illegal dest mac arp: disable

Accept VRRP mac into arp table: disable
> ip arp status
[ARP Table]
  Index IP Address      MAC Address          Netbios Name      Interface  VLAN
  Port
  1   192.168.1.5      00-05-5D-E4-D8-EE          LAN1
VLAN0  P1
>

```

Telnet Command: ip dhcpc

This command is available for WAN DHCP.

Syntax

`ip dhcpc option`

`ip dhcpc option -h/l`

`ip dhcpc option -d [idx]`

`ip dhcpc option -e [1 or 0] -w [wan unnumber] -c [option number] -v [option value]`

`ip dhcpc option -e [1 or 0] -w [wan unnumber] -c [option number] -x "[option value]"`

`ip dhcpc option -e [1 or 0] -w [wan unnumber] -c [option number] -a [option value]`

`ip dhcpc option -u [idx unnumber]`

`ip dhcpc release [wan number]`

`ip dhcpc renew [wan number]`

`ip dhcpc status`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>option</i>	It is an optional setting for DHCP server. -h: display usage -l: list all custom set DHCP options -d: delete custom dhcp client option by index number -e: enable/disable option feature, 1:enable, 0:disable -w: set WAN number (e.g., 1=WAN1) -a: set option value by address list -c: set option number: 0~255 -v: set option value by string -x: set option value by raw byte (hex) -u: update by index number
<i>release</i>	It means to release current WAN IP address.
<i>renew</i>	It means to renew the WAN IP address and obtain another new one.
<i>status</i>	It displays current status of DHCP client.

Example

```
>ip dhcpc status
I/F#3 DHCP Client Status:

DHCP Server IP      : 172.16.3.7
WAN Ipm             : 172.16.3.40
WAN Netmask         : 255.255.255.0
WAN Gateway         : 172.16.3.1
Primary DNS         : 168.95.192.1
Secondary DNS       : 0.0.0.0
Leased Time         : 259200
Leased Time T1      : 129600
Leased Time T2      : 226800
Leased Elapsed      : 259194
```

Leased Elapsed T1	: 129594
Leased Elapsed T2	: 226794

Telnet Command: ip ping

This command allows users to ping IP address of WAN1/WAN2 for verifying if the WAN connection is OK or not.

Syntax

`ip ping <IP address> [<AUTO/WAN1/WAN2/PVC3/PVC4/PVC5>] [<Source IP address>]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>IP address</i>	It means the WAN IP address.
<i>AUTO/WAN1/WAN2/PVC3/PVC4/PVC5></i>	It means the WAN port/PVC that the above IP address passes through.

Example

```
>ip ping 172.16.3.229 WAN1
Pinging 172.16.3.229 with 64 bytes of Data:
Receive reply from 172.16.3.229, time=0ms
Receive reply from 172.16.3.229, time=0ms
Receive reply from 172.16.3.229, time=0ms
Packets: Sent = 5, Received = 5, Lost = 0 <0% loss>
```

Telnet Command: ip tracert

This command allows users to trace the routes from the router to the host.

`ip tracert [Host/IP address] [WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4/WAN5] [Udp/Icmp]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>IP address</i>	The target IP address.
<i>WAN1/WAN2</i>	It means the WAN port that the above IP address passes through.
<i>Udp/Icmp</i>	The UDP or ICMP.

Example

```
>ip tracert 22.128.2.62 WAN1
Traceroute to 22.128.2.62, 30 hops max
 1  172.16.3.7  10ms
 2  172.16.1.2  10ms
 3  Request Time out.
 4  168.95.90.66  50ms
 5  211.22.38.134  50ms
 6  220.128.2.62  50ms
Trace complete
```

Telnet Command: ip telnet

This command allows users to access specified device by telnet.

Syntax

ip telnet [*IP address*][*Port*]

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>IP address</i>	Type the WAN or LAN IP address of the remote device.
<i>Port</i>	Type a port number (e.g., 23). Available settings: 0 ~65535.

Example

```
> ip telnet 172.17.3.252 23
>
```

Telnet Command: ip rip

This command allows users to set the RIP (routing information protocol) of IP.

Syntax

ip rip [*0/1/2*]

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>0/1/2</i>	0 means disable; 1 means LAN1 and 2 means IP Routed.

Example

```
> ip rip 1
%% Set RIP LAN1.
```

Telnet Command: ip wanrip

This command allows users to set the RIP (routing information protocol) of WAN IP.

Syntax

ip wanrip [*ifno*] -e [*0/1*]

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>ifno</i>	It means the connection interface. 1: WAN1,2: WAN2, 3: PVC3,4: PVC4,5: PVC5 Note: PVC3 ~PVC5 are virtual WANs.
-e	It means to disable or enable RIP setting for specified WAN interface. 1: Enable the function of setting RIP of WAN IP. 0: Disable the function.

Example


```

> ip wanrip ?
Valid ex:ip wanrip <ifno> -e <0/1>
<ifno> 1: WAN1,2: WAN2
       3: PVC3,4: PVC4,5: PVC5
-e <0/1> 0: disable, 1: enable
Now status:
WAN[1] Rip Protocol disable
WAN[2] Rip Protocol disable
WAN[3] Rip Protocol disable
WAN[4] Rip Protocol disable
WAN[5] Rip Protocol disable
> ip wanrip 5 -e 1
> ip wanrip ?
Valid ex:ip wanrip <ifno> -e <0/1>
<ifno> 1: WAN1,2: WAN2
       3: PVC3,4: PVC4,5: PVC5
-e <0/1> 0: disable, 1: enable
Now status:
WAN[1] Rip Protocol disable
WAN[2] Rip Protocol disable
WAN[3] Rip Protocol disable
WAN[4] Rip Protocol disable
WAN[5] Rip Protocol enable
>

```

Telnet Command: ip route

This command allows users to set static route.

Syntax

ip route add [dst] [netmask][gateway][ifno][rtype]

ip route del [dst] [netmask][rtype]

ip route status

ip route cnc

ip route default [wan1/wan2/off/?]

ip route clean [1/0]

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>add</i>	It means to add an IP address as static route.
<i>del</i>	It means to delete specified IP address.
<i>status</i>	It means current status of static route.
<i>dst</i>	It means the IP address of the destination.
<i>netmask</i>	It means the netmask of the specified IP address.
<i>gateway</i>	It means the gateway of the connected router.
<i>ifno</i>	It means the connection interface. 3=WAN1, 4=WAN2, 5=WAN3, 6=WAN4

<i>rtype</i>	It means the type of the route. default : default route; static: static route.
cnc	It means current IP range for CNC Network.
default	Set WAN1/WAN2/off as current default route.
clean	Clean all of the route settings. 1: Enable the function. 0: Disable the function.

Example

```

> ip route add 172.16.2.0 255.255.255.0 172.16.2.4 3 static
> ip route status

Codes: C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, * - default, ~ - private
C~    192.168.9.0/    255.255.255.0 is directly connected, DMZ
C~    192.168.1.0/    255.255.255.0 is directly connected, LAN1
S     172.16.2.0/    255.255.255.0 via 172.16.2.4, WAN1

```

Telnet Command: ip igmp_proxy

This command allows users to enable/disable igmp proxy server.

Syntax

```
ip igmp_proxy set
ip igmp_proxy reset
ip igmp_proxy wan
ip igmp_proxy t_home <on/off/show/help>
ip igmp_proxy query
ip igmp_proxy ppp <0/1>
ip igmp_proxy status
ip igmp_proxy version <v2/v3/auto/show>
ip igmp_proxy syslog <0/1>
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>set</i>	It means to enable proxy server.
<i>reset</i>	It means to disable proxy server.
<i>wan</i>	It means to specify WAN interface for IGMP service.
<i>t_home</i>	It means to specify t_home proxy server for using.
<i>On/off/show/help</i>	It means to turn on/off/display or get more information of the T_home service.
<i>query</i>	It means to set IGMP general query interval. The default value is 125000 ms.
<i>ppp</i>	0 - No need to set IGMP with PPP header. 1 - Set IGMP with PPP header.
<i>status</i>	It means to display current status for proxy server.
<i>version <v2/v3/auto/show></i>	It means to set IGMP version fixed on v2 or v3.
<i>syslog <0/1></i>	It means to set IGMP syslog.

Example

```
> ip igmp_proxy query 130000
This command is for setting IGMP General Query Interval
The default value is 125000 ms
Current Setting is:130000 ms
> ip igmp_proxy set
% ip igmp_proxy [set|reset|wan|status], IGMP Proxy is ON
> ip igmp_proxy status
%% ip igmp_proxy [set|reset|wan|status], IGMP Proxy is ON
%%% igmp_proxy WAN:
    239.255.255.250    state=1
    239.255.255.250    timer=0
```

Telnet Command: ip igmp_snoop

This command is used to enable/disable igmp snoop server.

Syntax

`ip igmp_snoop enable`

`ip igmp_snoop disable`

`ip igmp_snoop status`

`ip igmp_snoop txquery [on/off] [v2/v3]`

`ip igmp_snoop chkleave [on/off]`

`ip igmp_snoop separate [on/off]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<code>enable</code>	It means to enable proxy server.
<code>disable</code>	It means to disable proxy server.
<code>status</code>	It means to display current status for proxy server.
<code>table</code>	Display the whole table of IGMP Snoop configuration.
<code>txquery [on/off] [v2/v3]</code>	IGMP query will be sent out to LAN periodically. On: enable Off: disable v2: version v2 v3: version v3
<code>chkleave [on/off]</code>	It means to check the leave status. On: enable the IGMP snoop leave checking function. Off: it will drop LEAVE if still clients on the same group.
<code>separate [on/off]</code>	It means to set IGMP packets being separated by NAT/Bridge. On: The packets will be separated. Off: The packets will not be separated by NAT/Bridge.

Example

```
> ip igmp_snoop enable
% ip igmp snooping [enable|disable|status], IGMP Snooping is Enabled.
>
```

Telnet Command: ip igmp_fl

This command is used to enable/disable igmp fast leave.

Syntax

`ip igmp_fl enable`

`ip igmp_fl disable`

`ip igmp_fl status`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>enable</i>	Enable IGMP fast leave.
<i>disable</i>	Disable IGMP fast leave.
<i>status</i>	Display current status of IGMP Fast Leave.

Example

```
> ip igmp_fl enable
%% ip igmp_fl [enable|disable|status], IGMP Fast Leave is Enabled.
>
```

Telnet Command: ip session

This command allows users to set maximum session limit number for the specified IP; set message for exceeding session limit and set how many seconds the IP session block works.

ip session on

ip session off

ip session default <num>

ip session defaultp2p <num>

ip session status

ip session show

ip session timer <num>

ip session <block/unblock> <IP>

ip session <add/del> <IP1-IP2> <num> <p2pnum>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>on</i>	Turn on session limit for each IP.
<i>off</i>	Turn off session limit for each IP.
<i>default [num]</i>	Set the default number of session num limit.
<i>DefaultIp2p [num]</i>	Set the default number of session num limit for p2p.
<i>status</i>	Display the current settings.
<i>show</i>	Display all session limit settings in the IP range.
<i>timer [num]</i>	Set when the IP session block works. The unit is second.
<i>[block/unblock][IP]</i>	Block/unblock the specified IP address. Block: The IP cannot access Internet through the router. Unblock: The specified IP can access Internet through the router.
<i>add</i>	Add the session limits in an IP range.
<i>del</i>	Delete the session limits in an IP range.
<i>IP1-IP2</i>	It means the range of IP address specified for this command.
<i>num</i>	It means the number of the session limits, e.g., 100.
<i>p2pnum</i>	It means the number of the session limits, e.g., 50 for P2P.

Example

```

>ip session default 100
> ip session add 192.168.1.5-192.168.1.100 100 50
> ip session on
> ip session status

IP range:
  192.168.1.5 - 192.168.1.100 : 100
Current ip session limit is turn on

Current default session number is 100

```

Telnet Command: ip bandwidth

This command allows users to set maximum bandwidth limit number for the specified IP.

ip bandwidth on

ip bandwidth off

ip bandwidth default <tx_rate><rx_rate>

ip bandwidth status

ip bandwidth routing <on/off>

ip bandwidth schedule <s1> <s2> <s3> <s4>

ip bandwidth show

ip bandwidth <add/del><P1-IP2><tx><rx><shared>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>on</i>	Turn on the IP bandwidth limit.
<i>off</i>	Turn off the IP bandwidth limit.
<i>default [tx_rate][rx_rate]</i>	Set default tx and rx rate of bandwidth limit. The range is from 0 - 65535 Kpbs.
<i>status</i>	Display the current settings.
<i>routing <on/off></i>	It means to apply to IP Routed Subnet. On: apply to Off: not apply to
<i>schedule <s1> <s2> <s3> <s4</i>	It means to set schedule profile (1 to 4). S1 ~ S4: Up to four profile can be set. Available schedule profiles from 0 to 16.
<i>show</i>	Display all the bandwidth limits settings within the IP range.
<i>add</i>	Add the bandwidth within the IP range.
<i>del</i>	Delete the bandwidth within the IP range.
<i>IP1-IP2</i>	It means the range of IP address specified for this command.
<i>tx</i>	Set transmission rate for bandwidth limit.
<i>rx</i>	Set receiving rate for bandwidth limit.
<i>shared</i>	It means that the bandwidth will be shared for the IP range.

Example

```

> ip bandwidth default 200 800

```

```

> ip bandwidth add 192.168.1.50-192.168.1.100 10 60
> ip bandwidth status

IP range:
  192.168.1.50 - 192.168.1.100 : Tx:10K Rx:60K

Current ip Bandwidth limit is turn off

Auto adjustment is off

```

Telnet Command: ip bindmac

This command allows users to set IP-MAC binding for LAN host.

`ip bindmac on`

`ip bindmac off`

`ip bindmac strict_on`

`ip bindmac strict_off`

`ip bindmac subnet <all/set LAN_Index/unset LAN_Index/clear/show>`

`ip bindmac show`

`ip bindmac add <IP> <MAC> <Comment>`

`ip bindmac del <IP/all>`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>on</i>	Turn on IP bindmac policy. Even the IP is not in the policy table, it can still access into network.
<i>off</i>	Turn off all the bindmac policy.
<i>strict_on</i>	It means that only those IP address in IP bindmac policy table can access into network.
<i>strict_off</i>	It means to turn off the IP bindmac policy.
<i>subnet <all/set LAN_Index/unset LAN_Index/clear/show></i>	It means to set LAN subnet to bind strict mode.
<i>show</i>	Display the IP address and MAC address of the pair of binded one.
<i>add</i>	Add one IP bindmac.
<i>del</i>	Delete one IP bindmac.
<i>IP</i>	Type the IP address for binding with specified MAC address.
<i>MAC</i>	Type the MAC address for binding with the IP address specified.
<i>Comment</i>	Type words as a brief description.
<i>All</i>	Delete all the IP bindmac settings.

Example

```

> ip bindmac add 192.168.1.46 00:50:7f:22:33:55 just for test

```

```
> ip bindmac show
ip bind mac function is turned ON
IP : 192.168.1.46 bind MAC : 00-50-7f-22-33-55 Comment : just
```


Telnet Command: ip maxnatuser

This command is used to set the maximum number of NAT users.

Syntax

ip maxnatuser *user no*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>User no</i>	A number specified here means the total NAT users that Vigor router supports. 0 - It means no limitation.

Example

```
> ip maxnatuser 100
% Max NAT user = 100
```

Telnet Command: ip policy_rt

This command is used to set the IP policy route profile.

Syntax

ip policy_rt [-<command> <parameter> | ...]

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<command><parameter>[...]	The available commands with parameters are listed below. [...] means that you can type in several commands in one line.
General Setup for Policy Route	
-i [value]	Specify an index number for setting policy route profile. Value: 1 to 60. "-1" means to get a free policy index automatically.
-e [0/1]	0: Disable the selected policy route profile. 1: Enable the selected policy route profile.
-o [value]	Determine the operation of the policy route. Value: add - Create a new policy route profile. del - Remove an existed policy route profile. edit - Modify an existed policy route profile. flush - Reset policy route to default setting.
-1 [any/range]	Specify the source IP mode. Range: Indicate a range of IP addresses. Any: It means any IP address will be treated as source IP address.
-2 [any/ip_range/ip_subnet/domain]	Specify the destination IP mode. Any: No need to specify an IP address for any IP address will be treated as destination IP address. ip_range: Indicates a range of IP addresses. ip_subnet: Indicates the IP subnet. domain: Indicates the domain name.
-3 [any/range]	Specify the destination port mode. Range: Indicate a range of port number.

	Any: It means any port number can be used as destination port.
<i>-G [default/specific]</i>	Specify the gateway mode.
<i>-L [default/specific]</i>	Specify the failover gateway mode.
<i>-s [value]</i>	Indicate the source IP start. Value: The type format shall be "xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx". (e.g, 192.168.1.0)
<i>-S [value]</i>	Indicate the source IP end. Value: The type format shall be "xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx". (e.g, 192.168.1.100)
<i>-d [value]</i>	Indicate the destination IP start. Value: The type format shall be "xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx". (e.g, 192.168.2.0)
<i>-D [value]</i>	Indicate the destination IP end. Value: The type format shall be "xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx". (e.g, 192.168.2.100)
<i>-p [value]</i>	Indicate the destination port start. Value: Type a number (1 ~ 65535) as the port start (e.g., 1000).
<i>-P [value]</i>	Indicate the destination port end. Value: Type a number (1 ~ 65535) as the port end (e.g., 2000).
<i>-y [value]</i>	Indicate the priority of the policy route profile. Value: Type a number (0 ~ 250). The default value is "150".
<i>-I [value]</i>	Indicate the interface specified for the policy route profile. Value: Available interfaces include, LAN1 ~ LAN8, IP_Routed_Subnet, DMZ_Subnet, WAN1 ~ WAN5, VPN_PROFILE_1 ~ VPN_PROFILE_100, WAN_1_IP_ALIAS_1 ~ WAN_4_IP_ALIAS_8
<i>-g [value]</i>	Indicate the gateway IP address. Value: The type format shall be "xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx". (e.g, 192.168.3.1)
<i>-I [value]</i>	Indicate the failover IP address. Value: The type format shall be "xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx". (e.g, 192.168.4.1)
<i>-t [value]</i>	It means "protocol". Value: Available settings include "TCP", "UDP", "TCP/UDP", "ICMP" and "Any".
<i>-n [0/1]</i>	Indicates the function of "Force NAT". 0: Disable the function. 1: Enable the function.
<i>-a [0/1]</i>	Indicates to enable the function of failover. 0: Disable the function. 1: Enable the function.
<i>-f [value]</i>	It means to specify the interface for failover. Value: Available interfaces include, NO_FAILOVER, Default_WAN, Policy1 ~ Policy60 LAN1 ~ LAN8 IP_Routed_Subnet, DMZ_Subnet, WAN1 ~ WAN5, VPN_PROFILE_1 ~ VPN_PROFILE_100, WAN_1_IP_ALIAS_1 ~ WAN_4_IP_ALIAS_8
<i>-b [value]</i>	It means "failback".

	Value: Available settings include, 0: Disable the function of "failback". 1: Enable the function of "failback". -v: View current failback setting.
Diagnose for Policy Route	
<i>-s [value]</i>	It means "source IP". Value: Available settings include: Any: It indicates any IP address can be used as source IP address. "xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx": The type format (e.g, 192.168.1.0).
<i>-d [value]</i>	It means "destination IP". Value : Available settings include: Any: It indicates any IP address can be used as destination IP address. "xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx": Specify an IP address.
<i>-p [value]</i>	It means "destination port". Value: Specify a number or type Any (indicating any number).
<i>-t [value]</i>	It means "protocol". Value: Available settings include "ICMP", "TCP", "UDP" and "Any".

Example

```
> ip policy_rt diagnose -s 192.168.1.100 -d any -p any -t ICMP

-----
      Matched Route  (Priority)
-----
* No_Match

-----
      Matched Policy (Priority)
-----
* Policy_1 (200)

* Conclusion:The packet was dropped because the send-to interface
of the mat
ched policy "policy 1" was inactive and there was no failover setting
> ip policy_rt -i -1 -o add -1 range -s 192.168.1.10 -S 192.168.1.20 -2
ip_range -d 202.211.100.10 -D 202.211.100.20 -g 202.211.100.1 -I WAN2
```

Telnet Command: ip lanDNSRes

This command is used to set LAN DNS profile.

Syntax

ip lanDNSRes [*-<command>* *<parameter>* | ...]

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>[<command></i> <i><parameter>[/...]</i>	The available commands with parameters are listed below. [...] <i>means that you can type in several commands in one line.</i>
<i>-a <IP Address></i>	Set IP Address that domain name mapped.
<i>-c <CNAME></i>	Set CNAME value.
<i>-d <address mapping index number></i>	Delete the selected LAN DNS profile.

-e <0/1>	0: disable the selected LAN DNS profile. 1: enable the selected LAN DNS profile.
-i <profile setting index number>	Type the index number of the profile.
-l	List the content of LAN DNS profile (including domain name, IP address and message).
-n <domain name>	Set domain name.
-p <profile name>	Set profile name for LAN DNS.
-r	Reset the settings for selected profile.
-s <0/1>	0:reply all 1:reply only same subnet packet
-z	update LAN DNS config to DNS Cache

Example

```
> ip lanDNSRes -i 1 -p test
% Configure Set1's Profile:test
> ip lanDNSRes -i 1 -l
% Idx: 1
% State: Disable
% Profile: test
% Domain Name:
% ----- Address Mapping Table -----
% Not Set Address Mapping.
>
```

Telnet Command: ip dnsforward

This command is used to set LAN DNS profile for conditional DNS forwarding.

Syntax

ip dnsforward [-<command> <parameter> | ...]

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
[<command> <parameter> ...]	The available commands with parameters are listed below. [...] means that you can type in several commands in one line.
-a <IP Address>	Set forwarded DNS server IP Address.
-d <DNS server mapping index number>	Delete the selected LAN DNS profile.
-e <0/1>	0: disable such function. 1: enable such function.
-i <profile setting index number>	Type the index number of the profile.
-l	List the content of LAN DNS profile (including domain name, IP address and message).
-n <domain name>	Set domain name.
-p <profile name>	Set profile name for LAN DNS.
-r	Reset the settings for selected profile.

Example

```
> ip dnsforward -i 1 -n ftp.drayTek.com
% Configure Set1's DomainName:ftp.drayTek.com
> ip dnsforward -i 1 -a 172.16.1.1
% Configure Set1's IP:172.16.1.1
> ip dnsforward -i 1 -l
% Idx: 1
% State: Disable
% Profile: test
% Domain Name: ftp.drayTek.com
% DNS Server IP: 172.16.1.1
>
```

Telnet Command: ip spoofdef

This command is used to enable/disable the IP Spoofing Defense.

Syntax

```
ip spoofdef <WAN/LAN><0/1>
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<WAN/LAN>	It means to block IP packet from WAN/LAN with inconsistent source IP address.
<0/1>	0: Disable the function. 1: Enable the function.

Example

```
> ip spoofdef WAN 1
Setting saved:
>
```

Telnet Command: ip6 addr

This command allows users to set the IPv6 address for your router.

```
ip6 addr -s <prefix> <prefix-length> <LAN1/..LAN4/
WAN1/WAN2/USB1/USB2/VPN1/..VPN32>
ip6 addr -d <prefix> <prefix-length> <LAN1/..LAN4/
WAN1/WAN2/USB1/USB2/VPN1/..VPN32>
ip6 addr -a<LAN1/..LAN4/ WAN1/WAN2/USB1/USB2/VPN1/..VPN32> -u
ip6 addr -v<LAN1/..LAN4/ WAN1/WAN2/USB1/USB2>
ip6 addr -t <old-prefix><old-prefix-length><new-prefix> <new-prefix-length><
LAN1/..LAN4/WAN1/WAN2/USB1/USB2>
ip6 addr -o <1/2>
ip6 addr -o 3 <prefix> <prefix-length> <WAN1/WAN2/USB1/USB2>
ip6 addr -l <prefix> <prefix-length> <LAN1/..LAN4>
ip6 addr <-p/-b> <prefix> <prefix-length> <WAN1/WAN2/USB1/USB2>
ip6 addr -x <LAN1/..LAN4>
```

ip6 addr -c <LAN1/..LAN4>

ip6 addr -e <type> <LAN1/..LAN4>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-s <prefix> <prefix-length> <LAN1/..LAN4/WAN1/WAN2/USB1/USB2/VPN1/..VPN32>	It means to add a static ipv6 address. <prefix>: It means to enter the prefix number of IPv6 address. <prefix-length>: It means to enter a fixed value as the length of the prefix. <LAN1/..LAN4 WAN1/WAN2/USB1/USB2/VPN1/..VPN32>: It means to specify LAN/WAN/USB/VPN interface for such address.
-d <prefix> <prefix-length> <LAN1/..LAN4/WAN1/WAN2/USB1/USB2/VPN1/..VPN32>	It means to delete an ipv6 address. <prefix>: It means to enter the prefix number of IPv6 address. <prefix-length>: It means to enter a fixed value as the length of the prefix. <LAN1/..LAN4/WAN1/WAN2/USB1/USB2/VPN1/..VPN32>: It means to specify LAN/WAN/USB/VPN interface for such address.
-a <LAN1/..LAN4/WAN1/WAN2/USB1/USB2/VPN1/..VPN32> -u	It means to show current address(es) status. <LAN1/..LAN4/WAN1/WAN2/USB1/USB2/VPN1/..VPN32>: It means to specify LAN/WAN/USB/VPN interface. <-u>: It means to show unicast address only.
-v <LAN1/..LAN4/WAN1/WAN2/USB1/USB2>	It means to show prefix list status.
-t <old-prefix><old-prefix-length><new-prefix> <new-prefix-length> <LAN1/..LAN4/WAN1/WAN2/USB1/USB2>	It means to update WAN static IPv6 address table. <old-prefix>: It means to enter the prefix number of IPv6 address. <old prefix-length>: It means to enter a fixed value as the length of the prefix. <new-prefix>: It means to enter the prefix number of IPv6 address. <new-prefix-length>: It means to enter a fixed value as the length of the prefix. <LAN1/..LAN4/WAN1/WAN2/USB1/USB2>: It means to specify LAN/WAN/USB interface for such address.
-o <1/2>	<1>: It means to show old prefix list. <2>: It means to send old prefix option by RA.
-o <3> <prefix> <prefix-length> <WAN1/..WAN2/USB1/USB2>	<3>: It means to set old prefix. <prefix>: It means to enter the prefix number of IPv6 address. <prefix-length>: It means to enter a fixed value as the length of the prefix. <WAN1/..WAN2/USB1/USB2 >: It means to specify a WAN/USB interface for such address.
-l <prefix> <prefix-length> <LAN1/..LAN4>	It means to add a ULA. <prefix>: It means to enter the prefix number of IPv6 address. <prefix-length>: It means to enter a fixed value as the length of the prefix. <LAN1/..LAN4>: It means to specify a LAN interface for such address.
-p/-b <prefix> <prefix-length> <WAN1/WAN2/USB1/USB2>	It means to add/delete a prefix to/from prefix list. p: Add a prefix to a prefix list. b: Delete a prefix from a prefix list. <prefix>: It means to enter the prefix number of IPv6 address. <prefix-length>: It means to enter a fixed value as the length of the prefix. <WAN1/WAN2/USB1/USB2 >: It means to specify a WAN/USB interface for such address.
-x <LAN1/..LAN4>	It means to generate a ULA automatically. <LAN1/..LAN4>: It means to specify a LAN interface.
-c <LAN1/..LAN4>	It means to delete a ULA . <LAN1/..LAN4>: It means to specify a LAN interface.
-e <type> <LAN1/..LAN4>	It means to set ULA type. <type>: 0, disable; 1, static; 2, auto <LAN1/..LAN8/DMZ>: It means to specify a LAN interface.

Example

```

> ip6 addr -a
DMZ
Unicast Address:
  FE80::21D:AAFF:FE54:A3F8/64 (Link)
Multicast Address:
  FF02::1:FF00:0
  FF02::1:FF54:A3F8
  FF02::1
LAN4
Unicast Address:
  FE80::21D:AAFF:FE54:A3F8/64 (Link)
Multicast Address:
  FF02::1:FF00:0
  FF02::1:FF54:A3F8
  FF02::1
LAN3
Unicast Address:
  FE80::21D:AAFF:FE54:A3F8/64 (Link)
Multicast Address:
  FF02::1:FF00:0
  FF02::1:FF54:A3F8
  FF02::1
LAN2
Unicast Address:

  FE80::21D:AAFF:FE54:A3F8/64 (Link)

Multicast Address:

  FF02::1:FF00:0
  FF02::1:FF54:A3F8
  FF02::1
...

```

Telnet Command: ip6 dhcp req_opt

This command is used to configure option-request settings for DHCPv6 client.

ip6 dhcp req_opt <LAN1/LAN2/.../LAN4/WAN1/WAN2/USB1/USB2> [-<command> <parameter>| ...]

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>req_opt</i>	It means option-request.
<LAN1/LAN2/.../LAN4/WAN1/WAN2/USB1/USB2>	It means to specify LAN or WAN interface for such address.
[<command> <parameter> ...]	The available commands with parameters are listed below. [...] means that you can type in several commands in one line.
-a	It means to show current DHCPv6 status.
-s	It means to ask the SIP.

<i>-S</i>	It means to ask the SIP name.
<i>-d</i>	It means to ask the DNS setting.
<i>-D</i>	It means to ask the DNS name.
<i>-n</i>	It means to ask NTP.
<i>-i</i>	It means to ask NIS.
<i>-l</i>	It means to ask NIS name.
<i>-p</i>	It means to ask NISP.
<i>-P</i>	It means to ask NISP name.
<i>-b</i>	It means to ask BCMCS.
<i>-B</i>	It means to ask BCMCS name.
<i>-r</i>	It means to ask refresh time.
<i>Parameter</i>	1: the parameter related to the request will be displayed. 0: the parameter related to the request will not be displayed.

Example

```

> ip6 dhcp req_opt WAN2 -S 1
> ip6 dhcp req_opt WAN2 -r 1
> ip6 dhcp req_opt WAN2 -a
% Interface WAN2 is set to request following DHCPv6 options:
%   sip name
>

```

Telnet Command: ip6 dhcp client

This command allows you to use DHCPv6 protocol to obtain IPv6 address from server.

ip6 dhcp client <WAN1|WAN2|USB1|USB2> [-<command> <parameter>| ...]

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>client</i>	It means the dhcp client settings.
[<command> <parameter> ...]	The available commands with parameters are listed below. [...] means that you can type in several commands in one line.
<i>-a</i>	It means to show current DHCPv6 status.
<i>-p <IAID></i>	It means to request identity association ID for Prefix Delegation.
<i>-n <IAID></i>	It means to request identity association ID for Non-temporary Address.
<i>-t <time></i>	It means to set solicit interval. <time>: 0 ~ 7 seconds (default value is 0).
<i>-c <parameter></i>	It means to send rapid commit to server. 1: Enable 0: Disable
<i>-i <parameter></i>	It means to send information request to server. 1: Enable 0: Disable
<i>-e <parameter></i>	It means to enable or disable the DHCPv6 client. 1: Enable 0: Disable
<i>-m <parameter></i>	It means to enable/disable server DUID set by Link layer and time. 1: Enable 0: Disable
<i>-d</i>	It means to display the client DUID.
<i>-A <parameter></i>	It means to set authentication protocol. 0: Undefine 2: delayed protocol

<code>-R <parameter></code>	It means to set realm value (max: 31 characters) in delayed protocol. <parameter>: Enter a string.
<code>-S <parameter></code>	It means to set shared secret (max: 31 characters) in delayed protocol. <parameter>: Enter a string.
<code>-K <parameter></code>	It means to set key ID (1~65535) in delayed protocol. <parameter>: Enter a number.

Example

```
> ip6 dhcp client WAN2 -p
This setting will take effect after rebooting.
Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
```

Telnet Command: ip6 dhcp server

This command allows you to configure DHCPv6 server.

`ip6 dhcp server [-<command> <parameter>| ...]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<code>server</code>	It means the dhcp server settings.
<code>[<command> <parameter> ...]</code>	The available commands with parameters are listed below. [...] means that you can type in several commands in one line.
<code>-a</code>	It means to show current DHCPv6 status.
<code>-b</code>	It means to show current DHCPv6 IP assignment table.
<code>-n <name></code>	It means to set a pool name.
<code>-c<parameter></code>	It means to send rapid commit to server. 1: Enable 0: Disable
<code>-e<parameter></code>	It means to enable or disable the DHCPv6 server. 1: Enable 0: Disable
<code>-t <time></code>	It means to set prefer lifetime.
<code>-y <time></code>	It means to set valid lifetime.
<code>-u <time></code>	It means to set T1 time.
<code>-o <time></code>	It means to set T2 time.
<code>-i <pool_min_addr></code>	It means to set the start IPv6 address of the address pool.
<code>-x <pool_max_addr></code>	It means to set the end IPv6 address of the address pool.
<code>-R</code>	It means to send reconfigure packet to the client.
<code>-r <0/1></code>	It means to disable (0) or enable (1) the auto range.
<code>-N <0/1></code>	It means to disable (0) or enable (1) the random address allocation.
<code>-d <addr></code>	It means to set the first DNS IPv6 address. <addr> : Enter an IPv6 address.
<code>-D <addr></code>	It means to set the second DNS IPv6 address. <addr> : Enter an IPv6 address.
<code>-m <1/0></code>	It means to enable(1) or disable (0) the server DUID set by Link Layer and Time.
<code>-q <name></code>	It means to set DNS domain search list. <name>: Enter a name.
<code>-z <0/1></code>	It means to disable (0) or enable (1) the DHCP PD.
<code>pdadd <suffix> <prefix_len> <client linklocal><client DUID></code>	It means to add PD node.
<code>pddel <PD index></code>	It means to delete PD node. <PD index>: Enter a number.
<code>-A <parameter></code>	It means to set authentication protocol. <parameter>: Enter 0, 2 or 3. 0: Undefine 2: delayed protocol 3: Reconfigure key

-M <parameter>	It means to set realm value (max: 31 characters) in delayed protocol. <parameter>: Enter a string.
-S <parameter>	It means to set shared secret (max: 31 characters) in delayed protocol. <parameter>: Enter a string.
-K <parameter>	It means to set key ID (1~65535) in delayed protocol. <parameter>: Enter a number.

Example

```
> ip6 dhcp server LAN1 pdadd 11:22:33 64 fe80::e202:1bff:fe65:4084
000100011d2ce39a00e06f25c839
%      Add to PD list success!
%% PD status : invalid, no prefix available.
```

Telnet Command: ip6 internet

This command allows you to configure settings for accessing Internet.

Syntax

ip6 internet *-W n -M n [-<command> <parameter> | ...]*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>-W n</i>	W means to set WAN interface and n means different selections. Default is WAN1. n=1: WAN1 n=2: WAN2 n=3: WAN3 . . n=X: WANx
<i>-M n</i>	M means to set Internet Access Mode (Mandatory) and n means different modes (represented by 0 - 5) n= 0: Offline, n=1: PPP, n=2: TSPC, n=3: AICCU, n=4: DHCPv6, n=5: Static n=6: 6in4-Static n=7: 6rd
<i>[<command> <parameter> ...]</i>	The available commands with parameters are listed below. [...] means that you can type in several commands in one line.
<i>For 6rd</i>	
<i>-C n</i>	Set 6rd Connection Mode. n = 0: Auto n = 1: Static.
<i>-s [server]</i>	Set 6rd IPv4 Border Relay. server= IPv4 address
<i>-m n</i>	Set 6rd IPv4 address mask length. n=1 to 32.
<i>-p [prefix]</i>	Set 6rd IPv6 prefix. prefix= IPv6 address
<i>-l n</i>	Set 6rd IPv6 prefix length. n=1 to 64.
<i>For 6in4</i>	
<i>-s [server]</i>	Set 6in4 Remote Endpoint IPv4 Address. server= IPv4 address
<i>-l [IPv6 Addr]</i>	Set 6in4 IPv6 Address. IPv6 Addr= IPv6 address.
<i>-P n</i>	Set 6in4 IPv6 WAN prefix length. n=1 to 64. (Default number is 64)
<i>-p [prefix]</i>	Set 6in4 LAN Routed Prefix. prefix= IPv6 address
<i>-l n</i>	Set 6in4 LAN Routed Prefix length. n=1 to 64. (Default number is 64)

<i>-T n</i>	Set 6in4 Tunnel TTL. n=1 to 255. (Default number is 255)
<i>For TSPC/AICCU</i>	
<i>-u [username]</i>	Set Username (max. 63 characters).
<i>-P [password]</i>	Set Password (max. 63 characters).
<i>-s [server]</i>	Set Tunnel Server IP. server= IPv4 Address or URL (max. 63 characters).
<i>For AICCU</i>	
<i>-p [prefix]</i>	Set Subnet Prefix (AICCU). prefix=IPv6 address.
<i>-l n</i>	Subnet Prefix length (AICCU) n=1 to 64. (Default number is 64).
<i>-o [0/1]</i>	Set AICCU always on. On = 1, Off = 0.
<i>-f [Tunnel ID]</i>	Set AICCU tunnel ID. Tunnel ID= the number (e.g., T345678) offered by tunnel broker.
<i>For Static</i>	
<i>-w [addr]</i>	Set Default Gateway. Addr= IPv6 address.
<i>For others</i>	
<i>-d <server></i>	Set 1st DNS Server IP server= IPv6 Address.
<i>-D <server></i>	Set 2nd DNS Server IP. server= IPv6 Address.
<i>-t <dhcp/ra/none></i>	Set ipv6 PPP WAN test mode for DHCP or RA.
<i>-V</i>	View IPv6 Internet Access Profile.
<i>-k</i>	Dial the Tunnel on the WAN.
<i>-j</i>	Drop the Tunnel on the WAN.
<i>-r n</i>	Set Prefix State Machine RA timeout. n=any value (default is 15), (unit: second)
<i>-c n</i>	Set Prefix State Machine DHCPv6 Client timeout. n=any value (default is 15), (unit: second)
<i>-q [value]</i>	Set WAN detection mode. 0: NS Detect. 1: Ping Detect. 2: Always On.
<i>-z [value]</i>	Set Ping Detect TTL. value= 0 ~ 255.
<i>-x [hostname/IPv6 address]</i>	Set Ping Detect Host (hostname or IPv6 address). <hostname/ipv6 addr> : Enter a hostname or an IPv6 address.
<i>-i [interval]</i>	Set ipv6 connection interval. Interval = 1500-60000 (unit:10ms).
<i>-b [0/1]</i>	Enable DNSv6 based on DHCPv6. 0= off 1= on

<code>-R <0/1></code>	It means to Enable RIPng. 1 = on 0 = off
-----------------------------	--

Example

```
> ip6 internet -W 1 -M 2 -u userid -p passwd -s broker.freenet6.net
This setting will take effect after rebooting.
Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
>
```

Telnet Command: ip6 neigh

This command allows you to display IPv6 neighbour table.

Syntax

```
ip6 neigh -s [inet6_addr] [eth_addr] [LAN1/LAN2/.../LAN4/WAN1/WAN2/USB1/USB2]
```

```
ip6 neigh -d [inet6_addr] [LAN1/LAN2/.../LAN4/WAN1/WAN2/USB1/USB2]
```

```
ip6 neigh -a [inet6_addr] [-N LAN1/LAN2/.../LAN4/WAN1/WAN2/USB1/USB2]
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<code>-s</code>	It means to add a neighbour.
<code>-d</code>	It means to delete a neighbour.
<code>-a</code>	It means to show neighbour status.
<code>inet6_addr</code>	Type an IPv6 address
<code>eth_addr</code>	Type submask address.
<code>LAN/WAN1/WAN2</code>	Specify an interface for the neighbor.

Example

```
> ip6 neigh -s 2001:2222:3333::1111 00:50:7F:11:ac:22:WAN2
Neighbour 2001:2222:3333::1111 successfully added!
> ip6 neigh -a

I/F ADDR MAC STATE
-----
LAN FF02::1 33-33-00-00-00-01 CONNECTED
WAN2 2001:5C0:1400:B::10B8 00-00-00-00-00-00 CONNECTED
WAN2 2001:2222:3333::1111 00-00-00-00-00-00 CONNECTED
WAN2 2001:2222:6666::1111 00-00-00-00-00-00 CONNECTED
WAN2 :: 00-00-00-00-00-00 CONNECTED
LAN :: NONE
>
```

Telnet Command: ip6 neigh

This command allows you to add a proxy neighbour.

Syntax

```
ip6 neigh -s inet6_addr [LAN1/LAN2/.../LAN4/WAN1/WAN2/USB1/USB2]
```

```
ip6 neigh -d inet6_addr [LAN1/LAN2/.../LAN4/WAN1/WAN2/USB1/USB2]
```

```
ip6 neigh -a [inet6_addr] [-N LAN1/LAN2/.../LAN4/WAN1/WAN2/USB1/USB2]
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-s	It means to add a proxy neighbour.
-d	It means to delete a proxy neighbour.
-a	It means to show proxy neighbour status.
inet6_addr	Type an IPv6 address
LAN1/LAN2/.../LAN4/WAN1/WAN2/USB1/USB2	Specify an interface for the proxy neighbor.

Example

```
> ip6 neigh -s FE80::250:7FFF:FE12:300 LAN
%      Neighbour FE80::250:7FFF:FE12:300 successfully added!
```

Telnet Command: ip6 route

This command allows you to set IPv6 route policy.

Syntax

```
ip6 route -s <prefix> <prefix-length> <gateway> <LAN1/..LAN4/WAN1/WAN2/
USB1/USB2/VPN1/..VPN32> <-D>
```

```
ip6 route -d <prefix> <prefix-length>
```

```
ip6 route -a <LAN1/..LAN4/WAN1/WAN2/USB1/USB2/VPN1/..VPN32>
```

```
ip6 route -l
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-s	It means to add a route. <prefix>: It means to enter the prefix number of IPv6 address. <prefix length>: It means to enter a fixed value as the length of the prefix. <gateway>: It means to enter the gateway of the router. <LAN1/..LAN4/WAN1/WAN2/ USB1/USB2/VPN1/..VPN32>: It means to specify LAN or WAN or VPN interface for such address. <-D>: It means that such route will be treated as the default route.
-d <prefix> <prefix-length>	It means to delete a route. <prefix>: It means to enter the prefix number of IPv6 address. <prefix length>: It means to enter a fixed value as the length of the prefix.
-a <LAN1/LAN2/WAN1/WAN2/USB1/USB2/VPN1/..VPN32>	It means to show the route status. <LAN1/..LAN4/DMZ/WAN1/WAN2/ USB1/USB2/VPN1/..VPN32>: It

	means to specify LAN or WAN or VPN interface for such address.
-/	It means to clear the routing table.

Example

```
> ip6 route -s FE80::250:7FFF:FE12:500 16 FE80::250:7FFF:FE12:100 LAN1
%      Route FE80::250:7FFF:FE12:500/16 successfully added!
> ip6 route -a LAN1

PREFIX/PREFIX-LEN                                I/F METRIC FLAG NEXT-HOP
-----
::0.0.0.1/128                                   LAN1      0 U  ::
FE80::/128                                       LAN1      0 U  ::
FE80::4F5:3C31:E5B2:98C7/128                   LAN1      0 U  ::
FE80::/64                                        LAN1     256 U  ::
FE80::/16                                        LAN1    1024 UGS
FE80::250:7FFF:FE12:100
FF00::/8                                        LAN1     256 U  ::
```

Telnet Command: ip6 ping

This command allows you to ping an IPv6 address or a host.

Syntax

ip6 ping [*IPv6 address/Host*] [*LAN1/LAN2/.../LAN4/WAN1/WAN2/USB1/USB2*][*send count*]
[*data_size(1-1452)*]

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>IPv6 address/Host</i>	It means to specify the IPv6 address or host for ping.
<i>LAN1/LAN2/.../LAN4/WAN1/WAN2/USB1/USB2</i>	It means to specify LAN or WAN interface for such address.

Example

```
> ip6 ping 2001:4860:4860::8888 WAN2

Pinging 2001:4860:4860::8888 with 64 bytes of Data:

Receive reply from 2001:4860:4860::8888, time=330ms
Receive reply from 2001:4860:4860::8888, time=330ms
Receive reply from 2001:4860:4860::8888, time=330ms
Receive reply from 2001:4860:4860::8888, time=330ms
Receive reply from 2001:4860:4860::8888, time=330ms

Packets: Sent = 5, Received = 5, Lost = 0 <% loss>
>
```

Telnet Command: ip6 tracert

This command allows you to trace the routes from the router to the host.

ip6 tracert [*IPv6 address/Host*] [*LAN1/LAN2/.../LAN4/WAN1/WAN2/USB1/USB2*]

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>IPv6 address/Host</i>	It means to specify the IPv6 address or host for ping.
<i>LAN1/LAN2/.../LAN4/WAN1/WAN2/USB1/USB2</i>	It means to specify LAN or WAN interface for such address.

Example

```
> ip6 tracert 2001:4860:4860::8888
traceroute to 2001:4860:4860::8888, 30 hops max through protocol ICMP
 1 2001:5C0:1400:B::10B8      340 ms
 2 2001:4DE0:1000:A22::1     330 ms
 3 2001:4DE0:A::1           330 ms
 4 2001:4DE0:1000:34::1     340 ms
 5 2001:7F8:1: :A501:5169:1 330 ms
 6 2001:4860::1:0:4B3       350 ms
 7 2001:4860::8:0:2DAF     330 ms
 8 2001:4860::2:0:66E     340 ms
 9 Request timed out.      *
10 2001:4860:4860::8888    350 ms
Trace complete.
>
```

Telnet Command: ip6 tpsc

This command allows you to display TSPC status.

Syntax

`ip6 tpsc [ifno]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>ifno</i>	It means the connection interface. Ifno=1 (means WAN1) Info=2 (means WAN2) ... etc.

Example

```
> ip6 tpsc 2
Local Endpoint v4 Address : 111.243.177.223
Local Endpoint v6 Address : 2001:05c0:1400:000b:0000:0000:0000:10b9
Router DNS name : 88866666.broker.freenet6.net
Remote Endpoint v4 Address :81.171.72.11
Remote Endpoint v6 Address : 2001:05c0:1400:000b:0000:0000:0000:10b8
Tspc Prefixlen : 56
Tunnel Broker: Amsterdam.freenet.net

Status: Connected

>
```

Telnet Command: ip6 radvd

This command allows you to enable or disable RADVD server.

Syntax

ip6 radvd [LAN1/LAN2/.../LAN4] [-<command> <parameter>| ...]

ip6 radvd [R/u]

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
LAN1/LAN2/.../LAN4	It means to specify LAN interface for such address.
<command> <parameter>	
-s	It means to enable or disable the default lifetime of the RADVD server. 1: Enable the RADVD server. 0: Disable the RADVD server.
-D <1/0>	Enable/Disable the RDNSS.
-d <lifetime>	Set the default lifetime for RADVD server.
-i <lifetime>	Set the minimum interval time(sec) for RADVD server.
-I <lifetime>	Set the maximum interval time(sec) for RADVD server.
Lifetime	It means to set the lifetime. The lifetime associated with the default router in units of seconds. It's used to control the lifetime of the prefix. The maximum value corresponds to 18.2 hours. A lifetime of 0 indicates that the router is not a default router and should not appear on the default router list. Type the number (unit: second) you want.
-h <hoplimit>	Set hop limit for RADVD server.
-m <mtu/auto>	Set MTU value for RADVD server. Range: 1280-1500. auto - auto select MTU from WAN.
-e <time>	Set reachable time.
-a <time/infinity>	Set retransmit timer /infinity.
-p <0/1/2>	Set default preference Low/Medium/High for RADVD server.
-v	View the RADVD server configuration.
-V	It means to show the RADVD configuration.
-L <time/infinity>:	Set prefix valid lifetime.
-P <time/infinity>	Set prefix preferred lifetime.
-r [num]	Make RADVD test for item [num]. num - 0-default, 121:logo 121, 124:logo 124.
-R	Reload Config and send RA for subnets.
-u	View MTU on all interfaces.

Example

```
> ip6 radvd LAN1 -v
% [LAN1] setting !
% Status          : Enable
% RDNSS           : Enable
% Default Lifetime : 1800 seconds
% min interval time: 200 seconds
```

```

% MAX interval time: 600 seconds
% Hop limit      : 64
% MTU           : auto
% Reachable time : 0
% Retransmit time : 0
% Preference    : Medium
% Prefix valid lifetime : 2592000
% Prefix preferred lifetime : 604800

```

Telnet Command: ip6 mngt

This command allows you to manage the settings for access list.

ip6 mngt list

ip6 mngt list *add* <Index> <IPv6 Object Index> /*remove* <index> /*flush*

ip6 mngt status

ip6 mngt <internet/ http/telnet/ping/https/ssh/enforce_https> <on/off>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>list</i>	It means to show the setting information of the access list.
<i>add</i> <Index> <IPv6 Object Index> / <i>remove</i> <NO.> / <i>flush</i>	It means to add an IPv6 address which can be used to execute management through Internet. <Index>: 1 to 10. Ten profiles can be set for IPv6 access list. <IPv6 Object Index>: It means the index number of IP object (1 to 64) or keyword object (1 to 64) . <i>remove</i> <Index>: It means to remove (delete) the specified IP/Keyword object.
<i>flush</i>	It means to clear the IPv6 access table.
<i>status</i>	It means to show the status of IPv6 remote management.
<i>internet/ http/telnet/ping/https/ssh /enforce_https</i>	These protocols are used for accessing Internet.
<i>on/off</i>	It means to enable (on) or disable (off) the Internet accessing through http/telnet/ping.

Example

```

> ip6 mngt list add 1 62
%% Set OK.

```

Telnet Command: ip6 online

This command allows you to check the online status of IPv6 LAN /WAN.

ip6 online [WAN1/WAN2/USB1/USB2]

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>WAN1/WAN2/USB1/USB2</i>	It means the connection interface.

Example

```

> ip6 online WAN1
% WAN1 online status :
% IPv6 WAN1 Disabled
% Default Gateway : ::
% Interface : DOWN
% UpTime : 0:00:00
% IPv6 DNS Server: :: Static
% IPv6 DNS Server: :: Static
% IPv6 DNS Server: :: Static
% Tx packets = 0, Tx bytes = 0, Rx packets = 0, Rx bytes = 0
% MTU Onlink: 1280 , Config MTU : 0

```

Telnet Command: ip6 aiccu

This command allows you to view IPv6 settings for WAN interface with connection type of AICCU.

Syntax

```
ip6 aiccu -i <ifno> -r
```

```
ip6 aiccu -i <ifno> -s
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-r	Reset the AICCU retry account for the specified interace.
ifno	ifno=1, WAN1 ifno=2, WAN2 ifno=x, WANx
-s	Show the interface status.

Example

```

> ip6 aiccu -i 1 -r
reset AICCU Retry Account OK!

>

```

Telnet Command: ip6 ntp

This command allows you to set IPv6 settings for NTP (Network Time Protocols) server.

```
ip6 ntp -h
```

```
ip6 ntp -v
```

```
ip6 ntp -p [0/1]
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-h	It is used to display the usage of such command.
-v	It is used to show the NTP state.
-p <0/1>	It is used to specify NTP server for IPv6. 0 - Auto 1 - First Query IPv6 NTP Server.

Example

```
> ip6 ntp -p 1
% Set NTP Priority: IPv6 First
```

Telnet Command: ip6 lan

This command allows you to configure settings for IPv6 LAN.

Syntax

```
ip6 lan -l n [-<l:w:d:D:m:o:s> <parameter> | ... ]
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-h	It is used to display the usage of such command.
<l:w:d:D:m:o:s><parameter>	The following lists all of the available commands with parameters.
-l n	Select LAN interface to be set. n = 1: LAN1, Default is LAN1. n = 2: LAN2 n = x: LANx
-w n	Select WAN interface to be primary. n = 0: None n = 1: WAN1 n = 2: WAN2 n = x: WANx.
-d <server>	Set the first DNS Server IP. <server>= IPv6 Address.
-D <server	Set secondd DNS Server IP. <server>= IPv6 Address.
-m n	Set IPv6 LAN management. Default is SLAAC. n = 0: OFF n = 1: SLAAC n = 2: DHCPv6.
-o n	Enable Other option(O-bit) flag. (O-bit is redundant when management is DHCPv6) n= 0: Disable n= 1: Enable.
-e n:	Add an extension WAN. n = 1: WAN1 n = 2: WAN2 n = x: WANx.
-E n	Delete an extension WAN. n = 1: WAN1 n = 2: WAN2 n = x: WANx.
-b map	Set bit map(decimal) for extension WANs. map = bit 0: WAN1 map = bit 1: WAN2 map = bit n: WAN(n+1)
-f n	Disable IPv6. n = 1: Disable IPv6 n = 0: Enable IPv6.

-R <n>	It means to enable /disable RIPng. n=1: Enable RIPng, n=0: Disable RIPng.
-s n	Show IPv6 LAN setting. n = 0: show all. n = 1: LAN1, 2: LAN2, ... x: LANx, 5: DMZ. Default is show all

Example

```
> ip6 lan -l 2 -w 1 -d 2001:4860:4860::8888 -o 1 -f 0 -s 2
% Set LAN2!
% Set primary WAN1!
>
```

Telnet Command: ip6 session

This command allows you to set sessions limit for IPv6 address.

Syntax

`ip6 session on`

`ip6 session off`

`ip6 session default <num>`

`ip6 session status`

`ip6 session show`

`ip6 session add <IP1-IP2> <num>`

`ip6 session del <IP1-IP2> <num>`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>on</i>	It means to turn on session limit for each IP.
<i>off</i>	It means to turn off session limit for each IP.
<i>default <num></i>	It means to set the default number of session num limit. <num>: Enter a number.
<i>defaultp2p <num></i>	It means to set the default P2P number of session num limit. <num>: Enter a number.
<i>status</i>	It means to display the current settings.
<i>show</i>	It means to display all IP range session limit settings.
<i>add <IP1-IP2><num> <p2pnum></i>	<add>: It means to add the session limit for an IPv6 range. <IP1-IP2> : Specify a range for IPv6 addresses. <num>: Enter a number.
<i>del<IP1-IP2><num></i>	: It means to delete the session limit for an IPv6 range. <IP1-IP2> : Specify a range for IPv6 addresses. <num>: Enter a number.

Example

```
> ip6 session on
> ip6 session add 2100:ABCD::2-2100:ABCD::10 100
> ip6 session status
```

```

IPv6 range:
  2100:ABCD::2 - 2100:ABCD::10 : 100
Current ip6 session limit is turn on
Current default session number is 100

>

```

Telnet Command: ip6 bandwidth

This command allows you to configure settings for IPv6 LAN.

Syntax

`ip6 bandwidth on`

`ip6 bandwidth off`

`ip6 bandwidth default <tx_rate> <rx_rate>`

`ip6 bandwidth status`

`ip6 bandwidth show`

`ip6 bandwidth add <IP1-IP2> <tx><rx><shared>`

`ip6 bandwidth del <IP1-IP2> <tx><rx><shared>`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<code>-h</code>	It is used to display the usage of such command.
<code>on</code>	It means to turn on bandwidth limit for each IP.
<code>off</code>	It means to turn off bandwidth limit for each IP.
<code>default <tx_rate> <rx_rate></code>	It means to set the default transmission (tx), receiving (rx) rate of bandwidth limit (0-30000 Kbps/Mbps). <tx_rate>: Enter a number. <rx_rate>: Enter a number.
<code>status</code>	It means to display the current settings.
<code>show</code>	It means to display all IP range bandwidth limit settings.
<code>add <IP1-IP2> <tx><rx><shared></code>	<add>: It means to add the bandwidth limit for an IPv6 range. <IP1-IP2> - Specify a range for IPv6 addresses. <tx><rx>: It means the bandwidth limit for transmission and receiving rate. <shared>: It means the bandwidth will be shared for the IPv6 range.
<code>del <IP1-IP2> <tx><rx><shared></code>	: It means to delete the bandwidth limit for an IPv6 range by first IP (IP1) or del all. <IP1-IP2> - Specify a range for IPv6 addresses. <tx><rx>: It means the bandwidth limit for transmission and receiving rate. <shared>: It means the bandwidth will be shared for the IPv6 range.

Example

```

> ip6 bandwidth on
> ip6 bandwidth add 2001:ABCD::2-2001:ABCD::10 512 5M shared
> ip6 bandwidth status
IPv6 range:
  2001:ABCD::2 - 2001:ABCD::10 : Tx:512K Rx:5M shared

```

```

Current ip6 Bandwidth limit is turn on
Current default ip6 Bandwidth rate is Tx:2000K Rx:8000K bps
>

```

Telnet Command: ipf view

IPF users to view the version of the IP filter, to view/set the log flag, to view the running IP filter rules.

`ipf view [-VcdhrtzZ]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-V	It means to show the version of this IP filter.
-c	It means to show the running call filter rules.
-d	It means to show the running data filter rules.
-h	It means to show the hit-number of the filter rules.
-r	It means to show the running call and data filter rules.
-t	It means to display all the information at one time.
-z	It means to clear a filter rule's statistics.
-Z	It means to clear IP filter's gross statistics.

Example

```

> ipf view -V -c -d
ipf: IP Filter: v3.3.1 (1824)
Kernel: IP Filter: v3.3.1
Running: yes
Log Flags: 0x80947278 = nonip
Default: pass all, Logging: available

```

Telnet Command: ipf set

This command is used to set general rule for firewall.

`ipf set <Options>`

`ipf set <SET_NO><Options>`

`ipf set <SET_NO> rule <RULE_NO><Options>`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<code>ipf set <options></code>	It means to set the firewall general setup and default rule.
<code>ipf set <SET_NO><Options></code>	It means to set the firewall filter set including comments and next filter set.
<code>ipf set <SET_NO> rule <RULE_NO> <Options></code>	It means to set the firewall rule in filter set. For detailed information, refer to Telnet Command: ipf rule.
<i>About ipf set <options></i>	
-v	It means to view the configuration of general set.
-d <p1>	It means to setup Data Filter. <p1>: Specify the index number (1 to 12) of the set profile. To disable the setting, enter "0".
- p <p1><p2>	It means to setup actions for packet not matching any rule and whether record syslog. <p1>: Type "0" to let packets not matching any rule pass; Type "1" to block the packets not matching any rule. <p2>: "0" means the log related to rule matching will not be recorded on

	<p>Syslog; "1" means the log related to rule matching will be recorded on Syslog.</p> <p>For example, to set pass for packet not matching any rule and enable syslog, -p 0 1.</p>
-R <v4/v6> <Enable/Disable>	<p>It means to accept routing packet from WAN.</p> <p><v4/v6>: IPv4 or IPv6.</p> <p><Enable/Disable>: Enter 0 (enable) or 1 (disable).</p> <p>Set Accept routing packet from WAN by IPv4, please enter -R v4 0.</p>
-L <p1>	<p>It means to enable or disable the Strict Security Firewall function.</p> <p><p1>: Enter 1(enable) or 0 (disable).</p>
-C <p1>	<p>It means to setup Code Page.</p> <p><p1>: Enter a code page number (0 to 20). For example, ipf set -C 20.</p> <p>0. None</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. ANSI(1250)-Central Europe 2. ANSI(1251)-Cyrillic 3. ANSI(1252)-Latin I 4. ANSI(1253)-Greek 5. ANSI(1254)-Turkish 6. ANSI(1255)-Hebrew 7. ANSI(1256)-Arabic 8. ANSI(1257)-Baltic 9. ANSI(1258)-Viet Nam 10. OEM(437)-United States 11. OEM(850)-Multilingual Latin I 12. OEM(860)-Portuguese 13. OEM(861)-Icelandic 14. OEM(863)-Canadian French 15. OEM(865)-Nordic 16. ANSI/OEM(874)-Thai 17. ANSI/OEM(932)-Japanese Shift-JIS 18. ANSI/OEM(936)-Simplified Chinese GBK 19. ANSI/OEM(949)-Korean 20. ANSI/OEM(950)-Traditional Chinese Big5
-M <p1><p2>	<p>It means to setup APP Enforcement and Syslog.</p> <p><p1>: Enter a number (0 to 32). In which, 0 means none; 1 to 32 mens the index number of the profile.</p> <p><p2>: "0" means the log related to APP Enforcement will not be recorded on Syslog; "1" means the log related to APP Enforcement will be recorded on Syslog.</p>
-U <p1><p2>	<p>It means to setup URL Content Filter for packets not matching any rule.</p> <p><p1>: Enter a number (0 to 8). In which, 0 means none; 1 to 8 mens the index number of the profile.</p> <p><p2>: "0" means the log related to URL Content Filter will not be recorded on Syslog; "1" means the log related to URL Content Filter will be recorded on Syslog.</p>
-W <p1><p2>	<p>It means to setup Web Content Filter for packets not matching any rule.</p> <p><p1>: Enter a number (0 to 8). In which, 0 means none; 1 to 8 mens the index number of the profile.</p> <p><p2>: "0" means the log related to Web Content Filter will not be recorded on Syslog; "1" means the log related to Web Content Filter will be recorded on Syslog.</p>
-D <p1><p2>	<p>It means to setup DNS Filter for packets not matching any rule.</p> <p><p1>: Enter a number (0 to 8). In which, 0 means none; 1 to 8 mens the index number of the profile.</p> <p><p2>: "0" means the log related to DNS Filter will not be recorded on Syslog; "1" means the log related to DNS Filter will be recorded on Syslog.</p>
-a <p1>	<p>It means to configure the advanced settings.</p>
-f <p1>	<p>It means to accept large incoming fragmented UDP or ICMP packets.</p> <p><p1>: Enter 1(enable) or 0 (disable).</p>
-t <p1>	<p>It means to enable or disable the Transparent Mode.</p> <p><p1>: Enter 1(enable) or 0 (disable).</p>
-E <p1><p2>	<p>It means to set the maximum count for session limitation.</p> <p><p1>: Enter a number (0 to 50000)</p> <p><p2>: "0" means the log related to session control will not be recorded on Syslog; "1" means the log related to session control will be recorded on Syslog.</p>

<code>-Q <p1><p2></code>	It means to set the QoS Class. <p1>: Enter a number (0 to 4). 0: None 1: Class 1 2: Class 2 3: Class 3 4: Default Class <p2>: "0" means the log related to QoS Class will not be recorded on Syslog; "1" means the log related to QoS Class will be recorded on Syslog.
<code>-Y <p1><p2></code>	It means to set the User Management. <p1>: Enter a number (-1 to 2). -1: None 0: All 1: user object 2: user group <p2>: 1 to 200(if p1 is set with 1, user object) or 1 to 32(if p1 is set with 2, user group)
<code>-y <p1></code>	It means the log related to User Management will be or be not recorded on Syslog. <p1>: Enter 1(enable) or 0 (disable).
<code>-w <p1></code>	It means to set the window size of TCP protocol. <p1>: Enter a value (0 to 65535).
<code>-A <p1></code>	It means to enable or disable the function of packet capture. <p1>: Enter 1(enable) or 0 (disable).
<i>About ipf set <SET_NO><Options></i>	
<code>-m <Comments></code>	It means to set comment for a filter set. <Comments>: Enter a description for the filter set.
<code>-v</code>	It means to view the comment and the next filter set.
<code>-n <NEXT_SET_NO></code>	It means to specify the next filter set of current filter set. <NEXT_SET_NO>: Enter a number (1 to 12). For example, ipf set 1 -n 2.

Example

```

> ipf set -R "v4 1"

Setting saved.

> ipf set -R "v6 1"

Setting saved.

> ipf set -v

Call Filter: Enable (Start Filter Set = 1)
Data Filter: Enable (Start Filter Set = 2)
Log Flag   : Disable

Actions for packet not matching any rule:
Pass or Block   : Pass
CodePage       : ANSI(1252)-Latin I
Max Sessions Limit: 50000
Current Sessions : 0
Mac Bind IP    : Non-Strict
QOS Class     : None
APP Enforcement : None
URL Content Filter: None
WEB Content Filter: None

```

```

DNS Filter      : None
Load-Balance policy : Auto-select

-----

CodePage          : ANSI(1252)-Latin I
Window size       : 65535
Session timeout   : 60
DrayTek Banner    : Enable

-----

Accept large incoming fragmented UDP or ICMP packets: Enable
Transparent Mode   : Disable

-----

Block routing packet from WAN:
  [v] IPv4
  [v] IPv6

-----

[v] Enable Strict Security Firewall
>

```

Telnet Command: ipf rule

This command is used to set filter rule for firewall.

`ipf rule s r [-<command> <parameter> | ...`

`ipf rule s r -v`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>s</i>	Such word means Filter Set, range form 1-12.
<i>r</i>	Such word means Filter Rule, range from 1-7.
<Command><parameter>	The following lists all of the available commands with parameters.
-e	It means to enable or disable the rule setting. 0- disable 1- enable
-s o:g <obj>	It means to specify source IP object and IP group. o - indicates "object". g - indicates "group". obj - indicates index number of object or index number of group. Available settings range from 1-192. For example, "-s g 3" means the third source IP group profile.
-s u <Address Type> <Start IP Address> <End IP Address> / <Address Mask>	It means to configure source IP address including address type, start IP address, end IP address and address mask. u - It means "user defined". <i>Address Type</i> - Type the number (representing different address type). 0 - Subnet Address 1 - Single Address 2 - Any Address 3 - Range Address Example:

	<p>Set Subnet Address => -s u 0 192.168.1.10 255.255.255.0</p> <p>Set Single Address => -s u 1 192.168.1.10</p> <p>Set Any Address => -s u 2</p> <p>Set Range Address => -s u 3 192.168.1.10 192.168.1.15</p>
-d u <Address Type> <Start IP Address> <End IP Address> / <Address Mask>	<p>It means to configure destination IP address including address type, start IP address, end IP address and address mask.</p> <p>u - It means "user defined".</p> <p>Address Type - Type the number (representing different address type).</p> <p>0 - Subnet Address</p> <p>1 - Single Address</p> <p>2 - Any Address</p> <p>3 - Range Address</p> <p>Example:</p> <p>Set Subnet Address => -d u 0 192.168.1.10 255.255.255.0</p> <p>Set Single Address => -d u 1 192.168.1.10</p> <p>Set Any Address => -d u 2</p> <p>Set Range Address => -d u 3 192.168.1.10 192.168.1.15</p>
-d o:g <obj>	<p>It means to specify destination IP object and IP group.</p> <p>o - indicates "object".</p> <p>g - indicates "group"</p> <p><obj>- indicates index number of object or index number of group. Available settings range from 1-192. For example, "-d g 1" means the first destination IP group profile.</p>
-S o:g <obj>	<p>It means to specify Service Type object and IP group.</p> <p>o - indicates "object".</p> <p>g - indicates "group"</p> <p><obj> - indicates index number of object or index number of group. Available settings range from 1-96. For example, "-S 0 1" means the first service type object profile.</p>
-S u <protocol> <source_port_value> <destination_port_vale>	<p>It means to configure advanced settings for Service Type, such as protocol and port range.</p> <p>u - it means "user defined".</p> <p><protocol> - It means TCP(6),UDP(17), TCP/UDP(255).</p> <p><source_port_value> -</p> <p>1 - Port OP, range is 0-3. 0:=, 1:!=, 2:>, 3:<</p> <p>3 - Port range of the Start Port Number, range is 1-65535.</p> <p>5 - Port range of the End Port Number, range is 1-65535.</p> <p><destination_port_value>:</p> <p>2 - Port OP, range is 0-3, 0:==, 1:!=, 2:>, 3:<</p> <p>4 - Port range of the Start Port Number, range is 1-65535.</p> <p>6 - Port range of the End Port Number, range is 1-65535.</p>
-F <index> <log flag>	<p>It means the Filter action you can specify.</p> <p>index - Available settings contain:</p> <p>0 -Pass Immediately,</p> <p>1 - Block Immediately,</p> <p>2 - Pass if no further match,</p> <p>3 - Block if no further match.</p> <p>log flag - 0 means disable to save and display in Syslog; 1 means enable to save and display in Syslog.</p>
-q <index> <log flag>	<p>It means the classification for QoS.</p>

	<p>index - Available settings contain:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1- Class 1, 2 - Class 2, 3 - Class 3, 4 - Other <p>log flag - 0 means disable to save and display in Syslog; 1 means enable to save and display in Syslog.</p>
<i>-l <wan> <log flag></i>	<p>It means to set load balance policy.</p> <p>wan - Available settings contain 0 (means auto-select), 1 (means WAN1), 2 (means WAN2) and 3 (means WAN3).</p> <p>log flag - 0 means disable to save and display in Syslog; 1 means enable to save and display in Syslog.</p>
<i>-E<index></i>	<p>It means to enable APP Enforcement for Strict Security Checking.</p> <p><index> - Available settings for APP Enforcement are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0 - disable APP Enforcement. 1- enable APP Enforcement.
<i>-a <index> <Log Flag></i>	<p>It means to specify which APP Enforcement profile will be applied.</p> <p><index> - Available settings range for APP Enforcement is 0 ~ 32. "0" means no profile will be applied.</p> <p>log flag - 0 means disable to save and display in Syslog; 1 means enable to save and display in Syslog.</p>
<i>-u <index> <Log Flag></i>	<p>It means to specify which URL Content Filter profile will be applied.</p> <p><index> - Available settings range from 0 ~ 8. "0" means no profile will be applied.</p> <p>log flag- 0 means disable to save and display in Syslog; 1 means enable to save and display in Syslog.</p>
<i>-w <index> <Log Flag></i>	<p>It means to specify which Web Content Filter profile will be applied.</p> <p><index> - Available settings range from 0 ~ 8. "0" means no profile will be applied.</p> <p>log flag- 0 means disable to save and display in Syslog; 1 means enable to save and display in Syslog.</p>
<i>-n <index> <Log Flag></i>	<p>It means to specify which DNS Filter profile will be applied.</p> <p><index> - Available settings range from 0 ~ 8. "0" means no profile will be applied.</p> <p>log flag- 0 means disable to save and display in Syslog; 1 means enable to save and display in Syslog.</p>
<i>-c <0-20></i>	<p>It means to set code page. Different number represents different code page.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0. None 1. ANSI(1250)-Central Europe 2. ANSI(1251)-Cyrillic 3. ANSI(1252)-Latin I 4. ANSI(1253)-Greek 5. ANSI(1254)-Turkish 6. ANSI(1255)-Hebrew 7. ANSI(1256)-Arabic 8. ANSI(1257)-Baltic 9. ANSI(1258)-Viet Nam 10. OEM(437)-United States 11. OEM(850)-Multilingual Latin I 12. OEM(860)-Portuguese 13. OEM(861)-Icelandic 14. OEM(863)-Canadian French

	15. OEM(865)-Nordic 16. ANSI/OEM(874)-Thai 17. ANSI/OEM(932)-Japanese Shift-JIS 18. ANSI/OEM(936)-Simplified Chinese GBK 19. ANSI/OEM(949)-Korean 20. ANSI/OEM(950)-Traditional Chinese Big5
-C <Windows Size> <Session_Timeout>	It means to set Window size and Session timeout (Minute). <Windows Size> - Available settings range from 1 ~ 65535. <Session_Timeout> - Make the best utilization of network resources.
-M <Your Comments>	Set the content of the comments for a rule.
-v	It is used to show current filter/rule settings.

Example

```

> ipf rule 2 1 -v
Filter Set 2 Rule 1:

Status      : Enable
Comments:   xNetBios -> DNS
Index(1-15) in Schedule Setup: <null>, <null>, <null>, <null>

Clear sessions when schedule is ON: Disable

Direction   : LAN/RT/VPN -> WAN
Src Interface : LAN1, LAN2, LAN3, LAN4, Routed, VPN
Dst Interface : WAN1, WAN2, WAN3, WAN4, WAN5, WAN6, WAN7
Source IP    : Any
Destination IP: Any
Service Type : TCP/UDP, Port: from 137~139 to 53
Fragments   : Don't Care

Pass or Block      : Block Immediately
Branch to Other Filter Set: None
Max Sessions Limit : 50000
Current Sessions   : 0
Mac Bind IP        : Non-Strict
Qos Class          : None
APP Enforcement    : None
URL Content Filter : None
WEB Content Filter : None
DNS Filter         : None
Load-Balance policy : Auto-select
Log                : Disable
-----
CodePage           : ANSI(1252)-Latin I
Window size        : 65535
Session timeout    : 60
DrayTek Banner     : Enable
-----
Strict Security Checking
[ ] APP Enforcement

```

Telnet Command: ipf flowtrack

This command is used to set and view flowtrack sessions.

`ipf flowtrack set [-re]`

`ipf flowtrack view [-fb]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<code>-r</code>	It means to refresh the flowtrack.
<code>-e</code>	It means to enable or disable the flowtrack.
<code>-f</code>	It means to show the sessions state of flowtrack. If you do not specify any IP address, then all the session state of flowtrack will be displayed.
<code>-b</code>	It means to show all of IP sessions state.

Example

```
>ipf flowtrack set -r
Refresh the flowstate ok
> ipf flowtrack view -f
Start to show the flowtrack sessions state:

ORIGIN>> 192.168.1.11:59939 ->      8.8.8.8: 53 ,ifno=0
REPLY >>      8.8.8.8: 53 -> 192.168.1.11:59939 ,ifno=3
          proto=17, age=93023180(3920), flag=203
ORIGIN>> 192.168.1.11:15073 ->    8.8.8.8: 53 ,ifno=0
REPLY >>      8.8.8.8: 53 -> 192.168.1.11:15073 ,ifno=3
          proto=17, age=93025100(2000), flag=203
ORIGIN>> 192.168.1.11: 7247 ->    8.8.8.8: 53 ,ifno=0
REPLY >>      8.8.8.8: 53 -> 192.168.1.11: 7247 ,ifno=3
          proto=17, age=93020100(7000), flag=203
End to show the flowtrack sessions state
```

Telnet Command: Log

This command allows users to view log for WAN interface such as call log, IP filter log, flush log buffer, etc.

`log [-cfhiptwx?] [-F a| c | f | w]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<code>-c</code>	It means to show the latest call log.
<code>-f</code>	It means to show the IP filter log.
<code>-F</code>	It means to show the flush log buffer. a: flush all logs c: flush the call log f: flush the IP filter log w: flush the WAN log
<code>-h</code>	It means to show this usage help.
<code>-p</code>	It means to show PPP/MP log.

-t	It means to show all logs saved in the log buffer.
-w	It means to show WAN log.
-x	It means to show packet body hex dump.

Example

```

> log -w
25:36:25.580 ---->DHCP (WAN-5) Len = 548XID = 0x7880fdd4
    Client IP      = 0.0.0.0
    Your IP        = 0.0.0.0
    Next server IP = 0.0.0.0
    Relay agent IP = 0.0.0.0
25:36:33.580 ---->DHCP (WAN-5) Len = 548XID = 0x7880fdd4
    Client IP      = 0.0.0.0
    Your IP        = 0.0.0.0
    Next server IP = 0.0.0.0
    Relay agent IP = 0.0.0.0
25:36:41.580 ---->DHCP (WAN-5) Len = 548XID = 0x7880fdd4
    Client IP      = 0.0.0.0
    Your IP        = 0.0.0.0
    Next server IP = 0.0.0.0
    Relay agent IP = 0.0.0.0
25:36:49.580 ---->DHCP (WAN-5) Len = 548XID = 0x7880fdd4
    Client IP      = 0.0.0.0
    Your IP        = 0.0.0.0
    Next server IP = 0.0.0.0
    Relay agent IP = 0.0.0.0
25:36:57.580 ---->DHCP (WAN-5) Len = 548XID = 0x7880fdd4
    Client IP      = 0.0.0.0
    Your IP        = 0.0.0.0
--- MORE ---  ['q': Quit, 'Enter': New Lines, 'Space Bar': Next Page]
---
```

Telnet Command: ldap user

This command is used to configure the LDAP profile.

Syntax

ldap user <INDEX><OPTION>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>INDEX</i>	Specify the index number (1 to 8) of the LDAP profile.
<i>OPTION</i>	
-n <i>VALUE</i>	Setup Profile Name.
-b <i>VALUE</i>	Setup Base Distinguished Name.
-a <i>VALUE</i>	Setup Additional Filter.
-g <i>VALUE</i>	Setup Group Distinguished Name.
-c <i>VALUE</i>	Setup Common Name Identifier.
-v	View detail information of the LDAP profile.

Example

```
>ldap user 1 -n LD_user_test1
Profile Name has been updated!
> ldap user 1 -v
Profile Index:1
Profile Name:LD_user_test1
Common Name Identifier:
Base Distinguished Name:
Additional Filter:
Group distinguished Name:
>
```

Telnet Command: ldap set

This command is used to set general settings (e.g., IP address, port number) for LDAP server.

Syntax

ldap set *[Options][Value]*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>enable [0-1]</i>	Enable or disable LDAP function. 0 - Disable the function. 1 - Enable the function.
<i>type [0-2]</i>	Set the bind type as Simple(0), Anonymous(1), and Regular(2).
<i>ssl [0-1]</i>	Enable or disable LDAP function via SSL tunnel. 0 - Disable the function. 1 - Enable the function.
<i>IP <VALUE></i>	Set IP address for LDAP server.
<i>port <VALUE></i>	Set port number for LDAP server.
<i>dn <VALUE></i>	Set Regular DN value
<i>PWD <VALUE></i>	Set Regular password value.

Example

```
>ldap set enable 1
>ldap enabled.
> ldap set ssl 1
LDAP with SSL has been enabled!
> ldap set IP 192.168.100.155
LDAP Server IP has been setting.
> ldap set port 389
```



```

LDAP Server Port has been setting.
> ldap set dn dc=example,dc=com
LDAP Regular DN has been setting.
> ldap set PWD 123456
LDAP Regular Password has been setting.

```

Telnet Command: ldap view

This command is used to check current status of LDAP settings configuration.

Syntax

ldap view

Example

```

> ldap view ?
LDAP Enable:Disabled.
LDAP Bind Type:Simple
LDAP with SSL:Disabled
LDAP Regular DN:
LDAP Regular Password:
LDAP Server IP:
LDAP Server Port:389

```

Telnet Command: radius

This command allows you to configure detailed settings for RADIUS server

Syntax

radius enable <0/1>

radius authport <port number>

radius set_auth_method <method idx>

radius client add <idx> -i <address> -m <mask> -p <prefix> -l <length> -s <secret>

radius client del <idx>

radius show

radius enable_dot1x <0/1>

radius set_dot1x_method -e <method_idx>

radius set_dot1x_method -d <method_idx>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>enable</i> <0/1>	Enable (1) or disable (0) the RADIUS server.
<i>authport</i> <port number>	Configure the port number for authentication. Port number: Available range is from 0 to 65535. Default value is "1812".
<i>set_auth_method</i> <method idx>	Specify which method will be used for authentication. Method idx: "0" is "Only PAP"; "1" is "PAP/CHAP/MS-CHAP/MS-CHAPv2".
<i>client add</i> <idx> -i <address> -m <mask> -p <prefix> -l <length> -s <secret>	Specify a client to be authenticated by RADIUS server by typing required information as follows: -i <address>: client IPv4 address(domain)

	-m <mask>: client IPv4 mask -p <prefix>: client IPv6 prefix -l <length>: client IPv6 prefix length -s <secret>: shared secret ex: radius client add 1 -i 192.168.1.1 -m 255.255.255.0 -s 123
<i>client del <idx></i>	<i>del</i> - Delete related settings for selected client. <i>idx</i> - Specify the index number of client profiles.
<i>show</i>	Display the status of RADIUS server.
<i>enable_dot1x <0/1></i>	Enable (1) or disable (0) the 802.1X Authentication function of RADIUS Server. Default is disabled.
<i>set_dot1x_method -e <method_idx></i>	Set a method for 802.1X authentication of RADIUS server. Method idx: 1 to 4. 1: EAP_PEAP/MSCHAPv2 2: EAP_TTLS/PAP 3: EAP_TTLS/MSCHAP 4: EAP_TTLS/MSCHAPv2
<i>set_dot1x_method -d <method_idx></i>	Delete the method for 802.1X authentication of RADIUS server. Method idx: 1 to 4. 1: EAP_PEAP/MSCHAPv2 2: EAP_TTLS/PAP 3: EAP_TTLS/MSCHAP 4: EAP_TTLS/MSCHAPv2

Example

```
> radius client add 1 -i 192.168.1.1 -m 255.255.255.0 -s 123
Set radius server client OK
```

Telnet Command: tacacsplus set

This command allows users to configure general settings for TACACS+ server

Syntax

tacacspluse set [*Options*][*Value*]

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>enable [0-1]</i>	Disable (0)/enable(1) the TACACS+ server.
<i>IP <VALUE></i>	Set the IP address of TACACS+ server.
<i>port <VALUE></i>	Set the port number of TACACS+ server.
<i>shared_secret <VALUE></i>	Set the Shared Secret value of TACACS+ Server.

Example

```
> tacacsplus set enable 1
TACACS+ enabled!
This setting will take effect after rebooting.
Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.

> tacacsplus set IP 192.168.1.59
TACACS+ Server IP has been setting.
This setting will take effect after rebooting.
Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
```

```

> tacacsplus view
TACACS+ Enable:Enable.
TACACS+ Server IP:192.168.1.59
TACACS+ Server Port:49
TACACS+ Type:ASCII
TACACS+ Shared Secret:

```

Telnet Command: tacacsplus view

This command allows users to check the general settings for TACACS+ server

Syntax

`tacacsplus view`

Example

```

> tacacsplus view
TACACS+ Enable:Enable.
TACACS+ Server IP:192.168.1.59
TACACS+ Server Port:49
TACACS+ Type:ASCII
TACACS+ Shared Secret:

```

Telnet Command: mngt ftpport

This command allows users to set FTP port for management.

`mngt ftpport [FTP port]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>FTP port</i>	It means to type the number for FTP port. The default setting is 21.

Example

```

> mngt ftpport 21
% Set FTP server port to 21 done.

```

Telnet Command: mngt httpport

This command allows users to set HTTP port for management.

`mngt httpport [Http port]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>Http port</i>	It means to enter the number for HTTP port. The default setting is 80.

Example

```

> mngt httpport 80
% Set web server port to 80 done.

```

Telnet Command: mngt httpsport

This command allows users to set HTTPS port for management.

mngt httpsport [*Https port*]

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>Https port</i>	It means to type the number for HTTPS port. The default setting is 443.

Example

```
> mngt httpsport 443
% Set web server port to 443 done.
```

Telnet Command: mngt sslvpnport

This command allows users to set SSL VPN port for management.

mngt sslvpnport <*SSL VPN port*>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>SSL VPN port</i>	It means to type the number for SSL VPN port. The default setting is 443.

Example

```
> mngt sslvpnport 1010
% Set SSL VPN port to 1010 done.
```

Telnet Command: mngt telnetport

This command allows users to set telnet port for management.

mngt telnetport [*Telnet port*]

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>Telnet port</i>	It means to type the number for telnet port. The default setting is 23.

Example

```
> mngt telnetport 23
% Set Telnet server port to 23 done.
```

Telnet Command: mngt sshport

This command allows users to set SSH port for management.

mngt sshport [*ssh port*]

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>ssh port</i>	It means to type the number for SSH port. The default setting is 22.

Example

```
> mngt sshport 23
% Set ssh port to 23 done.
```

Telnet Command: mngt noping

This command is used to pass or block Ping from LAN PC to the internet.

mngt noping *[on]*

mngt noping *[off]*

mngt noping *[viewlog]*

mngt noping *[clearlog]*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>on</i>	All PING packets will be forwarded from LAN PC to Internet.
<i>off</i>	All PING packets will be blocked from LAN PC to Internet.
<i>viewlog</i>	It means to display a log of ping action, including source MAC and source IP.
<i>clearlog</i>	It means to clear the log of ping action.

Example

```
> mngt noping off
No Ping Packet Out is OFF!!
```

Telnet Command: mngt defenseworm

This command can block specified port for passing through the router.

mngt defenseworm [on]

mngt defenseworm [off]

mngt defenseworm [add port]

mngt defenseworm [del port]

mngt defenseworm [viewlog]

mngt defenseworm [clearlog]

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>on</i>	It means to activate the function of defense worm packet out.
<i>off</i>	It means to inactivate the function of defense worm packet out.
<i>add port</i>	It means to add a new TCP port for block.
<i>del port</i>	It means to delete a TCP port for block.
<i>viewlog</i>	It means to display a log of defense worm packet, including source MAC and source IP.
<i>clearlog</i>	It means to remove the log of defense worm packet.

Example

```
> mngt defenseworm add 21
Add TCP port 21
Block TCP port list: 135, 137, 138, 139, 445, 21
> mngt defenseworm del 21
Delete TCP port 21
Block TCP port list: 135, 137, 138, 139, 445
```

Telnet Command: mngt rmtcfg

This command can allow the system administrators to login from the Internet. By default, it is not allowed.

mngt rmtcfg [status]

mngt rmtcfg [enable]

mngt rmtcfg [disable]

mngt rmtcfg [http/https/ftp/telnet/ssh/tr069] [on/off]

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>status</i>	It means to display current setting for your reference.
<i>enable</i>	It means to allow the system administrators to login from the Internet.
<i>disable</i>	It means to deny the system administrators to login from the Internet.
<i>http/https/ftp/telnet/ssh/tr069</i>	It means to specify one of the servers/protocols for enabling or disabling.
<i>on/off</i>	on - enable the function.

off - disable the function.

Example

```
> mngt rmtcfg ftp on
Enable server fail
Remote configure function has been disabled
please enable by enter mngt rmtcfg enable

> mngt rmtcfg enable
%% Remote configure function has been enabled.
> mngt rmtcfg ftp on
%% FTP server has been enabled.
```

Telnet Command: mngt lanaccess

This command allows users to manage accessing into Vigor router through LAN port.

Syntax

mngt lanaccess *-e* <0/1> *-s* <value> *-i* <value>

mngt lanaccess *-l*

mngt lanaccess *-E*

mngt lanaccess *-f*

mngt lanaccess *-d*

mngt lanaccess *-v*

mngt lanaccess *-h*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>-e</i> <0/1>	It means to enable/disable the function. 0-disable the function. 1-enable the function.
<i>-s</i> <value>	It means to specify service offered. Available values include: FTP, HTTP, HTTPS, ENFORCE_HTTPS, TELNET, SSH, None, All
<i>-i</i> <value>	It means the interface which is allowed to access. Available values include: LAN1-LAN16, DMZ, IP Routed Subnet, None, All Note: LAN1 is always allowed for accessing into the router.
<i>-l</i> <value>	It means the IP object index allowed to access. Available values include: 1 to 192.
<i>-E</i> <0/1>	It means to enable the function of specific IP allowed to be access. 0-disable the function. 1-enable the function.
<i>-f</i>	It means to flush all of the settings.
<i>-d</i>	It means to restore the factory default settings.
<i>-v</i>	It means to view current settings.
<i>-h</i>	It means to get the usage of such command.

Example

```
> mngt lanaccess -e 1
> mngt lanaccess -s FTP,TELNET
> mngt lanaccess -i LAN3
>> mngt lanaccess -v
Current LAN Access Control Setting:
* Enable:Yes
* Service:
  - FTP:Yes
  - HTTP:No
  - HTTPS:No
  - TELNET:Yes
  - SSH:No
* Subnet:
  - LAN 2: disabled
  - LAN 3: enabled
  - LAN 4: disabled
  - LAN 5: disabled
  - LAN 6: disabled
  - DMZ: disabled
  - IP Routed Subnet: disabled
```

Note: the settings do NOT apply to LAN1, LAN1 is always allowed to access the router

Telnet Command: mngt echoicmp

This command allows users to reject or accept PING packets from the Internet.

```
mngt echoicmp [enable]
```

```
mngt echoicmp [disable]
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>enable</i>	It means to accept the echo ICMP packet.
<i>disable</i>	It means to drop the echo ICMP packet.

Example

```
> mngt echoicmp enable
%% Echo ICMP packet enabled.
```

Telnet Command: mngt accesslist

This command allows you to specify that the system administrator can login from a specific host or network. A maximum of three IPs/subnet masks is allowed.

```
mngt accesslist list
```

```
mngt accesslist add <Index><IP Object Index>
```

```
mngt accesslist remove <Index>
```

```
mngt accesslist flush
```


Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>list</i>	It can display current setting for your reference.
<i>add</i>	It means adding a new entry.
<Index><IP Object Index>	It means to specify the IP object. Available settings: <index> - Enter the index number of the accesslist profile. <IP Object Index> - Enter the index number of the IP object.
<i>index</i>	It means the index number (1 to 192) of the IP objects preconfigured.
<i>remove</i>	It means to delete the selected item.
<i>flush</i>	It means to remove all the settings in the access list.

Example

```

> mngt accesslist add 1 1
%% Set OK.
> mngt accesslist list
%% Access list :
  [Index]          [IP Object Index]          [IP/CIDR or StartIP ~ EndIP]
=====
  1              1                          Please setting index=1 for IP
Object

```

Telnet Command: mngt snmp

This command allows you to configure SNMP for management.

mngt snmp [-<command> <parameter> | ...]

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
[<command> <parameter> ...]	The available commands with parameters are listed below. [...] means that you can type in several commands in one line.
-e <1/2>	1: Enable the SNMP function. 2: Disable the SNMP function.
-a <1/2>	1: Enable the SNMPV1 function. 2: Disable the SNMPV1 function.
-b <1/2>	1: Enable the SNMPV2C function. 2: Disable the SNMPV2C function.
-c <1/2>	1: Enable the SNMPV3 function. 2: Disable the SNMPV3 function.
-g<Community name>	It means to set the name for getting community by typing a proper character. (max. 23 characters)
-s <Community name>	It means to set community by typing a proper name. (max. 23 characters)
-m <IP address>	It means to set one host as the manager to execute SNMP function. Please type in IPv4 address to specify certain host. It allows to set 3 IPs, separated by ",".
-t <Community name>	It means to set trap community by typing a proper name. (max. 23 characters)
-n <IP address>	It means to set the notification host. It allows to set 2 IPs, separated by ",".
-T <seconds>	It means to set the trap timeout <0-999>.

<code>-o <username></code>	It means to set a user account (maximum 23 characters) for user management.
<code>-p <0/1/2></code>	It means to set the authentication algorithm. 0: No auth 1: MD5_AUTH 2: SHA_AUTH
<code>-q <password></code>	It means to set the password (maximum 23 characters) for authentication.
<code>-r <0,3/4/6></code>	It means to set privacy algorithm 0, 3: No_PRIV 4: DES_PRIV 6: AES_PRIV
<code>-u <password></code>	It means to set the password (maximum 23 characters) for privacy.
<code>-V</code>	It means to list SNMP setting.

Example

```
> mngt snmp -e 1 -g draytek -s DK -m 192.168.1.1 -t trapcom -n 10.20.3.40
-T 88
SNMP Agent Turn on!!!
Get Community set to draytek
Set Community set to DK
Manager Host IP set to 192.168.1.1
Trap Community set to trapcom
Notification Host IP set to 10.20.3.40
Trap Timeout set to 88 seconds
>
```

Telnet Command: mngt bfp

This command allows you to configure brute force protect (BFP) for system management.

Syntax

`mngt bfp [<command><parameter>|...]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<code>[<command> <parameter> ...]</code>	The available commands with parameters are listed below. [...] means that you can type in several commands in one line.
<code>-e 0/1</code>	Enable / disable the BFP function. 0 - Disable 1 - Enable
<code>-s <service></code>	It means to enable different service. service - Available types are FTP, HTTP, HTTPS, TELNET, TR069, SSH, VPN, None and All.
<code>-l <failure></code>	It means to set login failure retry times. failure - Available number is from 1 to 255.
<code>-p <penalty></code>	It means to set penalty time for BFP. The unit is sec.
<code>-v</code>	It means to view current settings.

Example

```
> mngt bfp -e 1
```

```

> mngt bfp -s FTP
> mngt bfp -l 10
> mngt bfp -v
Current Brute Force Protection Setting:
* Enable: yes
* Service:
  - FTP:          yes
  - HTTP:         no
  - HTTPS:        no
  - TELNET:       no
  - TR069:        no
  - SSH:          no
  - VPN:          no
* Maximum login failures: 10
* Penalty period: 0

```

Telnet Command: mngt cert_import

This command allows you to import a certificate to Vigor router.

Syntax

```

mngt cert_import local_cert <URL><password>
mngt cert_import trusted_ca <URL>

```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>local_cert url</i> <URL> <password>	URL - Enter a URL(http://...) for downloading the certificate. The file is encrypted with the file format of "xxxx.p12". Password - Enter the password for decrypting the .p12 certificate.
<i>trusted_ca</i> <URL>	URL - Enter a URL(http://...) for downloading the certificate. The file is encrypted with the file format of "xxxx.p12".

Telnet Command: mngt telnettimeout

This command allows you to configure the timeout for telnet connection.

Syntax

```

mngt telnettimeout <value>

```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<value>	Range from 60 to 300. The default value is 300 (seconds).

Example

```

> mngt telnettimeout 100
% Telnet timeout : 100s

```

Telnet Command: mngt sshtimeout

This command allows you to configure the timeout for SSH connection.

Syntax

mngt sshtimeout <value>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<value>	Range from 60 to 300. The default value is 180 (seconds).

Example

```
> mngt sshtimeout 200
% SSH timeout : 200s
>
```

Telnet Command: msubnet switch

This command is used to configure multi-subnet.

msubnet switch [2/3/4][On/Off]

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
2/3/4	It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4
On/Off	On means turning on the subnet for the specified LAN interface. Off means turning off the subnet.

Example

```
> msubnet switch 2 On
% LAN2      Subnet On!

This setting will take effect after rebooting.
Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
```

Telnet Command: msubnet addr

This command is used to configure IP address for the specified LAN interface.

msubnet addr [2/3/4][IP address]

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
2/3/4/5/6	It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2

	3=LAN3 4=LAN4
<i>IP address</i>	Type the private IP address for the specified LAN interface.

Example

```
> msubnet addr 2 192.168.5.1
% Set LAN2 subnet IP address done !!!

This setting will take effect after rebooting.
Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
```

Telnet Command: msubnet nmask

This command is used to configure net mask address for the specified LAN interface.

`msubnet nmask [2/3/4][IP address]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>2/3/4/5/6</i>	It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4
<i>IP address</i>	Type the subnet mask address for the specified LAN interface.

Example

```
> msubnet nmask 2 255.255.0.0
% Set LAN2 subnet mask done !!!

This setting will take effect after rebooting.
Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
```

Telnet Command: msubnet status

This command is used to display current status of subnet.

`msubnet status [2/3/4]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>2/3/4/5/6</i>	It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4

Example

```
> msubnet status 2
% LAN2      Off: 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0, PPP Start IP: 0.0.0.60
% DHCP server: Off
% Dhcp Gateway: 0.0.0.0, Start IP: 0.0.0.10, Pool Count: 50
```

Telnet Command: msubnet dhcps

This command allows you to enable or disable DHCP server for the subnet.

`msubnet dhcps [2/3/4][On/Off]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>2/3/4/5/6</i>	It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4
<i>On/Off</i>	On means enabling the DHCP server for the specified LAN interface. Off means disabling the DHCP server.

Example

```
> ms subnet dhcps 3 off
% LAN3 Subnet DHCP Server disabled!

This setting will take effect after rebooting.
Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
```

Telnet Command: ms subnet nat

This command is used to configure the subnet for NAT or Routing usage.

`msubnet nat [2/3/4] [On/Off]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>2/3/4/5/6</i>	It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4
<i>On/Off</i>	On - It means the subnet will be configured for NAT usage. Off - It means the subnet will be configured for Routing usage.

Example

```
>> ms subnet nat 2 off
% LAN2 Subnet is for Routing usage!
%Note: If you have multiple WAN connections, please be reminded to setup
a Load-Balance policy so that packets from this subnet will be forwarded
to the right WAN interface!

This setting will take effect after rebooting.
Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
```

Telnet Command: ms subnet gateway

This command is used to configure an IP address as the gateway used for subnet.

`msubnet gateway [2/3/4] [Gateway IP]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>2/3/4/5/6</i>	It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4
<i>Gateway IP</i>	Specify an IP address as the gateway IP.

Example

```
> msubnet gateway 2 192.168.1.13
% Set LAN2 Dhcp Gateway IP done !!!

This setting will take effect after rebooting.
Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
```

Telnet Command: msubnet ipcnt

This command is used to defined the total number allowed for each LAN interface.

`msubnet ipcnt [2/3/4] [IP counts]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>2/3/4/5/6</i>	It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4
<i>IP counts</i>	Specify a total number of IP address allowed for each LAN interface. The available range is from 0 to 220.

Example

```
> msubnet ipcnt 2 15
This setting will take effect after rebooting.
Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
```

Telnet Command: msubnet talk

This command is used to establish a route between two LAN interfaces.

`msubnet talk [1/2/3/4] [1/2/3/4] [On/Off]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>1/2/3/4</i>	It means LAN interface. 1=LAN1 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4
<i>On/Off</i>	On - It means to establish a link for the selected LAN with others. Off - It means to terminate the link.

Example

```

> msubnet talk 1 2 on
% Enable routing between LAN1 and LAN2!

This setting will take effect after rebooting.
Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.

> msubnet talk
% msubnet talk <1/2/3/4> <1/2/3/4> <On/Off>
% where 1:LAN1, 2:LAN2, 3:LAN3, 4:LAN4
% Now:
%           LAN1  LAN2  LAN3  LAN4
% LAN1      V
% LAN2      V    V
% LAN3                V
% LAN4                        V

```

Telnet Command: msubnet startip

This command is used to configure a starting IP address for DHCP.

`msubnet startip [2/3/4] [Gateway IP]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>2/3/4</i>	It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4
<i>Gateway IP</i>	Type an IP address as the starting IP address for a subnet.

Example

```

> msubnet startip 2 192.168.2.90
%Set LAN2 Dhcp Start IP done !!!

This setting will take effect after rebooting.
Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
> msubnet startip ?
% msubnet startip <2/3/4> <Gateway IP>
% Now: LAN2 192.168.2.90; LAN3 192.168.3.10; LAN4 192.168.4.10;

```

Telnet Command: msubnet pppip

This command is used to configure a starting IP address for PPP connection.

`msubnet pppip [2/3/4] [Start IP]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>2/3/4</i>	It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4

<i>Start IP</i>	Type an IP address as the starting IP address for PPP connection.
-----------------	---

Example

```
> msubnet pppip 2 192.168.2.250
% Set LAN2 PPP(IPCP) Start IP done !!!

This setting will take effect after rebooting.
Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.

> msubnet pppip ?
% msubnet pppip <2/3/4> <Start IP>
% Now: LAN2 192.168.2.250; LAN3 192.168.3.200; LAN4 192.168.4.200
```

Telnet Command: msubnet nodetype

This command is used to specify the type for node which is required by DHCP option.

msubnet nodetype *[2/3/4][count]*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>2/3/4</i>	It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4
<i>count</i>	Choose the following number for specifying different node type. 1= B-node 2= P-node 4= M-node 8= H-node 0= Not specify any type for node.

Example

```
> msubnet nodetype ?
% msubnet nodetype <2/3/4> <count>
% Now: LAN2 0; LAN3 0; LAN4 0

% count: 1. B-node 2. P-node 4. M-node 8. H-node

> msubnet nodetype 2 1
% Set LAN2 Dhcp Node Type done !!!

> msubnet nodetype ?
% msubnet nodetype <2/3/4> <count>
% Now: LAN2 1; LAN3 0; LAN4 0

% count: 1. B-node 2. P-node 4. M-node 8. H-node
```

Telnet Command: msubnet primWINS

This command is used to configure primary WINS server.

`msubnet primWINS [2/3/4] [WINS IP]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>2/3/4</i>	It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4
<i>WINS IP</i>	Type the IP address as the WINS IP.

Example

```
> ms subnet primWINS ?
% ms subnet primWINS <2/3/4> <WINS IP>
% Now: LAN2 0.0.0.0; LAN3 0.0.0.0; LAN4 0.0.0.0
> ms subnet primWINS 2 192.168.3.5
% Set LAN2 Dhcp Primary WINS IP done !!!

> ms subnet primWINS ?
% ms subnet primWINS <2/3/4> <WINS IP>
% Now: LAN2 192.168.3.5; LAN3 0.0.0.0; LAN4 0.0.0.0
```

Telnet Command: ms subnet secWINS

This command is used to configure secondary WINS server.

`msubnet secWINS [2/3/4] [WINS IP]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>2/3/4</i>	It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4
<i>WINS IP</i>	Type the IP address as the WINS IP.

Example

```
> ms subnet secWINS 2 192.168.3.89
% Set LAN2 Dhcp Secondary WINS IP done !!!

> ms subnet secWINS ?
% ms subnet secWINS <2/3/4> <WINS IP>
% Now: LAN2 192.168.3.89; LAN3 0.0.0.0; LAN4 0.0.0.0
```

Telnet Command: msubnet tftp

This command is used to set TFTP server for multi-subnet.

`msubnet tftp [2/3/4] [TFTP server name]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>2/3/4/5/6</i>	It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4
<i>TFTP server name</i>	Type a name to indicate the TFTP server.

Example

```
> msubnet tftp ?
% msubnet tftp <2/3/4> <TFTP server name>
% Now: LAN2
      LAN3
      LAN4

> msubnet tftp 2 publish
% Set LAN2 TFTP Server Name done !!!

> msubnet tftp ?
% msubnet tftp <2/3/4> <TFTP server name>
% Now: LAN2 publish
      LAN3
      LAN4
```

Telnet Command: msubnet mtu

This command allows you to configure MTU value for LAN/IP Routed Subnet.

`msubnet mtu [interface][value]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>interface</i>	Available settings include LAN1~LAN4, IP_Routed_Subnet.
<i>value</i>	1000 ~ 1508 (Bytes), default: 1500 (Bytes)

Example

```
> msubnet mtu LAN1 1492%
Set LAN1 subnet mtu as 1492
> msubnet mtu ?
Usage:

>msubnet mtu <interface> <value>

<interface>: LAN1~LAN4,IP_Routed_Subnet, <value>: 1000 ~ 1496
(Bytes), de
```

```

fault: 1500 (Bytes)

e.x: >msubnet mtu LAN1 1492

Current Settings:

LAN1 MTU:          1492 (Bytes)
LAN2 MTU:          1500 (Bytes)
LAN3 MTU:          1500 (Bytes)
LAN4 MTU:          1500 (Bytes)
IP Routed Subnet MTU: 1500 (Bytes)

```

Telnet Command: ms subnet leasetime

This command is used to set leasetime for multi-subnet.

Syntax

`msubnet leasetime <1/2/3/4> <Lease Time sec.>`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>1/2/3/4</i>	It means LAN interface. 1=LAN1 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4
<i>Lease Time sec.</i>	Enter a value (range: 10 to 259200).

Example

```

> ms subnet leasetime 8 300
% Set LAN8 lease time: 300

```

Telnet Command: object ip obj

This command is used to create an IP object profile.

`object ip obj setdefault`

`object ip obj INDEX -v`

`object ip obj INDEX -n NAME`

`object ip obj INDEX -i INTERFACE`

`object ip obj INDEX -s INVERT`

`object ip obj INDEX -a TYPE [START_IP] [END/MASK_IP]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>setdefault</i>	It means to return to default settings for all profiles.
<i>INDEX</i>	It means the index number of the specified object profile.
<i>-v</i>	It means to view the information of the specified object profile.

	Example: <i>object ip obj 1 -v</i>
<i>-n NAME</i>	It means to define a name for the IP object. NAME: Type a name with less than 15 characters. Example: <i>object ip obj 9 -n bruce</i>
<i>-i INTERFACE</i>	It means to define an interface for the IP object. INTERFACE=0, means any INTERFACE=1, means LAN INTERFACE=3, means WAN Example: <i>object ip obj 8 -i 0</i>
<i>-s INVERT</i>	It means to set invert selection for the object profile. INVERT=0, means disableing the function. INVERT=1, means enabling the function. Example: <i>object ip obj 3 -s 1</i>
<i>-a TYPE</i>	It means to set the address type and IP for the IP object profile. TYPE=0, means Mask TYPE=1, means Single TYPE=2, means Any TYPE=3, means Rang Example: <i>object ip obj 3 -a 2</i>
<i>[START_IP]</i>	When the TYPE is set with 2, you have to type an IP address as a starting point and another IP address as end point. Type an IP address.
<i>[END/MASK_IP]</i>	Type an IP address (different with START_IP) as the end IP address.

Example

```

> object ip obj 1 -n marketing
> object ip obj 1 -a 1 192.168.1.45
> object ip obj 1 -v
IP Object Profile 1
Name :[marketing]
Interface:[Any]
Address type:[single]
Start ip address:[192.168.1.45]
End/Mask ip address:[0.0.0.0]
Invert Selection:[0]

```

Telnet Command: object ip grp

This command is used to integrate several IP objects under an IP group profile.

object ip grp setdefault

object ip grp INDEX -v

object ip grp INDEX -n NAME

object ip grp INDEX -i INTERFACE

object ip grp INDEX -a IP_OBJ_INDEX

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>setdefault</i>	It means to return to default settings for all profiles.

<i>INDEX</i>	It means the index number of the specified group profile.
<i>-v</i>	It means to view the information of the specified group profile. Example: <i>object ip grp 1 -v</i>
<i>-n NAME</i>	It means to define a name for the IP group. NAME: Type a name with less than 15 characters. Example: <i>object ip grp 8 -n bruce</i>
<i>-i INTERFACE</i>	It means to define an interface for the IP group. INTERFACE=0, means any INTERFACE=1, means LAN INTERFACE=2, means WAN Example: <i>object ip grp 3 -i 0</i>
<i>-a IP_OBJ_INDEX</i>	It means to specify IP object profiles for the group profile. Example: <i>:object ip grp 3 -a 1 2 3 4 5</i> The IP object profiles with index number 1,2,3,4 and 5 will be group under such profile.

Example

```

> object ip grp 2 -n First
IP Group Profile 2
Name      :[First]
Interface:[Any]
Included ip object index:
[0:][0]
[1:][0]
[2:][0]
[3:][0]
[4:][0]
[5:][0]
[6:][0]
[7:][0]

> object ip grp 2 -i 1
> object ip grp 2 -a 1 2
IP Group Profile 2
Name      :[First]
Interface:[Lan]
Included ip object index:
[0:][1]
[1:][2]
[2:][0]
[3:][0]
[4:][0]
[5:][0]
[6:][0]
[7:][0]

```

Telnet Command: object ipv6 obj

This command is used to create an IP object profile.

`object ipv6 obj setdefault`

`object ipv6 obj INDEX -v`

`object ipv6 obj INDEX -n NAME`

`object ipv6 obj INDEX -i INTERFACE`

`object ipv6 obj INDEX -s INVERT`

`object ipv6 obj INDEX -a TYPE <START_IP><END_IP>/<Prefix Length>`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>setdefault</i>	It means to return to default settings for all profiles.
<i>INDEX</i>	It means the index number of the specified object profile.
<i>-v</i>	It means to view the information of the specified object profile. Example: <code>object ipv6 obj 1 -v</code>
<i>-n NAME</i>	It means to define a name for the IP object. NAME: Type a name with less than 15 characters. Example: <code>object ipv6 obj 9 -n bruce</code>
<i>-i INTERFACE</i>	It means to define an interface for the IP object. INTERFACE=0, means any INTERFACE=1, means LAN INTERFACE=3, means WAN Example: <code>object ipv6 obj 8 -i 0</code>
<i>-s INVERT</i>	It means to set invert selection for the object profile. INVERT=0, means disabling the function. INVERT=1, means enabling the function. Example: <code>object ipv6 obj 3 -s 1</code>
<i>-a TYPE</i>	It means to set the address type and IP for the IP object profile. TYPE=0, means Mask TYPE=1, means Single TYPE=2, means Any TYPE=3, means Range TYPE=4, means mac Example: <code>object ipv6 obj 3 -a 2</code>
<i><START_IP><END_IP></i>	When the TYPE is set with 0, 1,3, you have to type an IP address as a starting point and another IP address as end point. Type the IP address(es) based on the selection of TYPE.
<i><Prefix Length></i>	When the TYPE is set with 0, 1 or 3, you have to enter a number as prefix length for the IPv6 address.

Example

```
> object ipv6 obj 3 -a 3 2607:f0d0:1002:51::4 2607:f0d0:1002:51::4
Setting saved.
> obj ipv6 obj 3 -v
IPv6 Object Profile 3
Name      :[]
Address Type:[range]
```

```

Start IPv6 Address:[2607:F0D0:1002:51::4]
End IPv6 Address:[2607:F0D0:1002:51::4]
Prefix Length:[0]
MAC Address:[00:00:00:00:00:00]
Invert Selection:[0]
Match Type:[0]

```

Telnet Command: object ipv6 grp

This command is used to integrate several IP objects under an IP group profile.

object ipv6 grp setdefault

object ipv6 grp INDEX -v

object ipv6 grp INDEX -n NAME

object ipv6 grp INDEX -a IP_OBJ_INDEX

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>setdefault</i>	It means to return to default settings for all profiles.
<i>INDEX</i>	It means the index number of the specified group profile.
<i>-v</i>	It means to view the information of the specified group profile. Example: <i>object ipv6 grp 1 -v</i>
<i>-n NAME</i>	It means to define a name for the IP group. NAME: Type a name with less than 15 characters. Example: <i>object ipv6 grp 8 -n bruce</i>
<i>-a IP_OBJ_INDEX</i>	It means to specify IP object profiles for the group profile. Example: <i>:object ipv6 grp 3 -a 1 2 3 4 5</i> The IP object profiles with index number 1,2,3,4 and 5 will be group under such profile.

Example

```

> object ipv6 grp 2 -n First
IP Group Profile 2
Name   :[First]
Interface:[Any]
Included ip object index:
[0:][0]
[1:][0]
[2:][0]
[3:][0]
[4:][0]
[5:][0]
[6:][0]
[7:][0]

> object ipv6 grp 2 -a 1 2
IP Group Profile 2
Name   :[First]
Interface:[Lan]
Included ip object index:

```



```
[0:][1]
[1:][2]
[2:][0]
[3:][0]
[4:][0]
[5:][0]
[6:][0]
[7:][0]
```

Telnet Command: object service obj

This command is used to create service object profile.

object service obj setdefault

object service obj INDEX -v

object service obj INDEX -n NAME

object service obj INDEX -p PROTOCOL

object service obj INDEX -s CHK [START_P] [END_P]

object service obj INDEX -d CHK [START_P] [END_P]

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>setdefault</i>	It means to return to default settings for all profiles.
<i>INDEX</i>	It means the index number of the specified service object profile.
<i>-v</i>	It means to view the information of the specified service object profile. Example: <i>object service obj 1 -v</i>
<i>-n NAME</i>	It means to define a name for the IP object. NAME: Type a name with less than 15 characters. Example: <i>object service obj 9 -n bruce</i>
<i>-i PROTOCOL</i>	It means to define a PROTOCOL for the service object profile. PROTOCOL =0, means any PROTOCOL =1, means ICMP PROTOCOL =2, means IGMP PROTOCOL =6, means TCP PROTOCOL =17, means UDP PROTOCOL =255, means TCP/UDP Other values mean other protocols. Example: <i>object service obj 8 -i 0</i>
<i>CHK</i>	It means the check action for the port setting. 0=equal(=), when the starting port and ending port values are the same, it indicates one port; when the starting port and ending port values are different, it indicates a range for the port and available for this service type. 1=not equal(!=), when the starting port and ending port values are the same, it indicates all the ports except the port defined here; when the starting port and ending port values are different, it indicates that all the ports except the range defined here are available for this service type. 2=larger(>), the port number greater than this value is available.. 3=less(<), the port number less than this value is available for this profile.

<code>-s CHK [START_P] [END_P]</code>	It means to set source port check and configure port range (1-65565) for TCP/UDP. END_P, type a port number to indicate source port. Example: <code>object service obj 3 -s 0 100 200</code>
<code>-d CHK [START_P] [END_P]</code>	It means to set destination port check and configure port range (1-65565) for TCP/UDP. END_P, type a port number to indicate destination port. Example: <code>object service obj 3 -d 1 100 200</code>

Example

```
> object service obj 1 -n limit
> object service obj 1 -p 255
> object service obj 1 -s 1 120 240
> object service obj 1 -d 1 200 220
> object service obj 1 -v
Service Object Profile 1
Name      :[limit]
Protocol:[255]
Source port check action:[!=]
Source port range:[120~240]
Destination port check action:[!=]
Destination port range:[200~220]
```

Telnet Command: object service grp

This command is used to integrate several service objects under a service group profile.

Syntax

- `object service grp setdefault`
- `object service grp INDEX -v`
- `object service grp INDEX -n NAME`
- `object service grp INDEX -a SER_OBJ_INDEX`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<code>setdefault</code>	It means to return to default settings for all profiles.
<code>INDEX</code>	It means the index number of the specified group profile.
<code>-v</code>	It means to view the information of the specified group profile. Example: <code>object service grp 1 -v</code>
<code>-n NAME</code>	It means to define a name for the service group. NAME: Type a name with less than 15 characters. Example: <code>object service grp 8 -n bruce</code>
<code>-a SER_OBJ_INDEX</code>	It means to specify service object profiles for the group profile. Example: <code>:object service grp 3 -a 1 2 3 4 5</code> The service object profiles with index number 1,2,3,4 and 5 will be grouped under such profile.

Example

```

>object service grp 1 -n Grope_1
Service Group Profile 1
Name   :[Grope_1]
Included service object index:
[0:][0]
[1:][0]
[2:][0]
[3:][0]
[4:][0]
[5:][0]
[6:][0]
[7:][0]

> object service grp 1 -a 1 2
Service Group Profile 1
Name   :[Grope_1]
Included service object index:
[0:][1]
[1:][2]
[2:][0]
[3:][0]
[4:][0]
[5:][0]
[6:][0]
[7:][0]

```

Telnet Command: object kw

This command is used to create keyword profile.

object kw obj setdefault

object kw obj show PAGE

object kw obj INDEX -v

object kw obj INDEX -n NAME

object kw obj INDEX -a CONTENTS

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>setdefault</i>	It means to return to default settings for all profiles.
<i>show PAGE</i>	It means to show the contents of the specified profile. PAGE: type the page number.
<i>show</i>	It means to show the contents for all of the profiles.
<i>INDEX</i>	It means the index number of the specified keyword profile.
<i>-v</i>	It means to view the information of the specified keyword profile.
<i>-n NAME</i>	It means to define a name for the keyword profile. NAME: Type a name with less than 15 characters.
<i>-a CONTENTS</i>	It means to set the contents for the keyword profile. Example: <i>object kw obj 40 -a test</i>

Example

```

> object kw obj 1 -n children
Profile 1
Name  :[children]
Content:[]
> object kw obj 1 -a gambling
Profile 1
Name  :[children]
Content:[gambling]

> object kw obj 1 -v
Profile 1
Name  :[children]
Content:[gambling]

```

Telnet Command: object fe

This command is used to create File Extension Object profile.

- object fe show
- object fe setdefault
- object fe obj *INDEX* -v
- object fe obj *INDEX* -n *NAME*
- object fe obj *INDEX* -e *CATEGORY*/*FILE_EXTENSION*
- object fe obj *INDEX* -d *CATEGORY*/*FILE_EXTENSION*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>show</i>	It means to show the contents for all of the profiles.
<i>setdefault</i>	It means to return to default settings for all profiles.
<i>INDEX</i>	It means the index number (from 1 to 8) of the specified file extension object profile.
-v	It means to view the information of the specified file extension object profile.
-n <i>NAME</i>	It means to define a name for the file extension object profile. NAME: Type a name with less than 15 characters.
-e	It means to enable the specific CATEGORY or FILE_EXTENSION.
-d	It means to disable the specific CATEGORY or FILE_EXTENSION
<i>CATEGORY</i> / <i>FILE_EXTENSION</i>	CATEGORY: Image, Video, Audio, Java, ActiveX, Compression, Execution Example: <i>object fe obj 1 -e Image</i> FILE_EXTENSION: ".bmp", ".dib", ".gif", ".jpeg", ".jpg", ".jpg2", ".jp2", ".pct", ".pcx", ".pic", ".pict", ".png", ".tif", ".tiff", ".asf", ".avi", ".mov", ".mpe", ".mpeg", ".mpg", ".mp4", ".qt", ".rm", ".wmv", ".3gp", ".3gpp", ".3gpp2", ".3g2", ".aac", ".aiff", ".au", ".mp3", ".m4a", ".m4p", ".ogg", ".ra", ".ram", ".vox", ".wav", ".wma", ".class", ".jad", ".jar", ".jav", ".java", ".jcm", ".js", ".jse", ".jsp", ".jtk", ".alx", ".apb", ".axs", ".ocx", ".olb", ".ole", ".tlb", ".viv", ".vrm", ".ace", ".arj", ".bzip2", ".bz2", ".cab", ".gz", ".gzip", ".rar", ".sit", ".zip", ".bas", ".bat", ".com",

```
".exe", ".inf", ".pif", ".reg", ".scr"
```

```
Example: object fe obj 1 -e .bmp
```

Example

```
> object fe obj 1 -n music
> object fe obj 1 -e Audio
> object fe obj 1 -v
Profile Index: 1
Profile Name:[music]

-----
-----
Image category:
[ ].bmp [ ].dib [ ].gif [ ].jpeg [ ].jpg [ ].jpg2 [ ].jp2 [ ].pct
[ ].pcx [ ].pic [ ].pict [ ].png [ ].tif [ ].tiff
-----
-----
Video category:
[ ].asf [ ].avi [ ].mov [ ].mpe [ ].mpeg [ ].mpg [v].mp4 [ ].qt
[ ].rm [v].wmv [ ].3gp [ ].3gpp [ ].3gpp2 [ ].3g2
-----
-----
Audio category:
[v].aac [v].aiff [v].au [v].mp3 [v].m4a [v].m4p [v].ogg [v].ra
[v].ram [v].vox [v].wav [v].wma
-----
-----
Java category:
[ ].class [ ].jad [ ].jar [ ].jav [ ].java [ ].jcm [ ].js [ ].jse
[ ].jsp [ ].jtk
-----
-----
ActiveX category:
[ ].alx [ ].apb [ ].axs [ ].ocx [ ].olb [ ].ole [ ].tlb [ ].viv
[ ].vrm
-----
-----
Compression category:
[ ].ace [ ].arj [ ].bzip2 [ ].bz2 [ ].cab [ ].gz [ ].gzip [ ].rar
[ ].sit [ ].zip
-----
-----
Execution category:
[ ].bas [ ].bat [ ].com [ ].exe [ ].inf [ ].pif [ ].reg [ ].scr
```

Telnet Command: **object sms**

This command is used to create short message object profile.

Syntax

```
object sms show
object sms setdefault
object sms obj INDEX -v
object sms obj INDEX -n NAME
object sms obj INDEX -s Service Provider
object sms obj INDEX -u Username
object sms obj INDEX -p Password
object sms obj INDEX -q Quota
```

object sms obj *INDEX* -i Interval
 object sms obj *INDEX* -I URL

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>show</i>	It means to show the contents for all of the profiles.
<i>setdefault</i>	It means to return to default settings for all profiles.
<i>[INDEX]</i>	It means the index number (from 1 to 10) of the specified SMS object profile.
-v	It means to view the information of the specified SMS object profile.
-n <i>[NAME]</i>	It means to define a name for the SMS object profile. NAME: Type a name with less than 15 characters.
-s <i>[Service Provider]</i>	It means to specify the number of the service provider which offers the service of SMS. Different numbers represent different service provider. 0 : kotsms.com.tw (TW) 2 : textmarketer.co.uk (UK) 4 : messagemedia.co.uk (UK) 5 : bulksms.com (INT) 6 : bulksms.co.uk (UK) 7 : bulksms.2way.co.za (ZA) 8 : bulksms.com.es (ES) 9 : usa.bulksms.com (US) 10 : bulksms.de (DE) 11 : www.pswin.com (EU) 12 : www.messagebird.com (EU) 13 : www.lusosms.com (EU) 14 : www.vibeactivemedia.com (UK)
-u <i>[Username]</i>	It means to define a user name for the SMS object profile. Type a user name that the sender can use to register to selected SMS provider.
-p <i>[Password]</i>	It means to define a password for the SMS object profile. Type a password that the sender can use to register to selected SMS provider.
-q <i>[Quota]</i>	Enter the number of the credit that you purchase from the service provider. Note that one credit equals to one SMS text message on the standard route.
-I <i>[Interval]</i>	It means to set the sending interval for the SMS to be delivered. Enter the shortest time interval for the system to send SMS.
-I <i>[URL]</i>	It means to set the URL for Custom 1 and Custom 2 profiles. The profile name for Custom 1 and Custom 2 are defined in default and can not be changed.

Example

```
> object sms obj 1 -n CTC
> object sms obj 1 -s 0
> object sms obj 1 -u carrie
> object sms obj 1 -p 19971125cm
> object sms obj 1 -q 2
> object sms obj 1 -i 50
```

```

> object sms obj 1 -v
Profile Index: 1
Profile Name:[CTC]
SMS Provider:[kotsms.com.tw (TW)]
Username:[carrie]
Password:[*****]
Quota:[2]
Sending Interval:[50(seconds)]

```

Telnet Command: object mail

This command is used to create mail object profile.

Syntax

```

object mail show
object mail setdefault
object mail obj INDEX -v
object mail obj INDEX -n <Profile Name>
object mail obj INDEX -s <SMTP Server>
object mail obj INDEX -l <Connection security>
object mail obj INDEX -m <SMTP Port>
object mail obj INDEX -a <Sender Address>
object mail obj INDEX -t <Authentication>
object mail obj INDEX -u <Username>
object mail obj INDEX -p <Password>
object mail obj INDEX -i <Sending Interval>

```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>show</i>	It means to show the contents for all of the profiles.
<i>setdefault</i>	It means to return to default settings for all profiles.
[INDEX]	It means the index number (from 1 to 10) of the specified mail object profile.
-v	It means to view the information of the specified mail object profile.
-n <Profile Name>	It means to define a name for the mail object profile. <i>Profile Name:</i> Type a name with less than 15 characters.
-s <SMTP Server>	It means to set the IP address of the mail server.
-l <Connection security>	It means to set the connection security for the object profile. 0 - (Plaintext) 1 - (SSL) 2 - (StartTLS ,nice to have) 3 - (StartTLS ,MUST)
-m <SMTP Port>	It means to set the port number for SMTP server.
-a <Sender Address>	It means to set the e-mail address (e.g., johnwash@abc.com.tw) of the sender.
-t <Authentication>	The mail server must be authenticated with the correct username and password to have the right of sending message out. 0 - disable 1 - enable to use the port number.
-u <Username>	Type a name for authentication. The maximum length of the name you can set is 31 characters.
-p <Password>	Type a password for authentication. The maximum length of

	the password you can set is 31 characters.
<i>-i <Sending Interval></i>	Define the interval for the system to send the SMS out. The unit is second.

Example

```

> object mail obj 1 -n buyer
> object mail obj 1 -s 192.168.1.98
> object mail obj 1 -m 25
> object mail obj 1 -t 1
> object mail obj 1 -u john
> object mail obj 1 -p happy123456
> object mail obj 1 -i 25
> object mail obj 1 -v
Profile Index: 1
Interface:[WAN1]
Alias IP Index:[0]
Profile Name:[buyer]
SMTP Server:[192.168.1.98]
SMTP Port:[25]
Sender Address:[carrie@draytek.com]
Connection Security:[StartTLS(Nice to have)]
Authentication:[enable]
Username:[john]
Password:[*****]
Sending Interval:[25(seconds)]

```

Telnet Command: object noti

This command is used to create notification object profile.

Syntax

```

object noti show
object noti setdefault
object noti obj INDEX -v
object noti obj INDEX -n <Profile Name>
object mail obj INDEX -e <Category><Status>
object mail obj INDEX -d <Category><Status>

```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>show</i>	It means to show the contents for all of the profiles.
<i>setdefault</i>	It means to return to default settings for all profiles.
<i>[INDEX]</i>	It means the index number (from 1 to 8) of the specified notification object profile.
<i>-v</i>	It means to view the information of the specified notification object profile.
<i>-n <Profile Name></i>	It means to define a name for the notification object profile. <i>Profile Name:</i> Type a name with less than 15 characters.
<i>-e</i>	It means to enable the status of specified category.
<i>-d</i>	It means to disable the status of specified category.
<i><Category></i>	Available categories are: 1: WAN; 2: VPN Tunnel; 3: Temperature Alert;

	4: WAN Budget; 5: CVM; 6: High Availability; 9:Security
<status>	For WAN - 1: Disconnected; 2: Reconnected. For VPN Tunnel - 1: Disconnected; 2: Reconnected. For Temperature Alert - 1: Out of Range. For WAN Budget - 1: Limit Reached. For CVM - 1: CPE Offline; 2: Backup Fail; 3: Restore Fail; 4: FW Update Fail; 5: VPN Profile Setup Fail.

Example

```

> object noti obj 1 -n market
> object noti obj 1 -e 1 1
> object noti obj 1 -e 2 1
> object noti obj 1 -v
Profile Index: 1
Profile Name:[market]
      Category                Status
WAN                [v]Disconnected [ ]Reconnected
VPN Tunnel          [v]Disconnected [ ]Reconnected
Temperature Alert [ ]USB Temperature Out of Range
WAN Budget Alert   [ ]Limit Reached
>

```

Telnet Command: object schedule

This command is used to create schedule object profile.

Syntax

```

object schedule set INDEX option
object schedule view
object schedule setdefault

```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>set</i>	It means to set the schedule profile.
<i>[INDEX]</i>	It means the index number (from 1 to 15) of the specified object profile.
<i>option</i>	Available options for schedule.
<i>-e [value]</i>	It means to enable the schedule setup. 0 - disable 1 - enable
<i>-c [comment]</i>	It means to set brief description for the specified profile. The length range of the comment: 0 ~ 32 characters.
<i>-D [year][month][day]</i>	It means to set the starting date of the profile. [year] - Must be between 2000-2049. [month] - Must be between 1-12. [day] - Must be between 1-31. For example: To set Start Date 2015/10/6, type

	> <i>object schedule set 1 -D "2015 10 6"</i>
<i>-T [hour][minute]</i>	It means to set the starting time of the profile. [hour] - Must be between 0-23. [minute] - Must be between 0-59. For example: To set Start Time 10:20, type > <i>object schedule set 1 -T "10 20"</i>
<i>-d [hour][minute]</i>	It means to set the duration time of the profile. [hour] - Must be between 0-23. [minute] - Must be between 0-59. For example: To set Duration Time 3:30, type > <i>object schedule set 1 -d "3 30"</i>
<i>-a [value]</i>	It means to set the action used for the profile. [value] - 0:Force On, 1:Force Down, 2:Enable Dial-On-Demand, 3:Disable Dial-On-Demand
<i>-l [value]</i>	It means to set idle time. [value] - Must be between 0-255(minute). The default is 0.
<i>-h [option] [day]</i>	Set how often the schedule will be applied. [option] - 0: Once, 1: Weekdays, 2:Monthly, 3:Cycle days [day] - Sun, Mon, Tue, Wed, Thu, Fri, Sat If the [option] set Weekdays, then must select which days of Week. example: To select Sunday, Monday, Thursday, type > <i>object schedule set 1 -h "1 Sun Mon Thu"</i>
<i>view [INDEX]</i>	It means to show the content of the profile.
<i>setdefault</i>	It means to return to default settings for all profiles.

Example

```

> object schedule set 1 -e 1
> object schedule set 1 -c Working
> object schedule set 1 -D "2021 5 2"
> object schedule set 1 -T "8 1"
> object schedule set 1 -d "2 30"
> object schedule set 1 -a 0
> object schedule set 1 -h "1 Mon Wed"
> object schedule view 1
Index No.1

-----
[v] Enable Schedule Setup
  Comment [ Working ]
  Start Date (yyyy-mm-dd) [ 2021 ]-[ 5 ]-[ 2 ]
  Start Time (hh:mm) [ 8 ]:[ 1 ]
  Duration Time (hh:mm) [ 2 ]:[ 30 ]
  Action [ Force On ]
  Idle Timeout [ 0 ] minute(s).(max. 255, 0 for
default)
-----

```

How Often

Weekdays

Sun Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri Sat

>

Telnet Command: port

This command allows users to set the speed for specific port of the router.

Syntax

port <1, 2, 3, 4, all><AN, 1G, 100F, 100H, 10F, 10H, status>

port <wan2> <AN, 1000F, 100F, 100H, 10F, 10H, status>

port <enable, disable> <1, 2, 3, 4, all>

port status

port sniff <on, off, port, txrx, restart, status>

port 802.1x <enable, disable, status, addport, delport>

port jumbo

port wanfc

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>1, 2, 3, 4, wan2, all</i>	It means the number of LAN port and WAN port.
<i>AN... 10H</i>	It means the physical type for the specific port. AN: auto-negotiate. 1G: 1G. 1000F: 1000M Full Duplex. 100F: 100M Full Duplex. 100H: 100M Half Duplex. 10F: 10M Full Duplex. 10H: 10M Half Duplex.
<i>status</i>	It means to view the Ethernet port status.
<i>sniff [on, off, port, txrx, restart, status]</i>	Set the LAN Port Mirror function. On: Enable the function. Off: Disable the function. Port: Set the mirror port. E.g., port sniff p1 TXRX: Set the port number to be mirrored for transmitting/receiving the packets. E.g., port sniff txrx p2 p3 Restart: After finished the setting, use such command to activate port mirror function. Status: Display the status of LAN port mirror.
<i>802.1x[enable, disable, status, addport, delport]</i>	Each LAN port with Wired 802.1x configured will only forward 802.1x packets and block all other packets until the authentication has successfully completed. enable: Enable the function. disable: Disable the function. Status: Display the status of 802.1x configuration. Addport: Set the interface (LAN port 1 ~ 4) for applying 802.1x. E.g., 802.1x addport 1 Delport: Delete the interface (LAN port 1-4) with 802.1x applied. E.g., 802.1x delport 1
<i>wanfc</i>	It means to set WAN flow control.

Example

```
> port 1 100F
%Set Port 1 Force speed 100 Full duplex OK !!!
```

Telnet Command: portmaptime

This command allows you to set a time of keeping the session connection for specified protocol.

`portmaptime [-<command> <parameter> | ...]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<code>[<command> <parameter> ...]</code>	The available commands with parameters are listed below. [...] means that you can type in several commands in one line.
<code>-t <sec></code>	It means "TCP" protocol. <sec>: Type a number to set the TCP session timeout.
<code>-u <sec></code>	It means "UDP" protocol. <sec>: Type a number to set the UDP session timeout.
<code>-i <sec></code>	It means "IGMP" protocol. <sec>: Type a number to set the IGMP session timeout.
<code>-w <sec></code>	It means "TCP WWW" protocol. <sec>: Type a number to set the TCP WWW session timeout.
<code>-s <sec></code>	It means "TCP SYN" protocol. <sec>: Type a number to set the TCP SYN session timeout.
<code>-f</code>	It means to flush all portmaps (useful for diagnostics).
<code>-l <List></code>	List all settings.

Example

```
> portmaptime -t 86400 -u 300 -i 10
> portmaptime -l
----- Current setting -----
TCP Timeout      : 86400 sec.
UDP Timeout      : 300 sec.
IGMP Timeout     : 10 sec.
TCP WWW Timeout  : 60 sec.
TCP SYN Timeout  : 60 sec.
```

Telnet Command: ppa

This command allows you to configure PPA mode.

`ppa [-<command> <parameter> | ...]`

`ppa n [-<command> <parameter> | ...]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<code>[<command> <parameter> ...]</code>	The available commands with parameters are listed below. [...] means that you can type in several commands in one line.

<code>-m <mode></code>	Specify a mode. 1=auto 2=manual(traffic) 3=manual(qos) 4=manual(specific hosts) 0=disable
<code>-p <proto></code>	Specify a protocol. proto - 1-TCP; 2-UDP; 3-Both.
<code>-b 1/0</code>	Enable/disable TWO-way hardware acceleration.
<code>-M enable/disable</code>	Enable/disable the multicast hardware acceleration.
<code>-v</code>	Show PPA_WAN_Table and PPA_LAN_Table for reference.
<code>-c</code>	Clean all settings.
ppa n - used in QoS or specific host	
<code>-l <rule></code>	Specify an index number of rule profile for QoS mode.
<code>-h <host></code>	Type an IP address for Specific Host mode.
<code>-s <start port></code>	Specify a starting port number for Specific Host mode.
<code>-e <end port></code>	Specify an ending port number for Specific Host mode

Example

```

> ppa -m 1 -p 1 -b 0
Set ok! The PPA mode is Auto

% You need to set the Manual mode first !

%TWO way accleration is disable

> ppa -v
% PPA mode is Auto
%PPA Protocol TCP 1, UDP 0
%PPA two way disable
%PPA time is 10
%PPA range is 192
%PPA LAN entries 0
%PPA WAN entries 0

```

Telnet Command: prn

This command allows you to view current status (interface and driver) of USB printer.

`prn status`

`prn debug`

Example

```

> prn status
Interface: USB bus 2.0
Printer: NotReady

> prn debug

```

```

conn[0] :
none
conn[1] :
none
conn[2] :
none
conn[3] :
none
LPD_data_total=0

usb1p_ptr=0
UsbPrintReady=0, UsbIsPrinting=0

```

Telnet Command: qos setup

This command allows user to set general settings for QoS.

Syntax

`qos setup [-<command> <parameter> | ...]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<code>[<command> <parameter> ...]</code>	The available commands with parameters are listed below. [...] means that you can type in several commands in one line.
<code>-h</code>	Type it to display the usage of this command.
<code>-W <1-4></code>	It means to select an interface. <1-6>: 1 is WAN1; 2 is WAN2; 3 is WAN3 and etc. The default is WAN1.
<code>-m <mode></code>	It means to define which traffic the QoS control settings will apply to and enable QoS control. 0: disable. 1: in, apply to incoming traffic only. 2: out, apply to outgoing traffic only. 3: both, apply to both incoming and outgoing traffic. Default is enable (for outgoing traffic).
<code>-i <bandwidth></code>	It means to set inbound bandwidth in kbps (Ethernet WAN only) The available setting is from 1 to 100000.
<code>-o <bandwidth></code>	It means to set outbound bandwidth in kbps (Ethernet WAN only). The available setting is from 1 to 100000.
<code>-r <index:ratio></code>	It means to set ratio for class index, in %.
<code>-u <mode></code>	It means to enable bandwidth control for UDP. 0: disable 1: enable Default is disable.
<code>-p <ratio></code>	It means to enable bandwidth limit ratio for UDP.
<code>-t <mode></code>	It means to enable/disable Outbound TCP ACK Prioritize. 0: disable 1: enable
<code>-V</code>	Show all the settings.
<code>-I <bandwidth></code>	It means the minimum available non-VoIP Inbound Bandwidth

	when VoIP is detected (Kbps). <bandwidth>: Enter a value. Default value: half of WAN inbound bandwidth.
<i>-O <bandwidth></i>	It means the minimum available non-VoIP Outbound Bandwidth when VoIP is detected (Kbps). <bandwidth>: Enter a value. Default value: half of WAN outbound bandwidth.
<i>-v <0/1></i>	It means to adjust to minimum In/Out bandwidth setting (or half QoS bandwidth). 0: Auto bandwidth adjustment. 1: When VoIP detected, QoS In/Out bandwidth will be adjusted to minimum values.
<i>-D</i>	Set all to factory default (for all WANs).

Example

```

> qos setup -W 2 -m 3 -i 9500 -o 8500 -r 3:20 -u 1 -p 50 -t 1

Setup WAN2 !!!!
WAN2 QoS mode is both
inbound bandwidth set to 9500
outbound bandwidth set to 8500
WAN2 class 3 ratio set to 20
WAN2 udp bandwidth control set to enable
WAN2 udp bandwidth limit ratio set to 50
WAN2 Outbound TCP ACK Prioritizel set to enable
QoS WAN2 set complete; restart QoS
>

```


Telnet Command: qos class

This command allows user to set QoS class.

Syntax

qos class -c [*no*] -[*a|e|d*] [*no*][-<command> <parameter> | ...]

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
[<command> <parameter> ...]	The available commands with parameters are listed below. [...] means that you can type in several commands in one line.
-h	Type it to display the usage of this command.
-c <no>	Specify the inde number for the class. Available value for <no> contains 1, 2 and 3. The default setting is class 1.
-n <name>	It means to type a name for the class.
-a	It means to add rule for specified class.
-e <no>	It means to edit specified rule. <no>: type the index number for the rule.
-d <no>	It means to delete specified rule. <no>: type the index number for the rule.
-m <mode>	It means to enable or disable the specified rule. 0: disable, 1: enable
-l <addr>	Set the local address. <i>Addr1</i> - It means Single address. Please specify the IP address directly, for example, "-l 172.16.3.9". <i>addr1:addr2</i> - It means Range address. Please specify the IP addresses, for example, "-l 172.16.3.9: 172.16.3.50." <i>addr1:subnet</i> - It means the subnet address with start IP address. Please type the subnet and the IP address, for example, "-l 172.16.3.9:255.255.0.0".0 <i>any</i> - It means Any address. Simple type "-l" to specify any address for this command.
-r <addr>	Set the remote address. <i>addr1</i> - It means Single address. Please specify the IP address directly, for example, "-r 172.16.3.9". <i>addr1:addr2</i> - It means Range address. Please specify the IP addresses, for example, "-r 172.16.3.9: 172.16.3.50." <i>addr1:subnet</i> - It means the subnet address with start IP address. Please type the subnet and the IP address, for example, "-r 172.16.3.9:255.255.0.0".0 <i>any</i> - It means Any address. Simple type "-r" to specify any address for this command.
-p <DSCP id>	Specify the ID.
-s <Service type>	Specify the service type by typing the number. The available types are listed as below: 1:ANY 2:DNS 3:FTP 4:GRE 5:H.323 6:HTTP 7:HTTPS 8:IKE 9:IPSEC-AH 10:IPSEC-ESP 11:IRC 12:L2TP 13:NEWS 14:NFS 15:NNTP 16:PING 17:POP3 18:PPTP 19:REAL-AUDIO 20:RTSP 21:SFTP 22:SIP 23:SMTP 24:SNMP 25:SNMP-TRAPS 26:SQL-NET 27:SSH 28:SYSLOG 29:TELNET 30:TFTP

<code>-u <Service type></code>	Set a number to make user defined service type. Available number is: 1 ~ 40.
<code>-S <d/s></code>	Show the content for specified DSCP ID/Service type.
<code>-V <1/2/3></code>	Show the rule in the specified class.
<code>[..]</code>	It means that you can type in several commands in one line.

Example

```
> qos class -c 2 -n draytek -a -m 1 -l 192.168.1.50:192.168.1.80
```

Following setting will set in the class2

class 2 name set to draytek

Add a rule in class2

Class2 the 1 rule enabled

Set local address type to Range, 192.168.1.50:192.168.1.80

Telnet Command: qos type

This command allows user to configure protocol type and port number for QoS.

Syntax

`qos type [-a <service name> | -e <no> | -d <no>].`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<code>-a <name></code>	It means to add rule.
<code>-e <no></code>	It means to edit user defined service type. "no" means the index number. Available numbers are 1~40.
<code>-d <no></code>	It means to delete user defined service type. "no" means the index number. Available numbers are 1~40.
<code>-n <name></code>	It means the name of the service.
<code>-t <type></code>	It means protocol type. 6: tcp(default) 17: udp 0: tcp/udp <1-254>: other
<code>-p <port></code>	It means service port. The typing format must be [start:end] (ex., 510:330).
<code>-l</code>	List user defined types. "no" means the index number. Available numbers are 1~40.

Example

```
> qos type -a draytek -t 6 -p 510:1330

service name set to draytek
service type set to 6:TCP
Port type set to Range
Service Port set to 510 ~ 1330
>
```

Telnet Command: qos voip

This command allows user to enable or disable the QoS for VoIP and RTP.

Syntax

qos voip [on/off]

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
on/off	On - Enable the QoS for VoIP. Off - Disable th QoS for VoIP.

Example

```
> qos voip off
QoS for VoIP: Disable; SIP Port: 5060
```

Telnet Command: quit

This command can exit the telnet command screen.

Telnet Command: show lan

This command displays current status of LAN IP address settings.

Example

```
> show lan
The LAN settings:
Status  IP           Mask           DHCP Start IP  Pool Gateway
-----
[V]LAN1 192.168.1.1  255.255.255.0  V   192.168.1.10  200
192.168.1.1

[X]LAN2 192.168.2.1  255.255.255.0  V   192.168.2.90  100
192.168.2.1

[X]LAN3 192.168.3.1  255.255.255.0  V   192.168.3.10  100
192.168.3.1

[X]LAN4 192.168.4.1  255.255.255.0  V   192.168.4.10  100
192.168.4.1

[X]Route 192.168.0.1  255.255.255.0  V   0.0.0.0       0   192.168.0.1
```

Telnet Command: show dmz

This command displays current status of DMZ host.

Example

```
> show dmz
%      WAN1 DMZ mapping status:
Index  Status  WAN1 aux IP    Private IP
-----
      1   Disable 0.0.0.0

%      WAN2 DMZ mapping status:
Index  Status  WAN2 aux IP    Private IP
-----
      1   Disable 0.0.0.0

%      WAN3 DMZ mapping status:
Index  Status  WAN3 aux IP    Private IP
-----
      1   Disable 0.0.0.0

%      WAN4 DMZ mapping status:
Index  Status  WAN4 aux IP    Private IP
-----
      1   Disable 0.0.0.0
```

Telnet Command: show dns

This command displays current status of DNS setting

Example

```
> show dns
%%      Domain name server settings:
% LAN1 Primary DNS: [Not set]
% LAN1 Secondary DNS: [Not set]

% LAN2 Primary DNS: [Not set]
% LAN2 Secondary DNS: [Not set]

% LAN3 Primary DNS: [Not set]
% LAN3 Secondary DNS: [Not set]

% LAN4 Primary DNS: [Not set]
% LAN4 Secondary DNS: [Not set]
```

Telnet Command: show openport

This command displays current status of open port setting.

Example

```
> show openport
```

```

%%      Openport settings:
Index   Status  Comment           Local IP Address
*****
                        No data entry.

```

Telnet Command: show nat

This command displays current status of NAT.

Example

```

> show nat
Port Redirection Running Table:

Index  Protocol  Public Port  Private IP      Private Port
-----
1      0          0           0.0.0.0         0
2      0          0           0.0.0.0         0
3      0          0           0.0.0.0         0
4      0          0           0.0.0.0         0
5      0          0           0.0.0.0         0
6      0          0           0.0.0.0         0
7      0          0           0.0.0.0         0
8      0          0           0.0.0.0         0
9      0          0           0.0.0.0         0
10     0          0           0.0.0.0         0
11     0          0           0.0.0.0         0
12     0          0           0.0.0.0         0
13     0          0           0.0.0.0         0
14     0          0           0.0.0.0         0
15     0          0           0.0.0.0         0
16     0          0           0.0.0.0         0
17     0          0           0.0.0.0         0
18     0          0           0.0.0.0         0
19     0          0           0.0.0.0         0
20     0          0           0.0.0.0         0
--- MORE ---  ['q': Quit, 'Enter': New Lines, 'Space Bar': Next Page]

```

Telnet Command: show portmap

This command displays the table of NAT Active Sessions.

Example

```

> show portmap
-----
-
Private_IP:Port Pseudo_IP:Port Peer_IP:Port [Timeout/Protocol/Flag]
-----
-

```

Telnet Command: show pmtime

This command displays the reuse time of NAT session.

Level0: It is the default setting.

Level1: It will be applied when the NAT sessions are smaller than 25% of the default setting.

Level2: It will be applied when the NAT sessions are smaller than the eighth of the default setting.

Example

```
> show pmtime
Level0 TCP=86400001 UDP=300001 ICMP=10001
Level1 TCP=600000 UDP=90000 ICMP=7000
Level2 TCP=60000 UDP=30000 ICMP=5000
```

Telnet Command: show session

This command displays current status of current session.

Example

```
> show session
% Maximum Session Number: 50000
% Maximum Session Usage: 0
% Current Session Usage: 0
% Current Session Used(include waiting for free): 0
% WAN1 Current Session Usage: 0
% WAN2 Current Session Usage: 0
% WAN3 Current Session Usage: 0
% WAN4 Current Session Usage: 0
>
```

Telnet Command: show status

This command displays current status of LAN and WAN connections.

Example

```
> show status
System Uptime:1:4:49
LAN Status
Primary DNS:8.8.8.8      Secondary DNS:8.8.4.4
IP Address:192.168.1.1  Tx Rate:3266   Rx Rate:2245

WAN 1 Status: Disconnected
Enable:Yes      Line:xDSL      Name:
Mode:PPPoE      Up Time:0:00:00  IP:---      GW IP:---
TX Packets:0      TX Rate:0   RX Packets:0      RX Rate:0

WAN 2 Status: Disconnected
Enable:Yes      Line:Ethernet  Name:
Mode:---        Up Time:0:00:00  IP:---      GW IP:---
TX Packets:0      TX Rate:0   RX Packets:0      RX Rate:0

WAN 3 Status: Disconnected
Enable:Yes      Line:USB       Name:
Mode:---        Up Time:0:00:00  IP:---      GW IP:---
TX Packets:0      TX Rate:0   RX Packets:0      RX Rate:0

WAN 4 Status: Disconnected
```


>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>start</i>	It means the starting point of the IP address pool for the DHCP server.
[<command> <parameter>/[...]]	The available commands with parameters are listed below. [...] means that you can type in several commands in one line.
-l <enable>	The DHCP server assigns the IP addresses to the clients via LAN port. <enable> : Enter 0 (disable) or 1 (enable).
-m <enable>	The DHCP server assigns the IP addresses to the clients via MAC address configuration. <enable> : Enter 0 (disable) or 1 (enable).
-e <id>	Turn on the flag of LAN 1 or LAN 2 if LAN port is enabled. <id>: Enter 1 or 2.
-d <id>	Turn off the flag of LAN port 1 or LAN port 2. <id>: Enter 1 or 2.
-v	View current status.

Example

```
> srv dhcp dhcp2 -l 1 -e 1,2
> srv dhcp dhcp2 -v
2nd DHCP server flag status --
  Server works on specified MAC address: ON
  Server works on specified LAN port: ON
  Port 1 flag: ON
  Port 2 flag: ON
>
```

Telnet Command: `srv dhcp public`

This command allows users to configure DHCP server for second subnet.

`srv dhcp public start [IP address]`

`srv dhcp public cnt [IP counts]`

`srv dhcp public status`

`srv dhcp public add [MAC Addr XX-XX-XX-XX-XX-XX]`

`srv dhcp public del [MAC Addr XX-XX-XX-XX-XX-XX/all/ALL]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>start</i>	It means the starting point of the IP address pool for the DHCP server.
<i>IP address</i>	It means to specify an IP address as the starting point in the IP address pool.
<i>cnt</i>	It means the IP count number.
<i>IP counts</i>	It means to specify the number of IP addresses in the pool. The maximum is 10.
<i>status</i>	It means the execution result of this command.
<i>add</i>	It means creating a list of hosts to be assigned.
<i>del</i>	It means removing the selected MAC address.
<i>MAC Addr</i>	It means to specify MAC Address of the host.

<i>all/ALL</i>	It means all of the MAC addresses.
----------------	------------------------------------

Example

```
> ip route add 192.168.1.56 255.255.255.0 192.168.1.12 3 default
> srv dhcp public status
Index   MAC Address
```

Telnet Command: `srv dhcp dns1`

This command allows users to set Primary IP Address for DNS Server in LAN.

`srv dhcp dns1 <lan1/lan2/lan3/lan4> <DNS IP address>`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i><lan1/lan2/lan3/lan4></i>	It means to sepcify the LAN interface for setting the DNS server.
<i><DNS IP address></i>	It means the IP address that you want to use as DNS1. Note: The IP Routed Subnet DNS must be the same as NAT Subnet DNS).

Example

```
> srv dhcp dns1 168.95.1.1
% srv dhcp dns1 <DNS IP address>
% Now: 168.95.1.1
(IP Routed Subnet dns same as NAT Subnet dns)
```

Telnet Command: `srv dhcp dns2`

This command allows users to set Secondary IP Address for DNS Server in LAN.

`srv dhcp dns2 <lan1/lan2/lan3/lan4> <DNS IP address>`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i><lan1/lan2/lan3/lan4></i>	It means to display current IP address of DNS 2 for the DHCP server.
<i><DNS IP address></i>	It means the IP address that you want to use as DNS2. Note: The IP Routed Subnet DNS must be the same as NAT Subnet DNS).

Example

```
> srv dhcp dns2 lan3 10.1.1.1
% srv dhcp dns2 <DNS IP address>
% Now: 10.1.1.1
>
```

Telnet Command: `srv dhcp frcdnsmanl`

This command can force the router to invoke DNS Server IP address.

```
srv dhcp frcdnsmanl [on]
```

```
srv dhcp frcdnsmanl [off]
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<code>?</code>	It means to display the current status.
<code>on</code>	It means to use manual setting for DNS setting.
<code>Off</code>	It means to use auto settings acquired from ISP.

Example

```
> srv dhcp frcdnsmanl on
% Domain name server now is using manual settings!
> srv dhcp frcdnsmanl off
% Domain name server now is using auto settings!
```

Telnet Command: `srv dhcp gateway`

This command allows users to specify gateway address for DHCP server.

```
srv dhcp gateway [?]
```

```
srv dhcp gateway [Gateway IP]
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<code>?</code>	It means to display current gateway that you can use.
<code>Gateway IP</code>	It means to specify a gateway address used for DHCP server.

Example

```
> srv dhcp gateway 192.168.2.1
This setting will take effect after rebooting.
Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
```

Telnet Command: `srv dhcp ipcnt`

This command allows users to specify IP counts for DHCP server.

```
srv dhcp ipcnt [?]
```

```
srv dhcp ipcnt [IP counts]
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<code>?</code>	It means to display current used IP count number.
<code>IP counts</code>	It means the number that you have to specify for the DHCP server.

Example

```
> srv dhcp ipcnt ?
% srv dhcp ipcnt <IP counts>
% Now: 150
```

Telnet Command: `srv dhcp off`

This function allows users to turn off DHCP server. It needs rebooting router, please type "sys reboot" command to reboot router.

Telnet Command: `srv dhcp on`

This function allows users to turn on DHCP server. It needs rebooting router, please type "sys reboot" command to reboot router.

Telnet Command: `srv dhcp relay`

This command allows users to set DHCP relay setting.

```
srv dhcp relay servip <server ip>
```

```
srv dhcp relay 2nd_servip <server ip>
```

```
srv dhcp relay subnet <index>
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<code>server ip</code>	It means the IP address that you want to used as DHCP server.
<code>Index</code>	It means subnet 1 or 2. Please type 1 or 2. The router will invoke this function according to the subnet 1 or 2 specified here.

Example

```
> srv dhcp relay servip 192.168.1.46
> srv dhcp relay subnet 2
> srv dhcp relay servip ?
% srv dhcp relay servip <server ip>
% Now: 192.168.1.46
```

Telnet Command: `srv dhcp startip`

```
srv dhcp startip [?]
```

```
srv dhcp startip [IP address]
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
?	It means to display current used start IP address.
<i>IP address</i>	It means the IP address that you can specify for the DHCP server as the starting point.

Example

```
> srv dhcp startip 192.168.1.53
This setting will take effect after rebooting.
Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
```

Telnet Command: srv dhcp status

This command can display general information for the DHCP server, such as IP address, MAC address, leased time, host ID and so on.

Syntax

srv dhcp status <LAN1/2/3/4/ip_routed_subnet>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<LAN1/2/3/4/ip_routed_subnet>	It means to display current status for the selected interface.

Example

```
> srv dhcp status lan1
LAN1      : DHCP Server On   IP Pool: 192.168.1.10 ~ 192.168.1.209
           Default Gateway: 192.168.1.1
-----
Index   IP Address      MAC Address          Leased Time    HOST ID
-----
1       192.168.1.11   00-1D-AA-0C-CD-08   12:13:32
```

Telnet Command: `srv dhcp leasetime`

This command can set the lease time for the DHCP server.

Syntax

```
srv dhcp leasetime [?]
```

```
srv dhcp leasetime [Lease Time (sec)]
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<code>?</code>	It means to display current leasetime used for the DHCP server.
<code>Lease Time (sec)</code>	It means the lease time that DHCP server can use. The unit is second.

Example

```
> srv dhcp leasetime ?
% srv dhcp leasetime <Lease Time (sec.)>
% Now: 86400
>
```

Telnet Command: `srv dhcp nodetype`

This command can set the node type for the DHCP server.

```
srv dhcp nodetype <count>
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<code>count</code>	It means to specify a type for node. 1. B-node 2. P-node 4. M-node 8. H-node

Example

```
> srv dhcp nodetype 1
> srv dhcp nodetype ?
%% srv dhcp nodetype <count>
%% 1. B-node 2. P-node 4. M-node 8. H-node
% Now: 1
```


Telnet Command: `srv dhcp primWINS`

This command can set the primary IP address for the DHCP server.

```
srv dhcp primWINS [WINS IP address]
```

```
srv dhcp primWINS clear
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>WINS IP address</i>	It means the IP address of primary WINS server.
<i>clear</i>	It means to remove the IP address settings of primary WINS server.

Example

```
> srv dhcp primWINS 192.168.1.88
> srv dhcp primWINS ?
%% srv dhcp primWINS <WINS IP address>
%% srv dhcp primWINS clear
% Now: 192.168.1.88
```

Telnet Command: `srv dhcp secWINS`

This command can set the secondary IP address for the DHCP server.

```
srv dhcp secWINS [WINS IP address]
```

```
srv dhcp secWINS clear
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>WINS IP address</i>	It means the IP address of secondary WINS server.
<i>clear</i>	It means to remove the IP address settings of second WINS server.

Example

```
> srv dhcp secWINS 192.168.1.180
> srv dhcp secWINS ?
%% srv dhcp secWINS <WINS IP address>
%% srv dhcp secWINS clear
% Now: 192.168.1.180
```

Telnet Command: `srv dhcp expired_RecycleIP`

This command can set the time to check if the IP address can be assigned again by DHCP server or not.

```
srv dhcp expRecycleIP <sec time>
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>sec time</i>	It means to set the time (5-300 seconds) for checking if the IP can be assigned again or not.

Example

```
Vigor> srv dhcp expRecycleIP 250
% DHCP expired_RecycleIP = 250
```

Telnet Command: `srv dhcp tftp`

This command can set the TFTP server as the DHCP server.

```
srv dhcp tftp <TFTP server name>
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>TFTP server name</i>	It means to type the name of TFTP server.

Example

```
> srv dhcp tftp TF123
> srv dhcp tftp ?
%% srv dhcp tftp <TFTP server name>
% Now: TF123
```

Telnet Command: `srv dhcp option`

This command can set the custom option for the DHCP server.

```
srv dhcp option -h
```

```
srv dhcp option -l
```

```
srv dhcp option -d [idx]
```

```
srv dhcp option -e [1 or 0] -c [option number] -v [option value]
```

```
srv dhcp option -e [1 or 0] -c [option number] -a [option value]
```

```
srv dhcp option -e [1 or 0] -c [option number] -x [option value]
```

```
srv dhcp option -u [idx unumber]
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>-h</i>	It means to display usage of this command.
<i>-l</i>	It means to display all the user defined DHCP options.
<i>-d[idx]</i>	It means to delete the option number by specifying its index number.
<i>-e [1 or 0]</i>	It means to enable/disable custom option feature.

	1:enable 0:disable
-c	It means to set option number. Available number ranges from 0 to 255.
-v	It means to set option number by typing string.
-a	It means to set the option value by specifying the IP address.
-x	It means to set option number with the format of Hexadecimal characters.
-u	It means to update the option value of the sepecified index.
<i>idx number</i>	It means the index number of the option value.

Example

```
>srv dhcp option -e 1 -i 2/r -c 44 -a 192.168.1.10,192.168.1.20
>
```

Telnet Command: `srv nat dmz`

This command allows users to set DMZ host. Before using this command, please set WAN IP Alias first.

`Srv nat dmz n m [-<command> <parameter> | ...]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>n</i>	It means to map selected WAN IP to certain host. 1: wan1 2: wan2
<i>m</i>	It means the index number of the DMZ host. Default setting is "1" (WAN 1). It is only available for Static IP mode. If you use other mode, you can set 1 ~ 8 in this field. If WAN IP alias has been configured, then the number of DMZ host can be added more.
<i>[<command> <parameter> ...]</i>	The available commands with parameters are listed below. <i>[...]</i> means that you can type in several commands in one line.
<i>-e</i>	It means to enable/disable such feature. 1:enable 0:disable
<i>-i</i>	It means to specify the private IP address of the DMZ host.
<i>-r</i>	It means to remove DMZ host setting.
<i>-v</i>	It means to display current status.

Example

```
> srv nat dmz 1 1 -i 192.168.1.96
> srv nat dmz -v
%      WAN1 DMZ mapping status:
Index  Status  WAN1 aux IP    Private IP
-----
1      Disable  0.0.0.0 192.168.1.96
```

Telnet Command: `srv nat ipsecpass`

This command allows users to enable or disable IPSec ESP tunnel passthrough and IKE source port (500) preservation.

`Srv nat ipsecpass [options]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>[options]</i>	The available commands with parameters are listed below.
<i>on</i>	It means to enable IPSec ESP tunnel passthrough and IKE source port (500) preservation.
<i>off</i>	It means to disable IPSec ESP tunnel passthrough and IKE source port (500) preservation.
<i>status</i>	It means to display current status for checking.

Example

```
> srv nat ipsecpass status
%% Status: IPsec ESP pass-thru and IKE src_port:500 preservation is OFF.
```

Telnet Command: `srv nat openport`

This command allows users to set open port settings for NAT server.

`srv nat openport n m [-<command> <parameter> | ...]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>n</i>	It means the index number for the profiles. The range is from 1 to 20.
<i>m</i>	It means to specify the sub-item number for this profile. The range is from 1 to 10.
[<command> <parameter> ...]	The available commands with parameters are listed below. [...] means that you can type in several commands in one line.
-a <enable>	It means to enable or disable the open port rule profile. 0: disable 1:enable
-c <comment>	It means to type the description (less than 23 characters) for the defined network service.
-l <source ip idx>	It means to set source IP object. 1 to 192: for IP object 1 to 32: for IP group 0: Any For example: <code>srv nat openport 1 1 -l 1 -g 0</code>
-g <source ip type>	It means to set IP type. 0: IP object 1: IP group For example: <code>srv nat openport 1 1 -l 1 -g 0</code>
-i <local ip>	It means to set the IP address for local computer. Local ip: Type an IP address in this field.
-w <widx><ipidx>	It means to specify the public IP. 1: WAN1 Default, 2: WAN1 Alias 1, ...and so on. ipidx: Specify the index number of an alias IP (1 to 32).
-p <protocol>	Specify the transport layer protocol. Available values are TCP, UDP and ALL.
-s<start port>	It means to specify the starting port number of the service offered by the local host. The range is from 0 to 65535.
-e<end port>	It means to specify the ending port number of the service offered by the local host. The range is from 0 to 65535.
-v	It means to display current settings.
-r <idx>	It means to delete the specified open port setting. remove: Type the index number of the profile.
-f <idx>	It means to return to factory settings for all the open ports profiles.

Example

```

> srv nat openport 1 1 -a 1 -c games -i 192.168.1.55 -w 1 1 -p TCP -s
56 -e 83
Set WAN Port ok!!

> srv nat openport 1 1 -v
%% Status: Enable
%% Comment: games
%% WAN Interface: WAN1
%% Private IP address: 192.168.1.55
Index   Protocal      Start Port    End Port
*****
1.      TCP           56            83
>

```

Telnet Command: `srv nat portmap`

This command allows users to set port redirection table for NAT server.

Syntax

`srv nat portmap add <idx> <serv name> <proto> <pub port> <src ip type> <src ip idx> <pri ip> <pri port> <wan idx> <alias IP>`

`srv nat portmap del <idx>`

`srv nat portmap disable <idx>`

`srv nat portmap enable <idx><proto>`

`srv nat portmap flush`

`srv nat portmap table`

`srv nat portmap view`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<code>add <idx></code>	It means to add a new port redirection table with an index number. Available index number is from 1 to 40.
<code><serv name></code>	It means to type one name as service name.
<code><proto></code>	It means to specify TCP or UDP as the protocol.
<code><pub port></code>	It means to specify which port can be redirected to the specified Private IP and Port of the internal host.
<code><src ip type></code>	It means to specify the IP type (object or group). ip type: 0 means IP object; 1 means IP group.
<code><src ip idx></code>	It means to specify the index number of the object profile. ip idx: 1 to 192 for IP object profile; 1 to 32 for IP group profile. 0 means any object or group.
<code><pri ip></code>	It means to specify the private IP address of the internal host providing the service.
<code><pri port></code>	It means to specify the private port number (1 to 65535) of the service offered by the internal host.
<code><wan idx></code>	It means to specify WAN interface for the port redirection. Idx: wan1 to wan4, all
<code><alias IP></code>	It means to specify an alias IP by entering the index number (1 to 32).

	ip: 1 to 32.
<i>del <idx></i>	It means to remove the selected port redirection setting.
<i>disable <idx></i>	It means to inactivate the selected port redirection setting.
<i>enable <idx></i>	It means to activate the selected port redirection setting.
<i>flush</i>	It means to clear all the port mapping settings.
<i>table</i>	It means to display Port Redirection Configuration Table.

Example

```
> srv nat portmap add 1 game tcp 100 0 0 192.168.1.11 100 wan1 1
srv nat portmap table
NAT Port Redirection Configuration Table:
Index  Service Name  Protocol  Public Port  Private IP      Private Port
ifno
1      game           6         80          192.168.1.11   100          -1
2              0         0
3              0         0
4              0         0
5              0         0
6              0         0
7              0         0
8              0         0
9              0         0
10             0         0
11             0         0
12             0         0
13             0         0
14             0         0
15             0         0
16             0         0
17             0         0
18             0         0
19             0         0
20             0         0
...
Protocol: 0 = Disable, 6 = TCP, 17 = UDP
```

Telnet Command: `srv nat trigger`

This command allows users to configure port triggering settings for NAT.

Syntax

`srv nat trigger setdefault`

`srv nat trigger view`

`srv nat trigger n [-<command> <parameter> | ...]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>setdefault</i>	Set to factory default settings.
<i>view</i>	Display all of the port triggering settings.
<i>n</i>	"n" means the rule number.
<i><command><parameter>[...]</i>	The available commands with parameters are listed below. [...] means that you can type in several commands in one line.
<i>-c[XXX]</i>	Type a comment for such rule if required.

<code>-e [0/1]</code>	Enable (1) or disable (0) a rule (specified with rule number).
<code>-p [1/2/3]</code>	Specify the protocol for such trigger rule. 1 - TCP 2 - UDP 3 - All
<code>-t</code>	Specify the port number (0-65535) for trigger.
<code>-P</code>	Specify the incoming protocol for such trigger rule.
<code>-i</code>	Specify the port number (0-65535) for incoming protocol.
<code>-d</code>	Delete the selected trigger rule.
<code>-v</code>	Display the port trigger settings for specified rule.

Example

```
> srv nat trigger 1 -c after_dinner
> srv nat trigger 1 -e 1
> srv nat trigger 1 -p 1
> srv nat trigger 1 -t 2000
> srv nat trigger 1 -P 2
> srv nat trigger 1 -i 3000
> srv nat trigger 1 -v
```

Port Trigger Rule Index:1

```
Status:Enable
Comment:after_dinner2000
Triggering Protocol:TCP
Triggering Port:2000
Incoming Protocol:UDP
Incoming Port:3000
```

Telnet Command: `srv nat status`

This command allows users to view NAT Port Redirection Running Table.

Example

```
> srv nat status
NAT Port Redirection Running Table:
```

Index	Protocol	Public Port	Private IP	Private Port
1	6	80	192.168.1.11	100
2	0	0	0.0.0.0	0
3	0	0	0.0.0.0	0
4	0	0	0.0.0.0	0
5	0	0	0.0.0.0	0
6	0	0	0.0.0.0	0
7	0	0	0.0.0.0	0
8	0	0	0.0.0.0	0
9	0	0	0.0.0.0	0
10	0	0	0.0.0.0	0
11	0	0	0.0.0.0	0

12	0	0	0.0.0.0	0
13	0	0	0.0.0.0	0
14	0	0	0.0.0.0	0
15	0	0	0.0.0.0	0
16	0	0	0.0.0.0	0
17	0	0	0.0.0.0	0
18	0	0	0.0.0.0	0
19	0	0	0.0.0.0	0
20	0	0	0.0.0.0	0
--- MORE --- ['q': Quit, 'Enter': New Lines, 'Space Bar': Next Page]				

Telnet Command: `srv nat showall`

This command allows users to view a summary of NAT port redirection setting, open port and DMZ settings.

Example

```
> srv nat showall ?
Index  Proto  WAN IP:Port          Private IP:Port      Act
*****
****
R01    TCP    0.0.0.0:80         192.168.1.11:100    Y
O01    TCP    0.0.0.0:23~83     192.168.1.100:23~83 Y
D01    All    0.0.0.0           192.168.1.96       Y

R:Port Redirection, O:Open Ports, D:DMZ
```

Telnet Command: `srv nat pseudoctl`

This command allows users to check the pseudo port number to prevent from port conflict.

Syntax

`srv nat pseudoctl session <value>`

`srv nat pseudoctl function <0-3>`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<code>session <value></code>	Set the threshold of the session. <value>: 0 to 2147483647.
<code>function <0-3></code>	0: It means "Auto". Check the created pseudo port number automatically when the session number is over the threshold. 1: It means "Not". Create a pseudo port number based on subnet setting. No verification. 2: It means "Must". Check the created pseudo port number if it is used by other client. 3: Create a pseudo port number. No verification.

Example

```
> srv nat pseudoctl function 2
  pseudo port: get hash pseudo port + subnet.
  pseudo port search: check pseudo port(Must).
>
```

Telnet Command: `srv nat RSTTimeout`

This command is used for forwarding RST out via TCP after a period of time.

Syntax

`srv nat RSTTimeout <value>`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<code><value></code>	Set the timeout value. <code><value></code> : 0 to 10 (one unit is 10msec).

Example

```
> srv nat pseudoctl function 2
  pseudo port: get hash pseudo port + subnet.
  pseudo port search: check pseudo port(Must).

DrayTek> srv nat RSTTimeout 2Set timeout 2 unit

DrayTek> srv nat RSTTimeout ?
%% srv RSTtimeout <value> (unit is 10msec). (0<=value<=10)
-----
now timeout set 2 unit
>
```

Telnet Command: `switch -i`

This command is used to obtain the TX (transmitted) or RX (received) data for each connected switch.

Syntax

`switch -i [switch idx_no] [option]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<code>switch idx_no</code>	It means the index number of the switch profile.
<code>option</code>	The available commands with parameters are listed below. <code>cmd</code> <code>acc</code> <code>traffic [on/off/status/tx/rx]</code>

<i>cmd</i>	It means to send command to the client.
<i>acc</i>	It means to set the client authentication account and password.
<i>traffic</i> <i>[on/off/status/tx/rx]</i>	It means to turn on/off or display the data transmission from the client.

Example

```
> switch -i 1 traffic on
External Device NO. 1 traffic statistic function is enable
```

Telnet Command: switch status

This command is used to check the status for the auto discovery of external devices.

Example

```
> switch status
External Device auto discovery status : Disable
No Respond to External Device : Enable
Display External Device syslog : Disable
```

Telnet Command: switch not_respond

This command is used to detect the external device automatically and display on this page.

Syntax

```
switch not_respond 0
switch not_respond 1
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
0	Disable the option of "No Respond to External Device packets".
1	Enable the option of "No Respond to External Device packets".

Example

```
> switch not_respond 1
slave not respond!
>
```

Telnet Command: switch on

This command is used to turn on the auto discovery for external devices.

Example

```
> switch on
Enable Extrnal Device auto discovery!
```

Telnet Command: switch off

This command is used to turn off the auto discovery for external devices.

Example

```
> switch off
Disable External Device auto discovery!
```

Telnet Command: switch list

This command is used to display the connection status of the switch.

Example

```
> switch list?
No.          Mac          IP          status      Dur
Time      CWMP    ACS_CTL  Model_Name  firmware_version
-----
-----
[1]
00-1d-aa-0c-cd-08  192.168.1.11  On-Line  01:07:45  -1  -1
G2280
```

Telnet Command: switch clear

This command is used to reset the switch table and reboot the router.

```
switch clear [idx]
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>idx</i>	It means the index number of each item shown on the table. The range is from 1 to 8.
<i>-f</i>	It means to clear all of the data.

Example

```
> switch clear 1
Switch Data clear successful

> switch clear -f
Switch Data clear successful
```

Telnet Command: switch query

This command is used to enable or disable the switch query.

Example

```
> switch query on
Extern Device status query is Enable
> switch query off
Extern Device status query is Disable
```

Telnet Command: sys admin

This command is used for RD engineer to access into test mode of Vigor router.

Telnet Command: sys adminuser

This command is used to create user account and specify LDAP server. The server will authenticate the local user who wants to access into the web user interface of Vigor router.

`sys adminuser [option]`

`sys adminuser edit [index] username password`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>option</i>	Available options includes: Local [0-1] LDAP [0-1] edit [INDEX] delete [INDEX] view [INDEX]
<i>Local [0-1]</i>	0 - Disable the local user. 1 - Enable the local user.
<i>LDAP [0-1]</i>	0 - Disable the LDAP. 1 - Enable the LDAP.
<i>edit [INDEX] username password</i>	Edit an existed user account or create a new local user account. [INDEX] - 1 ~8. There are eight profiles to be added / edited. Username - Type a new name for local user. Password - Type a password for local user.
<i>delete [INDEX]</i>	Delete a local user account.
<i>view [INDEX]</i>	Show the user account/password detail information.

Example

```
> > sys adminuser Local 1
Local User has enabled!
> sys adminuser LDAP 1
LDAP has enabled!
> sys adminuser edit 1 carrie test123
Updated!
> sys adminuser view 1

Index:1
User Name:carrie
User Password:test123
```

Telnet Command: sys bonjour

This command is used to disable/enable and configure the Bonjour service.

`sys bonjour [-<command> <parameter> | ...]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>-e <enable></i>	It is used to disable/enable bonjour service (0: disable, 1: enable).
<i>-h <enable></i>	It is used to disable/enable http (web) service (0: disable, 1: enable).
<i>-t <enable></i>	It is used to disable/enable telnet service (0: disable, 1: enable).

<code>-f <enable></code>	It is used to disable/enable FTP service (0: disable, 1: enable).
<code>-s <enable></code>	It is used to disable/enable SSH service (0: disable, 1: enable).
<code>-p <enable></code>	It is used to disable/enable printer service (0: disable, 1: enable).
<code>-6 <enable></code>	It is used to disable/enable IPv6 (0: disable, 1: enable).

Example

```
> sys bonjour -s 1
>
```

Telnet Command: sys cfg

This command reset the router with factory default settings. When a user types this command, all the configuration will be reset to default setting.

Syntax

`sys cfg default`

`sys cfg status`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<code>default</code>	It means to reset current settings with default values.
<code>status</code>	It means to display current profile version and status.

Example

```
> sys cfg status
Profile version: 3.0.0    Status: 1 (0x491e5e6c)
> sys cfg default
>
```

Telnet Command: sys cmdlog

This command displays the history of the commands that you have typed.

Example

```
> sys cmdlog
% Commands Log: (The lowest index is the newest !!!)
 [1] sys cmdlog
 [2] sys cmdlog ?
 [3] sys ?
 [4] sys cfg status
 [5] sys cfg ?
```

Telnet Command: sys ftpd

This command displays current status of FTP server.

`sys ftpd on`

`sys ftpd off`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>on</i>	It means to turn on the FTP server of the system.
<i>off</i>	It means to turn off the FTP server of the system.

Example

```
> sys ftpd on
% sys ftpd turn on !!!
```

Telnet Command: sys domainname

This command can set and remove the domain name of the system when DHCP mode is selected for WAN.

`sys domainname [wan1/wan2] [Domain Name Suffix]`

`sys domainname [wan1/wan2] clear`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>wan1/wan2</i>	It means to specify WAN interface for assigning a name for it.
<i>Domain Name Suffix</i>	It means the name for the domain of the system. The maximum number of characters that you can set is 40.
<i>clear</i>	It means to remove the domain name of the system.

Example

```
> sys domainname wan1 clever
> sys domainname wan2 intellegent
> sys domainname ?
% sys domainname <wan1/wan2> <Domain Name Suffix (max. 40 characters)>
% sys domainname <wan1/wan2> clear
% Now: wan1 == clever, wan2 ==intelligent
>
```

Telnet Command: sys iface

This command displays the current interface connection status (UP or Down) with IP address, MAC address and Netmask for the router.

Example

```
> sys iface
Interface 0 Ethernet:
Status: UP
IP Address: 192.168.1.1      Netmask: 0xFFFFFFFF00 (Private)
IP Address: 0.0.0.0       Netmask: 0xFFFFFFFF
MAC: 00-50-7F-00-00-00
Interface 4 Ethernet:
Status: DOWN
IP Address: 0.0.0.0       Netmask: 0x00000000
MAC: 00-50-7F-00-00-02
Interface 5 Ethernet:
```

```
Status: DOWN
IP Address: 0.0.0.0          Netmask: 0x00000000
MAC: 00-50-7F-00-00-03
Interface 6 Ethernet:
Status: DOWN
IP Address: 0.0.0.0          Netmask: 0x00000000
MAC: 00-50-7F-00-00-04
Interface 7 Ethernet:
Status: DOWN
IP Address: 0.0.0.0          Netmask: 0x00000000
MAC: 00-50-7F-00-00-05
Interface 8 Ethernet:
Status: DOWN
IP Address: 0.0.0.0          Netmask: 0x00000000
MAC: 00-50-7F-00-00-06

Interface 9 Ethernet:
Status: DOWN
IP Address: 0.0.0.0          Netmask: 0x00000000
MAC: 00-50-7F-00-00-07
--- MORE ---  ['q': Quit, 'Enter': New Lines, 'Space Bar': Next Page]
---
>
```


Telnet Command: sys name

This command can set and remove the name for the router when DHCP mode is selected for WAN.

```
sys name <wan1/wan2> <ASCII string>
```

```
sys name <wan1/wan2> clear
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<wan1/wan2>	It means to specify WAN interface for assigning a name for it.
ASCII string	It means the name for router. The maximum character that you can set is 39.

Example

```
> sys name wan1 drayrouter
> sys name ?
% sys name <wan1/wan2> <ASCII string (max. 39 characters)>
% sys name <wan1/wan2> clear
% Now: wan1 == drayrouter, wan2 ==
```

Note: Such name can be used to recognize router's identification in SysLog dialog.

Telnet Command: sys passwd

This command allows users to set password for the administrator.

```
sys passwd <old password> <new password>
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<old password>	Enter the old password.
<new password>	Enter a string as the new password for administrator. The maximum character that you can set is 83.

Example

```
> sys passwd admin123
Password change successful !!!
```

Telnet Command: sys reboot

This command allows users to restart the router immediately.

Example

```
> sys reboot
>
```

Telnet Command: sys autoreboot

This command allows users to restart the router automatically within a certain time.

`sys autoreboot [on/off/hour(s)]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>on/off</i>	On - It means to enable the function of auto-reboot. Off - It means to disable the function of auto-reboot.
<i>hours</i>	It means to set the time schedule for router reboot. For example, if you type "2" in this field, the router will reboot with an interval of two hours.

Example

```
> sys autoreboot on
autoreboot is ON
> sys autoreboot 2
autoreboot is ON
autoreboot time is 2 hour(s)
```

Telnet Command: sys commit

This command allows users to save current settings to FLASH. Usually, current settings will be saved in SRAM. Yet, this command will save the file to FLASH.

Example

```
> sys commit
>
```

Telnet Command: sys tftpd

This command can turn on TFTP server for upgrading the firmware.

Example

```
> sys tftpd
% TFTP server enabled !!!
```

Telnet Command: sys cc

This command can display current country code and wireless region of this device.

Example

```
> sys cc
Country Code      : 0x 0 [International]
Wireless Region Code: 0x30
>
```

Telnet Command: sys version

This command can display current version for the system.

Example

```
> sys version
Router Model: Vigor2832n   Version: 3.9.6.3 English
Profile version: 3.0.0   Status: 1 (0x12544cc4)
Router IP: 192.168.1.80   Netmask: 255.255.255.0
Firmware Build Date/Time: Jan 11 2023 09:04:09
Router Name: DrayTek
Revision: 12845_1008_46aacfbc0b V385
Current ADSL Firmware Version: 06-06-01-07-00-01 Annex A
ADSL Firmware Version: 00-02-00-00-00-00 Annex A
```

Telnet Command: sys qrybuf

This command can display the system memory status and leakage list.

Example

```
> sys qrybuf
System Memory Status and Leakage List

Buf sk_buff ( 200B), used#: 1647, cached#: 30
Buf KMC4088 (4088B), used#: 0, cached#: 8
Buf KMC2552 (2552B), used#: 1641, cached#: 42
Buf KMC1016 (1016B), used#: 7, cached#: 1
Buf KMC504 ( 504B), used#: 8, cached#: 8
Buf KMC248 ( 248B), used#: 26, cached#: 22
Buf KMC120 ( 120B), used#: 67, cached#: 61
Buf KMC56 ( 56B), used#: 20, cached#: 44
Buf KMC24 ( 24B), used#: 58, cached#: 70
Dynamic memory: 13107200B; 4573168B used; 190480B/0B in level 1/2
cache.

FLOWTRACK Memory Status
# of free = 12000
# of maximum = 0
# of flowstate = 12000
# of lost by siganture = 0
# of lost by list = 0
```

Telnet Command: sys pollbuf

This command can turn on or turn off polling buffer for the router.

`sys pollbuf [on]`

`sys pollbuf [off]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>on</i>	It means to turn on pulling buffer.
<i>off</i>	It means to turn off pulling buffer.

Example

```
> sys pollbuf on
% Buffer polling is on!

> sys pollbuf off
% Buffer polling is off!
```

Telnet Command: sys britask

This command can improve triple play quality.

sys britask *[on]*

sys britask *[off]*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>on</i>	It means to turn on the bridge task for improving the triple play quality.
<i>off</i>	It means to turn off the bridge task.

Example

```
> sys britask on
% bridge task is ON, now
```

Telnet Command: sys tr069

This command can set CPE settings for applying in VigorACS.

Syntax

sys tr069 get *<parm>* *<option>*

sys tr069 set *<parm>* *<value>*

sys tr069 getnoti *<parm>*

sys tr069 setnoti *<parm>* *<value>*

sys tr069 log

sys tr069 debug *<on/off>*

sys tr069 save

sys tr069 inform *<event code>*

sys tr069 port *<port num>*

sys tr069 cert_auth *<on/off>*

sys tr069 only_standard_parm *<on/off>*

sys tr069 notify -S

sys tr069 notify -n *<on/off>*

sys tr069 notify -l *<on/off>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>get <parm> <option></i>	It means to get parameters for tr-069.

	option=<nextlevel>: only gets nextlevel for GetParameterNames.
<i>set <parm> <value></i>	It means to set parameters for tr-069.
<i>getnoti <parm></i>	It means to get parameter notification value.
<i>setnoti <parm> <value></i>	It means to set parameter notification value.
<i>log</i>	It means to display the TR-069 log.
<i>debug <on/off></i>	on: turn on the function of sending debug message to syslog. off: turn off the function of sending debug message to syslog.
<i>save</i>	It means to save the parameters to the flash memory of the router.
<i>Inform <event code></i>	It means to inform parameters for tr069 with different event codes. [event code] includes: 0-"0 BOOTSTRAP", 1-"1 BOOT", 2-"2 PERIODIC", 3-"3 SCHEDULED", 4-"4 VALUE CHANGE", 5-"5 KICKED", 6-"6 CONNECTION REQUEST", 7-"7 TRANSFER COMPLETE", 8-"8 DIAGNOSTICS COMPLETE", 9-"M Reboot"
<i>port <port num></i>	It means to change tr069 listen port number.
<i>cert_auth <on/off></i>	on: turn on certificate-based authentication. off: turn off certificate-based authentication.
<i>only_standard_parm <on/off></i>	It means to turn on or off to exclude all the Vendor-Specific ("X_") parameters, and only send out standard parameters.
<i>notify -n <on/off></i>	It means to set CPE notification settings. It means to / not to record the CPE notify log on the Syslog. on: Record on the Syslog. off: Not record on the Syslog.
<i>notify -l <on/off></i>	It means to / not to record the web login log on the Syslog. on: Record on the Syslog. off: Not record on the Syslog.
<i>notify -S</i>	Show the CPE notification settings.

Example

```
> sys tr069 get Int. nextlevel
Total number of parameter is 24
Total content length of parameter is 915
InternetGatewayDevice.LANDeviceNumberOfEntries
InternetGatewayDevice.WANDeviceNumberOfEntries
InternetGatewayDevice.DeviceInfo.
InternetGatewayDevice.ManagementServer.
InternetGatewayDevice.Time.
InternetGatewayDevice.Layer3Forwarding.
InternetGatewayDevice.LANDevice.
InternetGatewayDevice.WANDevice.
InternetGatewayDevice.Services.
InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_InternetAcc.
InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_LAN.
```

```

InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_NAT.
InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_Firewall.
InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_Bandwidth.
InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_Applications.
InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_VPN.
InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_VoIP.
InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_WirelessLAN.
InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_System.
InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_Status.

InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_Diagnostics.
--- MORE ---  ['q': Quit, 'Enter': New Lines, 'Space Bar': Next Page]
---
```

Telnet Command: sys alg

This command can enable or disable ALG (Application Layer Gateway) master switch.

Syntax

```
sys alg <1/0>
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
1	It means to enable ALG master switch.
0	It means to disable ALG master switch.

Example

```

> sys alg -e 1
  Enable ALG
> sys alg
Usage: sys alg <command> <parameter>
  -e: enable ALG (0:disable, 1:enable)
Current ALG status
  -ALG Master Switch: Enabled
```

Telnet Command: sys sip_alg

This command can turn on/off SIP ALG (Application Layer Gateway) for traversal.

Syntax

```
sys sip_alg <command> <parameter>|...
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
[<command> <parameter> ...]	The available commands with parameters are listed below. [...] means that you can type in several commands in one line.
-e <0/1>	0: Disable the function of SIP ALG. 1: Enable the function of SIP ALG.
-p <parameter>	It means to set the listening port for SIP ALG. <parameter> : Ranges from 1 to 65535.
-u	It means to enable or disable the listen along UDP path

	setting. 0: Disable 1: Enable
<i>-t</i>	It means to enable or disable the listen along TCP path setting. 0: Disable 1: Enable

Example

```

> sys sip_alg -e 1
  Enable SIP ALG
> sys sip_alg -p 65535
  Current listening port: 65535
> sys sip_alg ?
Usage: sys sip_alg <command> <parameter>
-e: enable SIP ALG (0:disable, 1:enable)
-p: set your listening port for SIP ALG
-u: enable listen along UDP path (0:disable, 1:enable)
-t: enable listen along TCP path (0:disable, 1:enable)
Current SIP ALG status
-ALG Master Switch: Enabled
-SIP ALG: Enabled
-Listen along UDP path: Yes
-Listen along TCP path: Yes
-Listening Port: 65535
-Max sipalg session num: 256
-Remain sipalg session num: 256

```

Telnet Command: sys rtsp_alg

This command can turn on/off RTSP ALG (Application Layer Gateway) for traversal.

Syntax

sys rtsp_alg [*<command>* *<parameter>*]/...

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>-e <0/1></i>	0: Disable the function of RTSP ALG. 1: Enable the function of RTSP ALG.
<i>-p <parameter></i>	It means to set the listening port for RTSP ALG. <i><parameter></i> : Ranges from 1 to 65535.
<i>-u</i>	It means to enable or disable the listen along UDP path setting. 0: Disable 1: Enable
<i>-t</i>	It means to enable or disable the listen along TCP path setting. 0: Disable 1: Enable
<i>-v</i>	It displays RTP and RTCP portmap information of RTSP ALG.

Example

```

> sys rtsp_alg -e 1
  Enable RTSP ALG
> sys rtsp_alg -p 60000
  Current listening RTSP Port: 60000
> sys rtsp_alg -v

```

```

Current Open PortMap Number of RTSP ALG: 0
> sys rtsp_alg ?
Usage: sys rtsp_alg <command> <parameter>
-e: enable RTSP ALG (0:disable, 1:enable)
-p: set your listening port for RTSP ALG
-u: enable listen along UDP path (0:disable, 1:enable)
-t: enable listen along TCP path (0:disable, 1:enable)
-v: show rtp and rtcp portmap information of RTSP ALG
Current RTSP ALG status
-ALG Master Switch: Enabled
-RTSP ALG: Enabled
-Listen along UDP path: Yes
-Listen along TCP path: Yes
-Listening Port: 60000
-Max RTSP session num: 256
-Remain RTSP session num: 256

```

Telnet Command: sys license

This command can process the system license.

Syntax

```

sys license reset_regser
sys license licera
sys license licifno <AUTO/WAN#>
sys license licalias <index>
sys license lic_trigger
sys license licelog

```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>reset_regser</i>	It means the license register server setting or register service in portal.
<i>licera</i>	It means to erase license setting.
<i>licifno</i> <AUTO/WAN#>	It means license and signature download interface setting.
<i>licalias</i> <index>	It means to specify an IP alias by entering the index number of the IP alias profile.
<i>lic_trigger</i>	It means to trigger the license.
<i>licelog</i>	It means to show the authentication log.
<i>dev_chg</i>	It means to change the device key.
<i>dev_key</i>	It means to show device key.

Example

```

> sys license licifno wan3
Download interface is set as "WAN3" now.

> sys license licifno

```


License and Signature download interface setting:
 licifno [AUTO/WAN#]

Ex: licifno wan1

Download interface is "WAN3" now.

Telnet Command: sys diag_log

This command is used for RD debug.

Syntax

sys diag_log <status/ enable/ disable/ flush/ lineno <w> | level <x>| feature <on/off><y>| log>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>status</i>	It means to show the status of diagnostic log.
<i>enable</i>	It means to enable the function of diag_log.
<i>disable</i>	It means to disenable the function of diag_log.
<i>flush</i>	It means the flush log buffer.
<i>lineno [w]</i>	It means the total lines for displaying message. w - Available value ranges from 100 to 50000.
<i>level[x]</i>	It determines the level of data displayed. x - Available value ranges from 0 to 12. The larger the number is, the detailed the data is displayed.
<i>feature [on/off][y]</i>	It is used to specify the function of the log. Supported features include SYS and DSL (Case-Insensitive). Default setting is "on" for "DSL".
<i>log</i>	It means the dump log buffer.

Example

```
> sys diag_log status
Status:
diag_log is Enabled.
lineno : 10000.
level : 3.
Enabled feature: SYS DSL
> sys diag_log log
0:00:02 [DSL] Current modem firmware: AnnexA_548006_544401
0:00:02 [DSL] Modem firmware feature: 5, ADSL_A, VDSL2
0:00:02 [DSL] xtseCfg=04 00 04 00 0c 01 00 07
0:00:02 [DSL] don't have last showtime mode!! set next mode to VDSL!!
0:00:02 [DSL] Status has changed: Stopped(0) -> FwWait(3)
0:00:02 [DSL] Status has changed: FwWait(3) -> Starting(1)
0:00:02 [DSL] Status has changed: Starting(1) -> Running(2)
0:00:02 [DSL] Status was switched: firmwareReady(3) to Init(5)
0:00:02 [DSL] Status was switched: Init(5) to Restart(10)
0:00:02 [DSL] Status was switched: Restart(10) to
```

```

FirmwareRequest(1)
0:00:02 [DSL] Line state has changed: 00000000 -> 000000FF
0:00:02 [DSL] Entering VDSL2 mode
0:00:03 [DSL] modem code: [05-04-08-00-00-06]
0:00:05 [DSL] Status was switched: FirmwareRequest(1) to
firmwareReady(3)
0:00:05 [DSL] Status was switched: firmwareReady(3) to Init(5)
0:00:05 [DSL] >> nXtseA=0d, nXtseB=00, nXtseV=07, nFwFeatures=5
0:00:05 [DSL] >> nHsToneGroupMode=0, nHsToneGroup=106,
nToneSet=43, nCamState
=2
0:00:05 [DSL] Line state has changed: 000000FF -> 00000100
0:00:05 [DSL] Line state has changed: 00000100 -> 00000200
0:00:05 [DSL] Status was switched: Init(5) to Train(6)

```

Telnet Command: sys arp_AutoReq

This command is used to enable / disable the function that Vigor router sends ARP request to the connected device(s) periodically.

Syntax

```
sys arp_AutoReq -d <value>
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-d <value>	Disable the function of ARP auto request. 0 - Enable 1 - Disable

Example

```

> sys arp_AutoReq -d 1
Arp auto-request disable.

```

Telnet Command: sys daylightsave

This command is used to configure daylight save setting.

Syntax

```
sys daylightsave [-<command> <parameter> | ... ]
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
[<command><parameter> ...]	The available commands with parameters are listed below. [...] means that you can type in several commands in one line.
-v	Display the daylight saving settings.
-r	Set to factory default setting.
-e [1/0]	Enable (1) / disable (0) daylight saving.
-t [0/1/2]	Specify the saving type for daylight setting. 0 - Default

	1 - Time range 2 - Yearly
<code>-s <year> <month> <day> <hour></code>	Set the detailed settings of the starting day for time range type. year - must be the year after 2013. month - 1 ~ 12 day - 1 ~ 31 hour - 0 ~ 23 e.g., <code>sys daylightsave -s 2014 3 10 12</code>
<code>-d <year> <month> <day> <hour></code>	Set the detailed settings of the ending day for time range type. year - After 2013. month - 1 ~ 12 day - 1 ~ 31 hour - 0 ~ 23 e.g., <code>sys daylightsave -d 2014 9 10 12</code>
<code>-y <month> <th weekday> <day in week> <hour></code>	Set the detailed settings of the starting day for yearly type. month - 1 ~ 12 th weekday - 1 ~ 5, 9: last week day in week - 0:Sun, 1:Mon, 2:Tue, 3:Wed, 4:Thu, 5: Fri, 6:Sat hour - 0 ~ 23 e.g, <code>sys daylightsave -y 9 1 0 14</code>
<code>-z <month> <th weekday> <day in week> <hour></code>	Set the detailed settings of the ending day for yearly type. month - 1 ~ 12 th weekday - 1 ~ 5, 9: last week day in week - 0:Sun, 1:Mon, 2:Tue, 3:Wed, 4:Thu, 5: Fri, 6:Sat hour - 0 ~ 23 e.g, <code>sys daylightsave -z 3 1 6 14</code>

Example

```
> sys daylightsave -y 9 1 0 14
% Start: Yearly on Sep 1th Sun 14:00
```

Telnet Command: `sys dnsCacheTbl`

This command is used to configure TTL settings which will be displayed in DNS Cache table.

Syntax

`sys dnsCacheTbl [<command><parameter>/...]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<code>[<command><parameter>/...]</code>	The available commands with parameters are listed below. [...] means that you can type in several commands in one line.
<code>-l</code>	Display DNS IPv4 entry in the DNS cache table.
<code>-s</code>	Display DNS IPv6 entry in the DNS cache table.
<code>-v</code>	Display the TTL limit value in the DNS cache table.
<code>-t <ttl></code>	It means to set TTL limit value. <ttl>: 0(no limit) or an number greater than 5.
<code>-c</code>	Clear the DNS cache table.

Example

```
> sys dnsCacheTbl -t 50
% Set TTL limit: 50 seconds.
% When TTL larger than 50s , delete the DNS entry in the routers DNS cache table.
> sys dnsCacheTbl -v
% TTL limit: 50 seconds
% When TTL larger than 50s , delete the DNS entry in the routers DNS cache table.
>
```

Telnet Command: sys syslog

This command is used to configure

Syntax

```
sys syslog -a <enable> [-<command> <parameter> | ... ]
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>[<command><parameter> ...]</i>	The available commands with parameters are listed below. [...] means that you can type in several commands in one line.
-a <1/0>	Enable (1) or disable (0) Syslog Access Setup.
-s <1/0>	Enable (1) or disable (0) Syslog Save to Syslog Server.
-i <IP address>	Define the IP address of the Syslog server.
-d <port number>	Define the port number (1 ~ 65535) as the destination port.
-u <1/0>	Enable (1) or disable (0) Syslog Save to USB Disk.
-m <1/0>	Enable (1) or disable (0) Mail Syslog.
-f <1/0>	Enable (1) or disable (0) Firewall Log.
-v <1/0>	Enable (1) or disable (0) VPN Log.
-e <1/0>	Enable (1) or disable (0) User Access Log.
-c <1/0>	Enable (1) or disable (0) Call Log.
-w <1/0>	Enable (1) or disable (0) WAN Log.
-r <1/0>	Enable (1) or disable (0) Router/DSL Information.
-t <1/0>	Enable (1) or disable (0) AlertLog Setup.
-o <port number>	Define the port number (1 ~ 65535) for AlertLog.

Example

```
> sys syslog -a 1 -s 1 -i 192.168.1.25 -d 514
>
```

Telnet Command: sys mailalert

This command is used to configure the logging mechanism for Syslog.

Syntax

```
sys syslog -a <enable> [-<command> <parameter> | ... ]
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-----------	-------------

<i>[<command><parameter>/...]</i>	The available commands with parameters are listed below. [...] means that you can type in several commands in one line.
<i>-a <1/0></i>	Enable (1) or disable (0) Syslog Access Setup.
<i>-s <1/0></i>	Enable (1) or disable (0) Syslog Save to Syslog Server.
<i>-i <IP address></i>	Define the IP address of the Syslog server.
<i>-d <port number></i>	Define the port number (1 ~ 65535) as the destination port.
<i>-u <1/0></i>	Enable (1) or disable (0) Syslog Save to USB Disk.
<i>-m <1/0></i>	Enable (1) or disable (0) Mail Syslog.
<i>-f <1/0></i>	Enable (1) or disable (0) Firewall Log.
<i>-v <1/0></i>	Enable (1) or disable (0) VPN Log.
<i>-e <1/0></i>	Enable (1) or disable (0) User Access Log.
<i>-c <1/0></i>	Enable (1) or disable (0) Call Log.
<i>-w <1/0></i>	Enable (1) or disable (0) WAN Log.
<i>-r <1/0></i>	Enable (1) or disable (0) Router/DSL Information.
<i>-t <1/0></i>	Enable (1) or disable (0) AlertLog Setup.
<i>-o <port number></i>	Define the port number (1 ~ 65535) for AlertLog.

Example

```
> sys syslog -a 1 -s 1 -i 192.168.1.25 -d 514
>
```

Telnet Command: sys time

This command is used to configure system time and date.

Syntax

`sys time server <domain>`

`sys time inquire`

`sys time show`

`sys time wan <option>`

`sys time zone <index>`

`sys time pseudo`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>domain</i>	Type the domain name of the time server. The maximum length is 39 characters.
<i>inquire</i>	Get the time based on the timer server setting.
<i>show</i>	Displays current server setting.
<i>wan<option></i>	Set the WAN interface. 0 - Auto 1 - WAN1 2 - WAN2 3 - WAN3 4 - WAN4
<i>index</i>	Different number means different time zone.

-
- 1 - GMT-12:00 Eniwetok, Kwajalein
 - 2 - GMT-11:00 Midway Island, Samoa
 - 3 - GMT-10:00 Hawaii
 - 4 - GMT-09:00 Alaska
 - 5 - GMT-08:00 Pacific Time (US & Canada)
 - 6 - GMT-08:00 Tijuana
 - 7 - GMT-07:00 Mountain Time (US & Canada)
 - 8 - GMT-07:00 Arizona
 - 9 - GMT-06:00 Central Time (US & Canada)
 - 10 - GMT-06:00 Saskatchewan
 - 11 - GMT-06:00 Mexico City, Tegucigalpa
 - 12 - GMT-05:00 Eastern Time (US & Canada)
 - 13 - GMT-05:00 Indiana (East)
 - 14 - GMT-05:00 Bogota, Lima, Quito
 - 15 - GMT-04:00 Atlantic Time (Canada)
 - 16 - GMT-04:00 Caracas, La Paz
 - 17 - GMT-04:00 Santiago
 - 18 - GMT-03:30 Newfoundland
 - 19 - GMT-03:00 Brasilia
 - 20 - GMT-03:00 Buenos Aires, Georgetown
 - 21 - GMT-02:00 Mid-Atlantic
 - 22 - GMT-01:00 Azores, Cape Verde Is.
 - 23 - GMT Greenwich Mean Time : Dublin
 - 24 - GMT Edinburgh, Lisbon, London
 - 25 - GMT Casablanca, Monrovia
 - 26 - GMT+01:00 Belgrade, Bratislava
 - 27 - GMT+01:00 Budapest, Ljubljana, Prague
 - 28 - GMT+01:00 Sarajevo, Skopje, Sofija
 - 29 - GMT+01:00 Warsaw, Zagreb
 - 30 - GMT+01:00 Brussels, Copenhagen
 - 31 - GMT+01:00 Madrid, Paris, Vilnius
 - 32 - GMT+01:00 Amsterdam, Berlin, Bern
 - 33 - GMT+01:00 Rome, Stockholm, Vienna
 - 34 - GMT+02:00 Bucharest
 - 35 - GMT+02:00 Cairo
 - 36 - GMT+02:00 Helsinki, Riga, Tallinn
 - 37 - GMT+02:00 Athens, Istanbul, Minsk
 - 38 - GMT+02:00 Jerusalem
 - 39 - GMT+02:00 Harare, Pretoria
 - 40 - GMT+03:00 Volgograd
 - 41 - GMT+03:00 Baghdad, Kuwait, Riyadh
 - 42 - GMT+03:00 Nairobi
 - 43 - GMT+03:00 Moscow, St. Petersburg
 - 44 - GMT+03:30 Tehran
 - 45 - GMT+04:00 Abu Dhabi, Muscat
 - 46 - GMT+04:00 Baku, Tbilisi
 - 47 - GMT+04:30 Kabul
 - 48 - GMT+05:00 Ekaterinburg
 - 49 - GMT+05:00 Islamabad, Karachi, Tashkent
 - 50 - GMT+05:30 Bombay, Calcutta
 - 51 - GMT+05:30 Madras, New Delhi
 - 52 - GMT+06:00 Astana, Almaty, Dhaka
 - 53 - GMT+06:00 Colombo
 - 54 - GMT+07:00 Bangkok, Hanoi, Jakarta
 - 55 - GMT+08:00 Beijing, Chongqing
 - 56 - GMT+08:00 Hong Kong, Urumqi
 - 57 - GMT+08:00 Singapore
 - 58 - GMT+08:00 Taipei
 - 59 - GMT+08:00 Perth
 - 60 - GMT+09:00 Seoul
 - 61 - GMT+09:00 Osaka, Sapporo, Tokyo
 - 62 - GMT+09:00 Yakutsk
 - 63 - GMT+09:30 Darwin
 - 64 - GMT+09:30 Adelaide
 - 65 - GMT+10:00 Canberra, Melbourne, Sydney
 - 66 - GMT+10:00 Brisbane
 - 67 - GMT+10:00 Hobart
-

	68 - GMT+10:00 Vladivostok 69 - GMT+10:00 Guam, Port Moresby 70 - GMT+11:00 Magadan, Solomon Is. 71 - GMT+11:00 New Caledonia 72 - GMT+12:00 Fiji, Kamchatka, Marshall Is. 73 - GMT+12:00 Auckland, Wellington
<i>pseudo -E</i> <1/0>	Enable (1) or disable (0) the pseudo system time.
<i>pseudo -T</i> <year> <month> <day> <hour> <minute>	Set the pseudo time value. <year> - Enter four digits. <month> - Enter 1 to 12. <day> - Enter the day in a month. <hour> - Enter the number of the hour (1 to 23). <minute> - Enter the number of the minute (1 to 59).
<i>pseudo -S</i>	Displays pseudo system time.

Example

```
> sys time zone 8
Set Time Zone OK

> sys time show
***** System Time *****
Current System Time: [2000 Jan 01 Sat 18:34:06]
Time Server: [pool.ntp.org]
Time Zone Index: [8]. GMT-07:00
Send NTP Request Through: Auto

*****
```

Telnet Command: **sys eap_tls**

This command is used to disable or enable EAP-TLS.

You might have to enable EAP-TLS compatibility to avoid compatibility issues with some operating systems. But, please note that enabling EAP-TLS compatibility will lower down the connection security level.

Syntax

sys eap_tls set [0/1]

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
0	Disable EAP-TLS compatibility!
1	Enable EAP-TLS compatibility!

Example

```
> sys eap_tls set 1
Enable EAP_TLS compatibility!
```

Telnet Command: **sys dashboard**

This command is used to display / hide items (such as System Information, Interface...) on dashboard.

Syntax

sys dashboard [-<command> <value> | ...]

sys dashboard show

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
[<command> <value>/...]	The available commands with parameters are listed below. [...] means that you can type in several parameters in one line. <command> "0 ~ 9" and "a" represent different sections to be displayed on the dashboard. 0 : Front Panel 1 : System Information 2 : IPv4 LAN Information 3 : IPv4 Internet Access 4 : IPv6 Internet Access 5 : Interface 6 : Security 7 : System Resource 8 : LTE Status 9 : Quick Access a : VoIP <value> 1 : Enable 0 : Disable
show	Display current status (enabled /disabled) for each item.

Example

```
> sys eap_tls set 1
Enable EAP_TLS compatibility!
```

Telnet Command: testmail

This command is used to display current settings for sending test mail.

Example

```
> testmail
Send out test mail
Mail Alert:[Disable]
SMTP_Server:[0.0.0.0]
Mail to:[]
Return-Path:[]
```

Telnet Command: upnp off

This command can close UPnP function.

Example

```
>upnp off
UPNP say bye-bye
```

Telnet Command: upnp on

This command can enable UPnP function.

Example

```
>upnp on
UPNP start.
```

Telnet Command: upnp nat

This command can display IGD NAT status.

Example

```
> upnp nat ?
***** IGD NAT Status *****

((0))
InternalClient >>192.168.1.10<<, RemoteHost >>0.0.0.0<<
InternalPort >>21<<, ExternalPort >>21<<
PortMapProtocol >>TCP<<
The tmpvirtual server index >>0<<
PortMapLeaseDuration >>0<<, PortMapEnabled >>0<<
Ftp Example [MICROSOFT]
((1))
InternalClient >>0.0.0.0<<, RemoteHost >>0.0.0.0<<
InternalPort >>0<<, ExternalPort >>0<<
PortMapProtocol >><NULL><<
The tmpvirtual server index >>0<<
PortMapLeaseDuration >>0<<, PortMapEnabled >>0<<
PortMapProtocol >><NULL><<
The tmpvirtual server index >>0<<
PortMapLeaseDuration >>0<<, PortMapEnabled >>0<<
0<<

--- MORE --- ['q': Quit, 'Enter': New Lines, 'Space Bar': Next Page] ---
```

Telnet Command: upnp service

This command can display the information of the UPnP service. UPnP service must be enabled first.

Example

```
> upnp on
UPNP start.

> upnp service
>>>> SERVICE TABLE1 <<<<<
  serviceType urn:schemas-microsoft-com:service:OSInfo:1
  serviceId   urn:microsoft-com:serviceId:OSInfo1
  SCPDURL     /upnp/OSInfo.xml
  controlURL  /OSInfo1
  eventURL    /OSInfoEvent1
  UDN         uuid:774e9bbe-7386-4128-b627-001daa843464

>>>> SERVICE TABLE2 <<<<<
  serviceType
urn:schemas-upnp-org:service:WANCommonInterfaceConfig:1
  serviceId   urn:upnp-org:serviceId:WANCommonIFC1
  SCPDURL     /upnp/WComIFCX.xml
  controlURL  /upnp?control=WANCommonIFC1
  eventURL    /upnp?event=WANCommonIFC1
  UDN         uuid:2608d902-03e2-46a5-9968-4a54ca499148
.
.
```

```
.
```

Telnet Command: upnp subscribe

This command can show all UPnP services subscribed.

Example

```
> upnp on
UPNP start.
> upnp subscribe
Vigor> upnp subscribe
>>>> (1) serviceType urn:schemas-microsoft-com:service:OSInfo:1

----- Subscribtion1 -----

    sid = 7a2b added0-0047-4fc8-b870-4597b34da7fb

    eventKey =1, ToSendEventKey = 1

    expireTime =6926

    active =1

    DeliveryURLs
=<http://192.168.1.113:2869/upnp/eventing/twtnpnsiun>

>>>> (2) serviceType
urn:schemas-upnp-org:service:WANCommonInterfaceConfig:1

----- Subscribtion1 -----

    sid = d9cd47a5-d9c9-4d3d-8043-d03a82f27983

    eventKey =1, ToSendEventKey = 1
.
.
.
```

Telnet Command: upnp tmpvs

This command can display current status of temp Virtual Server of your router.

Example

```
Vigor> upnp tmpvs
***** Temp virtual server status *****

((0))
real_addr >>192.168.1.10<<, pseudo_addr >>172.16.3.229<<
real_port >>0<<, pseudo_port >>0<<
hit_portmap_index >>0<<
The protocol >>TCP<<
time >>0<<
```

```

((1))
real_addr >>0.0.0.0<<, pseudo_addr >>0.0.0.0<<
real_port >>0<<, pseudo_port >>0<<
hit_portmap_index >>0<<
The protocol >>0<<
time >>0<<
--- MORE ---  ['q': Quit, 'Enter': New Lines, 'Space Bar': Next Page]
---

```

Telnet Command: upnp wan

This command is used to specify WAN interface to apply UPnP.

upnp wan *[n]*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>n</i>	It means to specify WAN interface to apply UPnP. n=0, it means to auto-select WAN interface. n=1, WAN1 n=2, WAN2

Example

```

> upnp wan 1
use wan1 now.

```

Telnet Command: usb list

This command is use to display the information about the brand name and model name of the USB modems which are supported by Vigor router.

Example

```

> usb list ?
Brand      Module                Standard
-----
Aiko       Aiko 83D              3.5G          Y
Alcatel    Alcatel L100V         LTE            Y
Alcatel    Alcatel W100          LTE            Y
BandRich   Bandlux C170          3.5G          Y
BandRich   Bandlux C270          3.5G          Y
BandRich   Bandlux C321          3.5G          Y
BandRich   Bandlux C330          3.5G          Y
BandRich   Bandlux C331          3.5G          Y
BandRich   Bandlux C502          3.5G          Y
D-Link     D_LINK DWM221 B1     LTE            Y
D-Link     D_LINK DWM222         LTE            Y
Huawei     Huawei E169u          3.5G          Y
Huawei     Huawei E173u          3.5G          M
Huawei     Huawei E220           3.5G          Y
Huawei     Huawei E303D          3.5G          Y
Huawei     Huawei E3131          3.5G          Y
Huawei     Huawei E3276s         LTE            Y

```

Huawei	Huawei	E3372s-153	LTE	Y
Huawei	Huawei	E392	LTE	Y
Huawei	Huawei	E397Bu-501	LTE	Y
Huawei	Huawei	E398	LTE	Y
Huawei	Huawei	K3770	3.5G	M
--- MORE --- ['q': Quit, 'Enter': New Lines, 'Space Bar': Next Page]				

Telnet Command: usb user

This command is used to set profiles for FTP/SMB users.

Syntax

`usb user add <Index> <Username> <Password> <Permission> <Home path>`

`usb user rm <Index>`

`usb user enable <Index>`

`usb user disable <Index>`

`usb user list`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>add</i>	Add a new user profile.
<i>rm</i>	Delete an existed user profile.
<i>enable</i>	Enable a user profile.
<i>disable</i>	Disable a user profile.
<i>list</i>	Display all of the user profile.
<i>index</i>	It means the index number of the user profile. There are 16 profiles allowed to be configured. So the range of such option is 1 ~ 16.
<i>Username</i>	Type a text (maximum 11 characters) as the username for the user profile.
<i>Password</i>	Type a text (maximum 11 characters) as the password for the user profile.
<i>Permission</i>	Specify the action (RWDLCR) permitted. If one of the actions is not allowed, simple type "-" instead. R - Read File. W - Write File. D - Delete File. L - List directory. C - Create directory. R - Remove selected directory.
<i>Home path</i>	Set the path (maximum 159 characters) for the USB user profile.

Example

```
> usb user add 1 root 1234 R-DLCR /usr
```

Telnet Command: usb temp

This command is used to set profiles for FTP/SMB users.

Syntax

usb temp set [-c|-f|-a|-b|-m|-u|-l|-r]

usb temp show

usb temp all_data

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>set -c</i>	Set the temperature unit (Celsius).
<i>set -f</i>	Set the temperature unit (Fahrenheit).
<i>set -a</i>	Set the temperature sensor by using a probe or the built-in sensor automatically. The probe will be detected and used first, and fall back to the built-in sensor if the probe is not detected.
<i>set -b</i>	Set to use the built-in sensor.
<i>set -m</i>	Enable or disable the Alarm Setting. 1: Enable 0: Disable
<i>set -u <value></i>	Set the upper temperature limit. <value>: Enter a value, e.g., 30.35.
<i>set -l <value></i>	Set the lower temperature limit. <value>: Enter a value, e.g., 10.35.
<i>set -r</i>	Shows the setting of temperature unit and sensor type.
<i>show</i>	Displays current temperature.
<i>all_data</i>	Displays all temperature data.

Example

```
> usb temp set -c
Set Celsius.
```

Telnet Command: vigbrg set

This command is to configure specified WAN as bridge mode.

Syntax Description

vigbrg set -v [IP version] -w [WAN_idx] -l [LAN_idx] -e [0/1] -f [0/1]

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>-v [IP version]</i>	Indicate the IP version for the IP address. 4 - IPv4. 6 - IPv6.
<i>-w [WAN_idx]</i>	WAN_idx - Indicate the WAN interface. 1 - WAN1 2 - WAN2 3 - WAN3 4 - WAN4
<i>-l [LAN_idx]</i>	LAN_idx - Indicate the LAN interface. 1 - LAN1 2 - LAN2 3 - LAN3 4 - LAN4

<code>e [0/1]</code>	Enable (1) or disable (0) the Vigor Bridge for WAN or/and LAN.
<code>f [0/1]</code>	Enable (1) or disable (0) the firewall functions.

Example

```
> vigbrg set -v 4 -w 1 -l 1 -e 1
[WAN1] IPv4 bridge is enable. Set subnet[LAN1]
```

Telnet Command: vigbrg status

This command can show whether the Vigor Bridge Function is enabled or disabled.

Example

```
> vigbrg status
%Vigor Bridge Function is enable!

%Wan1 management is disable!
```

Telnet Command: vigbrg cfgip

This command allows users to transfer a bridge modem into ADSL router by accessing into and adjusting specified IP address. Users can access into Web UI of the router to manage the router through the IP address configured here.

vigbrg cfgip *[IP Address]*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>IP Address</i>	It means to type an IP address for users to manage the router.

Example

```
> vigbrg cfgip 192.168.1.15
> vigbrg cfgip ?
% Vigor Bridge Config IP,
% Now: 192.168.1.15
```

Telnet Command: vigbrg wanstatus

This command can display the existed WAN connection status for the modem (change from ADSL router into bridge modem), including index number, MAC address, Stamp Time, PVC, VLAN port for Vigor Bridge Function..

Example

```
> vigbrg wanstatus
Vigor Bridge: Running
WAN mac table:
Index  MAC Address          Stamp Time      PVC           VLan
  Port
```

Telnet Command: vigbrg wlanstatus

This command can display the existed WLAN connection status for the modem (change from router into bridge modem), including index number, MAC address, Stamp Time, PVC, VLAN port for Vigor Bridge Function.

Example

```
> vigbrg wlanstatus
Vigor Bridge: Running
WAN mac table:
Index  MAC Address          Stamp Time      PVC           VLan   Port
```

Telnet Command: vlan group

This command allows you to set VLAN group. You can set four VLAN groups. Please run *vlan restart* command after you change any settings.

Syntax

vlan group *id* <set/set_ex><p1/p2/p3/p4/s1/s2/s3/s4>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>id</i>	It means the group 0 to 7 for VLAN.

<i>set</i>	It indicates each port can join more than one VLAN group.
<i>set_ex</i>	It indicates each port can join one VLAN group at one time.
<i>p1/p2/p3/p4</i>	It indicates LAN port 1 to LAN port 4. To group LAN1, LAN2, LAN3 and/or LAN4 under one VLAN group, please type the port number(s) you want.
<i>s1/s2/s3/s4</i>	It is only available for WLAN models.

Example

```
> vlan group 3 set p1 s3 s4
VLAN  p1  p2  p3  p4  s1  s2  s3  s4
-----
   3   V                V   V
>
```

Telnet Command: vlan off

This command allows you to disable VLAN function.

Syntax

vlan off

Example

```
> vlan off
VLAN is Disable!
Force subnet LAN2/3/4 to be disabled!!
```

Telnet Command: vlan on

This command allows you to enable VLAN function.

Syntax

vlan on

Example

```
> vlan on
VLAN is Enable!
```

Telnet Command: vlan pri

This command is used to define the priority for each VLAN profile setting.

Syntax

vlan pri *n pri_no*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>n</i>	It means VLAN ID number. n=VLAN ID number (from 0 to 7).
<i>pri_no</i>	It means the priority of VLAN profile. pri_no=0 ~7 (from none to highest priority).

Example

```
> vlan pri 1 2
VLAN1: Priority=2
```

Telnet Command: vlan restart

This command can make VLAN settings restarted with newest configuration.

Syntax

vlan restart

Example

```
> vlan restart ?
VLAN restarts!!!
```

Telnet Command: vlan status

This command display current status for VLAN.

Syntax

vlan status

Example

```
> vlan status
VLAN is Enable :
-----
VLAN Enable VID Pri p1 p2 p3 p4 s1 s2 s3 s4 subnet
-----
0 OFF 0 0
1 OFF 0 2
2 OFF 0 0
3 OFF 0 0 V V 1:LAN1
4 OFF 0 0
5 OFF 0 0
6 OFF 0 0
7 OFF 0 0
-----
Note: they are only untag for s1/s2/s3/s4, but they can join tag vlan
with lan ports.
Permit untagged device in P1 to access router: ON.
```

Telnet Command: vlan subnet

This command is used to configure the LAN interface used by the VLAN group.

Syntax

vlan subnet group_id <1/2/3/4>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<1/2/3/4>	It means interfaces, LAN1 ~ LAN4.

Example

```
> vlan subnet group_id 2
% Vlan Group-0 using LAN2      !

This setting will take effect after rebooting.
Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
```

Telnet Command: vlan submode

This command changes the VLAN encapsulation mechanisms in the LAN driver.

Syntax

`vlan submode <on/off/status>`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>on</i>	It means to enable the promiscuous mode.
<i>off</i>	It means to enable the normal mode.
<i>status</i>	It means to display if submode is normal mode or promiscuous mode.

Example

```
> vlan submode status
% vlan subnet mode : normal mode
> vlan submode on
% vlan subnet mode modified to promiscuous mode.
> vlan submode status
% vlan subnet mode : promiscuous mode
```

Telnet Command: vlan tagged

This command is used to enable or disable the incoming of untagged packets.

Syntax

`vlan tagged [n] [on/off]`

`vlan tagged [unlimited] [on/off]`

`vlan tagged [p1_untag] [on/off]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>n</i>	It means VLAN channel. The range is from 0 to 7.
<i>on/off</i>	It means to enable/disable the tagged VLAN.
<i>[unlimited] [on/off]</i>	unlimited on: It allows the incoming of untagged packets even all VLAN are tagged. unlimited off: It does not allows the incoming of untagged packets.
<i>[p1_untag] [on/off]</i>	P1_untag on: It allows the incoming of untagged packets form LAN port 1.

	P1_untag off: It does not allow the incoming of untagged packets from LAN port 1.
--	---

Example

```
> vlan tagged unlimited on
unlimited mode is ON
```

Telnet Command: vlan vid

This command is used to configure VID number for each VLAN channel.

Syntax

vlan vid *n* *vid_no*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>n</i>	It means VLAN channel. The range is from 0 to 7.
<i>vid_no</i>	It means the value of VLAN ID. Type the value as the VLAN ID number. The range is form 0 to 4095.

Example

```
> vlan vid 1 4095
VLAN1, vid=4095
```

Telnet Command: vlan sysvid

This command is used to modify and show the scope (reserved 78) of the VLAN IDs used internally by the system.

Syntax

vlan sysvid [*show* | *n*]

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>show</i>	It means to show the scope of VLAN ID used internally.
<i>n</i>	It means the value to be set as VLAN ID. The range is from 0 to 4018.

Example

```
> vlan sysvid 100
You have set system VLAN ID to range: 100 ~ 177,
We recommend that you reboot the system now.

> vlan sysvid 200
You have set system VLAN ID to range: 200 ~ 263,
We recommend that you reboot the system now.

> vlan sysvid show
The system VLAN ID is in range: 200 ~ 263
```

Telnet Command: vpn l2lset

This command allows users to set advanced parameters for LAN to LAN function.

```
vpn l2lset [list index] peerid [peerid]
vpn l2lset [list index] localid [localid]
vpn l2lset [list index]main [auto/proposal index]
vpn l2lset [list index] aggressive [g1/g2]
vpn l2lset [list index]pfs [on/off]
vpn l2lset [list index] phase1[lifetime]
vpn l2lset [list index] phase2[lifetime]
vpn l2lset <list index> x509localid <0/1>
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<list index>	It means the index number of L2L (LAN to LAN) profile.
peerid <peerid>	It means the peer identity for aggressive mode.
localid <localid>	It means the local identity for aggressive mode.
main <auto/proposal index>	It means to choose proposal for main mode. <auto>: Choose default proposals. <proposal index>: choose specified proposal.
aggressive <g1/g2>	It means the chosen DH group for aggressive mode.
pfs <on/off>	It means "perfect forward secrete". <on/off>: Turn on or off the PFS function.
phase1 <lifetime> / phase2 <lifetime>	It means phase 1 or 2 of IKE. <lifetime>: Set the lifetime value (in second) for phase 1 and phase 2.
x509localid <0/1>	It means to enable (1) or disable (0) the X509 local ID.

Example

```
> VPN l2lset 1 peerid 10226
```

Telnet Command: vpn l2ldrop

This command allows users to terminate current LAN to LAN VPN connection.

Syntax

```
vpn l2ldrop l2lname <name>
vpn l2ldrop l2lidx <idx>
vpn l2ldrop h2lname <name>
vpn l2ldrop h2lidx <idx>
vpn l2ldrop <ifno>
vpn l2ldrop
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-----------	-------------

<i>l2lname</i> <name>	It means to drop VPN connection by specifying the name of the LAN to LAN profile.
<i>l2lidx</i> <idx>	It means to drop VPN connection by specifying the index number of LAN to LAN profile.
<i>h2lname</i> <name>	It means to drop VPN connection by specifying the name of the remote dial-in user profile.
<i>h2lidx</i> <idx>	It means to drop VPN connection by specifying the index number of the remote dial-in user profile.
<ifno>	It means to drop VPN connection by using VPN ifno.
<i>l2lDrop</i>	It means to drop all VPN connections.

Example

```
> vpn l2lDrop
Drop all VPN
```

Telnet Command: vpn l2lDialout

This command allows users to terminate current LAN to LAN VPN connection (dial-out).

Syntax

```
vpn l2lDialout <idx>
vpn l2lDialout list
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>l2lDialout</i> <idx>	It means to build VPN connection by specifying the index number of dial-out LAN to LAN profile. <idx>: Enter an index number (1 to 32).
<i>list</i>	It means to display LAN to LAN profiles (enabled).

Example

```
> vpn l2lDialout list
List LAN to LAN profiles of the status as Enable
Index Profile      Status
>
```

Telnet Command: vpn dinset

This command allows users to configure setting for remote dial-in VPN profile.

```
vpn dinset <list index>
vpn dinset <list index> <on/off>
vpn dinset <list index> username <USERNAME>
vpn dinset <list index> password <PASSWORD>
vpn dinset <list index> motp <on/off>
```

vpn dinset <list index> pin_secret <pin> <secret>
 vpn dinset <list index> timeout <0-9999>
 vpn dinset <list index> dintype <Type> <on/off>
 vpn dinset <list index> subnet <0-4>
 vpn dinset <list index> assignip <on/off>
 vpn dinset <list index> srnode <on/off>
 vpn dinset <list index> remoteip <Remote_Client_IP_Address>
 vpn dinset <list index> peer <Peer_ID>
 vpn dinset <list index> naming <pass/block>
 vpn dinset <list index> multicastvpn <pass/block>
 vpn dinset <list index> prekey <on/off>
 vpn dinset <list index> assignkey <Pre_Shared_Key>
 vpn dinset <list index> digsig <on/off>
 vpn dinset <list index> ipsec <Method> <on/off>
 vpn dinset <list index> localid <Local_ID>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<list index>	It means the index number of the profile.
<list index> <on/off>	It means to enable or disable the profile. <list index> - Enter the index number of the VPN profile. <on/off> - on: Enable; off: Disable.
<list index> motp <on/off>	It means to enable or disable the authentication with mOTP function. <list index> - Enter the index number of the VPN profile. <on/off> - on: Enable; off: Disable.
<list index> pin_secret<pin> <secret>	It means to set PIN code with secret. <list index> - Enter the index number of the VPN profile. <pin> - Type the code for authentication (e.g., 1234). <secret> - Use the 32 digit-secret number generated by mOTP in the mobile phone (e.g., e759bb6f0e94c7ab4fe6)
<list index> timeout <0-9999>	It means to set idle timeout. The default is 300 (seconds). <list index> - Enter the index number of the VPN profile. <0-9999> - Enter a value.
<list index> dintype <Type> <on/off>	It means to enable/disable the allowed dial-in type. <list index> - Enter the index number of the VPN profile. <Type> - 0 to 3. In which, 0 means PPTP; 1 means IPsec Tunnel; 2 means L2TP with IPsec Policy; 3 means SSL Tunnel. <on/off> - on: Enable; off: Disable.
vpn dinset <list index> subnet <0-4>	It means to set the LAN subnet for the selected VPN profile. <list index> - Enter the index number of the VPN profile. <0-4> - Enter a number to specify the LAN subnet. In which, 0 means LAN1 1 means LAN2 2 means LAN3 3 means LAN4 4 means DMZ
vpn dinset <list index>	It means to enable or disable the function of assigning the static IP

<i>assignip</i> <on/off>	address. <list index> - Enter the index number of the VPN profile. <on/off> - on: Enable; off: Disable.
<i>vpn dinset</i> <list index> <i>srnode</i> <on/off>	It means to enable or disable the function of specifying the remote node. <list index> - Enter the index number of the VPN profile. <on/off> - on: Enable; off: Disable.
<i>vpn dinset</i> <list index> <i>remoteip</i> <Remote_Client_IP_Address >	It means to enable or disable the function of assigning remote client IP. <list index> - Enter the index number of the VPN profile. <Remote_Client_IP_Address> - Set the IP address of the remote client.
<i>vpn dinset</i> <list index> <i>peer</i> <Peer_ID>	It means to assign the peer ID. <list index> - Enter the index number of the VPN profile. <Peer_ID> - Enter the string of the peer ID.
<i>vpn dinset</i> <list index> <i>naming</i> <pass/block>	It means to set the Netbiod Naming Packet for the VPN profile. <list index> - Enter the index number of the VPN profile. <pass/block> - Let the packet pass or block the packet.
<i>vpn dinset</i> <list index> <i>multicastvpn</i> <pass/block>	It means to set the multicast via VPN for IGMP, IP-CAM, DHCP relay, and etc. <list index> - Enter the index number of the VPN profile. <pass/block> - Let the packet pass or block the packet.
<i>vpn dinset</i> <list index> <i>prekey</i> <on/off>	It means to enable/disable the Pre-Shared Key setting for IKE Authentication Method. <list index> - Enter the index number of the VPN profile. <on/off> - on: Enable; off: Disable.
<i>vpn dinset</i> <list index> <i>assignkey</i> <Pre_Shared_Key>	It means to set the Pre-Shared Key for IKE Authentication Method. <list index> - Enter the index number of the VPN profile. <Pre_Shared_Key> - Enter a string as PSK.
<i>vpn dinset</i> <list index> <i>digsig</i> <on/off>	It means to enable/disable the digital signature (X.509) for IKE Authentication Method. <list index> - Enter the index number of the VPN profile. <on/off> - on: Enable; off: Disable.
<i>vpn dinset</i> <list index> <i>ipsec</i> <Method> <on/off>	It means to enable / disable and set the protocol for IPsec security method. <list index> - Enter the index number of the VPN profile. <Method> - Enter a number (0 to 3) to specify the protocol. 0 means Medium(AH) High(ESP), 1 means DES 2 means 3DES 3 means AES <on/off> - on: Enable; off: Disable.
<i>vpn dinset</i> <list index> <i>localid</i> <Local_ID>	It means to set local ID (optional) for IPsec Security Method. <list index> - Enter the index number of the VPN profile. <local_ID> - Enter the string of local ID.

Example

```

> vpn dinset 1
Dial-in profile index 1
Profile Name: ???
Status: Deactive
Mobile OTP: Disabled
Password:
Idle Timeout: 300 sec
> vpn dinset 1 on
% set profile active
> vpn dinset 1 motp on
% Enable Mobile OTP mode!>
> vpn dinset 1 pin_secret 1234 e759bb6f0e94c7ab4fe6

```

```

> vpn dinset 1
Dial-in profile index 1
Profile Name: ???
Status: Active
Mobile OTP: Enabled
PIN: 1234
Secret: e759bb6f0e94c7ab4fe6
Idle Timeout: 300 sec

```

Telnet Command: vpn subnet

This command allows users to specify a subnet selection for the specified remote dial-in VPN profile.

vpn subnet [*index*] [1/2/3/4]

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
< <i>index</i> >	It means the index number of the VPN profile.
<1/2/3/4>	1 - it means LAN1 2 - it means LAN2. 3 - it means LAN3 4 - it means LAN4.

Example

```

> vpn subnet 1 2
>

```

Telnet Command: vpn setup

This command allows users to setup VPN for different types.

Command of PPTP Dial-Out

vpn setup <*index*> <*name*> pptp_out <*ip*> <*usr*> <*pwd*> <*nip*> <*nmask*>

Command of IPSec Dial-Out

vpn setup <*index*> <*name*> ipsec_out <*ip*> <*key*> <*nip*> <*nmask*>

Command of L2Tp Dial-Out

vpn setup <*index*> <*name*> l2tp_out <*ip*> <*usr*> <*pwd*> <*nip*> <*nmask*>

Command of Dial-In

vpn setup <*index*> <*name*> dialin <*ip*> <*usr*> <*pwd*> <*key*> <*nip*> <*nmask*>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
For PPTP Dial-Out	
< <i>index</i> >	It means the index number of the profile.
< <i>name</i> >	It means the name of the profile.
< <i>ip</i> >	It means the IP address to dial to.
< <i>usr</i> > < <i>pwd</i> >	It means the user and the password required for the PPTP connection.

<code><nip> <nmask></code>	It means the remote network IP and the mask. e.g., vpn setup 1 name1 pptp_out 1.2.3.4 vigor 1234 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0
For IPsec Dial-Out	
<code><index></code>	It means the index number of the profile.
<code><name></code>	It means the name of the profile.
<code><ip></code>	It means the IP address to dial to.
<code><key></code>	It means the value of IPsec Pre-Shared Key.
<code><nip> <nmask></code>	It means the remote network IP and the mask. e.g., vpn setup 1 name1 ipsec_out 1.2.3.4 1234 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0
For L2TP Dial-Out	
<code><index></code>	It means the index number of the profile.
<code><name></code>	It means the name of the profile.
<code><ip></code>	It means the IP address to dial to.
<code><usr> <pwd></code>	It means the user and the password required for the L2TP connection.
<code><nip> <nmask></code>	It means the remote network IP and the mask. e.g., vpn setup 1 name1 l2tp_out 1.2.3.4 vigor 1234 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0
For Dial-In	
<code><index></code>	It means the index number of the profile.
<code><name></code>	It means the name of the profile.
<code><ip></code>	It means the IP address allowed to dial in.
<code><usr> <pwd></code>	It means the user and the password required for the PPTP/L2TP connection.
<code><key></code>	It means the value of IPsec Pre-Shared Key.
<code><nip> <nmask></code>	It means the remote network IP and the mask. e.g., vpn setup 1 name1 dialin 1.2.3.4 vigor 1234 abc 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0

Example

```
> vpn setup 1 name1 dialin 1.2.3.4 vigor 1234 abc 192.168.1.0
255.255.255.0
% Profile Change Log ...

% Profile Index : 1
% Profile Name : name1
% Username : vigor
% Password : 1234
% Pre-share Key : abc
% Call Direction : Dial-In
% Type of Server : ISDN PPTP IPsec L2TP
% Dial from : 1.2.3.4
```

```

% Remote NETwork IP : 192.168.1.0
% Remote NETwork Mask : 255.255.255.0
>

```

Telnet Command: vpn option

This command allows users to configure settings for LAN to LAN profile.

vpn option <index> <cmd1>=<param1> [<cmd2>=<para2> | ...]

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<index>	It means the index number of the profile. Available index numbers: 1 ~ 32
For Common Settings	
<index>	It means the index number of the profile.
<i>pname</i>	It means the name of the profile.
<i>ena</i>	It means to enable or disable the profile. on - Enable off - Disable
<i>thr</i>	It means the way that VPN connection passes through. Available settings are w1f, w1o, w2f, and w2o. w1f - WAN1 First. w1o - WAN1 Only. w2f - WAN2 First. w2o - WAN2 Only.
<i>nnpkt</i>	It means the NetBios Naming Packet. on - Enable the function to pass the packet. off - Disable the function to block the packet.
<i>dir</i>	It means the call direction. Available settings are b, o and i. b - Both o - Dial-Out i - Dial-In.
<i>idle=[value]</i>	It means Always on and Idle Time out. Available values include: -1 - it means always on for dial-out. 0 - it means always on for dial-in. Other numbers (e.g., idle=200, idle=300, idle=500) mean the router will be idle after the interval (seconds) configured here.
<i>palive</i>	It means to enable PING to keep alive. -1 - disable the function. 1,2,3,4 - Enable the function and PING IP 1.2.3.4 to keep alive.
For Dial-Out Settings	
<i>ctype</i>	It means "Type of Server I am calling". "ctype=t" means PPTP. "ctype=s" means IPsec. "ctype= l" means L2TP(IPsec Policy None). "ctype= l1" means L2TP(IPsec Policy Nice to Have). "ctype= l2" means L2TP(IPsec Policy Must).

<i>dialto</i>	It means Server IP/Host Name for VPN. (such as draytek.com or 123.45.67.89).
<i>ltype</i>	It means Link Type. <i>"ltype=0"</i> means "Disable". <i>"ltype=1"</i> means "64kbps". <i>"ltype=2"</i> means "128kbps". <i>"ltype=3"</i> means "BOD".
<i>oname</i>	It means Dial-Out Username. <i>"oname=admin"</i> means to set Username = admin.
<i>opwd</i>	It means Dial-Out Password <i>"opwd=1234"</i> means to set Password = 1234.
<i>pauth</i>	It means PPP Authentication. <i>"pauth=pc"</i> means to set PPP Authentication = PAP&CHAP. <i>"pauth=p"</i> means to set PPP Authentication = PAP Only
<i>ovj</i>	It means VJ Compression. <i>"ovj=on/off"</i> means to enable/disable VJ Compression.
<i>okey</i>	It means IKE Pre-Shared Key. <i>"okey=abcd"</i> means to set IKE Pre-Shared Key = abcd.
<i>ometh</i>	It means IPsec Security Method. <i>"ometh=ah/"</i> means AH. <i>"ometh=espd/espda/"</i> means ESP DES without/with Authentication. <i>"ometh=esp3/esp3a/"</i> means ESP 3DES without/with Authentication. <i>"ometh=espa/espaa"</i> means ESP AES without/with Authentication.
<i>sch</i>	It means Index(1-15) in Schedule Setup. sch=1,3,5,7 Set schedule 1->3->5->7
<i>rcllb</i>	It means Require Remote to Callback. <i>"rcllb=on/off"</i> means to enable/disable Set Require Remote to Callback.
<i>ikeid</i>	It means IKE Local ID. <i>"ikeid=vigor"</i> means Set Local ID = vigor.
For Dial-In Settings	
<i>itype</i>	It means Allowed Dial-In Type. Available settings include: <i>"itype=t"</i> means PPTP. <i>"itype=s"</i> means IPsec. <i>"itype=L1"</i> means L2TP (None). <i>"itype=L1"</i> means L2TP(Nice to Have). <i>"itype=L2"</i> means L2TP(Must).
<i>peer</i>	It means specify Peer VPN Server IP for Remote VPN Gateway. Type "203.12.23.48" means to allow VPN dial-in with IP address of 203.12.23.48. Type "off" means any remote IP is allowed to dial in.
<i>peerid</i>	It means the peer ID for Remote VPN Gateway. Type "draytek" means the word is used as local ID.
<i>iname</i>	It means Dial-in Username. <i>"iname=admin"</i> means to set username as "admin".
<i>ipwd</i>	It means Dial-in Password. <i>"ipwd=1234"</i> means to set password as "1234".

<i>ivj</i>	It means VJ Compression. "ivj=on/off" means to enable /disable VJ Compression.
<i>ikey</i>	It means IKE Pre-Shared Key. "ikey=abcd" means to set IKE Pre-Shared Key = abcd.
<i>imeth</i>	It means IPsec Security Method "imeth=h" means "Allow AH". "imeth=d" means "Allow DES". "imeth=3" means "Allow 3DES". "imeth=a" means "Allow AES".
For TCP/IP Settings	
<i>mywip</i>	It means My WAN IP. "mywip=1.2.3.4" means to set My WAN IP as "1.2.3.4".
<i>rgip</i>	It means Remote Gateway IP. "rgip=1.2.3.4" means to set Remote Gateway IP as "1.2.3.4".
<i>rnip</i>	It means Remote Network IP. "rnip=1.2.3.0" means to set Remote Network IP as "1.2.3.0".
<i>rnmask</i>	It means Remote Network Mask. "rnmask=255.255.255.0" means to set Remote Network Mask as "255.255.255.0".
<i>rip</i>	It means RIP Direction. "rip=d" means to set RIP Direction as "Disable". "rip=t" means to set RIP Direction as "TX". "rip=r" means to set RIP Direction as "RX". "rip=b" means to set RIP Direction as "Both".
<i>mode</i>	It means the option of "From first subnet to remote network, you have to do". "mode=r" means to set Route mode. "mode=n" means to set NAT mode.
<i>droute</i>	It means to Change default route to this VPN tunnel (Only single WAN supports this). droute=on/off means to enable/disable the function.

Example

```
> vpn option 1 idle=250
% Change Log..

% Idle Timeout = 250
```

Telnet Command: vpn mroute

This command allows users to list, add or delete static routes for a certain LAN to LAN VPN profile.

vpn mroute <index> list

vpn mroute <index> add <network ip>/<mask>

vpn mroute <index> del <network ip>/<mask>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-----------	-------------

<i>list</i>	It means to display all of the route settings.
<i>add</i>	It means to add a new route.
<i>del</i>	It means to delete specified route.
<i><index></i>	It means the index number of the profile. Available index numbers: 1 ~ 32
<i><network ip>/<mask></i>	Type the IP address with the network mask address.

Example

```
> vpn mroute 1 add 192.168.5.0/24
% 192.168.5.0/24
% Add new route 192.168.5.0/24 to profile 1
```

Telnet Command: vpn list

This command allows users to view LAN to LAN VPN profiles.

```
vpn list <index> all
vpn list <index> com
vpn list <index> out
vpn list <index> in
vpn list <index> net
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>all</i>	It means to list configuration of the specified profile.
<i>com</i>	It means to list common settings of the specified profile.
<i>out</i>	It means to list dial-out settings of the specified profile.
<i>in</i>	It means to list dial-in settings of the specified profile.
<i>net</i>	It means to list Network Settings of the specified profile.
<i><index></i>	It means the index number of the profile. Available index numbers: 1 ~ 32

Example

```
> vpn list 32 all
% Common Settings

% Profile Name           : ???
% Profile Status        : Disable
% Netbios Naming Packet : Pass
% Call Direction        : Both
% Idle Timeout          : 300
% PING to keep alive    : off

% Dial-out Settings

% Type of Server         : PPTP
% Link Type:             : 64k bps
```

```

% Username          : ???
% Password          :
% PPP Authentication : PAP/CHAP
% VJ Compression    : on
% Pre-Shared Key    :
% IPSec Security Method : AH
% Schedule          : 0,0,0,0
% Remote Callback   : off
% Provide ISDN Number : off
% IKE phase 1 mode  : Main mode
% IKE Local ID      :

% Dial-In Settings

--- MORE --- ['q': Quit, 'Enter': New Lines, 'Space Bar': Next Page] ---
> vpn list 1 com
% Common Settings

% Profile Name      : ???
% Profile Status    : Disable
% Netbios Naming Packet : Pass
% Call Direction    : Both
% Idle Timeout      : 300
% PING to keep alive : off
>

```

Telnet Command: vpn remote

This command allows users to enable or disable *PPTP/IPSec/L2TP* VPN service.

vpn remote <*PPTP/IPSec/L2TP*><*on/off*>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>PPTP/IPSec/L2TP</i>	There are four types to be selected.
<i>on/off</i>	on - enable VPN remote setting. off - disable VPN remote setting.

Example

```

> vpn remote PPTP on
Set PPTP VPN Service : On

Please restart the router!!

```

Telnet Command: vpn trunk

This command allows users to configure VPN Backup, VPN load balance, GRE over IPsec, and Binding tunnel policy.

vpn trunk show_usable

vpn trunk backup <add/del> <name> <Member#1> <Member#2>

vpn trunk backup more_syslog <ON/OFF>

vpn trunk backup ERD <name> <Normal/Recover/Resume><second>

vpn trunk lb <add/del> <name> <Member#1> <Member#2>

vpn trunk lb more_syslog <ON/OFF>

vpn trunk lb algorithm <name> <RR>

vpn trunk lb algorithm <name><W-RR><Auto> <AccordingRatio> <Member1:Member2>

vpn trunk lb algorithm <name><Fastest>

vpn trunk bind usage <BindIndex>

vpn trunk bind show <LoadBalanceName>

vpn trunk bind reset_default

vpn trunk bind more_syslog <ON/OFF>

vpn trunk bind set <BindIndex> <ACT> <TrunkName> <Member> <SrcIp:A-B> <DstIp:A-B> <DstPort:A-B> <Proto> <Frag>

vpn trunk bind insert <After_BindIndex> <ACT> <TrunkName> <Member> <SrcIp:A-B> <DstIp:A-B> <DstPort:A-B> <Proto> <Frag>

vpn trunk SetGre show <Dialout_Index>

vpn trunk SetGre

<Active/In-active><Dialout_Index><GRE_MyIP><GRE_PeerIP><Logical_Traffic>

vpn trunk An_Gre GreIPsecAnalyze <ON/OFF>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>show_usable</i>	Display a list of LAN to LAN dial out profiles.
<i>backup <add/del> <name> <Member#1> <Member#2></i>	Set multiple VPN tunnels (LAN to LAN profiles) as backup tunnel. add/del - Add or delete a profile for used in VPN Trunk. name - Specify the name of the VPN trunk. Member#1 - Indicate the first LAN to LAN profile. Member#2 - Indicate the second LAN to LAN profile.
<i>backup more_syslog <ON/OFF></i> <i>lb more_syslog <ON/OFF></i> <i>bind more_syslog <ON/OFF></i>	These commands are used for RD debug.
<i>backup ERD <name> <Normal/Recover/Resume><second></i>	ERD means Environment Recovers Detection. name - Specify the name of the VPN trunk. Normal - Indicate the Normal mode. All dial-out VPN TRUNK backup profiles will be activated alternatively. Recover - Indicate the duration of VPN backup operation. Resume - When VPN connection breaks down or disconnects, Member 1 will be the top priority for the system to do VPN connection. Second - "0" means to dial each six seconds automatically. "60 ~ 2147483647" means to early handle for less than 30 seconds within

	designated time.
<i>lb <add/del> <name> <Member#1> <Member#2></i>	It means to create VPN trunk with load balance. add/del - Add or delete a profile for used in VPN Trunk. name - Specify the name of the VPN trunk. Member#1 - Indicate the first LAN to LAN profile. Member#2 - Indicate the second LAN to LAN profile.
<i>lb algorithm <name> <RR/W-RR/Fastest></i>	Set multiple VPN tunnels for using as traffic load balance tunnel. Such command is to configure the algorithm (with round robin mode) of Load Balance. name - Specify the name of the VPN trunk. RR - It means round robin mode. All of the dial-out profiles will be taken turns equally.
<i>lb algorithm <name><W-RR><Auto> <AccordingRatio> <Member1:Member2></i>	Such command is to configure the algorithm (with round robin mode) of Load Balance. name - Specify the name of the VPN trunk. W-RR - It means weighted round robin mod based on speed ratio. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● <i>Auto - the speed must be based on Lay2.</i> ● <i>AccordingRatio - the speed must be based on given ratio.</i> Member#1 - Indicate the first LAN to LAN profile. Member#2 - Indicate the second LAN to LAN profile.
<i>lb algorithm <name><Fastest></i>	Such command is to configure the algorithm (with fastest mode) of Load Balance. Most of traffics will be led to the channel with the fastest connection. name - Specify the name of the VPN trunk.
<i>bind usage <BindIndex></i>	Display detailed information for VPN Load Balance Tunnel Bind. BindIndex - Indicate the index number of the tunnel bind.
<i>bind show <LoadBalanceName></i>	Display the bind information for VPN Load Balance profile. LoadBalanceName - type the name of VPN Load Balance profile
<i>bind reset_default</i>	Reset the bind tunnel for VPN load balance to factory reset settings.
<i>bind set <BindIndex> <ACT> <TrunkName> <Member> <SrcIp:A-B> <DstI p:A-B> <DstPort:A-B> <Proto> <Frag></i>	Set the binding tunnel policy. BindIndex - Indicate the index number (1 ~ 64) for the tunnel to be bound. <pre>vpn trunk bind set 1 y vpnlb 1 192.168.10.1~192.168.10.2 192.168.99.1~192.168.99.254 1~65535 0 OFF</pre> ACT - Specify the action. "y" means active; "n" means inactive or delete. TrunkName - TrunkName - Specify the name of the VPN trunk created by using "vpn trunk lb" command. Member - Specify the index number of the LAN to LAN (dial-out) profile to be bound. SrcIp:A-B - Specify the source IP range (e.g., 192.168.10.0~192.168.10.255). DstI p:A-B - Specify the destination IP range (e.g., 192.168.1.0~192.168.1.255). DstPort:A-B - Specify the destination port range (1~65535). Proto - Specify the protocol. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0 - any 1 - ICMP 2 - IGMP 6 - TCP 17 - UDP 255 - TCP/UDP

	Frag - "ON" means to bind the fragmented packet; "OFF" means not to care. It is the default setting.
<pre>bind insert <After_BindIndex> <ACT> <TrunkName> <Member> <SrcIp:A-B> <DstIp:A-B> <DstPort:A-B> <Proto> <Frag></pre>	<p>It is used to insert additional load balance policy into an existing policy.</p> <p>After_BindIndex - Specify an index number that new additional policy should be inserted before. See the following example:</p> <pre>vpn trunk bind insert 1 y vpnlb 2 192.168.10.3~192.168.10.200 192.168.99.200~192.168.99.200 80~80 TCP OFF</pre> <p>ACT - Specify the action. "y" means active; "n" means inactive or delete.</p> <p>TrunkName - Specify the name of the VPN trunk.</p> <p>Member - Specify the index number of the LAN to LAN (dial-out) profile to be bound.</p> <p>SrcIp:A-B - Specify the source IP range (e.g., 192.168.10.0~192.168.10.255).</p> <p>DstIp:A-B - Specify the destination IP range (e.g., 192.168.1.0~192.168.1.255).</p> <p>DstPort:A-B - Specify the destination port range (1~65535).</p> <p>Proto - Specify the protocol.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0 - any 1 - ICMP 2 - IGMP 6 - TCP 17 - UDP 255 - TCP/UDP <p>Frag - "ON" means to bind the fragmented packet; "OFF" means not to care. It is the default setting.</p>
<pre>SetGre show <Dialout_Index></pre>	<p>Display the GRE over IPsec settings in specified LAN to LAN profile.</p> <p>Dialout_Index - Index number of the LAN to LAN (dial-out) profile.</p>
<pre>SetGre <Active/In-active><Dialout_Index><GRE_MyIP><GRE_PeerIP><Logical_Traffic></pre>	<p>Active/In-active - Specify the action. "y" means active; "n" means inactive.</p> <p>Dialout_Index - Index number of the LAN to LAN (dial-out) profile.</p> <p>GRE_MyIP -Type the virtual IP for router itself for verified by peer.</p> <p>GRE_PeerIP -Type the virtual IP of peer host for verified by router.</p> <p>Logical_Traffic - Specify the action for RFC2890. "y" means active; "n" means inactive.</p>
<pre>An_Gre GreIPsecAnalyze <ON/OFF></pre>	<p>These commands are used for RD debug.</p>

Example

```
> vpn setup 1 name1 pptp_out 1.2.3.4 vigor 1234 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0
% Profile Change Log ...

% Profile Index : 1
% Profile Name : name1j
% Username : vigor
% Password : 1234
% Call Direction : Dial-Out
% Type of Server : PPTP
% Dial to : 1.2.3.4
% Remote Network IP : 192.168.1.0
% Remote Network Mask : 255.255.255.0
> vpn setup 2 market pptp_out 5.6.7.8 vigor 5678 192.168.1.31 255.255.255.0
% Profile Change Log ...

% Profile Index : 2
% Profile Name : market
```

```

% Username : vigor
% Password : 5678
% Call Direction : Dial-Out
% Type of Server : PPTP
% Dial to : 5.6.7.8
% Remote NETwork IP : 192.168.1.31
% Remote NETwork Mask : 255.255.255.0
> vpn trunk lb add comp 1 2
%% Combination VPN Load Balance profile list :
  <Index> < Name > < Member1(Active)Type > <
Member2(Active)Type >
    1 comp 1(YES)PPTP 2(YES)PPTP
% Note: <Active: NO> The LAN-to-LAN Profile is disable or under Dial-In(Call
Di
rection) at present.
=====

% Setting OK.
> vpn trunk bind set 1 y comp 2 192.168.10.1~192.168.10.2
192.168.99.1~192.168.99.254 1~65535 0 OFF
% VPN Load Balance Tunnel Bind Table Index[1] detail:
=====
Action = ACTIVE
Trunk Profile(000) Name= comp
Binding Dial Out Index = 2
Binding Src IP = 192.168.10.1 ~ 192.168.10.2
Binding Dest IP = 192.168.99.1 ~ 192.168.99.254
Binding Dest Port = 1 ~ 65535
Binding Fragmented = NO
Binding Protocol = ANY Protocol
>

```

Telnet Command: vpn NetBios

This command allows users to enable or disable NetBios for Remote Access User Accounts or LAN-to-LAN Profile.

vpn NetBios set <H2I/L2I> <index> <Block/Pass>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<H2I/L2I>	H2I means Remote Access User Accounts. L2I means LAN-to-LAN Profile. Specify which one will be applied by NetBios.
<index>	The index number of the profile.
<Block/Pass>	Pass - Have an inquiry for data transmission between the hosts located on both sides of VPN Tunnel while connecting. Block - When there is conflict occurred between the hosts on both sides of VPN Tunnel in connecting, set it block data transmission of Netbios Naming Packet inside the tunnel.

Example

```

> vpn NetBios set H2l 1 Pass
% Remote Dial In Profile Index [1] :
% NetBios Block/Pass: [PASS]

```

Telnet Command: vpn mss

This command allows users to configure the maximum segment size (MSS) for different TCP types.

`vpn mss show`

`vpn mss default`

`vpn mss set <connection type> <TCP maximum segment size range>`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<code>show</code>	It means to display current setting status.
<code>default</code>	TCP maximum segment size for all the VPN connection will be set as 1360 bytes.
<code>set</code>	Use it to specify the connection type and value of MSS.
<code><connection type></code>	1-4 represent various type. 1 - PPTP 2 - L2TP 3 - IPsec 4 - L2TP over IPsec 5 - GRE over IPsec 6 - SSL Tunnel
<code><TCP maximum segment size range></code>	Each type has different segment size range. PPTP - 1 ~ 1412 L2TP - 1 ~ 1408 IPsec - 1 ~ 1381 L2TP over IPsec - 1 ~ 1361 GRE over IPsec - 1 ~ 1365 SSL Tunnel - 1 ~ 1360

Example

```
>vpn mss set 1 1400
% VPN TCP maximum segment size (MSS) :
  PPTP = 1400
  L2TP = 1360
  IPsec = 1360
  L2TP over IPsec = 1360
  GRE over IPsec = 1360
  SSL Tunnel = 1260
>
```

Telnet Command: vpn ike

This command is used to display IKE memory status and leakage list.

`vpn ike -q`

Example

```
> vpn ike -q
IKE Memory Status and Leakage List

# of free L-Buffer=95, minimum=94, leak=1
```

```
# of free M-Buffer=529, minimum=529 leak=3
# of free S-Buffer=1199, minimum=1198, leak=1
# of free Msgid-Buffer=1024, minimum=1024
```

Telnet Command: vpn Multicast

This command allows users to pass or block the multi-cast packet via VPN.

vpn Multicast set <H2I/L2I> <index> <Block/Pass>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<H2I/L2I>	H2I means Host to LAN (Remote Access User Accounts). L2I means LAN-to-LAN Profile.
<index>	The index number of the profile.
<Block/Pass>	Set Block/Pass the Multicast Packets. The default is Block.

Example

```
> vpn Multicast set L2I 1 Pass
% Lan to Lan Profile Index [1] :
% Status Block/Pass: [PASS]
```

Telnet Command: vpn pass2nd

This command allows users to determine if the packets coming from the second subnet passing through current used VPN tunnel.

vpn pass2nd *[on]*

vpn pass2nd *[off]*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>on/off</i>	on - the packets can pass through NAT. off - the packets cannot pass through NAT.

Example

```
> vpn pass2nd on
% 2nd subnet is allowed to pass VPN tunnel!
```

Telnet Command: vpn pass2nat

This command allows users to determine if the packets passing through by NAT or not when the VPN tunnel disconnects.

vpn pass2nat *[on]*

vpn pass2nat *[off]*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-----------	-------------

<i>on/off</i>	on - the packets can pass through NAT. off - the packets cannot pass through NAT.
---------------	--

Example

```
> vpn pass2nat on
% Packets would go through by NAT when VPN disconnect!!
```

Telnet Command: vpn sameSubnet

This command allows users to build VPN between clients via virtual subnet.

vpn sameSubnet *-i <value>*

vpn sameSubnet *-E <0/1>*

vpn sameSubnet *-e <value>*

vpn sameSubnet *-I <Virtual Subnet>*

vpn sameSubnet *-o <add/del>*

vpn sameSubnet *-v*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>-i [value]</i>	Specify the index number of VPN profile.
<i>-E [0/1]</i>	Enable or disable the IPsec with the same subnet. 1 - enable. 0 - disable.
<i>-e [value]</i>	Translate specified LAN to virtual subnet. 1 - LAN1 2 - LAN2 3 - LAN3 ...
<i>-I [xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx]</i>	Set the virtual subnet (e.g., 172.16.3.250).
<i>-v</i>	Display current status of virtual subnet.

Example

```
> vpn sameS -i 1 -e 1 -E 1 -e 1 -I 10.10.10.0 -o add
Enable IPsec with Same Subnet !!
Add entry Success!!
> vpn sameS -v
IPsec with the same subnet:
VPN profile 1 enable,
% translated LAN1 to Virtual subnet: 10.10.10.0
```

Telnet Command: wan ppp_mru

This command allows users to adjust the size of PPP LCP MRU. It is used for specific network.

wan ppp_mru *<WAN interface number> <MRU size>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-----------	-------------

<WAN interface number>	Type a number to represent the physical interface. For Vigor130, the number is 1 (which means WAN1).
<MRU size >	It means the number of PPP LCP MRU. The available range is from 1400 to 1600.

Example

```
>wan ppp_mru 1 ?
% Now: 1492

> wan ppp_mru 1 1490
>
> wan ppp_mru 1 ?
% Now: 1490

> wan ppp_mru 1 1492
> wan ppp_mru 1 ?
% Now: 1492
```

Telnet Command: wan mtu/wan mtu2

This command allows users to adjust the size of MTU/MTU2 for WAN.

Syntax

wan mtu *[value]*

wan mtu2 *[value]*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>value</i>	It means the number of MTU for PPP. The available range is from 1000 to 1500. For Static IP/DHCP, the maximum number will be 1500. For PPPoE, the maximum number will be 1492. For PPTP/L2TP, the maximum number will be 1460.

Example

```
> wan mtu 1100
> wan mtu ?
Static IP/DHCP (Max MSS: 1500)
PPPoE(Max MSS: 1492)
PPTP/L2TP(Max MSS: 1460)
% wan ppp_mss <MSS size: 1000 ~ 1500>
% Now: 1100
```

Telnet Command: wan dns

This command allows users to configure primary and / or secondary DNS server.

Syntax

wan dns <wan_no> <dns_select> <ipv4_addr>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-----------	-------------

<code><wan_no></code>	Select WAN interface. 1 - WAN1 2 - WAN2
<code><dns_select></code>	Specify primary and / or secondary DNS server. pri - It means primary DNS server. sec - It means secondary DNS server.
<code><ipv4_addr></code>	Enter the IP address of DNS server.

Example

```
> wan dns 1 pri 168.95.1.1
% Set WAN1 primary DNS done.
% Now: 168.95.1.1
```

Telnet Command: wan DF_check

This command allows you to enable or disable the function of DF (Don't fragment)

Syntax

```
wan DF_check [on]
```

```
wan DF_check [off]
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<code>on/off</code>	It means to enable or disable DF.

Example

```
> wan DF_check on
%DF bit check enable!
```

Telnet Command: wan disable

This command allows you to disable WAN connection.

Example

```
> wan disable WAN
%WAN disabled.
```

Telnet Command: wan enable

This command allows you to disable wan connection.

Example

```
> wan enable WAN
%WAN1 enabled.
```

Telnet Command: wan forward

This command allows you to enable or disable the function of WAN forwarding. The packets are allowed to be transmitted between different WANs.

```
wan forward [on]
```

wan forward *[off]*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>on/off</i>	It means to enable or disable WAN forward.

Example

```
> wan forward ?
%WAN forwarding is Disable!

> wan forward on
%WAN forwarding is enable!
```

Telnet Command: wan status

This command allows you to display the status of WAN connection, including connection mode, TX/RX packets, DNS settings and IP address.

Example

```
> wan status
WAN1: Offline, stall=N
Mode: ---, Up Time=00:00:00
IP=---, GW IP=---
TX Packets=0, TX Rate(Bps)=0, RX Packets=0, RX Rate(Bps)=0
Primary DNS=0.0.0.0, Secondary DNS=0.0.0.0

PVC_WAN3: Offline, stall=N
Mode: ---, Up Time=00:00:00
IP=---, GW IP=---
TX Packets=0, TX Rate(Bps)=0, RX Packets=0, RX Rate(Bps)=0

PVC_WAN4: Offline, stall=N
Mode: ---, Up Time=00:00:00
IP=---, GW IP=---
TX Packets=0, TX Rate(Bps)=0, RX Packets=0, RX Rate(Bps)=0

PVC_WAN5: Offline, stall=N
Mode: ---, Up Time=00:00:00
IP=---, GW IP=---
TX Packets=0, TX Rate(Bps)=0, RX Packets=0, RX Rate(Bps)=0
```

Telnet Command: wan detect

This command allows you to Ping a specified IP to detect the WAN connection (static IP or PPPoE mode).

```
wan detect [wan1/./wanx][on/off/strict/always_on]
wan detect [wan1/./wanx][on/off]-t[time]
wan detect [wan1/./wanx][on/off]-i[interval]
wan detect [wan1/./wanx] target [ip addr]
wan detect [wan1/./wanx] target2[ip addr]
```


wan detect [*wan1/.../wanx*] target_gw [*1/0*]
 wan detect [*wan1/.../wanx*] interval [*interval*]
 wan detect [*wan1/.../wanx*] retry [*retry*]
 wan detect status

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i><on/off/strict/always_on></i>	On: Enable ping detection. The IP address of the target shall be set. Off: Enable ARP detection (default). Time and interval should be set. strict: Enable the strict ARP detection. Time and interval should be set. always_on: Disable link detect, always connected(only support static IP)
<i>-t <time></i>	Set the time for ARP detect or strict ARP detection.
<i>-i <interval></i>	Set the interval for ARP detect or strict ARP detection.
<i>target <ip addr></i>	Set the ping target. <i><ip addr></i> : It means the IP address used for detection. Type an IP address (e.g., 192.168.1.10) in this field.
<i>target2<ip addr></i>	Set the secondary ping target. <i><ip addr></i> : It means the IP address used for detection. Type an IP address (e.g., 192.168.1.10) in this field.
<i>target_gw <1/0></i>	Set whether to use gateway as ping target. 1: yes 0: no Note that USB WAN (PPP mode) cannot support PING gateway
<i>interval <interval></i>	Set the interval between each ping operation. Available setting is between 1 and 3600. The unit is second. <i><interval></i> : Type a value.
<i>retry <retry></i>	Set how many ping operations are retried before the Router judges that the WAN connection is disconnected. Available setting is between 1 and 255. The unit is times. <i><retry></i> : Type a number.
<i>status</i>	It means to show the current status.

Example

```
> wan detect status
WAN1: arp detect, send time=30, Interval = 5
WAN2: arp detect, send time=30, Interval = 5
WAN3: arp detect, send time=30, Interval = 5
WAN4: arp detect, send time=30, Interval = 5
WAN5: arp detect, send time=30, Interval = 5
WAN6: arp detect, send time=30, Interval = 5
WAN7: arp detect, send time=30, Interval = 5

>
```

Telnet Command: wan lb

This command allows you to Enable/Disable for each WAN to join auto load balance member.

Syntax

wan lb [*wan1/wan2/...*] on
 wan lb [*wan1/wan2/...*] off
 wan lb [*IP/session*]

wan lb status

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>wan1/wan2</i>	It means to specify which WAN will be applied with load balance.
<i>on</i>	It means to make WAN interface as the member of load balance.
<i>off</i>	It means to cancel WAN interface as the member of load balance.
<i>ip/session</i>	Set the load balance in IP-based or session-based mode.
<i>status</i>	Show the current status.

Example

```
> wan lb status
WAN1: on
WAN2: on
WAN3: on
WAN4: on
WAN5: on
WAN6: on
WAN7: on
```

Telnet Command: wan lbel

This command allows you to define protocol, port and name for the traffic not to be applied with load balance.

Syntax Description

wan lbel <idx> <enable> <protocol> <ip type> <obj_grp idx> <port> <port_end> <comment>
wan lbel status <idx>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>idx</i>	Enter the index number (1 to 32) for the exception list.
<i>enable</i>	Enter 1 (enable) or 0 (disable) the selected profile.
<i>protocol</i>	<protocol>: Enter TCP, UDP, TCP+UDP.
<i>ip type</i>	Set the IP type (0, 1 or 2) for the selected profile. 0: Any 1: IP object 2: IP group
<i>obj_grp idx</i>	Enter the index number (1 to 32 for IP group; 1 to 192 for IP object). If it is set with "0", then the IP type will be set as "Any".
<i>port</i>	Enter a number (0 to 65535) as starting port. If it is set with "0", then the port range (1 to 65535) will not be applied with load balance.
<i>port_end</i>	Enter a number (0 to 65535) as ending port (must be greater than starting port).
<i>comment</i>	Enter a string (less than 11 characters) as a comment.
<i>status</i>	Show the current status.

Example

```
> wan lbel 1 1 tcp 0 1 0 300 testforload
```

```

> wan lbel status 1
  list[1] status:enable, protocol:tcp, IP type:any, IP idx:0,
port:0~300, comment
:testforload
  list[2] status:enable, protocol:udp, IP type:any, IP idx:0,
port:19302~19302, c
omment:Google STUN
  list[3] status:enable, protocol:tcp+udp, IP type:any, IP idx:0,
port:5060~5060,
comment:SIP
  list[4] status:disable, protocol:tcp, IP type:any, IP idx:0,
port:80~80, commen
t:HTTP
  list[5] status:disable, protocol:tcp, IP type:any, IP idx:0,
port:443~443, comm
ent:SSL
...
n

```

Telnet Command: wan mvlan

This command allows you to configure multi-VLAN for WAN and LAN. It supports pure bridge mode (modem mode) between Ethernet WAN and LAN port 2~4.

wan mvlan <pvc_no/status/save/enable/disable> <on/off/clear/tag tag_no> <service type/vlan priority> <px ... >

wan mvlan keeptag <pvc_no> <on/off>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>pvc_no</i>	It means index number of PVC. There are 10 PVC, 0(Channel-1) to 9(Channel-9) allowed to be configured. However, only 2 to 9 are available for configuration.
<i>status</i>	It means to display the whole Bridge status.
<i>save</i>	It means to save the configuration into flash of Vigor router.
<i>enable/disable</i>	It means to enable/disable the Multi-VLAN function.
<i>on/off</i>	It means to turn on/off bridge mode for the specific channel.
<i>clear</i>	It means to turn off/clear the port.
<i>tag tag_no</i>	It means to tag a number for the VLAN. -1: No need to add tag number. 1-4095: Available setting numbers used as tagged number.
<i>service type</i>	It means to specify the service type for VLAN. 0: Normal. 1: IGMP.
<i>vlan priority</i>	It means to specify the priority for the VALN setting. Range is from 0 to 7.
<i>px</i>	It means LAN port. Available setting number is from 2 to 4. Port number 1 is locked for NAT usage.
<i>Keep Tag</i>	It means Multi-VLAN packets will keep their VLAN headers to LAN.

Example

PVC 7 will map to LAN port 2/3/4 in bridge mode; service type is Normal. No tag added.

```

> wan mvlan 7 on p2 p3 p4
PVC Bridge p1 p2 p3 p4 p5 p6 Service Type Tag Priority Keep Tag
-----
7 ON 0 0 1 1 0 0 Normal 0(OFF) 0 OFF
>

```

Telnet Command: wan multifno

This command allows you to specify a channel (in Multi-PVC/VLAN) to make bridge connection to a specified WAN interface.

wan multifno *[channel #] [WAN interface #]*

wan multifno status

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>channel #</i>	There are several channels (5 to 10) including VLAN and PVC.
<i>WAN interface #</i>	Type a number to indicate the WAN interface. <i>1=WAN1</i>
<i>status</i>	It means to display current bridge status.

Example

```

> wan multifno 5 1
% Configured channel 5 uplink to WAN1
> wan multifno status
% Channel 5 uplink ifno: 3
% Channel 6 uplink ifno: 3
% Channel 7 uplink ifno: 3
% Channel 8 uplink ifno: 3
% Channel 9 uplink ifno: 3
>

```

Telnet Command: wan vlan

This command allows you to tag packets on WAN VLAN with specified number.

Syntax

wan vlan wan *[#] adsl tag [value]*

wan vlan wan *[#] adsl [enable|disable]*

wan vlan wan *[#] adsl pri[value]*

wan vlan wan *[#] vdsl tag [value]*

wan vlan wan *[#] vdsl [enable|disable]*

wan vlan wan *[#] vdsl pri[value]*

wan vlan stat

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>#</i>	It means the number of WAN interface.

	1: means WAN1 2: means WAN2.
<i>value</i>	It means the number to be tagged on packets. The range of the value is between 32 ~ 4095.
<i>enable/disable</i>	It means to enable or disable the WAN interface for VLAN.
<i>pri[value]</i>	It means to set priority of data transmission via 802.1q. The range of the value is between 0 ~ 7.
<i>stat</i>	It means to display the table of WAN VLAN status.

Example

```

> wan vlan stat
%Interface      Pri      Tag      Enabled
%=====
% WAN1 (ADSL)   0        0
% WAN1 (VDSL)   0        0
% WAN2          0        0

```

Telnet Command: wan budget

This command allows you determine the data *traffic volume* for each WAN interface respectively to prevent from overcharges for data transmission by the ISP.

Syntax

- wan budget wan <#> rdate <day><hour>
- wan budget wan <#> <enable/disable>
- wan budget wan <#> thres <budget limit (MB)>
- wan budget wan <#> gthres <budget limit (GB)>
- wan budget wan <#> mode <monthly/periodic/none>
- wan budget wan <#> psday <th day in periodic>
- wan budget wan <#> custom_mode <0/1>
- wan budget wan <#> custom_mode_reset_hour <hour>
- wan budget wan <#> action <action bitmap>
- wan budget status

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>wan <#></i>	Specify the WAN interface.
<i>rdate</i>	Specify the WAN budget refresh time. day - Available settings are from 1 to 30. hour - Available settings are from 1 to 23. E.g., wan budget wan 1 rdate 5 10 If monthly mode is selected: WAN budget will be refreshed on 5th day at 10:00 in each month If periodic mode is selected: WAN budget will be refreshed every 5 days and 10 hours
<i>enable/disable</i>	enable - Enable the function of wan budget. disable - Disable the function of wan budget.
<i>thres <budget limit (MB)></i>	Specify the maximum value for WAN budget limit. (Unit: MB) budget limit - Type a number.

<i>gthres</i> <budget limit (GB)>	Specify the maximum value of wan budget limit. (Unit: GB) budget limit - Type a number.
<i>mode</i> <monthly/periodic/none>	Specify the calculation mode (monthly, periodically, or none) for WAN budget.
<i>psday</i> <th day in periodic>	It is used only when mode is set with "periodic". Specify the order of "today" in the cycle. E.g., wan budget wan 5 psday → It means "today" is the 5 th day in the billing cycle.
<i>custom_mode</i> <0/1>	Set the custom mode (cycle in hours or in days). 0: cycle_in_hours. 0: cycle_in_hours 1: cycle_in_days
<i>custom_mode_reset_hour</i> <hour>	Set the reset hour value. hour: Enter 1 to 23.
<i>action</i> <action bitmap>	Determine the action to be performed when it reaches the WAN budget limit. <i>action bitmap</i> - Type a total number of actions to be executed. Different numbers represent different actions. 1: shutdown wan 2: send mail alert 4: send sms alert For example, if you type "5" (5=1+4), the system will send SMS alert when WAN shutdown is detected.
<i>status</i>	Display current configuration status of WAN budget.

Example

```
> wan budget wan 1 action 5
% WAN 1 budget action set to 5
> wan budget wan 1 gthres 10
% WAN 1 budget limit set to 10 GB
```

Telnet Command: wan detect_mtu

This command allows you to run a WAN MTU Discovery. The user can specify an IPv4 target to ping and find the suitable MTU size of the WAN interface.

Syntax

```
wan detect_mtu -i <Host/IP address> -s <mtu_size> -d <decrease size> -w <WAN number> -c <1-10>
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>-w</i> [number]	Specify the WAN interface. Value: Type the number of WAN interface. 1: WAN1; 2:WAN2....and etc.
<i>-i</i> [Host/IP address]	Specify the IPv4 target to detect. If can be an IPv4 address or domain name. Host/IP address: Type the IP address/domain name of the target.
<i>-s</i> [base_size]	Set the MTU size base for Discovery. base_size: Available setting is 1000 ~ 1500.
<i>-d</i> [decrease size]	Set the MTU size to decrease between detections. decrease size: Available setting is 1 ~ 100.
<i>-c</i> [count]	Set the maximum times of ping failure during a Discovery. count: Available settings are 1 ~ 10. Default value is 3.

Example

```
> wan detect_mtu -w 2 -i 8.8.8.8 -s 1500 -d 30 -c 10
detecting mtu size:1500!!!
```

```
mtu size:1470!!!
```

Telnet Command: wan detect_mtu6

This command allows you to run a WAN MTU Discovery. The user can specify an IPv6 target to ping and find the suitable MTU size of the WAN interface.

Syntax

```
wan detect_mtu6 --i <Host/IP address> -s <mtu_size> -w <WAN number>
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>-w <wan number></i>	Specify the WAN interface number: Type the number of WAN interface. 1: WAN1; 2:WAN2....and etc.
<i>-i <Host/IP address></i>	Specify the IPv6 target to detect. It must be an IPv6 IP address. Host/IP address: Type the IPv6 address of the target.
<i>-s <mtu_size></i>	Specify the size of MTU. mtu_size: Available setting is 1000 ~ 1500.

Example

```
> wan detect_mtu6 -w 1 -i 2404:6800:4008:c06::5e -s 1500  
>
```

Telnet Command: wan failover

This command is used to configure failover WAN.

Syntax

```
wan failover off <index>
```

```
wan failover on <1><2><3><4><5><6>
```

```
wan failover show <index>
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>failover off <index></i>	Set specified WAN interface to always on. index - Ranges from 1 to 6.
<i>failover on <1><2><3><4><5><6></i>	There are six fields which represent different options. Field 1 - Specify WAN interface as failover WAN by typing 1 to 4. Field 2 - Enable / disable the action for the failover WAN. Such action is "Active When selected WAN [disconnect/reached traffic threshold]". 0 - Disable 1 - Enable Field 3 - Enable / disable the action for the failover WAN. Such action is "Active When [any/all] of selected WAN disconnect or reached traffic threshold". 0 - Disable 1 - Enable Field 4 - Specify main WAN by typing 1 to 4. The main WAN will be set to always on. Field 5 - Specify traffic threshold [Download threshold(Kbps)]. Field 6 - Specify traffic threshold [Upload threshold (Kbps)]. For example, WAN 2 will be set as failover, and will be active when any of selected WANs has reached traffic threshold. WAN 4 is the selected WAN. Download threshold : 50 Kbps; Upload threshold : 20

	Kbps. You can type as follows: <i>wan failover on 2 1 0 4 50 20</i>
<i>show <index></i>	Display parameters settings for WAN interface. index - Ranges from 1 to 6.

Example

```
> wan failover on 2 1 0 4 50 20
> wan failover show 2
wan2 Active Mode : Failover
    Active when : Any of the selected WANs reached the Traffic
Threshold, any followed meet:
```

Telnet Command: hsportal

This command is used to configure a profile (Hotspot Web Portal) with specified URL for accessing into or display a message when a wireless/LAN user connects to Internet through this router.

Syntax

hsportal -p <profile> [-l <lan>] [-s <ssid>] ...

hsportal -p <profile> -c

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>-p</i>	Indicate available profile to be configured. Number of profile: 1 /2 /3 / 4.
<i>-l</i>	Apply to LAN interfaces. E.g., apply LAN1 and LAN2: -l 1, 2.
<i>-s</i>	Apply to WLAN interfaces. E.g., apply SSID1 and SSID2: -s 1, 2.
<i>-m</i>	Select login mode. 0:skip 1:click 2:social 3:pin 4:social or pin
<i>-f</i>	Configure facebook login. 0: disable. 1: enable.
<i>-g</i>	Configure google login. 0: disable. 1: enable.
<i>-h</i>	Enable HTTPS redirection. 0: disable. 1: enable.
<i>-v</i>	Enable portal detection. 0: disable. 1: enable.
<i>-i</i>	Configure APP id. For example, to configure facebook APP id, you can type: >hsportal -p 1 -f -i this_is_app_id Profile 1 set facebook login disabled ... [OK]
<i>-k</i>	Configure app key. For example, to configure google APP key, you can type:

	> hsportal -p 1 -g -i this_is_app_key Profile 1 set google login disabled ... [OK]
-r	Configure landing page mode. 0: fixed URL. 1: user request. 2: bulletin. E.g. > hsportal -p 1 -r 0 Profile 1 set landing page mode 0 ... [OK]
-e	Enable the specified profile.
-d	Disable the specified profile.
-c	Reset the specified profile. Number of profile: 1 /2 /3 / 4.
-o	Clear profiles for all clients.

Example

```
> hsportal -p 1 -c
Reset profile 1 ... [OK]
> hsportal -p 1 -r 0
Profile 1 set landing page mode 0 ... [OK]
> hsportal -p 2 -g 1 -k app_key_google
Profile 2 set google login enabled ... [OK]
Profile 2 set API KEY ... [OK]
>
```

Telnet Command: wl acl

This command allows the user to configure wireless access control settings.

Syntax

```
wl acl enable [ssid1 ssid2 ssid3 ssid4]
wl acl disable [ssid1 ssid2 ssid3 ssid4]
wl acl add [MAC] [ssid1 ssid2 ssid3 ssid4] [isolate]
wl acl del [MAC]
wl acl mode [ssid1 ssid2 ssid3 ssid4] [white/black]
wl acl show
wl acl showmode
wl acl clean
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>enable [ssid1 ssid2 ssid3 ssid4]</i>	It means to enable the settings for SSID1, SSID2, SSID3 and SSID4.
<i>disable [ssid1 ssid2 ssid3 ssid4]</i>	It means to disable the settings for SSID1, SSID2, SSID3 and SSID4.
<i>add [MAC] [ssid1 ssid2 ssid3 ssid4] [isolate]</i>	It means to associate a MAC address to certain SSID interfaces' access control settings. The isolate setting will limit the wireless client's network capabilities to accessing the wireless LAN only.

	[MAC] format: xx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xx or xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx or xx.xx.xx.xx.xx.xx
<i>del [MAC]</i>	It means to delete a MAC address entry defined in the access control list.
<i>mode [ssid1 ssid2 ssid3 ssid4] [white/black]</i>	It means to set white/black list for each SSID.
<i>wl acl show</i>	It means to show access control status.
<i>wl acl showmode</i>	It means to show the mode for each SSID.
<i>wl acl clean</i>	It means to clean all access control setting.

Example

```

> wl acl showmode
  SSID1: None
  SSID2: None
  SSID3: None
  SSID4: None
> wl acl add 14:49:BC:0D:8F:00 ssid1 ssid2 test isolate
Set Done !!
> wl acl show
-----Mac Address Filter Status-----
  SSID1: Disable
  SSID2: Disable
  SSID3: Disable
  SSID4: Disable
-----MAC Address List-----
  Index   Attribute   MAC Address           Associated
  SSIDs   Comment
  1       s           14:49:bc:0d:8f:00    SSID1
  SSID2   test
  s: Isolate the station from LAN
>
>

```

Telnet Command: wl config

This command allows users to configure general settings and security settings for wireless connection.

wl config mode <value>

wl config mode show

wl config channel <number>

wl config channel show

wl config preamble <enable>

wl config txburst <enable>

wl config ssid <ssid_num enable ssid_name <hidden_ssid>>

wl config security <SSID_NUMBER><mode>

wl config ratectl <ssid_num enable upload download >

wl config isolate <ssid_num lan member>

wl config dtim <value>/ show

wl config beaconperiod <value> / show

wl config radio <1/0>/show

```

wl config frag <value>/ show
wl config rts <value> / show
wl config rate_alg <value> / show
wl config country <value> / show

```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>mode</i> [<i>value</i>]	It means to select connection mode for wireless connection. Available settings are: "11bgn", "11gn", "11n", "11bg", "11g", or "11b".
<i>mode show</i>	It means to display what the current wireless mode is.
<i>channel</i> [<i>number</i>]	It means the channel of frequency of the wireless LAN. The available settings are 0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10,11,12 and 13. number=0, means Auto number=1, means Channel 1 number=13, means Channel 13.
<i>preamble</i> [<i>enable</i>]	It means to define the length of the sync field in an 802.11 packet. Most modern wireless network uses short preamble with 56 bit sync field instead of long preamble with 128 bit sync field. However, some original 11b wireless network devices only support long preamble. 0: disable to use long preamble. 1: enable to use long preamble.
<i>txburst</i> [<i>enable</i>]	It means to enhance the performance in data transmission about 40%* more (by enabling Tx Burst). It is active only when both sides of Access Point and Station (in wireless client) invoke this function at the same time. 0: disable the function. 1: enable the function.
<i>ssid</i> [<i>ssid_num enable</i> <i>ssid_name</i> [<i>hidden_ssid</i>]]	It means to set the name of the SSID, hide the SSID if required. <i>ssid_num</i> : Type 1, 2, 3 or 4 to specify SSID1, SSID2, SSID3 or SSID4. <i>ssid_name</i> : Give a name for the specified SSID. <i>hidden_ssid</i> : Type 0 to hide the SSID or 1 to display the SSID
<i>Security</i> [<i>SSID_NUMBER</i>] [<i>mode</i>][<i>key</i>][<i>index</i>]	It means to configure security settings for the wireless connection. <i>SSID_NUMBER</i> : Type 1, 2, 3 or 4 to specify SSID1, SSID2, SSID3 or SSID4. <i>mode</i> : Available settings are: disable: No security. wpa1x: WPA/802.1x Only wpa21x: WPA2/802.1x Only wpamix1x: Mixed (WPA+WPA2/802.1x only) wep1x: WEP/802.1x Only wpapsk: WPA/PSK wpa2psk: WPA2/PSK wpamixpsk: Mixed (WPA+WPA2)/PSK wep: WEP <i>key, index</i> : Moreover, you have to add keys for <i>wpapsk</i> , <i>wpa2psk</i> , <i>wpamixpsk</i> and <i>wep</i> , and specify index number of schedule profiles to be followed by the wireless connection. WEP keys must be in 5/13 ASCII text string or 10/26 Hexadecimal digit format; WPA keys must be in 8-63 ASCII text string or 64

	Hexadecimal digit format.
<i>ratectl [ssid_num enable upload download]</i>	It means to set the rate control for the specified SSID. <i>ssid_num</i> : Choose 1, 2, 3 or 4 to specify SSID1, SSID2, SSID3 or SSID4. <i>enable</i> : It means to enable the function of the rate control for the specified SSID. 0: disable and 1:enable. <i>upload</i> : It means to configure the rate control for data upload. The unit is kbps. <i>download</i> : It means to configure the rate control for data download. The unit is kbps.
<i>isolate [ssid_num lan member]</i>	It means to isolate the wireless connection for LAN and/or Member. <i>lan</i> - It can make the wireless clients (stations) with remote-dial and LAN to LAN users not accessing for each other. <i>member</i> - It can make the wireless clients (stations) with the same SSID not accessing for each other.
<i>dtim <value> / show</i>	Set the DTIM value. value: 1 to 255 show: Display the DTIM setting.
<i>beaconperiod <value> / show</i>	Set the beaconperiod value. value: 20 to 1023 (milli-second) show: Display the beaconperiod etting.
<i>radio <1/0>/show</i>	Enble or disable the wireless radio. 1/0: Type 1 to enable; 0 to disable. show: Display the radio setting.
<i>frag<value>/ show</i>	Set the fragment value. value: 256 to 2346 show: Display the fragment setting.
<i>rts <value> / show</i>	Set the RTS value. value: 1 to 2347 show: Display the RTS setting.
<i>rate_alg <value>/ show</i>	Set the algorithm for ALG rate. value: 0 for old algorithm; 1 for new algorithm. show: Display the ALG rate setting.
<i>country <value>/ show</i>	Set the country code for a country. value: two capital letters, e.g., TW, UK show: Display the country cod setting.

Example

```

> wl config mode 11bgn
Current mode is 11bgn
% <Note> Please restart wireless after you set the channel
> wl config channel 13
Current channel is 13
% <Note> Please restart wireless after you set the channel.
> wl config preamble 1
Long preamble is enabled
% <Note> Please restart wireless after you set the parameters.
> wl config ssid 1 enable dray
SSID Enable Hide_SSID Name
1 1 0 dray
% <Note> Please restart wireless after you set the parameters.

```

```

> wl config security 1 wpa2x
%% Configured Wlan Security Setting:
% SSID1
%% Mode: wpa2x
%% Wireless card must be reset for configurations to take effect
%% (Telnet Command: wl restart)

```

Telnet Command: wl set

This command allows users to configure basic wireless settings.

`wl set [SSID] [CHAN[En]]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>SSID</i>	It means to type the SSID for the router. The maximum character that you can use is 32.
<i>CHAN[En]</i>	It means to specify required channel for the router. <i>CHAN</i> : The range for the number is between 1 ~ 13. <i>En</i> : type <i>on</i> to enable the function; type <i>off</i> to disable the function.

Example

```

> wl set MKT 2 on
% New Wlan Setting is:
% SSID=MKT
% Chan=2
% Wl is Enable

```

Telnet Command: wl act

This command allows users to activate wireless settings.

`wl act [En]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>En</i>	It means to enable or disable the function of VPN isolation. 0: diable 1: enable

Example

```

> wl act on
% Set Wlan to Enable.

```

Telnet Command: wl iso_vpn

This command allows users to activate the function of VPN isolation.

`wl iso_vpn [ssid] [En]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>ssid</i>	It means the number of SSID.

	1: SSID1 2: SSID2 3: SSID3 4: SSID4
<i>En</i>	It means to enable or disable the function of VPN isolation. 0: disable 1: enable

Example

```
> wl iso_vpn 1 on
% ssid: 1 isolate vpn on :1
```

Telnet Command: **wl wpa**

This command allows you to configure WPA wireless settings.

Syntax

`wl wpa 1/2/3`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>wl wpa</i>	Type 1/2/3 to represent different WPA modes. 1 - means WPA+WPA2 2 - means WPA2 Only 3 - means WPA Only

Example

```
> wl wpa 1
>
```

Telnet Command: **wl wmm**

This command allows users to set WMM for wireless connection. It defines the priority levels for four access categories derived from 802.1d (prioritization tabs).

`wl wmm ap QueIdx Aifsn Cwmin Cwmax Txop ACM`

`wl wmm bss QueIdx Aifsn Cwmin Cwmax Txop ACM`

`wl wmm ack Que0_Ack Que1_Ack Que2_Ack Que3_Ack`

`wl wmm enable SSID0 SSID1 SSID2 SSID3`

`wl wmm apsd value`

`wl wmm show`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>ap</i>	It means to set WMM for access point.
<i>bss</i>	It means to set WMM for wireless clients.
<i>ack</i>	It means to map to the Ack policy settings of AP WMM.
<i>enable</i>	It means to enable the WMM for each SSID. 0: disable

	1: enable
<i>Apsd [value]</i>	It means to enable / disable the ASPD(automatic power-save delivery) function. 0: disable 1: enable
<i>show</i>	It displays current status of WMM.
<i>QueIdx</i>	It means the number of the queue which the WMM settings will be applied to. There are four queues, best effort, background, voice, and video.
<i>Aifsn</i>	It controls how long the client waits for each data transmission.
<i>Cwmin/ Cwmax</i>	CWMin means contention Window-Min and CWMax means contention Window-Max. Specify the value ranging from 1 to 15.
<i>Txop</i>	It means transmission opportunity. Specify the value ranging from 0 to 65535.
<i>ACM</i>	It can restrict stations from using specific category class if it is enabled. 0: disable 1: enable

Example

```

> wl wmm ap 0 3 4 6 0 0
  QueIdx=0: APAifsn=3,APCwmin=4,APCwmax=6, APTxop=0,APACM=0
> wl wmm enable 1 0 1 0
  WMM_SSID0 =1, WMM_SSID1 =0,WMM_SSID2 =1,WMM_SSID3 =0
> wl wmm show
  Enable WMM: SSID0 =1, SSID1 =0,SSID2 =1,SSID3 =0
  APSD=0
  QueIdx=0: APAifsn=3,APCwmin=4,APCwmax=6, APTxop=0,APACM=0
  QueIdx=1: APAifsn=7,APCwmin=4,APCwmax=10, APTxop=0,APACM=0
  QueIdx=2: APAifsn=1,APCwmin=3,APCwmax=4, APTxop=94,APACM=0
  QueIdx=3: APAifsn=1,APCwmin=2,APCwmax=3, APTxop=47,APACM=0
  QueIdx=0: BSSAifsn=3,BSSCwmin=4,BSSCwmax=10, BSSTxop=0,BSSACM=0
  QueIdx=1: BSSAifsn=7,BSSCwmin=4,BSSCwmax=10, BSSTxop=0,BSSACM=0
  QueIdx=2: BSSAifsn=2,BSSCwmin=3,BSSCwmax=4, BSSTxop=94,BSSACM=0
  QueIdx=3: BSSAifsn=2,BSSCwmin=2,BSSCwmax=3, BSSTxop=47,BSSACM=0
  AckPolicy[0]=0: AckPolicy[1]=0,AckPolicy[2]=0,AckPolicy[3]=0

```

Telnet Command: wl ht

This command allows you to configure wireless settings.

wl ht bw value

wl ht gi value

wl ht badecline value

wl ht autoba value

wl ht rdg value

wl ht msdu value

wl ht txpower value

wl ht antenna value

wl ht greenfield *value*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
wl ht bw <i>value</i>	The value you can type is 0 (for BW_20) and 1 (for BW_40).
wl ht gi <i>value</i>	The value you can type is 0 (for GI_800) and 1 (for GI_4001)
wl ht badecline <i>value</i>	The value you can type is 0 (for disabling) and 1 (for enabling).
wl ht autoba <i>value</i>	The value you can type is 0 (for disabling) and 1 (for enabling).
wl ht rdg <i>value</i>	The value you can type is 0 (for disabling) and 1 (for enabling).
wl ht msdu <i>value</i>	The value you can type is 0 (for disabling) and 1 (for enabling).
wl ht txpower <i>value</i>	The value you can type ranges from 1 - 6 (level).
wl ht antenna <i>value</i>	The value you can type ranges from 0-3. 0: 2T3R 1: 2T2R 2: 1T2R 3: 1T1R
wl ht greenfield <i>value</i>	The value you can type is 0 (for mixed mode) and 1 (for green field).

Example

```
> wl ht bw value 1
BW=0
<Note> Please restart wireless after you set new parameters.
> wl restart
Wireless restart.....
```

Telnet Command: wl restart

This command allows you to restart wireless setting.

Example

```
> wl restart
Wireless restart.....
```

Telnet Command: wl stalist

This command is used to display the wireless station which accessing Internet via Vigor router.

Example

```
> wl stalist
wl stalist show      : show station list
wl stalist num       : show number of stations
wl stalist neighbor  : show neighbor station list
```

Telnet Command: wl wds

This command allows you to configure WDS settings.

Syntax

wl wds mode [*value*]


```
wl wds security [value]
wl wds ap [value]
wl wds hello [value]
wl wds status
wl wds show
wl wds mac [value]
wl wds flush
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>mode [value]</i>	It means to specify connection mode for WDS. [value]: Available settings are : d: Disable b: Bridge r: Repeater
<i>security [value]</i>	It means to configure security mode with encrypted keys for WDS. <i>mode</i> : Available settings are: disable: No security. wep: WEP wpapsk [key]: WPA/PSK wpa2psk [key]: WPA2/PSK <i>key</i> : Moreover, you have to add keys for <i>wpapsk</i> , <i>wpa2psk</i> , and <i>wep</i> , and specify index number of schedule profiles to be followed by the wireless connection. WEP keys must be in 5/13 ASCII text string or 10/26 Hexadecimal digit format; WPA keys must be in 8-63 ASCII text string or 64 Hexadecimal digit format. e.g., <pre>wl dual wds security disable wl dual wds security wep 12345 wl dual wds security wpa2psk 12345678</pre>
<i>ap [value]</i>	It means to enable or disable the AP function. Value: 1 - enable the function. 0 - disable the function.
<i>hello [value]</i>	It means to send hello message to remote end (peer). Value: 1 - enable the function. 0 - disable the function.
<i>status</i>	It means to display WDS link status for 2.4GHz connection.
<i>show</i>	It means to display current WDS settings.
<i>mac add [index addr]</i>	<i>add [index addr]</i> - Add the peer MAC entry in Repeater/Bridge WDS MAC table.
<i>mac clear/disable/enable [index/all]</i>	<i>clear/disable/enable [index/all]</i> - Clear, disable, enable the specified or all MAC entries in Repeater/Bridge WDS MAC table. e.g, <pre>wl dual wds mac enable 1</pre>
<i>flush</i>	It means to reset all WDS setting.

Example

```
> wl wds status
```

```

Please enable WDS hello function first.

> wl wds hello 1
% <Note> Please restart router after you set the parameters.

> wl wds status

```

Telnet Command: wl btncctl

This command allows you to enable or disable wireless button control.

`wl btncctl [value]`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>value</i>	0: disable 1: enable

Example

```

> wl btncctl 1
Enable wireless botton control
Current wireless botton control is on
>

```

Telnet Command: wl iwpriv

This command is reserved for RD debug. Do not use them.

Telnet Command: wl set8021x

This command allows you to configure the external or internal server used by Vigor router for wireless authentication.

Syntax

`wl set8021x -t [0/1]`

`wl set8021x -v`

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>-t</i>	Specify the type (external or internal) of wireless authentication server. 0 - Indicate the external RADIUS server. 1- Indicate the local 802.1x server.
<i>-v</i>	View the settings of 802.1x.

Example

```

> wl set8021x -t 1
% <Note> Please restart wireless after you set the parameters.
> wl set8021x -v
802.1X type is : Local 802.1X
>

```

Telnet Command: wl artfns

This command allows users to configure airtime fairness function for wireless (2.4GHz) connection.

Syntax

```
wl artfns enable <value>
wl artfns trg_num <value>
wl artfns show
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>enable [value]</i>	It means to enable wireless airtime fairness function. 1 - enable 0 - disable
<i>Trg_num [value]</i>	Set a threshold when the active station number achieves this number, the airtime fairness function will be applied. Available values will be 2 to 64.
<i>show</i>	Display current status (enable or disable) and triggering client number for airtime fairness function.

Example

```
> wl artfns enable 1
> wl artfns trg_num 3
> wl artfns show
airtime fairness: enable
trg_num: 3
>
```

Telnet Command: local_8021x

The command is used to configure general settings for Local 802.1X server built in Vigor router.

Syntax

```
local_8021x enable [0/1]
local_8021x set_localdot1x_method -e [method number]
local_8021x set_localdot1x_method -d [method number]
local_8021x show
```

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>enable</i>	Enable or disable the configuration. 0: disable. 1: enable.
<i>set_localdot1x_method -e [method number]</i>	Add the method. -e [method number]: Set the method. The method index number are: 1 - EAP_PEAP/MSCHAPv2 2 - EAP_TTLS/PAP 3 - EAP_TTLS/MSCHAP 4 - EAP_TTLS/MSCHAPv2 e.g., local_8021x set_localdot1x_method-e 1
<i>set_localdot1x_method -d [method number]</i>	Delete the method. -d [method number]: Delete the method. The method index number are:

	1 - EAP_PEAP/MSCHAPv2 2 - EAP_TTLS/PAP 3 - EAP_TTLS/MSCHAP 4 - EAP_TTLS/MSCHAPv2 e.g., local_8021x set_localdot1x_method-d 3
options	-e [method_idx]: set method. e.g., local_8021x set_localdot1x_phase1 -e 1 -d: delete method. e.g., local_8021x set_localdot1x_phase1 -d
show	Display current settings of local 802.1x server.

Example

```
> local_8021x set_localdot1x_method -e 3
This setting will take effect after rebooting.
Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
>
```

Telnet Command: wol

This command allows you to set the white list of WAN IP addresses/Subnets, that the magic packet from these IP addresses/Subnets will be eligible to pass through NAT and wake up the LAN client. You also need to set NAT rule for LAN client.

Syntax

wol up [*MAC Address*]/[*IP Address*]

wol fromWan [*on/off/any*]

wol fromWan_Setting [*idx*][*ip address*][*mask*]

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>MAC Address</i>	It means the MAC address of the host.
<i>IP address</i>	It means the LAN IP address of the host. If you want to wake up LAN host by using IP address, be sure that that IP address has been bound with the MAC address (IP BindMAC).
<i>on/off/any</i>	It means to enable or disable the function of WOL from WAN. on: enable off: disable any: It means any source IP address can pass through NAT and wake up the LAN client. This command will allow the user to choose whether WoL packets can be passed from the Internet to the LAN network from a specific WAN interface.
[<i>idx</i>][<i>ip address</i>] [<i>mask</i>]	It means the index number (from 1 to 4). These commands will allow the user to configure the LAN clients that the user may wake up from the Internet through the use of the WoL packet. <i>ip address</i> - It means the WAN IP address. <i>mask</i> - It means the mask of the IP address.

Example

```
> wol fromWan on
> wol fromWan_Setting 1 192.168.1.45 255.255.255.0
```

>

Telnet Command: user

The command is used to create new user account profiles.

Syntax

User set [-a/-b/-c/-d/-e/-l/-o/-q/-r/-s/-u]

user edit [PROFILE_IDX]

[-a/-d/-e/-f/-i/-o/-m/-n/-p/-q/-r/-s/-t/-u/-v/-w/-x/-A/-H/-T/-P/-I/-L/-D]

user account [USER_NAME] [-d/-q/-r/-t/-w]

user setdefault

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>set</i>	It means to configure general setup for the user management.
<i>edit</i>	It means to modify the selected user profile.
<i>account</i>	It means to set user account.
User Set	
<i>-a</i> [Profile idx][User name][IP_Address]	It means to pass an IP Address. <i>Profile idx</i> - type the index number of the selected profile. <i>User name</i> - type the user name that you want it to pass. <i>IP_Address</i> - type the IP address that you want it to pass.
<i>-b</i> <user name> <i>-b ip</i> <ip address>	Block specifies user or IP address. <i>user name</i> - type the user name that you want to block. <i>ip address</i> -- type the IP address that you want to block.
<i>-c</i> [user name] <i>-c all</i>	Clear the user record. <i>user name</i> - type the user name that you want to get clear corresponding record. <i>all</i> - all of the records will be removed.
<i>-d</i>	Disable User management function.
<i>-e</i>	Enable User management function.
<i>-l all</i> <i>-l userl</i> <i>-l ip</i>	Show online user. <i>all</i> - all of the users will be displayed on the screen. <i>user name</i> - type the user name that you want to view on the screen. <i>ip</i> - type the IP address that you want to view on the screen.
<i>-o</i>	It means to show user account information. e.g., <i>-o</i>
<i>-q</i>	It means to trigger the alert tool to do authentication.
<i>-r</i> [user name all]	Remove the user record. <i>user name</i> - type the name of the user profile. <i>all</i> - all of the user profile settings will be removed.
<i>-s</i>	It means to set login service. 0:HTTPS 1:HTTP e.g., <i>-s 1</i>
<i>-u user</i> [user name]	Unblock specifies user or IP address.

<i>-u ip [ip address]</i>	<i>user name</i> - type the user name that you want to unblock. <i>ip address</i> -- type the IP address that you want to unblock.
User edit	
<i>PROFILE_IDX</i>	Type the index number of the profile that you want to edit.
<i>-a [Param]</i>	Enable/Disable Internal RADIUS server. 0:Disable 1:Enable
<i>-d</i>	Disable User profile function.
<i>-e</i>	Enable User profile function.
<i>-f [Param]</i>	Enable/Disable Local 802.1X user. 0:Disable 1:Enable
<i>-l [Param]</i>	Set the idle time. 0:Unlimited, MAX:255. e.g., <i>-l 60</i>
<i>-m [Param]</i>	Set the maximum login user number. 0:Unlimited, MAX:2000.
<i>-o [Param]</i>	It means to set auto-logout (from 0 to 65535, 0 means unlimited).
<i>-m [Param]</i>	It means to set the maximum (from 0 to 2000) login user number. e.g., <i>-m 200</i>
<i>-n [Param]</i>	It means to set a user name for a profile. e.g., <i>-n forttest</i>
<i>-p [Param]</i>	It means to configure user password. e.g., <i>-p 60forttest</i>
<i>-q [Param]</i>	It means to set time quota (1 ~ 65535) of the user profile. e.g., <i>-q 200</i>
<i>-r [Param]</i>	It means to set data quota (1 ~ 65535) of the user profile. e.g., <i>-r 1000</i>
<i>-s [Param]</i>	It means to set schedule index . "sch_idx" could be 1 to 15.
<i>-t [Param]</i>	It means to enable /disable time quota limitation for user profile. 0:Disable 1:Enable
<i>-u [Param]</i>	It means to enable /disable data quota limitation for user profile. 0:Disable 1:Enable
<i>-v</i>	It means to view user profile(s).
<i>-w [Param]</i>	It means to specify the data quota unit (MB/GB). e.g., <i>-w MB</i>
<i>-x [Param]</i>	It means to set external server authentication 0: None 1: LDAP 2: Radius 3: TACACS+ e.g., <i>-x 2</i>
<i>-l [Param]</i>	It means to set log type. 0: None 1: Login 2: Event

	3: All
<i>-P [Param]</i>	It means to set pop browser tracking window. 0:Disable 1:Enable
<i>-T [Param]</i>	It means to set Authentication by Telnet. 0:Disable 1:Enable
<i>-H [Param]</i>	It means to set Authentication by web page. 0:Disable 1:Enable
<i>-A [Param]</i>	It means to set Authentication by Alert Tool. 0:Disable 1:Enable
<i>-L <index></i>	It means to set active directory / LDAP profiles. Index: Specify the index number (profile_idx1 to profile_idx8) of the profile.
<i>-D</i>	It means to list all active directory / LDAP profiles.
<i>-O <0/1></i>	It means to reset the quota automatically. 0:Disable 1:Enable
<i>-Q <param></i>	It means to set the default time quota. param: Enter a number (1 to 65535).
<i>-R <param></i>	It means to set the default data quota. param: Enter a number (1 to 65535).
<i>-M <param></i>	It means to set the default quota type. 0: when login permission schedule expired. 1: at the start time of schedule.
<i>I <param></i>	It means to specify the default quota schedule index to perform the job at the start time.
<i>-S</i>	It means to display the reset default quota type and the schedule index.
User account	
<i>USER_NAME</i>	It means to type a name of the user account.
<i>-d [Param]</i>	It means to enable /disable data quota limitation for user account. 0:Disable 1:Enable
<i>-q [Param]</i>	It means to set account time quota. e.g., <i>-q 200</i>
<i>-r [Param]</i>	It means to set account data quota. e.g., <i>-r 1000</i>
<i>-t [Param]</i>	It means to enable /disable time quota limitation for user account. 0:Disable 1:Enable
<i>-w [Param]</i>	It means to set data quota unit (MB/GB).
<i>setdefault</i>	Setup all of the user profiles to factory default configuration.

Example

```
>user account admin -d 0 -q 200 -r 1000 -t 1 -w MB
Disable the [admin] data quota limited
```

Telnet Command: appqos

The command is used to configure QoS for APP..

Syntax

appqos view

appqos enable[0/1]

appqos traceable [-v | -e AP_INDEX CLASS | -d AP_INDEX]

appqos untraceable [-v | -e AP_INDEX CLASS | -d AP_INDEX]

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>view</i>	It means to display current status of APP QoS.
<i>enable[0/1]</i>	It means to enable or disable the function of APP QoS.
<i>traceable/ untraceable</i>	The APPs are divided into traceable and untraceable based on their properties.
<i>-v</i>	It means to view the content of all traceable APs. Use "appqos traceable -v" to display all of the traceable APS with speficed index number. Use "appqos untraceable -v" to display all of the untraceable APS with speficed index number.
<i>-e</i>	It menas to enable QoS for application(s) and assign QoS class.
<i>AP_INDEX</i>	Each index number represents one application. Index number: 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 58, 60, 62, 63, 64, 65, 66, 68 are used for 13 traceabel APPs. Index number: 0-49, 55-59, 61, 67, 69, and 70-123 are used for 125 untraceable AP.
<i>CLASS</i>	Specifies the QoS class of the application, from 1 to 4 1:Class 1, 2:Class 2, 3:Class 3, 4:Other Class
<i>-d</i>	It means to disable QoS for application(s).

Example

```
> appqos enable 1
APP QoS set to Enable.
> appqos traceable -e 68 2
TELNET: ENABLED, QoS Class 2.
```

Telnet Command: nand bad /nand usage

"NAND usage" is used to display NAND Flash usage; "nand bad" is used to display NAND Flash bad blocks.

Syntax

nand bad

nand usage

Example

```
>nand usage
Show NAND Flash Usage:
Partition      Total          Used           Available      Use%
cfg            4194304        7920           4186384        0%
bin_web       33554432       11869493      21684939       35%
cfg-bak       4194304        7920           4186384        0%
bin_web-bak   33554432       11869493      21684939       35%
> nand bad
Show NAND Flash Bad Blocks:
Block  Address          Partition
1020   0x07f80000      unused
1021   0x07fa0000      unused
1022   0x07fc0000      unused
1023   0x07fe0000      unused
```

Telnet Command: service

This command is used to display information about Myvigor service. In addition, it allows to transfer MyVigor service from the original account to other account.

Syntax

service -s

service -r

service -l <account><password>

service -i <new_owner><new_owner_email>

service -t <yes>/<no>

service -c

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-s	Display the service status.
-r	Refresh the service status
-l <account><password>	Login to MyVigor server. Enter the account and password registered to MyVigor server account - Enter the name of the account. Password - Enter the password of the account.
-i <new_owner> <new_owner_email>	Enter the name and the e-mail address of the new owner for service transfer. New_owner - Enter the account name of the new owner. New_owner_email - Enter the e-mail address of the new owner.
-t <yes>/<no>	Transfer this Vigor device to a new owner.
-c	Clear current owner's account information.

Example

```
> service
```

```
> service -l carrieni ttt0016ttt5
Login Account:carrieni, Pw:ttt0016ttt5
Login Success! Please check Service Status again!
> service -s
Show service status.
Now state is [SS_STATE_REG_ACC_VALID]
Service Status:
Model Name   : Vigor2832 Series
Serial Number: 2021053108580701
MAC Address  : 00:1D:AA:73:4A:78
Owner Account: carrieni
E-mail       : ca*****i@draytek.com

Device service support status:
Service WCF, ID = [1]
  Service Provider [Cyren]
  Licese Start_date [2022-09-26]
  Licese Exp_date [2023-09-26]

Service APPE, ID=[4]
  Service Provider [Not Activated]
  Licese Start_date []
  Licese Exp_date []

Service DDNS, ID=[6]
  Service Provider [Not Activated]
  Licese Start_date []
  Licese Exp_date []
```